

bib2gls: a command line Java application to convert .bib files to glossaries-extra.sty resource files

Nicola Talbot
dickimaw-books.com

2018-11-30

The `bib2gls` command line application can be used to extract glossary information stored in a `.bib` file and convert it into glossary entry definitions that can be read using `glossaries-extra`'s `\GlsXtrLoadResources` command. When used in combination with the `record` package option, `bib2gls` can select only those entries that have been used in the document, as well as any dependent entries, which reduces the \TeX resources required by not defining unnecessary commands.

Since `bib2gls` can also sort and collate the recorded locations present in the `.aux` file, it can simultaneously by-pass the need to use `makeindex` or `xindy`, although `bib2gls` can be used together with an external indexing application if required. (For example, if a custom `xindy` rule is needed.)

An additional build may be required to ensure the locations are up-to-date as the page-breaking may be slightly different on the first \LaTeX run due to the unknown references being replaced with `??` which can be significantly shorter than the actual text produced when the reference is known.

Note that `bib2gls` is a Java application, and requires at least Java 7 (although the latest version is recommended). Additionally, `glossaries-extra` must be at least version 1.12. (Although again the latest version is recommended.) This application was developed in response to the question “Is there a program for managing glossary tags?” on \TeX on StackExchange [16]. The `.bib` file can be managed in an application such as `JabRef`.

If you already have a `.tex` file containing entry definitions using commands like `\newglossaryentry` then you can use the supplementary tool `convert-gls2bib` to convert the entries to the `.bib` format required by `bib2gls`. See chapter 7 for further details.

The supplementary file “glossaries-extra and bib2gls: An Introductory Guide” (`bib2gls-begin.pdf`) is an introductory guide to the `glossaries-extra` package, which you may prefer to start with if you are unfamiliar with the `glossaries` and `glossaries-extra` packages.

Contents

1	Introduction	1
1.1	Example Use	2
1.2	Defining a New Glossary	4
1.3	Resource Sets	6
1.4	Indexing	9
1.5	Security	10
1.6	Localisation	10
1.7	Conditional Document Build	11
1.8	Manual Installation	12
2	T_EX Parser Library	14
3	Command Line Options	21
	--help (or -h)	21
	--version (or -v)	21
	--debug [<i>n</i>]	21
	--no-debug (or --nodebug)	21
	--verbose	21
	--no-verbose (or --noverbose)	21
	--silent	22
	--locale <i>lang</i> (or -l <i>lang</i>)	22
	--log-file <i>filename</i> (or -t <i>filename</i>)	22
	--dir <i>dirname</i> (or -d <i>dirname</i>)	22
	--interpret	23
	--no-interpret	23
	--no-break-space	23
	--break-space	23
	--cite-as-record	23
	--no-cite-as-record	24
	--merge-wrglossary-records	24
	--no-merge-wrglossary-records	24
	--merge-nameref-on <i>rule</i>	24
	--force-cross-resource-refs (or -x)	25
	--no-force-cross-resource-refs	25
	--support-unicode-script	25
	--no-support-unicode-script	26
	--list-known-packages	26

Contents

<code>--packages</code> <i><list></i> (or <code>-p</code> <i><list></i>)	27
<code>--custom-packages</code> <i><list></i>	27
<code>--ignore-packages</code> <i><list></i> (or <code>-k</code> <i><list></i>)	27
<code>--mfirstuc-protection</code> <i><list></i> all (or <code>-u</code> <i><list></i> all)	27
<code>--no-mfirstuc-protection</code>	28
<code>--mfirstuc-math-protection</code>	28
<code>--no-mfirstuc-math-protection</code>	28
<code>--nested-link-check</code> <i><list></i> none	28
<code>--no-nested-link-check</code>	29
<code>--shortcuts</code> <i><value></i>	29
<code>--map-format</code> <i><map:value list></i> (or <code>-m</code> <i><map:value list></i>)	29
<code>--group</code> (or <code>-g</code>)	30
<code>--no-group</code>	33
<code>--tex-encoding</code> <i><name></i>	34
<code>--no-expand-fields</code>	34
<code>--expand-fields</code>	35
<code>--trim-fields</code>	35
<code>--no-trim-fields</code>	35
<code>--record-count</code> (or <code>-c</code>)	35
<code>--no-record-count</code>	36
<code>--record-count-unit</code> (or <code>-n</code>)	36
<code>--no-record-count-unit</code>	36
4 .bib Format	37
4.1 Encoding	37
4.2 Comments	38
4.3 Fields	38
4.4 Standard Entry Types	44
@string	44
@preamble	44
4.5 Single Entry Types	49
@entry	49
@symbol	50
@number	50
@index	51
@indexplural	52
@abbreviation	53
@acronym	54
@contributor	54
4.6 Dual Entry Types	55
@dualentry	62
@dualindexentry	63
@dualindexabbreviation	65
@dualindexsymbol	66

	@dualindexnumber	69
	@dualabbreviationentry	69
	@dualentryabbreviation	70
	@dualsymbol	70
	@dualnumber	71
	@dualabbreviation	72
	@dualacronym	76
4.7	Tertiary Entry Types	76
	@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry	77
4.8	Multi-Entry Types	78
	@bibtexentry	78
5	Resource File Options	82
5.1	General Options	85
	charset=<encoding-name>	85
	interpret-preamble=<boolean>	86
	write-preamble=<boolean>	86
	set-widest=<boolean>	86
	entry-type-aliases=<key=value list>	87
	action=<value>	89
5.2	Selection Options	91
	src=<list>	91
	selection=<value>	92
	match=<key=value list>	94
	match-op=<value>	95
	not-match=<key=value list>	96
	match-action=<value>	96
	limit=<number>	96
5.3	Hierarchical Options	97
	save-child-count=<boolean>	97
	flatten=<boolean>	98
	flatten-lonely=<value>	98
	flatten-lonely-rule=<value>	105
	strip-missing-parents=<boolean>	106
	missing-parents=<value>	106
	missing-parent-category=<value>	107
5.4	Master Documents	108
	master=<name>	110
	master-resources=<list>	111
5.5	Field and Label Options	112
	Label Options	112
	interpret-label-fields=<boolean>	112
	labelify=<list>	112
	labelify-list=<list>	113

Contents

labelify-replace= <i><list></i>	114
label-prefix= <i><tag></i>	115
duplicate-label-suffix= <i><value></i>	116
record-label-prefix= <i><tag></i>	117
cs-label-prefix= <i><tag></i>	117
ext-prefixes= <i><list></i>	118
save-original-id= <i><value></i>	120
dependency-fields= <i><list></i>	120
Assignments	123
group= <i><label></i>	123
category= <i><value></i>	123
type= <i><value></i>	125
trigger-type= <i><type></i>	125
abbreviation-name-fallback= <i><field></i>	126
ignore-fields= <i><list></i>	126
field-aliases= <i><key=value list></i>	126
replicate-fields= <i><key=value list></i>	127
replicate-override= <i><{boolean}></i>	129
counter= <i><value></i>	129
copy-action-group-field= <i><value></i>	129
copy-alias-to-see= <i><boolean></i>	129
Field Adjustments	130
post-description-dot= <i><value></i>	130
strip-trailing-nopost= <i><boolean></i>	130
check-end-punctuation= <i><list></i>	131
sort-label-list= <i><list></i>	132
bibtex-contributor-fields= <i><list></i>	138
contributor-order= <i><value></i>	139
date-time-fields= <i><list></i>	140
date-fields= <i><list></i>	140
time-fields= <i><list></i>	140
date-time-field-format= <i><value></i>	140
date-field-format= <i><value></i>	141
time-field-format= <i><value></i>	141
date-time-field-locale= <i><value></i>	141
date-field-locale= <i><value></i>	141
time-field-locale= <i><value></i>	141
Case-Changing	141
word-boundaries= <i><list></i>	149
short-case-change= <i><value></i>	150
long-case-change= <i><value></i>	150
name-case-change= <i><value></i>	150
description-case-change= <i><value></i>	150

Contents

5.6	Plurals	150
	short-plural-suffix= <i><value></i>	152
	dual-short-plural-suffix= <i><value></i>	152
5.7	Location List Options	152
	save-locations= <i><boolean></i>	156
	save-loclist= <i><boolean></i>	156
	save-primary-locations= <i><value></i>	156
	primary-location-formats= <i><list></i>	157
	min-loc-range= <i><value></i>	162
	max-loc-diff= <i><value></i>	164
	suffixF= <i><value></i>	165
	suffixFF= <i><value></i>	165
	see= <i><value></i>	165
	seealso= <i><value></i>	166
	alias= <i><value></i>	166
	alias-loc= <i><value></i>	166
	loc-prefix= <i><value></i>	166
	loc-suffix= <i><value></i>	168
	loc-counters= <i><list></i>	168
	save-index-counter= <i><value></i>	170
5.8	Supplemental Locations	172
	supplemental-locations= <i><basename></i>	174
	supplemental-selection= <i><value></i>	176
	supplemental-category= <i><value></i>	177
5.9	Sorting	178
	sort= <i><value></i>	179
	No Sort	179
	Alphabet	182
	Letter (Non Locale)	183
	Letter-Number	184
	Numerical	188
	Date-Time	189
	shuffle= <i><seed></i>	190
	sort-field= <i><field></i>	190
	missing-sort-fallback= <i><field></i>	191
	abbreviation-sort-fallback= <i><field></i>	192
	symbol-sort-fallback= <i><field></i>	192
	bibtexentry-sort-fallback= <i><field></i>	192
	trim-sort= <i><boolean></i>	192
	sort-replace= <i><list></i>	193
	sort-rule= <i><value></i>	193
	break-at= <i><option></i>	196
	break-marker= <i><marker></i>	197
	sort-number-pad= <i><number></i>	197

Contents

sort-pad-plus= <i><marker></i>	197
sort-pad-minus= <i><marker></i>	197
identical-sort-action= <i><value></i>	198
sort-suffix= <i><value></i>	198
sort-suffix-marker= <i><value></i>	203
strength= <i><value></i>	203
decomposition= <i><value></i>	204
letter-number-rule= <i><value></i>	204
letter-number-punc-rule= <i><value></i>	205
numeric-sort-pattern= <i><value></i>	207
numeric-locale= <i><value></i>	207
date-sort-locale= <i><value></i>	207
date-sort-format= <i><value></i>	207
group-formation= <i><value></i>	209
5.10 Secondary Glossary	210
secondary= <i><value></i>	210
secondary-missing-sort-fallback= <i><field></i>	212
secondary-trim-sort= <i><boolean></i>	213
secondary-sort-replace= <i><list></i>	213
secondary-sort-rule= <i><value></i>	213
secondary-break-at= <i><value></i>	213
secondary-break-marker= <i><marker></i>	213
secondary-sort-number-pad= <i><number></i>	213
secondary-sort-pad-plus= <i><marker></i>	213
secondary-sort-pad-minus= <i><marker></i>	213
secondary-identical-sort-action= <i><value></i>	213
secondary-sort-suffix= <i><value></i>	213
secondary-sort-suffix-marker= <i><value></i>	213
secondary-strength= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-decomposition= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-letter-number-rule= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-letter-number-punc-rule= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-numeric-sort-pattern= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-numeric-locale= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-date-sort-locale= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-date-sort-format= <i><value></i>	214
secondary-group-formation= <i><value></i>	214
5.11 Dual Entries	214
General Dual Settings	214
dual-prefix= <i><value></i>	214
primary-dual-dependency= <i><boolean></i>	215
combine-dual-locations= <i><value></i>	215
Dual Fields	217
dual-type= <i><value></i>	217

Contents

dual-category= <i><value></i>	217
dual-counter= <i><value></i>	218
dual-short-case-change= <i><value></i>	218
dual-long-case-change= <i><value></i>	218
dual-field= <i><value></i>	218
dual-date-time-field-format= <i><value></i>	219
dual-date-field-format= <i><value></i>	219
dual-time-field-format= <i><value></i>	219
dual-date-time-field-locale= <i><value></i>	219
dual-date-field-locale= <i><value></i>	219
date-time-field-locale= <i><value></i>	220
Dual Sorting	220
dual-sort= <i><value></i>	220
dual-sort-field= <i><field></i>	220
dual-missing-sort-fallback= <i><field></i>	220
dual-trim-sort= <i><boolean></i>	221
dual-sort-replace= <i><list></i>	221
dual-sort-rule= <i><value></i>	221
dual-break-at= <i><value></i>	221
dual-break-marker= <i><marker></i>	221
dual-sort-number-pad= <i><number></i>	221
dual-sort-pad-plus= <i><marker></i>	221
dual-sort-pad-minus= <i><marker></i>	221
dual-identical-sort-action= <i><value></i>	221
dual-sort-suffix= <i><value></i>	221
dual-sort-suffix-marker= <i><value></i>	221
dual-strength= <i><value></i>	221
dual-decomposition= <i><value></i>	222
dual-letter-number-rule= <i><value></i>	222
dual-letter-number-punc-rule= <i><value></i>	222
dual-numeric-sort-pattern= <i><value></i>	222
dual-numeric-locale= <i><value></i>	222
dual-date-sort-locale= <i><value></i>	222
dual-date-sort-format= <i><value></i>	222
dual-group-formation= <i><value></i>	222
Dual Mappings	222
dual-entry-map={{ <i><list1></i> },{ <i><list2></i> }}	222
dual-abbrev-map={{ <i><list1></i> },{ <i><list2></i> }}	223
dual-abbreventry-map={{ <i><list1></i> },{ <i><list2></i> }}	224
dual-symbol-map={{ <i><list1></i> },{ <i><list2></i> }}	224
dual-indexentry-map={{ <i><list1></i> },{ <i><list2></i> }}	224
dual-indexsymbol-map={{ <i><list1></i> },{ <i><list2></i> }}	225
dual-indexabbrev-map={{ <i><list1></i> },{ <i><list2></i> }}	225

Dual Back-Links	225
dual-entry-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	225
dual-abbrev-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	226
dual-symbol-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	226
dual-abbreventry-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	226
dual-entryabbrev-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	227
dual-indexentry-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	227
dual-indexsymbol-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	227
dual-indexabbrev-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	227
dual-backlink={\langle boolean\rangle}	227
5.12 Tertiary Entries	227
tertiary-prefix={\langle value\rangle}	227
tertiary-type={\langle value\rangle}	228
tertiary-category={\langle value\rangle}	228
6 Provided Commands	229
6.1 Entry Definitions	229
\bibglnewsentry	229
\bibglnewsymbol	230
\bibglnewsnumber	230
\bibglnewsindex	231
\bibglnewsindexplural	231
\bibglnewsabbreviation	231
\bibglnewsacronym	232
\bibglnewsdualentry	232
\bibglnewsdualindexentry	232
\bibglnewsdualindexentrysecondary	232
\bibglnewsdualindexsymbol	233
\bibglnewsdualindexsymbolsecondary	233
\bibglnewsdualindexnumber	233
\bibglnewsdualindexnumbersecondary	233
\bibglnewsdualindexabbreviation	234
\bibglnewsdualindexabbreviationsecondary	234
\bibglnewsdualabbreviationentry	235
\bibglnewsdualabbreviationentrysecondary	235
\bibglnewsdualentryabbreviation	235
\bibglnewsdualentryabbreviationsecondary	236
\bibglnewsdualsymbol	236
\bibglnewsdualnumber	236
\bibglnewsdualabbreviation	237
\bibglnewsdualacronym	237
\bibglnewsdualtertiaryindexabbreviationentry	237
\bibglnewsdualtertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary	238
\bibglnewsdualbibtexentry	238

Contents

	<code>\biblsnewcontributor</code>	238
6.2	Location Lists and Cross-References	239
	<code>\biblsseesep</code>	239
	<code>\biblsseealsosep</code>	239
	<code>\bibglaliassep</code>	239
	<code>\biblsusesee</code>	239
	<code>\biblsuseseealso</code>	240
	<code>\biblsusealias</code>	240
	<code>\bibglsdelimN</code>	240
	<code>\bibglslastDelimN</code>	240
	<code>\bibglspassim</code>	240
	<code>\bibglspassimname</code>	241
	<code>\bibglsrange</code>	241
	<code>\bibglspartner</code>	241
	<code>\bibglspostlocprefix</code>	242
	<code>\bibglslocprefix</code>	242
	<code>\bibglspagename</code>	243
	<code>\bibglspagesname</code>	243
	<code>\bibglslocsuffix</code>	243
	<code>\bibglspriority</code>	244
	<code>\bibglslocationgroup</code>	244
	<code>\bibglslocationgroupsep</code>	245
	<code>\bibglssupplemental</code>	245
	<code>\bibglssupplementalsublist</code>	246
	<code>\bibglssupplementalsep</code>	246
	<code>\bibglssupplementalsubsep</code>	246
	<code>\bibglshrefchar</code>	246
	<code>\bibglshrefunicode</code>	247
6.3	Letter Groups	247
	<code>\bibglsetlastgrouptitle</code>	249
	<code>\bibglsetlettergrouptitle</code>	249
	<code>\bibglsllettergroup</code>	250
	<code>\bibglsllettergrouptitle</code>	250
	<code>\bibglsetothergrouptitle</code>	252
	<code>\bibglsothergroup</code>	252
	<code>\bibglsothergrouptitle</code>	253
	<code>\bibglsetemptygrouptitle</code>	253
	<code>\bibglsemptygroup</code>	253
	<code>\bibglsemptygrouptitle</code>	253
	<code>\bibglsetnumbergrouptitle</code>	253
	<code>\bibglslnumbergroup</code>	254
	<code>\bibglslnumbergrouptitle</code>	254
	<code>\bibglsetdatetimegrouptitle</code>	254
	<code>\bibglslatetimegroup</code>	254

Contents

	<code>\bibglmdatetimegrouptitle</code>	255
	<code>\bibglssetdategrouptitle</code>	255
	<code>\bibglsgdategroup</code>	255
	<code>\bibglsgdategrouptitle</code>	255
	<code>\bibglssettimegrouptitle</code>	256
	<code>\bibglstimegroup</code>	256
	<code>\bibglstimegrouptitle</code>	256
	<code>\bibglssetunicodegrouptitle</code>	256
	<code>\bibglsgunicodegroup</code>	256
	<code>\bibglsgunicodegrouptitle</code>	257
	<code>\bibglshypergroup</code>	258
6.4	Flattened Entries	258
	<code>\bibglsgflattenedhomograph</code>	258
	<code>\bibglsgflattenedchildpresort</code>	260
	<code>\bibglsgflattenedchildpostsort</code>	260
6.5	Other	260
	<code>\bibglshyperlink</code>	260
	<code>\bibglsgsetwidest</code>	260
	<code>\bibglsgsetwidestfortype</code>	261
	<code>\bibglsgsetwidestfallback</code>	261
	<code>\bibglsgsetwidestfortypefallback</code>	262
	<code>\bibglsgsetwidesttoplevelfallback</code>	262
	<code>\bibglsgsetwidesttoplevelfortypefallback</code>	262
	<code>\bibglsgcontributorlist</code>	262
	<code>\bibglsgcontributor</code>	263
	<code>\bibglsgprimaryprefixlabel</code>	263
	<code>\bibglsgdualprefixlabel</code>	263
	<code>\bibglsgtertiaryprefixlabel</code>	264
	<code>\bibglsgexternalprefixlabel</code>	264
	<code>\bibglsghashchar</code>	264
	<code>\bibglsgunderscorechar</code>	264
	<code>\bibglsgdollarchar</code>	264
	<code>\bibglsgampersandchar</code>	264
	<code>\bibglsgcircumchar</code>	265
	<code>\bibglsgsuppercase</code>	265
	<code>\bibglsglowercase</code>	265
	<code>\bibglsgtitlecase</code>	265
	<code>\bibglsgfirstuc</code>	265
7	Converting Existing .tex to .bib	266
7.1	<code>\glsgexpandfields</code>	267
7.2	<code>\glsgnoexpandfields</code>	268
7.3	<code>\glsgsetexpandfield</code>	268
7.4	<code>\glsgsetnoexpandfield</code>	268

Contents

7.5	<code>\newglossaryentry</code>	268
7.6	<code>\provideglossaryentry</code>	269
7.7	<code>\longnewglossaryentry</code>	269
7.8	<code>\longprovideglossaryentry</code>	269
7.9	<code>\newterm</code>	269
7.10	<code>\newabbreviation</code>	271
7.11	<code>\newacronym</code>	271
7.12	<code>\glstrnewsymbol</code>	271
7.13	<code>\glstrnewnumber</code>	272
7.14	<code>\newdualentry</code>	272
8	Examples	275
	<code>no-interpret-preamble.bib</code>	275
	<code>interpret-preamble.bib</code>	276
	<code>interpret-preamble2.bib</code>	276
	<code>constants.bib</code>	277
	<code>chemicalformula.bib</code>	280
	<code>bacteria.bib</code>	284
	<code>baseunits.bib</code>	286
	<code>derivedunits.bib</code>	288
	<code>people.bib</code>	289
	<code>books.bib</code>	295
	<code>films.bib</code>	298
	<code>citations.bib</code>	304
	<code>mathgreek.bib</code>	305
	<code>bigmathsymbols.bib</code>	310
	<code>mathsrelations.bib</code>	314
	<code>binaryoperators.bib</code>	316
	<code>unaryoperators.bib</code>	317
	<code>mathsobjects.bib</code>	318
	<code>miscsymbols.bib</code>	322
	<code>markuplanguages.bib</code>	326
	<code>usergroups.bib</code>	328
	<code>animals.bib</code>	333
	<code>minerals.bib</code>	335
	<code>vegetables.bib</code>	337
	<code>terms.bib</code>	339
	<code>sample-constants.tex</code>	340
	<code>sample-chemical.tex</code>	344
	<code>sample-bacteria.tex</code>	348
	<code>sample-units1.tex</code>	352
	<code>sample-units2.tex</code>	354
	<code>sample-units3.tex</code>	357
	<code>sample-media.tex</code>	361

Contents

sample-people.tex	365
sample-authors.tex	373
sample-citations.tex	377
sample-msymbols.tex	383
sample-maths.tex	384
sample-textsymbols.tex	389
sample-markuplanguages.tex	392
sample-usergroups.tex	396
sample-multi1.tex	404
sample-multi2.tex	415
Package Option Summary	441
Command Summary	444
Bibliography	483
Index	485

List of Tables

2.1	Glossary-Related Commands Implemented by the bib2gls Interpreter . . .	15
4.1	Fields Provided by glossaries-extra	40
4.2	Fields Provided by bib2gls	40
4.3	Fields Provided by glossaries-prefix	41
4.4	Fields Provided by glossaries-accsupp	41
4.5	Fields Set by bib2gls	42
4.6	Internal Fields Set by glossaries or glossaries-extra or bib2gls	43
5.1	Summary of Available Sort Options: No Actual Sorting	180
5.2	Summary of Available Sort Options: Alphabet	180
5.3	Summary of Available Sort Options: Letter (Non-Locale)	180
5.4	Summary of Available Sort Options: Letter-Number	180
5.5	Summary of Available Sort Options: Numerical	181
5.6	Summary of Available Sort Options: Date-Time	181

List of Figures

5.1	Regular letter comparison vs letter-number comparison	185
8.1	sample-constants.pdf	345
8.2	sample-chemical.pdf	347
8.3	sample-bacteria.pdf	351
8.4	sample-units1.pdf	355
8.5	sample-units2.pdf	358
8.6	sample-units3.pdf	361
8.7	sample-media.pdf	366
8.8	sample-people.pdf	374
8.9	sample-authors.pdf	378
8.10	sample-citations.pdf	382
8.11	sample-msymbols.pdf	385
8.12	sample-maths.pdf	390
8.13	sample-textsymbols.pdf	393
8.14	sample-markuplanguages.pdf	397
8.15	sample-usergroups.pdf	405
8.16	sample-multi1.pdf (pages 1 to 4)	416
8.17	sample-multi1.pdf (pages 5 to 8)	417
8.18	sample-multi2.pdf (pages 1 to 4)	438
8.19	sample-multi2.pdf (pages 5 to 8)	439
8.20	sample-multi2.pdf (pages 9 and 12)	440

1 Introduction

If you have extensively used the `glossaries` [14] or `glossaries-extra` [13] package, you may have found yourself creating a large `.tex` file containing many definitions that you frequently use in documents. This file can then simply be loaded using `\input` or `\loadglsentries`, but a large file like this can be difficult to maintain and if the document only actually uses a small proportion of those entries, the document build is unnecessarily slow due to the time and resources taken on defining the unwanted entries.

The aim of `bib2gls` is to allow the entries to be stored in a `.bib` file, which can be maintained using a reference system such as JabRef. The document build process can now be analogous to that used with `bibtex` (or `biber`), where only those entries that have been recorded in the document (and possibly their dependent entries) will be extracted from the `.bib` file. Since `bib2gls` can also perform hierarchical sorting and can collate location lists, it doubles as an indexing application, which means that the `makeglossaries` step can be skipped. Note that `bib2gls` doesn't warn you if an entry that's referenced in the document doesn't exist in any of the supplied `.bib` files, but instead relies on the `glossaries-extra` package to generate the warning. So at the end of the document build check the `.log` file for warnings.

You can't use `\glsaddall` with `bib2gls` as that command works by iterating over all defined entries and calling `\glsadd{<label>}`. On the first \LaTeX run there are no entries defined, so `\glsaddall` does nothing. If you want to select all entries, just use `selection={all}` instead (which has the advantage over `\glsaddall` in that it doesn't create a redundant location for each entry).

Note that `bib2gls` requires the extension package `glossaries-extra` and can't be used with just the base `glossaries` package, since it requires some of the extension commands. See the `glossaries-extra` user manual [13] for information on the differences between the basic package and the extended package, as some of the default settings are different.

Since the information used by `bib2gls` is written to the `.aux` file, it's not possible to run `bib2gls` through \TeX 's shell escape while the `.aux` file is open for write access. (The `.aux` file is closed *after* the end document hook, so it can't be deferred with `\AtEndDocument`.) This means that if you really want to run `bib2gls` through `\write18` it must be done in the preamble with `\immediate`. For example:

```
\immediate\write18{bib2gls \jobname}
```

As from version 1.14 of `glossaries-extra`, this can be done automatically with the `automake` option if the `.aux` file exists. (Remember that this will require the shell escape to be enabled.)

1.1 Example Use

The glossary entries are stored in a `.bib` file. For example, the file `entries.bib` might contain:

```
@entry{bird,
  name={bird},
  description = {feathered animal}
}
```

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short="html",
  long={hypertext markup language}
}
```

```
@symbol{v,
  name={ $\vec{v}$ },
  text={ $\vec{v}$ },
  description={a vector}
}
```

```
@index{goose,plural="geese"}
```

Here's an example document that uses this data:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  sort={en-GB}% sort according to 'en-GB' locale
]

\begin{document}
\Gls{bird} and \gls{goose}.
Symbol:  $\gls{v}$ .
Abbreviation: \gls{html}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

If this document is called `myDoc.tex`, the build process is:

```
pdflatex myDoc
bib2gls myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
```

1 Introduction

(This manual assumes pdf \LaTeX for simplicity. Replace with latex, xelatex or lualatex as appropriate.) If you want letter groups (either headed, with styles like indexgroup, or just a blank line separator with `nogroupskip={false}`) then you need to use the `--group` switch:

```
pdf $\LaTeX$  myDoc
bib2gls --group myDoc
pdf $\LaTeX$  myDoc
```

You can have multiple instances of `\GlsXtrLoadResources`. For example:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,index,abbreviations,symbols]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  sort={en-GB},% sort according to 'en-GB' locale
  match={entrytype={entry}},% only select @entry
  type={main}% put these entries in the 'main' glossary
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  sort={en-GB},% sort according to 'en-GB' locale
  match={entrytype={abbreviation}},% only select @abbreviation
  type={abbreviations}% put these in the 'abbreviations' glossary
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  sort={letter-case},% case-sensitive letter sort
  match={entrytype={symbol}},% only select @symbol
  type={symbols}% put these entries in the 'symbols' glossary
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  sort={en-GB},% sort according to 'en-GB' locale
  match={entrytype={index}},% only select @index
  type={index}% put these entries in the 'index' glossary
]

\begin{document}
\Gls{bird} and \gls{goose}.
Symbol:  $\$ \gls{v} \$$ . Abbreviation:  $\backslash \gls{html}$ .
```

```
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

There are more examples provided in chapter 8.

Note that there’s no need to call `xindy` or `makeindex` since `bib2gls` automatically sorts the entries and collates the locations after selecting the required entries from the `.bib` file and before writing the temporary file that’s input with `\glsxtrresourcefile` (or the more convenient shortcut `\GlsXtrLoadResources`).¹ This means the entries are already defined in the correct order, and only those entries that are required in the document are defined, so `\printunsrtglossary` (or `\printunsrtglossaries`) may be used. (The “unsrt” part of the command name indicates that all defined entries should be listed in the order of definition from `glossaries-extra`’s point of view, see the supplementary document “`glossaries-extra` and `bib2gls`: An Introductory Guide” (`bib2gls-begin.pdf`) for further details.)

If you don’t provide a value with the `record` option, then `record={only}` is assumed. This saves the same indexing information that’s used with the `\makeglossaries` and `\makenoidxglossaries` methods (described in the main `glossaries` user manual [14]). As from `glossaries-extra` version 1.37, you can instead use `record={nameref}`, which saves some extra information for each location that’s not available for the other indexing methods. See `--merge-nameref-on` for further details.

If you additionally want to use an indexing application, such as `xindy`, you need the package option `record={alsoindex}` and use `\makeglossaries` and `\printglossary` (or the iterative `\printglossaries`) as usual. This requires a more complicated build process:

```
pdflatex myDoc
bib2gls myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
makeglossaries myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
```

(The entries aren’t defined until the second \LaTeX run, so the indexing files required by `xindy` or `makeindex` can’t be created until then.) In this case, `bib2gls` is simply being used to fetch the entry definitions from one or more `.bib` files, with the sorting and collating performed by the other indexing application (so the resource option list would need `sort={none}` and `save-locations={false}`). In general, it’s best to avoid this hybrid method unless you have a particular set of `xindy` rules that can’t be replicated with `bib2gls`.

1.2 Defining a New Glossary

Some of the examples in this manual use `\newglossary*` to define a new glossary type and some use `\newignoredglossary` or `\newignoredglossary*`. Why the starred forms and why define an ignored glossary?

The base `glossaries` package was originally designed to work with `makeindex`. Support for `xindy` was later added, but both require three files per glossary type: the transcript file

¹This document will mostly use the more convenient `\GlsXtrLoadResources`.

(created by the indexing application), the file written by \LaTeX (and input by the indexing application) and the file input by \LaTeX (and written by the indexing application). So when a new glossary is defined with `\newglossary`, this not only defines internal control sequences that store the list of entry labels associated with that glossary, the title and the entry format but also has to define internal control sequences that store the three file extensions. The starred form `\newglossary*` is just a shortcut that forms the extensions from the glossary label. For the purposes of `bib2gls`, this is simpler than the unstarred version since the extensions are now irrelevant as they are only applicable to `makeindex` and `xindy`. (Unless, of course, you are using a hybrid method with `record={alsoindex}`.)

Since some users wanted the ability to define entries that were common enough to not be worth including in any glossary lists, the concept of an ignored glossary was introduced, defined with `\newignoredglossary`. This only requires an internal control sequence to store the list of entry labels associated with that glossary² and the associated internal command that governs the way that commands like `\gls` are displayed for that glossary type. Since this type of glossary has no associated files, it can't be used with `\printglossary` and therefore isn't included in the list of glossary labels that's iterated over by commands like `\printglossaries`. Since there's no glossary list (and therefore no targets), `\newignoredglossary` additionally disables hyperlinks for that glossary type, but it doesn't disable indexing. The indexing macro is still called, but because there's no associated file to write to, it has no effect. With `bib2gls`, the indexing is written to the `.aux` file and so does have an effect.

Although ignored glossaries can't be used with `\printglossary`, they can be used with `\printunsrtglossary`, which is designed to work without any indexing, but you need to explicitly set the title in the optional argument to override the default. The ignored glossaries still can't be used in `\printunsrtglossaries`, since they're not included in the list that this command iterates over.

So `\newignoredglossary` is useful with `bib2gls` if you're happy to use `\printunsrtglossary` as it reduces the overall number of internal control sequences. Since there is now the possibility of targets (created within `\printunsrtglossary`), it's useful to have an ignored glossary that doesn't suppress the hyperlinks, which can be obtained with the starred form `\newignoredglossary*` provided by `glossaries-extra`.

Some resource options, such as `master`, `secondary` and `trigger-type`, need to ensure that a required glossary is defined. In this case, `bib2gls` uses `\provideignoredglossary*` in the `.gls.tex` file. If you haven't already defined that glossary in the document with `\newglossary*`, you'll need to set the title in the optional argument of `\printunsrtglossary` if you don't want the default. The glossary won't be defined on the first run (if the definition is only provided in the `.gls.tex` file) but `\printunsrtglossary` will just give a warning if the type is undefined so it won't interrupt the document build.

²All entries must be assigned to a glossary. If you don't use the `type` field the default is used.

1.3 Resource Sets

Each instance of `\glxtrresourcefile` or `\GlsXtrLoadResources` in the document represents a resource set. Each resource set has one or more associated `.bib` files that provides the data for that set. Command line switches (chapter 3) are applied to all resource sets. Resource options (chapter 5) are only applied to that specific resource set. Each resource set is processed in stages:

Stage 1 (Initialisation) Occurs after the `.aux` file has been read, this stage parses the resource option list and ensures options are valid and don't cause a conflict. The transcript will show the message

```
Initialising resource <resource-name>
```

at this point.

Stage 2 (Parsing) All the `.bib` files associated with the resource set are parsed. Entry aliases (identified by `entry-type-aliases`) are performed. Preamble information (provided by `@preamble`) is saved but is not interpreted at this stage. The transcript will show the message

```
Parsing bib files for resource <resource-name>
```

at this point.

Stage 3 (Processing Entries) The transcript will show the message

```
Processing resource <resource-name>
```

at this point. For each entry that was found in the corresponding set of `.bib` files:

- Records are transferred to aliases if required (`alias-loc`).
- Field checks and modifications are performed:
 - field aliases are performed (`field-aliases`);
 - ignored fields (identified by `ignore-fields`) are removed;
 - case-changes (for example, `short-case-change`) are performed, except for the `name` field;
 - suffixes are appended if required (for example, with `short-plural-suffix`);
 - field replications are made (`replicate-fields`), and any of the above case-change or suffixes required on the replicated fields are performed;
 - the `group` field is assigned if `group` is set;
 - any variables (identified by `@string`) are expanded (if not already done in any of the previous steps);

1 Introduction

- any fields that have been identified by `bibtex-contributor-fields` are converted;
 - any fields that must be converted into a label form (`labelify` or `labelify -list`) are processed;
 - any fields identified by `dependency-fields` are parsed for dependent entries;
 - any fields whose value must be a label are interpreted if `interpret-label-fields` is set;
 - the `parent` field is adjusted according to the label prefix settings (`label-prefix` etc);
 - `\makefirstuc` protection is applied according to `--mfirstuc-protection` and `--mfirstuc-math-protection`;
 - fields are parsed for commands like `\gls` or `\gls hyperlink` and also checked for nested links if `--nested-link-check` is set;
 - the `description` field is adjusted according to `strip-trailing-nopost`;
 - end punctuation is checked according to `check-end-punctuation`;
 - `name` case-change is performed if `name-case-change` is set.
- The dual version (if appropriate) is created.
 - Records are added to the entry's location list (or transferred to the dual/primary according to `combine-dual-locations`).
 - The `type`, `category` and `counter` fields are set according to `type`, `dual-type`, `category`, `dual-category`, `counter` and `dual-counter`.
 - Filtering is applied (according to options like `match` but not `selection` or `limit`).
 - Required fields are checked for existence.
 - Dependencies are registered (if `selection={recorded and deps}` or `selection={recorded and deps and see}`).
 - Any fields that have been identified by `date-time-fields`, `date-fields` or `time-fields` are converted.

If `selection={recorded and deps and see}` then any recorded entries that have been cross-referenced by an unrecorded entry, will register a dependency with the unrecorded entry. Finally, supplemental records are added to entries.

Stage 4 (Selection, Sorting, Writing) Entries are selected from the list according to the `selection` setting, sorting is performed (if required), truncation is applied (if `limit` is set) and the `.gls.tex` file is written. The transcript will show the message

```
Selecting entries for resource <resource-name>
```

```
or (if master)
```

Processing master `<resource-name>`

at this point.

Parent entries must always be in the same resource set as their child entries. (They may be defined in different `.bib` files as long as all those `.bib` files are listed in the same `src`.) Other forms of dependencies may be in a different resource set under certain circumstances. These types of dependencies are instances of commands such as `\gls` being found (for example, in the `description` field), or the cross-reference fields (`see`, `seealso` or `alias` or fields identified with `dependency-fields`) in recorded entries that reference unrecorded entries.

The “cross-referenced by” dependencies enabled with `selection={recorded and deps and see}` (where an unrecorded entry references a recorded entry through the cross-reference fields) *aren't supported* across resource sets (even with `--force-cross-resource-refs`).

A cross-resource reference is a reference from a recorded entry provided in one resource set to an unrecorded entry in another resource set. Since the contents of each resource set's preamble must be processed before fields can be interpreted and one resource set's preamble may contain definitions that override another, cross-resource references can't be supported if fields containing cross-referencing information need to be interpreted.

The cross-resource reference mode determines whether or not `bib2gls` can support cross-resource references. If enabled, the message

```
Cross-resource references allowed.
```

will be written to the transcript otherwise the message is

```
Cross-resource references disabled.
```

The mode can only be enabled if the following condition is satisfied:

- the interpreter is off (`--no-interpret`), or
- every resource set either doesn't have a preamble (`@preamble`) or has `interpret-preamble={false}` set.

If you know the preamble contents won't cause a problem, you can force the cross-resource references mode on with `--force-cross-resource-refs`.

If you don't use either `selection={recorded and deps}` or `selection={recorded and deps and see}` then the dependencies aren't picked up for that resource set (and so can't be cross-referenced from another resource set).

Trails don't work with cross-resource references. For example, if entry *A* has been recorded and depends on entry *B* that hasn't been recorded, then *B* can be picked up from a different resource set, but if *A* and *B* are in the same resource set and *B* is dependent on *C* which is in a different resource set then *C* won't be picked up if it hasn't been recorded because *B* hasn't been recorded and is in a different resource set.

If the cross-resource reference mode is enabled then stage 3 and stage 4 are processed in separate loops, otherwise they are processed in the same loop.

1.4 Indexing

The dual index entries such as `@dualindexentry` (described in section 4.6) are designed to provide a way of including an entry in a glossary (with a description) and also include the term (without the description) in an index. Additional terms that should only appear in the index can be defined with `@index`. (See, for example, the `sample-multi1.tex` and `sample-multi2.tex` sample files.)

Although `bib2gls` is designed to create indexes as well as glossary lists using the same interface (`\gls` etc), it is possible to have a mixture of `bib2gls` and `\index`. For example:

```
\documentclass{report}

\usepackage{makeidx}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\makeindex
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]

\glssetcategoryattribute{general}{dualindex}{true}
\glssetcategoryattribute{symbol}{dualindex}{true}
\glssetcategoryattribute{abbreviation}{dualindex}{true}

\glssetcategoryattribute{general}{indexname}{hyperbf}
\glssetcategoryattribute{symbol}{indexname}{hyperbf}
\glssetcategoryattribute{abbreviation}{indexname}{hyperbf}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Example}
\gls{bird}, \gls{html}, $\gls{v}$ and \glspl{goose}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\printindex
\end{document}
```

If the document is called `myDoc.tex` then the document build is:

```
pdflatex myDoc
bib2gls myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
makeindex myDoc.idx
pdflatex myDoc
```

This requires an additional `TEX` call between `bib2gls` and `makeindex` since the entries must be defined before they can be indexed (and they can't be defined until `bib2gls` creates the associated `.gls.tex` files).

Note that this method will use the `sort` value obtained by `bib2gls` as the $\langle sort \rangle$ part within $\backslash index\{\langle sort \rangle @ \langle actual \rangle\}$. Be careful if you use `makeindex` as this can result in Unicode characters appearing in the sort value, which `makeindex` doesn't support. The $\langle actual \rangle$ part is given by $\backslash glsentryname\{\langle label \rangle\}$. (You can change the $\langle sort \rangle$ and $\langle actual \rangle$ parts by redefining $\backslash glsextrautoindexassignsort$ and $\backslash glsextrautoindexentry$. See the `glossaries-extra` manual for further details.)

1.5 Security

\TeX Live come with security settings `openin_any` and `openout_any` that, respectively, govern read and write file access (in addition to the operating system's file permissions). `bib2gls` uses `kpsewhich` to determine these values and honours them. `MikTeX` doesn't use these settings, so if these values are unset, `bib2gls` will default to `a` (any) for `openin_any` and `p` (paranoid) for `openout_any`.

The only external processes that are run by `bib2gls` are calls to `kpsewhich` to check the security settings and locate files on \TeX 's path. These are started with Java's `ProcessBuilder` class so there should be no issues with spaces or shell special characters in the argument. The `--debug` switch will write the process call in the transcript file and will delimit the argument in the log with single quote characters for convenience, but the process isn't actually called in that way.

`bib2gls` creates files with the extension `.glstex`, which are input by $\backslash glsxtrresourcefile$ (and therefore by the shortcut $\backslash GlsXtrLoadResources$). This extension is fixed and is imposed by both `bib2gls` and $\backslash glsxtrresourcefile$. `bib2gls` also creates a transcript file with the default extension `.glg`. This may be overridden by the `--log-file` switch, but `bib2gls` always forbids write access to any file with the following extensions: `.tex`, `.ltx`, `.sty`, `.cls`, `.bib`, `.dtx`, `.ins`, `.def` and `.ldf`.

1.6 Localisation

The messages produced by `bib2gls` are fetched from a resource file called `bib2gls- $\langle lang \rangle$.xml`, where $\langle lang \rangle$ is a valid Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) language tag.

The appropriate file is searched for in the following order, where $\langle locale \rangle$ is the operating system's locale or the value supplied by the `--locale` switch:

1. $\langle lang \rangle$ exactly matches $\langle locale \rangle$. For example, my locale is `en-GB`, so `bib2gls` will first search for `bib2gls-en-GB.xml`. This file doesn't exist, so it will try again.
2. If $\langle locale \rangle$ has an associated script, the next try is with $\langle lang \rangle$ set to $\langle lang code \rangle - \langle script \rangle$ where $\langle lang code \rangle$ is the two letter ISO language code and $\langle script \rangle$ is the script code. For example, if $\langle locale \rangle$ is `sr-RS-Latn` then `bib2gls` will search for `bib2gls-sr-Latn.xml` if `bib2gls-sr-RS-Latn.xml` doesn't exist.
3. The final attempt is with $\langle lang \rangle$ set to just the two letter ISO language code. For example, `bib2gls-sr.xml`.

If there is no match, `bib2gls` will fallback on the English resource file `bib2gls-en.xml`. (Currently only `bib2gls-en.xml` exists as my language skills aren't up to translating it. Any volunteers who want to provide other language resource files would be much appreciated.)

Note that if you use the `loc-prefix={true}` option, the textual labels (“Page” and “Pages” in English) will be taken from the resource file. In the event that the loaded resource file doesn't match the document language, you will have to manually set the correct translation (in English, this would be `loc-prefix={Page,Pages}`). The default definition of `\bibgls-passim` is also obtained from the resource file.

1.7 Conditional Document Build

If you are using a document build method that tries to determine whether or not `bib2gls` should be run, you can find the information by searching the `.aux` file for instances of

```
\glxtr@resource{<options>}{<filename>}
```

Each instance corresponds to an instance of `\glxtrresourcefile` where `<filename>` is the base name of the `.glstex` file that `bib2gls` needs to create for this resource set. If the `<options>` part is missing the `src` option, then `<filename>` also indicates the base name for the `.bib` file.

So the simplest check to determine if `bib2gls` needs to be run is to test if the `.aux` file contains `\glxtr@resource`. For example, with `arara` version 4.0:

```
% arara: bib2gls if found("aux", "glxtr@resource")
```

A sophisticated method could check if `<filename>.glstex` is missing or is older than the document `.tex` file for each instance of `\glxtr@resource` found in the `.aux` file.

It might also be possible, although far more complex, to parse the `<options>` part in each instance of `\glxtr@resource` for `src` and determine if the corresponding `.bib` file or files are newer than the `.tex` file.

It's not possible to determine if the location lists require updating, just as it's not possible to do this for the table of contents, list of figures, list of tables etc. (Or, if it could be implemented, the required code would make the document build far more complicated.)

In general, the basic algorithm is:

1. Run \LaTeX (or PDF \LaTeX etc).
2. If `\glxtr@resource` is found in the `.aux` file then:
 - a) run `bib2gls`;
 - b) run \LaTeX (or PDF \LaTeX etc).
3. If `\@istfilename` is found in the `.aux` file then:
 - a) run `makeglossaries` (or `makeglossaries-lite`);
 - b) run \LaTeX (or PDF \LaTeX etc).

This allows for the `record={alsoindex}` package option. See also “Incorporating `makeglossaries` or `makeglossaries-lite` or `bib2gls` into the document build” [12].

1.8 Manual Installation

If you are unable to install `bib2gls` through your \TeX package manager, you can install manually using the instructions below. Replace $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ with the path to your local or home `TEXMF` tree (for example, `~/texmf`).

Copy the files provided to the following locations:

- $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ /scripts/bib2gls/bib2gls.jar (Java application.)
- $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ /scripts/bib2gls/convertgls2bib.jar (Java application.)
- $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ /scripts/bib2gls/texparserlib.jar (Java library.)
- $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ /scripts/bib2gls/resources/bib2gls-en.xml (English resource file.)
- $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ /doc/support/bib2gls/bib2gls.pdf (This document.)
- $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ /doc/support/bib2gls/bib2gls-begin.pdf (Introductory guide.)

If you use the Unix `man` command, copy the `bib2gls.1` and `convertgls2bib.1` files to the appropriate location.

If you are using a Unix-like system, there are also bash scripts provided called `bib2gls.sh` and `convertgls2bib.sh`. Either copy them directly to somewhere on your path without the `.sh` extension, for example:

```
cp bib2gls.sh ~/bin/bib2gls
cp convertgls2bib.sh ~/bin/convertgls2bib
```

or copy the files to $\langle \text{TEXMF} \rangle$ /scripts/bib2gls/ and create a symbolic link to them called just `bib2gls` and `convertgls2bib` from somewhere on your path, for example:

```
cp bib2gls.sh ~/texmf/scripts/bib2gls/
cp convertgls2bib.sh ~/texmf/scripts/bib2gls/
cd ~/bin
ln -s ~/texmf/scripts/bib2gls/bib2gls.sh bib2gls
ln -s ~/texmf/scripts/bib2gls/convertgls2bib.sh convertgls2bib
```

The `texparserlib.jar` file isn't an application but is a library used by both `bib2gls.jar` and `convertgls2bib.jar`, and so needs to be in the same class path. (The library is in a separate GitHub repository [10] as it's also used by some of my other applications.)

Windows users can create a `.bat` file that works in a similar way to the bash scripts. To do this, create a file called `bib2gls.bat` that contains the following:

```
@ECHO OFF
FOR /F "tokens=*" %%I IN ('kpsewhich --programe=bib2gls --format=texmfscripts
bib2gls.jar') DO SET JARPATH=%%I
java -Djava.locale.providers=CLDR,JRE -jar "%JARPATH%" %*
```

1 Introduction

Save this file to somewhere on your system's path. (Similarly for `convertgls2bib`.) Note that \TeX distributions for Windows usually convert `.jar` files to executables.

You may need to refresh \TeX 's database to ensure that `kpsewhich` can find the `.jar` files. To test that the application has been successfully installed, open a command prompt or terminal and run the following command:

```
bib2gls --version  
convertgls2bib --version
```

This should display the version information for both applications.

2 T_EX Parser Library

The `bib2gls` application requires the T_EX Parser Library `texparserlib.jar`¹ which is used to parse the `.aux` and `.bib` files.

With the `--interpret` switch on (default), this library is also used to interpret the sort value when it contains a backslash `\` or a tilde `~` or a dollar symbol `$` or braces `{ }` (and when the `sort` option is not `unsrt` or `none` or `use`).²

The other cases that the interpreter is used for are:

- when `set-widest` is used to determine the width of the `name` field;
- if `labelify` or `labelify-list` are set the identified field values are first interpreted (if they contain `\ { } ~` or `$`) before being converted to labels;
- if `interpret-label-fields={true}` is set and the `parent`, `category`, `type`, `group`, `seealso` or `alias` fields contain `\` or `{` or `}` the interpreter is used since these fields must be just a label (other special characters aren't checked as they won't expand to characters allowed in a label).

Information in the `.aux` file is parsed for specific commands but the arguments of those commands are not interpreted so, for example, UTF-8 characters that occur in any resource options will need to be detokenized when using `inputenc` to prevent expansion when they are written to the `.aux` file. (In some options, such as `sort-rule`, you can use `\glsheX{hex}` syntax to specify a UTF-8 character.)

The `--no-interpret` switch will turn off the interpreter, but the library will still be used to parse the `.aux` and `.bib` files. Note that the `see` field doesn't use the interpreter with `interpret-label-fields={true}` as it may legitimately contain L^AT_EX code in the optional tag part (such as `\seealsoname`).

The parser has a different concept of expansion to T_EX and will expand some things that aren't expanded by L^AT_EX (such as `\MakeUppercase` and `\char`) and won't expand other commands that would be expanded by L^AT_EX (such as commands defined in terms of complicated internals).

The `texparserlib.jar` library is not a T_EX engine and there are plenty of situations where it doesn't work. In particular, in this case it's being used in a fragmented context

¹<https://github.com/nlct/texparser>

²The other special characters are omitted from the check: the comment symbol `%` is best avoided in field values, the subscript and superscript characters `_` and `^` should either be encapsulated by `$` or by `\ensuremath`, which will be picked up by the check for `$` or `\`, and the other special characters would indicate something too complex for the interpreter to handle.

without knowing most of the packages used by the document or any custom commands or environments provided within the document.

`bib2gls` can detect from the log file a small number of packages that the parser recognises. Note that in some cases there's only very limited support. For example, `siunitx`'s `\si` command is recognised but other commands from that package aren't. See `--list-known-packages` (page 26) for further details.

Since the parser doesn't have a full set of commands available within the `TeX` document, when it encounters `\renewcommand` it won't check if the command is undefined. If the command isn't defined, it will simply behave like `\newcommand`. Whereas with `\providecommand` the parser will only define the command if it's unrecognised.

The interpreter has its own internal implementation of the glossary-related commands listed in table 2.1. These may be overridden by custom packages provided with the `--custom-packages` switch. Note that commands that reference an entry, such as `\glentryname`, aren't guaranteed to work across resource sets and will only be able to look up field values that are known to `bib2gls`. (For example, the `name` field for abbreviations is typically set by the associated abbreviation style, which isn't available to `bib2gls`.)

Table 2.1: Glossary-Related Commands Implemented by the `bib2gls` Interpreter

<code>\bibglsampersandchar</code>	<code>\bibglscircumchar</code>	<code>\bibglscontributor</code>
<code>\bibglscontributorlist</code>	<code>\bibglsdate</code>	<code>\bibglsdatetime</code>
<code>\bibglsdollarchar</code>	<code>\bibglsfirstuc</code>	<code>\bibglshashchar</code>
<code>\bibglshyperlink</code>	<code>\bibglslowercase</code>	<code>\bibglstime</code>
<code>\bibglstitlecase</code>	<code>\bibglsunderscorechar</code>	<code>\bibglsuppercase</code>
<code>\glsbackslash</code>	<code>\glentryfirst</code>	<code>\Glsentryfirst</code>
<code>\glentryfirstplural</code>	<code>\Glsentryfirstplural</code>	<code>\glentrylong</code>
<code>\Glsentrylong</code>	<code>\glentrylongpl</code>	<code>\Glsentrylongpl</code>
<code>\glentryname</code>	<code>\Glsentryname</code>	<code>\glentryplural</code>
<code>\Glsentryplural</code>	<code>\glentryshort</code>	<code>\Glsentryshort</code>
<code>\glentryshortpl</code>	<code>\Glsentryshortpl</code>	<code>\glentrysymbol</code>
<code>\Glsentrysymbol</code>	<code>\glentrysymbolplural</code>	<code>\Glsentrysymbolplural</code>
<code>\glentrytext</code>	<code>\Glsentrytext</code>	<code>\glentrytitlecase</code>
<code>\glentryuseri</code>	<code>\Glsentryuseri</code>	<code>\glentryuserii</code>
<code>\Glsentryuserii</code>	<code>\glentryuseriii</code>	<code>\Glsentryuseriii</code>
<code>\glentryuseriv</code>	<code>\Glsentryuseriv</code>	<code>\glentryuserv</code>
<code>\Glsentryuserv</code>	<code>\glentryuservi</code>	<code>\Glsentryuservi</code>
<code>\glshyperlink</code>	<code>\glstildechar</code>	<code>\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging</code>
<code>\glxtrhiername</code>	<code>\Glsxtrhiername</code>	<code>\GlsXtrhiername</code>
<code>\GLSxtrhiername</code>	<code>\GLSXTRhiername</code>	<code>\glxtrhiernamesep</code>
<code>\glxtrprovidecommand</code>	<code>\glxtrusefield</code>	<code>\Glsxtrusefield</code>
<code>\GLSxtrusefield</code>		

If a command isn't recognised, you can provide it in the `@preamble` and use `\char` to map a symbol to the most appropriate Unicode character. For example, suppose your document

loads a package that provides symbols for use on maps, such as `\Harbour`, `\Battlefield` and `\Stadium`, then you can provide versions of these commands just for `bib2gls`'s use:³

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\Harbour}{\char"2693}
\providecommand{\Battlefield}{\char"2694}
\providecommand{\Stadium}{\char"26BD}"}
```

Since these use `\providecommand`, they won't overwrite the document's version (provided these commands have been defined before `\GlsXtrLoadResources`). Alternatively, you can instruct `bib2gls` to not write the `@preamble` contents to the resource file using `write-preamble={false}`. Now you can either sort these symbols by their Unicode values (`sort={letter-case}`) or provide a custom rule that recognises these Unicode characters (for example, `sort={custom}`, `sort-rule={\glshex2694 < \glshex2693 < \glshex26BD}`).

T_EX syntax can be quite complicated and, in some cases, far too complicated for simple regular expressions. The T_EX parser library performs better than a simple pattern match, and that's the purpose of `texparserlib.jar` and why it's used by `bib2gls` (and by `convertgls2bib`). When the `--debug` mode is on, any warnings or errors triggered by the interpreter will be written to the transcript prefixed with `texparserlib:` (the results of the conversions will be included in the transcript as informational messages prefixed with `texparserlib:` even with `--no-debug`).

For example, suppose the `.bib` file includes:

```
@preamble{
"\providecommand{\mtx}[1]{\boldsymbol{#1}}
\providecommand{\set}[1]{\mathcal{#1}}
\providecommand{\card}[1]{|\set{#1}|}
\providecommand{\imaginary}{i}"}
```

```
@entry{M,
  name={}\$ \mtx{M} \$,
  text={\mtx{M}},
  description={a matrix}
}
```

```
@entry{v,
  name={}\$ \vec{v} \$,
  text={\vec{v}},
  description={a vector}
}
```

```
@entry{S,
  name={}\$ \set{S} \$,
  text={\set{S}},
```

³These commands won't work with PDF_T_EX, as the `\char` values are too large, but they're fine for `bib2gls`.

```

  description={a set}
}

@entry{card,
  name={{}}$\card{S}$},
  text={\card{S}},
  description={the cardinality of the set $\set{S}$}
}

@entry{i,
  name={{}}$\imaginary$,
  text={\imaginary},
  description={square root of minus one ($\sqrt{-1}$)}
}

```

(The empty group at the start of the `name` fields protects against the possibility that the gloss-name category attribute might be set to `firstuc`, which automatically converts the first letter of the name to upper case when displaying the glossary. See also `--mfirstuc-protection` and `--mfirstuc-math-protection`.)

None of these entries have a `sort` field so the `name` is used. If the entry type had been `@symbol` instead, the fallback would be the entry’s label. This means that with `@symbol` instead of `@entry`, and the default `sort-field={sort}`, and with `sort={letter-case}`, these entries will be defined in the order: M, S, card, i, v (since this is the case-sensitive letter order of the labels) whereas with `sort-field={letter-nocase}`, the order will be: card, i, M, S, v (since this is the case-insensitive letter order of the labels).

However, with `@entry`, the fallback field will be taken from the `name` which in the above example contains T_EX code, so `bib2gls` will use `texparselib.jar` to interpret this code. The library has several different ways of writing the processed code. For simplicity, `bib2gls` uses the library’s HTML output and then strips the HTML markup and trims any leading or trailing spaces. The library method that writes non-ASCII characters using “`&x<hex>;`” markup is overridden by `bib2gls` to just write the actual Unicode character, which means that the letter-based sorting options will sort according to the integer value `<hex>` rather than the string “`&x<hex>;`”.

The interpreter is first passed the code provided with `@preamble`:

```

\providecommand{\mtx}[1]{\boldsymbol{#1}}
\providecommand{\set}[1]{\mathcal{#1}}
\providecommand{\card}[1]{|\set{#1}|}
\providecommand{\imaginary}{i}

```

(unless `interpret-preamble={false}`). This means that the provided commands are now recognised by the interpreter when it has to parse the fields later.

In the case of the M entry in the example above, the code that’s passed to the interpreter is:

```

{}$\mtx{M}$

```

The transcript (.glg) file will show the results of the conversion:

```
texparserlib: {}$\mtx{M}$ -> M
```

So the `sort` value for this entry is set to “M”. The font change (caused by math-mode and `\boldsymbol`) has been ignored. The sort value therefore consists of a single Unicode character 0x4D (Latin upper case letter “M”, decimal value 77).

For the `v` entry, the code is:

```
{}$\vec{v}$
```

The transcript shows:

```
texparserlib: {}$\vec{v}$ ->  $\vec{v}$ 
```

So the `sort` value for this entry is set to “ \vec{v} ”, which consists of two Unicode characters 0x76 (Latin lower case letter “v”, decimal value 118) and 0x20D7 (combining right arrow above, decimal value 8407).

For the `set` entry, the code is:

```
{}$\set{S}$
```

The transcript shows:

```
texparserlib: {}$\set{S}$ -> S
```

So the `sort` value for this entry is set to “S” (again ignoring the font change). This consists of a single Unicode character 0x53 (Latin upper case letter “S”, decimal value 83).

For the `card` entry, the code is:

```
{}$\card{S}$
```

The transcript shows:

```
texparserlib: {}$\card{S}$ -> |S|
```

So the `sort` value for this entry is set to “|S|” (the | characters from the definition of `\card` provided in `@preamble` have been included, but the font change has been discarded). In this case the sort value consists of three Unicode characters 0x7C (vertical line, decimal value 124), 0x53 (Latin upper case letter “S”, decimal value 83) and 0x7C again. If `interpret-preamble={false}` had been used, `\card` wouldn’t be recognised and would be discarded leaving just “S” as the sort value.

For the `i` entry, the code is:

```
{}$\imaginary$
```

The transcript shows:

```
texparserlib: {}$\imaginary$ -> i
```

So the `sort` value for this entry is set to “`i`”. If `interpret-preamble={false}` had been used, `\imaginary` wouldn’t be recognised and would be discarded, leaving an empty sort value.

This means that in the case of the default `sort-field={sort}` with `sort={letter-case}`, these entries will be defined in the order: `M (M)`, `S (S)`, `i (i)`, `v (v)` and `card (|S|)`. In this case, the entries have been sorted according to the character codes. If you run `bib2gls` with `--verbose` the decimal character codes will be included in the transcript. For this example:

```
i -> 'i' [105]
card -> '|S|' [124 83 124]
M -> 'M' [77]
S -> 'S' [83]
v -> 'v' [118 8407]
```

The `--group` option (in addition to `--verbose`) will place the letter group in parentheses before the character code list:

```
i -> 'i' (i) [105]
card -> '|S|' [124 83 124]
M -> 'M' (M) [77]
S -> 'S' (S) [83]
v -> 'v' (v) [118 8407]
```

(Note that the `card` entry doesn’t have a letter group since the vertical bar character isn’t considered a letter.)

If `sort={letter-nocase}` is used instead then, after conversion by the interpreter, the sort values will all be changed to lower case. The order is now: `i (i)`, `M (M)`, `S (S)`, `v (v)` and `card (|S|)`. The transcript (with `--verbose`) now shows

```
i -> 'i' [105]
card -> '|s|' [124 115 124]
M -> 'm' [109]
S -> 's' [115]
v -> 'v' [118 8407]
```

With `--group` (in addition to `--verbose`) the letter groups are again included:

```
i -> 'i' (I) [105]
card -> '|s|' [124 115 124]
M -> 'm' (M) [109]
S -> 's' (S) [115]
v -> 'v' (V) [118 8407]
```

Note that the letter groups are upper case not lower case. Again the `card` entry doesn’t have an associated letter group.

If a locale-based sort is used, the ordering will follow the locale’s alphabet rules. For example, with `sort={en}` (English, no region or variant), the order becomes: `card (|S|)`, `i (i)`, `M (M)`, `S (S)` and `v (v)`. The transcript (with `--verbose`) shows the collation keys instead:

```

i -> 'i' [0 92 0 0 0 0]
card -> '|S|' [0 66 0 102 0 66 0 0 0 0]
M -> 'M' [0 96 0 0 0 0]
S -> 'S' [0 102 0 0 0 0]
v -> 'v' [0 105 0 0 0 0]

```

Again the addition of the `--group` switch will show the letter groups.⁴

Suppose I add a new symbol to my `.bib` file:

```

@symbol{angstrom,
  name={\AA},
  description={\AA ngstr\om}
}

```

and I also use this entry in the document.⁵ Then with `sort={en}`, the order is: card (`|S|`), angstrom (`Å`), *i* (`i`), *M* (`M`), *S* (`S`), and *v* (`v`). The `--group` switch shows that the angstrom entry (`Å`) has been placed in the “A” letter group.

However, if I change the locale to `sort={sv}`, the angstrom entry is moved to the end of the list and the `--group` switch shows that it’s been placed in the “Å” letter group.

If you are using Java 8, you can set the `java.locale.providers` property [8] to use the Unicode Common Locale Data Repository (CLDR) locale provider, which has more extensive support for locales than the native Java Runtime Environment (JRE). For example:

```
java.locale.providers=CLDR,JRE
```

This isn’t available for Java 7, and should be enabled by default for the proposed Java 9. The property can either be set in a script that runs `bib2gls`, for example,

```
java -Djava.locale.providers=CLDR,JRE,SPI -jar "$jarpath" "$@"
```

(where `$jarpath` is the path to the `bib2gls.jar` file and `"$@"` is the argument list) or you can set the property as the default for all Java applications by adding the definition to the `JAVA_TOOL_OPTIONS` environment variable [9]. For example, in a bash shell:

```
export JAVA_TOOL_OPTIONS='-Djava.locale.providers=CLDR,JRE,SPI'
```

or in Windows:

```
set JAVA_TOOL_OPTIONS=-Djava.locale.providers=CLDR,JRE,SPI
```

⁴For more information on collation keys see the `CollationKey` class in Java’s API [2].

⁵A better method is to use `siunitx` instead.

3 Command Line Options

The syntax of `bib2gls` is:

```
bib2gls [options] filename
```

where *filename* is the name of the `.aux` file. (The extension may be omitted.) Only one *filename* is permitted. Available options are listed below.

--help (or -h)

Display the help message and quit.

--version (or -v)

Display the version information and quit.

--debug [*n*]

Switch on debugging mode. If *n* is present, it must be a non-negative integer indicating the debugging level. If omitted 1 is assumed. This option also switches on the verbose mode. A value of 0 is equivalent to `--no-debug`.

--no-debug (or --nodebug)

Switches off the debugging mode.

--verbose

Switches on the verbose mode. This writes extra information to the terminal and transcript file.

--no-verbose (or --noverbose)

Switches off the verbose mode. This is the default behaviour. Some messages are written to the terminal. To completely suppress all messages (except errors), switch on the silent mode. For additional information messages, switch on the verbose mode.

--silent

Suppresses all messages except for errors that would normally be written to the terminal. Warnings and informational messages are written to the transcript file, which can be inspected afterwards.

--locale *<lang>* (or -l *<lang>*)

Specify the preferred language resource file, where *<lang>* is a valid IETF language tag. This option requires an appropriate `bib2gls-<lang>.xml` resource file otherwise `bib2gls` will fallback on English. This also sets the default document locale when `sort={doc}` is used and the document doesn't have any language support. Note that `sort={locale}` uses the Java Virtual Machine's (JVM) default locale and is not governed by this switch.

If a document doesn't have any locale support or has support for more than one language then it's best to explicitly set the required locale in the appropriate resource set.

--log-file *<filename>* (or -t *<filename>*)

Sets the name of the transcript file. By default, the name is the same as the `.aux` file but with a `.glg` extension. Note that if you use `bib2gls` in combination with `xindy` or `makeindex`, you will need to change the transcript file name to prevent conflict.

--dir *<dirname>* (or -d *<dirname>*)

By default `bib2gls` assumes that the output files should be written in the current working directory. The input `.bib` files are assumed to be either in the current working directory or on \TeX 's path (in which case `kpsewhich` will be used to find them).

If your `.aux` file isn't in the current working directory (for example, you have run \TeX with `-output-directory`) then you need to take care how you invoke `bib2gls`.

Suppose I have a file called `test-entries.bib` that contains my entry definitions and a document called `mydoc.tex` that selects the `.bib` file using:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={test-entries}]
```

(`test-entries.bib` is in the same directory as `mydoc.tex`). If I compile this document using

```
pdflatex -output-directory tmp mydoc
```

then the auxiliary file `mydoc.aux` will be written to the `tmp` sub-directory. The resource information is listed in the `.aux` file as

```
\glsxtr@resource{src={test-entries}}{mydoc}
```

If I run `bib2gls` from the `tmp` directory, then it won't be able to find the `test-entries.bib` file (since it's in the parent directory).

If I run `bib2gls` from the same directory as `mydoc.tex` using

```
bib2gls tmp/mydoc
```

then the `.aux` file is found and the transcript file is `tmp/mydoc.glg` (since the default path name is the same as the `.aux` file but with the extension changed to `.glg`) but the output file `mydoc.glstex` will be written to the current directory.

This works fine from \TeX 's point of view as it can find the `.glstex` file, but it may be that you'd rather the `.glstex` file was tidied away into the `tmp` directory along with all the other files. In this case you need to invoke `bib2gls` with the `--dir` or `-d` option:

```
bib2gls -d tmp mydoc
```

--interpret

Switch on the interpreter mode (default). See chapter 2 for more details.

--no-interpret

Switch off the interpreter mode. See chapter 2 for more details about the interpreter.

--no-break-space

The interpreter treats a tilde character `~` as a non-breakable space (default).

--break-space

The interpreter treats a tilde character `~` as a normal space.

--cite-as-record

Treat instances of `\citation{\langle label \rangle}` found in the `.aux` file as though it was actually an ignored record:

```
\glstr@record{\langle label \rangle}{\langle page \rangle}{glsignore}{}
```

Note that `\citation{*}` will always be skipped. Use `selection={all}` to select all entries. This switch is most useful in conjunction with `@bibtexentry` (page 78).

--no-cite-as-record

Don't check for instances of `\citation` in the `.aux` file (default).

--merge-wrglossary-records

For use with the `indexcounter` package option (glossaries-extra v1.29+), this switch merges an entry's wrglossary records for the same page location. This is the default setting. (See also `save-index-counter`.)

--no-merge-wrglossary-records

Don't merge an entry's wrglossary records. This means that you may end up with duplicate page numbers in the entry's location list, but they will link to different parts of the page.

--merge-nameref-on *<rule>*

The `record={nameref}` package option (introduced to glossaries-extra version 1.37) provides extra information in the record when indexing, obtained from `\@currentlabelname`, `\@currentHref` and `\theHentrycounter`. Instead of writing the record as:

```
\glstr@record{<label>}{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}
```

the record is written as:

```
\glstr@record@nameref{<label>}{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}{<title>}
{<href>}{<hcounter>}
```

If `hyperref` hasn't been loaded `<title>` and `<href>` will always be empty. The most reliable target is given by `<counter>.<hcounter>`, where `<counter>` is the associated counter name and `<hcounter>` is obtained from `\theHentrycounter`, which is set to the hyper target command `\theH<counter>` during indexing. Since this information can't be included in the location when indexing with `makeindex` or `xindy`, the base glossaries package tries to obtain a prefix from which the target name can be formed. This doesn't work if `\theH<counter>` can't be formed from `<prefix>\the<counter>`, which results in broken links. Since `bib2gls` doesn't have the same restrictions, the actual target can be included in the record. You can then customize the document to choose whether to use `<href>` (to link to the nearest anchor) or `<hcounter>` to link to the place where the indexing counter was incremented.

The `nameref` record will be written to the location list using:

```
\glstrdisplaylocnameref{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}{<title>}
{<href>}{<hcounter>}{<file>}
```

The $\langle file \rangle$ part will be empty for normal internal locations, and will be set to the corresponding file name for supplemental locations.

With hyperref, $\langle title \rangle$ is initially empty. The $\langle href \rangle$ will be Doc-Start at the start of the document and is updated globally on every instance of `\refstepcounter`. The $\langle title \rangle$ is updated locally by certain commands, such as `\section` or `\caption`. This means that the $\langle href \rangle$ may not always correspond to the $\langle title \rangle$, so using the `record={nameref}` package option can have unpredictable results if the $\langle title \rangle$ is used as link text with $\langle href \rangle$ as the target.

For compactness, `bib2gls` tries to merge duplicate or near duplicate records. There are four possible rules that it will use for `nameref` records, identified by $\langle rule \rangle$ in the `--merge-nameref-on` switch:

- `location`: merge records that match on the $\langle prefix \rangle$, $\langle counter \rangle$ and $\langle location \rangle$ parts (as regular records);
- `title`: merge records that match on the $\langle counter \rangle$ and $\langle title \rangle$ parts;
- `href`: merge records that match on the $\langle counter \rangle$ and $\langle href \rangle$ parts;
- `hcounter`: merge records that match on the $\langle counter \rangle$ and $\langle hcounter \rangle$ parts.

The default $\langle rule \rangle$ is `hcounter`. Note that for all rules the $\langle counter \rangle$ must match. See the “Nameref Record” section of the `glossaries-extra` user manual for further details.

--force-cross-resource-refs (or -x)

Force cross-resource reference mode on (see section 1.3).

--no-force-cross-resource-refs

Don't force cross-resource reference mode on (default). The mode will be enabled if applicable (see section 1.3).

--support-unicode-script

Text superscript (`\textsuperscript`) and subscript (`\textsubscript`) will use Unicode super/subscript characters if available (default). For example,

```
\textsuperscript{(2)}
```

will be converted to ⁽²⁾, which consists of: 0x207D (superscript left parenthesis) 0x00B2 (superscript two) 0x207E (superscript right parenthesis). If the entire contents of the argument can't be represented by Unicode characters, the interpreter uses `<sup>` and `<sub>` markup, which is then stripped by `bib2gls`. For example,

```
\textsuperscript{(2,3)}
```

will be converted to

```
<sup>(2,3)</sup>
```

(since there's no superscript comma). The markup is stripped leaving just (2,3).

Superscripts and subscripts in maths mode always use markup regardless of this setting. Some supported packages that use `^` or `_` as shortcuts within an encapsulating command may internally use the same code as `\textsuperscript` and `\textsubscript`, in which case they will be sensitive to this setting.

--no-support-unicode-script

Text superscript (`\textsuperscript`) and subscript (`\textsubscript`) won't use Unicode super/subscript characters. Note that if other commands are provided that expand to Unicode superscript or subscript characters, then they won't be affected by this setting. For example, if `\superiortwo` is defined as

```
\providecommand{\superiortwo}{\char"B2}
```

then it will be interpreted as 0x00B2 (superscript two) even if this setting is on.

--list-known-packages

This option will list all the packages supported by the T_EX parser library and will then exit `bib2gls`. The results are divided into two sections: those packages that are searched for in the `.log` file and those packages that aren't searched for in the `.log` file but have some support available. Some of the support is very limited. Package options aren't detected. The transcript file is always searched for `glossaries-extra` to ensure that the version is new enough to support `bib2gls`.

Packages that fall into the first category are: `amsmath`, `amssymb`, `bpchem`, `fontenc`, `fontspec`, `fourier`, `hyperref`, `lipsum`, `MnSymbol`, `mhchem`, `natbib`, `pifont`, `siunitx` (limited), `stix`, `textcase`, `textcomp`, `tipa`, `upgreek` and `wasysym`. (You can omit checking for specific packages with `--ignore-packages`.) These are packages that provide commands that might be needed within entry fields. The check for `fontspec` is to simply determine whether or not UTF-8 characters are allowed in labels (for `labelify` and `labelify-list`).

Packages that fall into the second category are: `booktabs`, `color`, `datatool-base` (very limited), `datatool` (very limited), `etoolbox` (very limited), `graphics`, `graphicx`, `ifthen`, `jmlrutils`, `mfirstuc-english`, `probsoln`, `shortvrb`, and `xspace`. These are less likely to be needed within fields and so aren't checked for by default. If they are needed then you can instruct `bib2gls` to support them with `--packages`.

Note that `mfirstuc` is always automatically loaded, but `mfirstuc-english` is not implemented unless explicitly requested with `--packages mfirstuc-english`.

If you're wondering about the selection, the `texparserlib.jar` library was originally written for another application that required support for some of them.

--packages $\langle list \rangle$ (or -p $\langle list \rangle$)

Instruct the interpreter to assume the packages listed in $\langle list \rangle$ have been used by the document. This option has a cumulative action so `--packages "wasysym,pifont"` is the same as `--packages wasysym --packages pifont`.

Note that there's only a limited number of packages supported by the \TeX parser library. This option is provided for cases where you're using a command from a package that the interpreter doesn't support but it happens to have the same name and meaning as a command from a package that the interpreter does support. You can also use it to provide support for known packages that aren't checked for when the `.log` file is parsed. If you want `bib2gls` to parse an unsupported package use `--custom-packages`.

--custom-packages $\langle list \rangle$

Instruct the interpreter to parse the package files identified in $\langle list \rangle$. The package files need to be quite simple. When this switch is used, the interpreter can recognise `\ProvidesPackage`, `\DeclareOptions` (and `\DeclareOptions*`), `\ProcessOptions`, `\PackageError` and `\RequirePackage`, but it can't deal with complicated code. In the case of `\RequirePackage`, support will also be governed by `--custom-packages`. This option has a cumulative action.

--ignore-packages $\langle list \rangle$ (or -k $\langle list \rangle$)

This option is cumulative. When the document `.log` file is parsed for known packages, `bib2gls` will skip the check for any listed in $\langle list \rangle$. Note that this option simply instructs `bib2gls` to ignore the package information in the log file. Any packages that are identified with `--packages` will be passed to the interpreter if support is available, even if the package is also listed in `--ignore-packages`. Note that unknown packages can't be included in the ignored $\langle list \rangle$.

--mfirstuc-protection $\langle list \rangle$ |all (or -u $\langle list \rangle$ |all)

Commands like `\Gls` use `\makefirstuc` provided by the `mfirstuc` package. This command has limitations and one of the things that can break it is the use of a referencing command at the start of its argument. The `glossaries-extra` package has more detail about the problem in the "Nested Links" section of the user manual [13]. If a glossary field starts with one of these problematic commands, the recommended method (if the command can't be replaced) is to insert an empty group in front of it.

For example, the following definition

```
\newabbreviation{shtml}{shtml}{\glsps{ssi} enabled \glsps{short}{html}}
```

will cause a problem for `\Gls{shtml}` on first use. The above example would be written in a `.bib` file as:

```
@abbreviation{shtml,
  short={shtml},
  long={\glsps{ssi} enabled \glsps{html}}
}
```

The default `mfirstuc` protection will automatically insert an empty group before `\glsps{ssi}` when writing the definition in the `.gls.tex` file.

The argument for this switch should either be a comma-separated list of fields or the keyword `all` (which indicates all fields). `bib2gls` will automatically insert an empty group at the start of the listed fields that start with a problematic command, and a warning will be written to the transcript. Unknown fields are skipped even if they're included in the list. An empty argument is equivalent to `--no-mfirstuc-protection`. The default value is `all`.

`--no-mfirstuc-protection`

Switches off the `mfirstuc` protection mechanism described above.

`--mfirstuc-math-protection`

This works in the same way as `--mfirstuc-protection` but guards against fields starting with inline maths (`$...$`). For example, if the `name` field starts with `x` and the `glossary` style automatically tries to convert the first letter of the name to upper case, then this will cause a problem.

With `--mfirstuc-math-protection` set, `bib2gls` will automatically insert an empty group at the start of the field and write a warning in the transcript. This setting is on by default.

`--no-mfirstuc-math-protection`

Switches off the above.

`--nested-link-check` *<list>* | **none**

By default, `bib2gls` will parse certain fields for potential nested links. (See the section “Nested Links” in the `glossaries-extra` user manual [13].)

The default set of fields to check are: `name`, `text`, `plural`, `first`, `firstplural`, `long`, `longplural`, `short`, `shortplural` and `symbol`.

You can change this set of fields using `--nested-link-check <value>` where `<value>` may be `none` (don't parse any of the fields) or a comma-separated list of fields to be checked.

--no-nested-link-check

Equivalent to `--nested-link-check none`.

--shortcuts *<value>*

Some entries may reference another entry within a field, using commands like `\gls`, so `bib2gls` parses the fields for these commands to determine dependent entries to allow them to be selected even if they haven't been used within the document. The `shortcuts` package option provided by `glossaries-extra` defines various synonyms, such as `\ac` which is equivalent to `\gls`. By default the value of the `shortcuts` option will be picked up by `bib2gls` when parsing the `.aux` file. This then allows `bib2gls` to additionally search for those short-cut commands while parsing the fields.

You can override the `shortcuts` setting using `--shortcuts <value>` (where *<value>* may take any of the allowed values for the `shortcuts` package option), but in general there is little need to use this switch.

--map-format *<map:value list>* (or **-m** *<map:value list>*)

This sets up the rule of precedence for partial location matches (see section 5.7). The argument may be a comma-separated list of *<map>:<value>* pairs. Alternatively, you can have multiple instances of `--map-format <map>:<value>` which have a cumulative effect.

For example,

```
bib2gls --map-format "emph:hyperbf" mydoc
```

This essentially means that if there's a record conflict involving `emph`, try replacing `emph` with `hyperbf` and see if that resolves the conflict.

Note that if the conflict includes a range formation, the range takes precedence. The mapping tests are applied as the records are read. For example, suppose the records are listed in the `.aux` file as:

```
\glsxtr@record{gls.sample}{-}{page}{emph}{3}
\glsxtr@record{gls.sample}{-}{page}{hypersf}{3}
\glsxtr@record{gls.sample}{-}{page}{hyperbf}{3}
```

and `bib2gls` is invoked with

```
bib2gls --map-format "emph:hyperbf,hypersf:hyperit" mydoc
```

or

```
bib2gls --map-format emph:hyperbf --map-format hypersf:hyperit mydoc
```

then `bib2gls` will process these records as follows:

1. Accept the first record (*emph*) since there's currently no conflict. (This is the first record for page 3 for the entry given by `gls.sample`.)
2. The second record (*hypersf*) conflicts with the existing record (*emph*). Neither has the format `glsnumberformat` or `glsignore` so `bib2gls` consults the mappings provided by `--map-format`.

- The *hypersf* format (from the new record) is mapped to *hyperit*, so `bib2gls` checks if the existing record has this format. In this case it doesn't (the format is *emph*). So `bib2gls` moves on to the next test:
- The *emph* format (from the existing record) is mapped to *hyperbf*, so `bib2gls` checks if the new record has this format. In this case it doesn't (the format is *hypersf*).

Since the provided mappings haven't resolved this conflict, the new record is discarded with a warning. Note that there's no look ahead to the next record. (There may be other records for other entries also used on page 3 interspersed between these records.)

3. The third record (*hyperbf*) conflicts with the existing record (*emph*). Neither has the format `glsnumberformat` or `glsignore` so `bib2gls` again consults the mappings provided by `--map-format`.
 - The new record's *hyperbf* format has no mapping provided, so `bib2gls` moves on to the next test:
 - The existing record's *emph* format has a mapping provided (*hyperbf*). This matches the new record's format, so the new record takes precedence.

This means that the location list ends up with the *hyperbf* location for page 3.

If, on the other hand, the mappings are given as

```
--map-format "emph:hyperit,hypersf:hyperit,hyperbf:hyperit"
```

then all the three conflicting records (*emph*, *hypersf* and *hyperbf*) will end up being replaced by a single record with *hyperit* as the format.

Multiple conflicts will typically be rare as there's usually little reason for more than two or three different location formats within the same list. (For example, `glsnumberformat` as the default and *hyperbf* or *hyperit* for a primary reference.)

--group (or -g)

The `glossaries-extra` `record` package option automatically creates a new field called `group`. If the `--group` switch is used then, when sorting, `bib2gls` will try to determine the letter group for each entry and add it to the `group` field. (Some `sort` options ignore this setting.) This value will be picked up by `\printunsrtglossary` if group headings are required (for example with the `indexgroup` style) or if group separators are required (for example, the

index style with the default `nogroupskip={false}`). If you don't require grouping within the glossary, there's no need to use this switch. Note that this switch doesn't automatically select an appropriate glossary style.

There are eight types of groups:

letter group The first non-ignored character of the sort value is alphabetic. This type of group occurs when using the alphabetic sort methods listed in table 5.2 or with the letter sort methods listed in table 5.3 or with the letter-number sort methods listed in table 5.4. The group label is obtained from `\bibglslettergroup`.

non-letter group (or symbol group) The first non-ignored character of all the sort values within this group are non-alphabetical. This type of group occurs when using the alphabetic sort methods listed in table 5.2 or with the letter sort methods listed in table 5.3 or with the letter-number sort methods listed in table 5.4. The alphabetic sort methods ignore many punctuation characters, so an entry that has a non-alphabetic initial character in the sort value may actually be placed in a letter group. The group label is obtained from `\bibglsothergroup`.

empty group The sort value is empty when sorting with an alphabetical, letter or letter-number method, typically a result of the original value consisting solely of commands that `bib2gls` can't interpret. The group label is obtained from `\bibglsemptygroup`.

number group The entries were sorted by one of the numeric comparisons listed in table 5.5. The group label is obtained from `\bibglsnumbergroup`.

date-time group The entries were sorted by one of the date-time comparisons listed in table 5.6 (where both date and time are present). The group label is obtained from `\bibglsdatetimegroup`.

date group The entries were sorted by one of the date comparisons (where the time is omitted). The group label is obtained from `\bibglsdategroup`.

time group The entries were sorted by one of the time comparisons (where the date is omitted). The group label is obtained from `\bibglstimegroup`.

custom group The group label is explicitly set either in the `.bib` file or using the `group={\langle label \rangle}` resource option. You will need to use `\glxtrsetgrouptitle` to provide an associated title if the `\langle label \rangle` isn't the same as the title. Remember that the label can't contain any active characters, so you can't use non-ASCII characters in `\langle label \rangle` with `inputenc` (but you can use non-ASCII alphanumerics with `fontspec`).

The letter group titles will typically have the first character converted to upper case for the alphabet sort methods (table 5.2). A "letter" may not necessarily be a single character (depending on the sort rule), but may be composed of multiple characters, such as a digraph (two characters) or trigraph (three characters).

For example, if the sort rule recognises the digraph "dz" as a letter, then it will be converted to "Dz" for the group title. There are some exceptions to this. For example, the Dutch digraph

“ij” should be “IJ” rather than “Ij”. This is indicated by the following line in the language resource file:

```
<entry key="grouptitle.case.ij">IJ</entry>
```

If there isn't a `grouptitle.case.<lc>` key (where `<lc>` is the lower case version), then only the first character will be converted to upper case otherwise the value supplied by the resource file is used. This resource key is only checked for the alphabetical comparisons listed in table 5.2. If the initial part of the sort value isn't recognised as a letter according to the sort rule, then the entry will be in a non-letter group (even if the character is alphabetical).

The letter (table 5.3) and letter-number (table 5.4) methods only select the first character of the sort value for the group. If the character is alphabetical¹ then it will be a letter group otherwise it's a non-letter group. The case-insensitive ordering (such as `sort={letter-nocase}`) will convert the letter group character to upper case. The case-sensitive ordering (such as `sort={letter-case}`) won't change the case.

Glossary styles with navigational links to groups (such as `indexhypergroup`) require an extra run for the ordinary `\makeglossaries` and `\makenoidxglossaries` methods. For example, for the document `myDoc.tex`:

```
pdflatex myDoc
makeglossaries myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
```

On the first `pdflatex` call, there's no glossary. On the second `pdflatex`, there's a glossary but the glossary must be processed to find the group information, which is written to the `.aux` file as

```
\@gls@hypergroup{<type>}{<group id>}
```

The third `pdflatex` reads this information and is then able to create the navigation links.

With `bib2gls`, if the type is provided (through the `type` field or via options such as `type` and `dual-type`) then this information can be determined when `bib2gls` is ready to write the `.glstex` file, which means that the extra `ℒTEX` run isn't necessary. If `bib2gls` doesn't know the glossary type then it will fallback on the original method which requires an extra `ℒTEX` run.

For example:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,abbreviations,style={indexhypergroup}]{glossaries-extra}
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  type={main}% put these entries in the 'main' glossary
```

¹according to Java's `Character.isAlphabetic(int)` method

```

]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={abbrvs},% data in abbrvs.bib
  type={abbreviations}% put entries in the 'abbreviations' glossary
]

```

Here the `type` is set and `bib2gls` can detect that `hyperref` has been loaded, so if the `--group` switch is used, then the group hyperlinks can be set (using `\bibglshypergroup`). This means that the build process is just:

```

pdflatex myDoc
bibtex --group myDoc
pdflatex myDoc

```

Note that this requires `glossaries v4.32+`. If your version of `glossaries` is too old then `bib2gls` can't override the default behaviour of `glossary-hypernav's \glsnavhypertarget`.

If `hyperref` isn't loaded or the `--group` switch isn't used or the `type` isn't set or your version of `glossaries` is too old, then the information can't be saved in the `.glsstex` file.

For example:

```

\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,abbreviations,style={indexhypergroup}]{glossaries-
extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]% data in entries.bib
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={abbrvs}]% data in abbrvs.bib

```

This requires the build process:

```

pdflatex myDoc
bibtex --group myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
pdflatex myDoc

```

because the group hyperlink information can't be determined by `bib2gls`, so it's best to always set the `type` if you want hyper-group styles, and make sure you have an up-to-date version of `glossaries` (and `glossaries-extra`).

--no-group

Don't use the `group` field. (Default.) The glossary won't have groups even if a group style, such as `indexgroup`, is used.

--tex-encoding *<name>*

`bib2gls` tries to determine the character encoding to use for the output files. If the document has loaded the `inputenc` package then `bib2gls` can obtain the value of the encoding from the `.aux` file. This is then converted to a name recognised by Java. For example, `utf8` will be mapped to `UTF-8`. If the `fontspec` package has been loaded, `glossaries-extra` will assume the encoding is `utf8` and write that value to the `.aux` file.

If neither package has been loaded, `bib2gls` will assume the JVM's default encoding (identified by the `file.encoding` property). If this is incorrect or if `bib2gls` can't work out the appropriate mapping then you can specify the correct encoding using `--tex-encoding <name>` where *<name>* is the encoding name (such as `UTF-8`).

If you have a problem with non-ASCII characters not displaying correctly in your document:

- Check that the file encoding of your document `.tex` file (or files) has been correctly set by your text editor.
- Check that your document supports that encoding (for example, through the `inputenc` package).
- Check `bib2gls`'s transcript file (`.gls`) for the line that starts

```
TeX character encoding:
```

This should be followed by the encoding used by `bib2gls` when creating the `.gls.tex` files. If this is incorrect use `--tex-encoding`.

- Check that the encoding of the `.bib` files (set by your text editor or bibliographic management system) matches the encoding line in the `.bib` file or the `charset` resource option.

--no-expand-fields

By default, `\newglossaryentry` and similar commands expand field values (except for `name`, `symbol` and `description`). This is useful if constructing field values programmatically (for example in a loop) but can cause a problem if certain fragile commands are included in the field.

The switch `--no-expand-fields` makes `bib2gls` write `\glsnoexpandfields` to the `.gls.tex` file, which switches off the expansion. Since `bib2gls` is simply fetching the data from `.bib` files, it's unlikely that this automatic expansion is required and since it can also be problematic this option is on by default. You can switch it off with `--expand-fields`.

--expand-fields

Don't write `\glsnoexpandfields` to the `.gls.tex` file, allowing fields to expand when the entries are defined. Remember that this doesn't include the `name`, `symbol` or `description` fields, which need to have their expansion switched on with `\glssetexpandfield` before the entries are defined (that is, before using `\GlsXtrLoadResources`).

--trim-fields

Trim leading and trailing spaces from field values. For example, if the `.bib` file contains:

```
@entry{sample,
  name = { sample },
  description = {
    an example
  }
}
```

This will cause spurious spaces. Using `--trim-fields` will automatically trim the values before writing the `.gls.tex` file.

--no-trim-fields

Don't trim any leading or trailing spaces from field values. This is the default setting.

--record-count (or -c)

Switch on record counting. This will ensure that when each entry is written to the `.gls.tex` file, `bib2gls` will additionally set the following fields

- `recordcount`: set to the total number of records found for the entry;
- `recordcount.<counter>`: set to the total number of records found for the entry for the given counter.

These fields can then be used with the `\rgls`-like commands. The default behaviour of

```
\rgls[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]
```

is to check the `recordcount` field against the `recordcount` attribute value. This attribute can be set with

```
\GlsXtrSetRecordCountAttribute{<category list>}{<value>}
```

where $\langle category\ list \rangle$ is a comma-separated list of category labels and $\langle value \rangle$ is a positive integer. If the value of the `recordcount` field is greater than $\langle value \rangle$ then `\rgls` behaves like `\gls`, otherwise it does

```
\rglsformat{\langle label \rangle}[\langle insert \rangle]
```

instead. If the use of `\rglsformat` is triggered in this way, then `\rgls` writes a record to the `.aux` file with the `format` set to `glstriggerrecordformat`. This ensures that the record count is correct on the next run, but the record isn't added to the location list as `bib2gls` recognises it as a special ignored record. Note that the entry will still appear in the usual glossary unless you assign it to a different one with `trigger-type`.

If the `recordcount` attribute hasn't been set `\rgls` behaves like `\gls`. (That is, `\rgls` uses the same internal command used by `\gls`.) You can use `\glsxtrenablerecordcount` to redefine `\gls` to `\rgls`, so that you can continue to use `\gls` without having to switch command name.

For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={abbrevs},% entries defined in abbrevs.bib
  trigger-type={ignored},
  category={abbreviation}
]
\glsxtrenablerecordcount
\GlsXtrSetRecordCountAttribute{abbreviation}{1}
```

See the glossaries-extra user manual [13] for further details.

--no-record-count

Switch off record counting. (Default.)

--record-count-unit (or -n)

Automatically implements `--record-count` and additionally sets the `recordcount.⟨counter⟩.⟨location⟩` fields. These fields can then be used with the `\rgls`-like commands.

--no-record-count-unit

Switches off unit record counting. (Default.) Note that you need `--no-record-count` to completely switch off record counting.

4 .bib Format

bib2gls recognises certain entry types. Any unrecognised types will be ignored and a warning will be written to the transcript file. Entries are defined in the usual .bib format:

```
@⟨entry-type⟩{⟨id⟩,  
  ⟨field-name-1⟩ = {⟨text⟩},  
  ...  
  ⟨field-name-n⟩ = {⟨text⟩}  
}
```

where $\langle entry-type \rangle$ is the entry type (listed below), $\langle field-name-1 \rangle, \dots, \langle field-name-n \rangle$ are the field names and $\langle id \rangle$ is a unique label. The label can't contain any spaces or commas, and most special characters are forbidden. The hyphen character and some other punctuation characters are allowed by bib2gls, but you need to make sure that your document hasn't made them active. In general it's best to stick with alpha-numeric labels. The field values may be delimited by braces $\{\langle text \rangle\}$ or double-quotes " $\langle text \rangle$ ".

The `label-prefix` option can be used to instruct bib2gls to insert prefixes to the labels ($\langle id \rangle$) when the data is read. Remember to use these prefixes when you reference the entries in the document, but don't include them when you reference them in the .bib file. There are some special prefixes that have a particular meaning to bib2gls: "dual." and "ext $\langle n \rangle$." where $\langle n \rangle$ is a positive integer. In the first case, dual. references the dual element of a dual entry (see `@dualentry`). This prefix will be replaced by the value of the `dual-prefix` option. The ext $\langle n \rangle$. prefix is used to reference an entry from a different set of resources (loaded by another `\GlsXtrLoadResources` command). This prefix is replaced by the corresponding element of the list supplied by `ext-prefixes`, but this is only supported if the cross-resource reference mode is enabled (see section 1.3).

In the event that the `sort` value falls back on the label, the original label supplied in the .bib file is used, not the prefixed label.

4.1 Encoding

Avoid non-ASCII characters in the $\langle id \rangle$ if your document uses the inputenc package. (This isn't a problem for Xe_{La}TeX or Lua_{La}TeX, but you still need to avoid special characters.) You can set the character encoding in the .bib file using:

```
% Encoding: ⟨encoding-name⟩
```

where $\langle encoding-name \rangle$ is the name of the character encoding. For example:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8
```

You can also set the encoding using the `charset` option, but it's simpler to include the above comment on the first line of the `.bib` file. (This comment is also searched for by JabRef to determine the encoding, so it works for both applications.) If you don't use either method `bib2gls` will have to search the entire `.bib` file, which is inefficient and you may end up with a mismatched encoding.

4.2 Comments

The original `.bib` file format as defined by `BIBTEX` doesn't have a designated comment character, but instead treats anything outside of `@(entry){(data)}` as unwanted material that's ignored. This can catch out users who try to do something like:

```
%@misc{sample, title={Sample} }
```

In this case, the percent character is simply discarded and the line is treated as:

```
@misc{sample, title={Sample} }
```

Some applications that parse `.bib` files are less tolerant of unwanted material. In the case of `bib2gls`, the percent character is treated as a comment character and other unwanted material should be omitted. Avoid using comments within field values. Comments are best placed outside of entry definitions.

The most common type of comment is the encoding comment, described above.

4.3 Fields

Each entry type may have required fields, optional fields and ignored fields. These are set using a key=value list within `@(entry-type){(id), (fields)}` in the `.bib` file. Most keys recognised by `\newglossaryentry` may be used as a field. In general, you shouldn't need to use the `sort` field.

Predefined fields for use in `.bib` files are listed in Tables 4.1, 4.2, 4.3 and 4.4. If you add any custom keys in your document using `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey`, those commands must be placed before the first use of `\GlsXtrLoadResources` to ensure that `bib2gls` recognises them as a field name.

Internal fields that may be set by `bib2gls` when it creates the `.gls.tex` files are listed in Table 4.5. These typically shouldn't be set in the `.bib` file. Some of these fields can be set for a particular document using a resource option, such as `type` or `category`.

There are also some fields that are set and used by glossaries or glossaries-extra listed in Table 4.6 that aren't recognised by `bib2gls`. In most cases these fields don't have a designated key and are only intended for internal use by `bib2gls` or by the glossaries or glossaries-extra package. Note that the value of the `sort` field written to the `.bib` file doesn't always exactly

match the sort value used by `bib2gls` (which is stored in `bib2gls@sort`). Any special characters found in the sort value are always substituted before writing the `.bib` file to avoid syntax errors.

Any unrecognised fields will be ignored by `bib2gls`. This is more convenient than using `\input` or `\loadglsentries`, which requires all the keys used in the file to be defined, regardless of whether or not you actually need them in the document.

If an optional field is missing and `bib2gls` needs to access it for some reason (for example, for sorting), `bib2gls` will try to fallback on another value. The actual fallback value depends on the entry type.

Other entries can be cross-referenced using the `see`, `seealso` or `alias` fields or by using commands like `\gls` or `\glsxtrp` in any of the recognised fields. These will automatically be selected if the `selection` setting includes dependencies, but you may need to rebuild the document to ensure the location lists are correct. Use of the `\glssee` command will create an ignored record and the `see` field will be set to the relevant information. If an entry has the `see` field already set, any instance of `\glssee` in the document for that entry will be appended to the `see` field (provided you have at least v1.14 of `glossaries-extra`). In general, it's best just to use the `see` field and not use `\glssee`.

The `seealso` key was only added to `glossaries-extra` v1.16, but this field may be used with `bib2gls` even if you only have version 1.14 or 1.15. If the key isn't available, `seealso={\langle xr-list \rangle}` will be treated as `see={[\seealsoname] \langle xr-list \rangle}` (the resource option `seealso` won't have an effect). You can't use both `see` and `seealso` for the same entry with `bib2gls`. Note that the `seealso` field doesn't allow for the optional `[\langle tag \rangle]` part. If you need a different tag, either use `see` or change the definition of `\seealsoname` or `\glsxtruseealsoformat`. Note that, unless you are using `xindy`, `\glsxtrindexseealso` just does `\glssee[\seealsoname]`, and so will be treated as `see` rather than `seealso` by `bib2gls`. Again, it's better to just use the `seealso` field directly.

You can identify an arbitrary field as containing a list of dependent entry labels with `dependency-fields`. This instructs `bib2gls` to parse the listed fields for dependencies in a similar manner to the `see` field, but it doesn't add any information to the cross-referencing part of the location list. The option may be used in combination with the `see` or `seealso` fields.

Table 4.1: Fields Provided by glossaries-extra

Field	Description
<code>alias</code>	The entry with this field set is a synonym of the entry whose label is given by this field.
<code>category</code>	The entry's category label.
<code>description</code>	The description displayed in the glossary.
<code>descriptionplural</code>	The plural form of the description.
<code>first</code>	The text to display on first use with <code>\gls{<label>}</code> .
<code>firstplural</code>	The text to display on first use with <code>\glspl{<label>}</code> .
<code>long</code>	The long form of an abbreviation. (Set internally by commands like <code>\newabbreviation</code> .)
<code>longplural</code>	The plural long form of an abbreviation.
<code>name</code>	The name displayed in the glossary.
<code>parent</code>	The parent entry's label.
<code>plural</code>	The text to display on subsequent use of <code>\glspl{<label>}</code> .
<code>see</code>	General purpose cross-reference (syntax: <code>see={ [<i><tag></i>] <xr-list> }</code>).
<code>seealso</code>	Cross-reference related entries (syntax: <code>seealso={ <xr-list> }</code>).
<code>short</code>	The short form of an abbreviation. (Set internally by commands like <code>\newabbreviation</code> .)
<code>shortplural</code>	The plural short form of an abbreviation.
<code>symbol</code>	The associated symbol.
<code>symbolplural</code>	The plural form of the associated symbol.
<code>text</code>	The text to display on subsequent use of <code>\gls{<label>}</code> .
<code>user1</code>	A general purpose user field.
<code>user2</code>	A general purpose user field.
<code>user3</code>	A general purpose user field.
<code>user4</code>	A general purpose user field.
<code>user5</code>	A general purpose user field.
<code>user6</code>	A general purpose user field.

Table 4.2: Fields Provided by bib2gls

Field	Description
<code>duallong</code>	The long form of a dual abbreviation mapped by <code>@dualabbreviation</code> .
<code>duallongplural</code>	The plural long form of a dual abbreviation mapped by <code>@dualabbreviation</code> .
<code>dualshort</code>	The short form of a dual abbreviation mapped by <code>@dualabbreviation</code> .
<code>dualshortplural</code>	The plural short form of a dual abbreviation mapped by <code>@dualabbreviation</code> .

Table 4.3: Fields Provided by glossaries–prefix

Field	Description
<code>prefix</code>	The prefix associated with the <code>text</code> field.
<code>prefixfirst</code>	The prefix associated with the <code>first</code> field.
<code>prefixfirstplural</code>	The prefix associated with the <code>firstplural</code> field.
<code>prefixplural</code>	The prefix associated with the <code>plural</code> field.

Table 4.4: Fields Provided by glossaries–accsupp

Field	Description
<code>access</code>	The replacement text for the <code>name</code> field.
<code>descriptionaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>description</code> field.
<code>descriptionpluralaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>descriptionplural</code> field.
<code>firstaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>first</code> field.
<code>firstpluralaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>firstplural</code> field.
<code>longaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>long</code> field.
<code>longpluralaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>longplural</code> field.
<code>pluralaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>plural</code> field.
<code>shortaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>short</code> field.
<code>shortpluralaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>shortplural</code> field.
<code>symbolaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>symbol</code> field.
<code>symbolpluralaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>symbolplural</code> field.
<code>textaccess</code>	The replacement text for the <code>text</code> field.

Don't load `glossaries–accsupp` directly (with `\usepackage`) when using `glossaries–extra`. Load using the `accsupp` package option instead.

```
\usepackage[record,accsupp]{glossaries–extra}
```

Table 4.5: Fields Sometimes Set by bib2gls in the .glstex File

You may define and assign `bibtextype` (although it's more likely to be aliased). Don't define any of others, and don't use any of them in the .bib file, except for `group`, `sort` or `type` although those three are best set in the resource command or by bib2gls.

Field	Description
<code>bibtexcontributor</code>	An internal list field provided when a <code>@contributor</code> entry is automatically created by <code>@bibtexentry</code> .
<code>bibtexentry</code>	An internal list field created by <code>@bibtexentry</code> .
<code>bibtexentry@⟨entry-type⟩</code>	An internal list field created by <code>@bibtexentry</code> .
<code>bibtex_{type}</code>	Used by bib2gls as a substitution for BibTeX's <code>type</code> field when parsing <code>@bibtexentry</code> . Needs to be defined or aliased to make it available in the document.
<code>childcount</code>	Stores the number of children this entry has had selected.
<code>childlist</code>	A list of labels (in etoolbox's internal list format) of the children this entry has had selected.
<code>counter</code>	The default counter used for indexing (assigned by the <code>counter</code> option).
<code>dual</code>	Created by <code>dual-field</code> if set with no value, this field is used to store the dual label.
<code>⟨field⟩endpunc</code>	Used with the <code>check-end-punctuation</code> option.
<code>group</code>	The letter group determined by the comparator (or assigned by the <code>group</code> option).
<code>indexcounter</code>	Stores the location corresponding to the matching wrglossary reference.
<code>location</code>	The typeset location list.
<code>loclist</code>	The internal list of locations.
<code>primarylocations</code>	Stores the locations that use one of the designated primary formats, if enabled.
<code>recordcount</code>	Used with record counting to store the total record count.
<code>recordcount.⟨counter⟩</code>	Used with record counting to store the total number of records for a given counter.
<code>recordcount.⟨counter⟩.⟨location⟩</code>	Used with record counting to store the total number of records for a given location.
<code>secondarygroup</code>	The letter group determined by the comparator used with the <code>secondary</code> sort.
<code>secondariesort</code>	The sort value determined by the comparator used with the <code>secondary</code> sort.
<code>sort</code>	The sort value obtained by the comparator.
<code>type</code>	The glossary this entry belongs to (assigned by the <code>type</code> option).

Table 4.6: Internal Fields Set by glossaries or glossaries-extra or bib2gls

Don't define any of these and don't use any of them in the .bib file.

Field	Description
<code>bib2gls@sort</code>	Used by <code>bib2gls</code> to store the actual sort value.
<code>bib2gls@sortfallback</code>	Used by <code>bib2gls</code> to store the sort fallback value.
<code>currcount</code>	Used with entry counting to store the current total.
<code>currcount@⟨value⟩</code>	Used with unit entry counting (<code>glossaries-extra</code>).
<code>desc</code>	Corresponds to <code>description</code> key.
<code>descplural</code>	Corresponds to <code>descriptionplural</code> key.
<code>firstpl</code>	Corresponds to <code>firstplural</code> key.
<code>flag</code>	Boolean that determines if an entry has been used.
<code>index</code>	The main part of the indexing code (<code>makeindex</code> or <code>xindy</code>).
<code>level</code>	Hierarchical level.
<code>longpl</code>	Corresponds to <code>longplural</code> key.
<code>nonumberlist</code>	Used to suppress the location list for a specific entry.
<code>prevcount</code>	Used with entry counting to store the total from the previous run.
<code>prevcount@⟨value⟩</code>	Used with unit entry counting (<code>glossaries-extra</code>).
<code>prevunitmax</code>	Used with unit entry counting (<code>glossaries-extra</code>).
<code>prevunittotal</code>	Used with unit entry counting (<code>glossaries-extra</code>).
<code>shortpl</code>	Corresponds to <code>shortplural</code> key.
<code>sortvalue</code>	Original <code>sort</code> value (before sanitizing and escaping special characters).
<code>unitlist</code>	Used with unit entry counting (<code>glossaries-extra</code>).
<code>useri</code>	Corresponds to <code>user1</code> key.
<code>userii</code>	Corresponds to <code>user2</code> key.
<code>useriii</code>	Corresponds to <code>user3</code> key.
<code>useriv</code>	Corresponds to <code>user4</code> key.
<code>userv</code>	Corresponds to <code>user5</code> key.
<code>uservi</code>	Corresponds to <code>user6</code> key.

4.4 Standard Entry Types

@string

The standard `@string` is available and can be used to define variables that may be used in field values. Don't include braces or double-quote delimiters when referencing a variable. You can use `#` to concatenate strings. For example:

```
@string{ssi={server-side includes}}
@string{html={hypertext markup language}}
```

```
@abbreviation{shtml,
  short="shtml",
  long=ssi # " enabled " # html,
  see={ssi,html}
}
```

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short="html",
  long=html
}
```

```
@abbreviation{ssi,
  short="ssi",
  long=ssi
}
```

Note the difference between `"ssi"` (a field value delimited by double-quotes), the undelimited `=ssi` (a reference to the variable), the grouped `={ssi ,html}` (a field value delimited by braces) and `ssi` the entry label.

@preamble

The standard `@preamble` is available and can be used to provide command definitions used within field values. For example:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\mtx}[1]{\boldsymbol{#1}}"}

```

```
@entry{matrix,
  name={matrix},
  plural={matrices},
  description={rectangular array of values, denoted  $\$ \backslash \text{mtx} \{M\} \$$ }
}
```

Alternatively you can use `\glstrprovidecommand` which behaves the same as `\providecommand` within the document but behaves like `\renewcommand` within `bib2gls`, which al-

allows you to change bib2gls's internal definition of a command without affecting the definition within the document (if it's already been defined before the resource file is input). In general, it's best to just use `\providecommand`.

The TeX parser library used by bib2gls will parse the contents of `@preamble` before trying to interpret the field value used as a fallback when `sort` is omitted (unless `interpret-preamble={false}` is set in the resource options). For example:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\set}[1]{\mathcal{#1}}
\providecommand{\card}[1]{|\set{#1}|}"}
```

```
@entry{S,
  name={{}$\set{S}$},
  text={\set{S}},
  description={a set}
}
@entry{card,
  name={{}$\card{S}$},
  text={\card{S}},
  description={the cardinality of \gls{S}}
}
```

Neither entry has the `sort` field, so bib2gls has to fall back on the `name` field and, since this contains the special characters `\` (backslash), `$` (maths shift), `{` (begin group) and `}` (end group), the TeX parser library is used to interpret it. The definitions provided by `@preamble` allow bib2gls to deduce that the `sort` value of the S entry is just S and the `sort` value of the card entry is `|S|` (see chapter 2).

What happens if you also need to use these commands in the document? The definitions provided in `@preamble` won't be available until the `.gls.tex` file has been created, which means the commands won't be defined on the first TeX run.

There are several approaches:

1. Just define the commands in the document. This means the commands are available, but bib2gls won't be able to correctly interpret the `name` fields.
2. Define the commands in both the document and in `@preamble`. For example:

```
\newcommand{\set}[1]{\mathcal{#1}}
\newcommand{\card}[1]{|\set{#1}|}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={my-data}]
```

Alternatively:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={my-data}]
\providecommand{\set}[1]{\mathcal{#1}}
\providecommand{\card}[1]{|\set{#1}|}
```

If the provided definitions match those given in the .bib file, there's no difference. If they don't match then in the first example the document definitions will take precedence (but the interpreter will use the `@preamble` definitions) and in the second example the `@preamble` definitions will take precedence.

3. Make use of `\glsxtrfmt` provided by `glossaries-extra` which allows you to store the name of the formatting command in a field. The default is the `user1` field, but this can be changed to another field by redefining `\GlsXtrFmtField`.

The .bib file can now look like this:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\set}[1]{\mathcal{#1}}
\providecommand{\card}[1]{|\set{#1}|}"}
```

```
@symbol{S,
  name={}\set{S}$},
  text={\set{S}},
  user1={set},
  description={a set}
}
@symbol{cardS,
  name={}\card{S}$},
  text={\card{S}},
  user1={card},
  description={the cardinality of \gls{S}}
}
```

Within the document, you can format $\langle text \rangle$ using the formatting command provided in the `user1` field with:

```
\glsxtrfmt[ $\langle options \rangle$ ]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle text \rangle$ }
```

(which internally uses `\glslink`) or

```
\glsxtrentryfmt{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle text \rangle$ }
```

which just applies the appropriate formatting command to $\langle text \rangle$. Version 1.23+ of `glossaries-extra` also provides a starred form of the linking command:

```
\glsxtrfmt*[ $\langle options \rangle$ ]{ $\langle label \rangle$ }{ $\langle text \rangle$ }[ $\langle insert \rangle$ ]
```

which inserts additional material inside the link text but outside the formatting command.

If the entry given by $\langle label \rangle$ hasn't been defined, then `\glsxtrfmt` just does $\langle text \rangle$ (followed by $\langle insert \rangle$ for the starred version) and a warning is issued. (There's no

warning if the entry is defined but the field hasn't been set.) The $\langle options \rangle$ are as for $\backslash glslink$ but $\backslash glslink$ will actually be using:

```
 $\backslash glslink[\langle def-options \rangle, \langle options \rangle]{\langle label \rangle}{\langle csname \rangle}{\langle text \rangle}{\langle insert \rangle}$ 
```

where the default options $\langle def-options \rangle$ are given by $\backslash GlsXtrFmtDefaultOptions$. The default definition of this is just `noindex` which suppresses the automatic indexing or recording action. (See the glossaries-extra manual [13] for further details.) The $\langle insert \rangle$ part is omitted for the unstarred form.

This means that the document doesn't need to actually provide $\backslash set$ or $\backslash card$ but can instead use, for example,

```
 $\backslash glsxtrfmt\{S\}\{A\}$   
 $\backslash glsxtrentryfmt\{cardS\}\{B\}$ 
```

instead of:

```
 $\backslash set\{A\}$   
 $\backslash card\{B\}$ 
```

The first \LaTeX run will simply ignore the formatting and produce a warning.

Since this is a bit cumbersome to write, you can provide shortcut commands. For example:

```
 $\backslash GlsXtrLoadResources[src=\{my-data\}]$   
 $\backslash newcommand\{gset\}[2][\{\backslash glsxtrfmt[\#1]\{S\}\{\#2\}\}]$   
 $\backslash newcommand\{gcard\}[2][\{\backslash glsxtrfmt[\#1]\{cardS\}\{\#2\}\}]$ 
```

Whilst this doesn't seem a great deal different from simply providing the definitions of $\backslash set$ and $\backslash card$ in the document, this means you don't have to worry about remembering the names of the actual commands provided in the .bib file (just the entry labels) and the use of $\backslash glsxtrfmt$ will automatically produce a hyperlink to the glossary entry if the `hyperref` package has been loaded.

Here's an alternative .bib that defines entries with a term, a description and a symbol:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\setfmt}[1]{\mathcal{\#1}}  
\providecommand{\cardfmt}[1]{|\setfmt{\#1}|}"  
  
@entry{set,  
  name={set},  
  symbol={\setfmt{S}},  
  user1={setfmt},  
  description={collection of values}  
}
```

```
@entry{cardinality,
  name={cardinality},
  symbol={\cardfmt{S}},
  user1={cardfmt},
  description={the number of elements in the \gls{set} $\glsymbol
{set}$}
}
```

I've changed the entry labels and the names of the formatting commands. The definitions in the document need to reflect the change in label but not the change in the formatting commands:

```
\newcommand{\gset}[2] [] {\glsxtrfmt [#1]{set}{#2}}
\newcommand{\gcard}[2] [] {\glsxtrfmt [#1]{cardinality}{#2}}
```

Here's another approach that allows for a more complicated argument for the cardinality. (For example, if the argument is an expression involving set unions or intersections.) The .bib file is now:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\setfmt}[1]{\mathcal{#1}}
\providecommand{\cardfmt}[1]{|#1|}"}
```

```
@entry{set,
  name={set},
  symbol={\setfmt{S}},
  user1={setfmt},
  description={collection of values}
}
@entry{cardinality,
  name={cardinality},
  symbol={\cardfmt{\setfmt{S}}},
  user1={cardfmt},
  description={the number of elements in the \gls{set} $\glsymbol
{set}$}
}
```

This has removed the `\setfmt` command from the definition of `\cardfmt`. Now the definitions in the document are:

```
\newcommand{\gset}[1] {\glsxtrentryfmt{set}{#1}}
\newcommand{\gcard}[2] [] {\glsxtrfmt [#1]{cardinality}{#2}}
```

This allows for code such as:

```
\[ \gcard{\gset{A} \cap \gset{B}} \]
```

which will link back to the cardinality entry in the glossary and avoids any hyperlinking with `\gset`. Alternatively to avoid links with `\gcard` as well:

```
\newcommand{\gset}[1]{\glsxtreentryfmt{set}{#1}}
\newcommand{\gcard}[1]{\glsxtreentryfmt{cardinality}{#1}}
```

Now `\gset` and `\gcard` are simply formatting commands, but their actual definitions are determined in the `.bib` file.

4.5 Single Entry Types

The entry types described in this section create a single glossary definition per entry (from `glossaries-extra`'s point of view). For example:

```
@entry{matrix,
  name={matrix},
  plural={matrices},
  description={rectangular array of values}
}
```

is analogous to:

```
\newglossaryentry{matrix}% label
{% fields
  name={matrix},
  plural={matrices},
  description={rectangular array of values}
}
```

The `secondary` option allows the creation of a fake glossary with the entry labels in its internal list in a different order. This means that the same data can be displayed in two separate lists without duplicating the resources required by each glossary entry.

Section 4.6 describes `bib2gls` entry types that create two separate (but related) `glossaries-extra` definitions per `.bib` entry.

@entry

Regular terms are defined by the `@entry` field. This requires the `description` field and either `name` or `parent`. For example:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\mtx}[1]{\boldsymbol{#1}}"}

@entry{matrix,
  name={matrix},
  plural={matrices},
  description={rectangular array of values, denoted \gls{M}},
  seealso={vector}
}
```

```
@entry{M,
  name={\ensuremath{M}},
  description={a \gls{matrix}}
}
```

```
@entry{vector,
  name = "vector",
  description = {column or row of values, denoted \gls{v}},
  seealso={matrix}
}
```

```
@entry{v,
  name={\ensuremath{\vec{v}}},
  description={a \gls{vector}}
}
```

If the `sort` field is missing the default is obtained from the `name` field. (A different field can be selected for the sort value with `sort-field`.) For hierarchical entries, if the `name` field is omitted it will be obtained from the parent's `name`.

Terms defined using `@entry` will be written to the output (`.gls.tex`) file using the command `\bibglsnewentry`.

@symbol

The `@symbol` entry type is much like `@entry`, but it's designed specifically for symbols, so in the previous example, the `M` and `v` terms would be better defined using the `@symbol` entry type instead. For example:

```
@symbol{M,
  name={\ensuremath{M}},
  description={a \gls{matrix}}
}
```

The required fields are `name` or `parent`. The `description` field is required if the `name` field is missing. If the `sort` field is omitted, the default sort is given by the entry label (unless overridden by `symbol-sort-fallback`). Note that this is different from `@entry` where the sort defaults to `name` if omitted.

Terms that are defined using `@symbol` will be written to the output file using the command `\bibglsnewsymbol`.

@number

The `@number` entry type is like `@symbol`, but it's for numbers. The numbers don't have to be explicit digits and may have a symbolic representation. There's no real difference between

the behaviour of `@number` and `@symbol` except that terms defined using `@number` will be written to the output file using the command `\bibglsnewnumber`.

For example, the file `constants.bib` might define mathematical constants like this:

```
@number{pi,
  name={\ensuremath{\pi}},
  description={the ratio of the length of the circumference
    of a circle to its diameter},
  user1={3.14159}
}

@number{e,
  name={\ensuremath{e}},
  description={base of natural logarithms},
  user1={2.71828}
}
```

This stores the approximate value in the `user1` field. This can be used to sort the entries in numerical order according to the values rather than the symbols:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={constants},% constants.bib
  category={number},% set the category for all selected entries
  sort={double},% numerical double-precision sort
  sort-field={user1}% sort according to 'user1' field
]
```

The `category={number}` option makes it easy to adjust the glossary format to include the `user1` field:

```
\glsdefpostdesc{number}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  { (approximate value: \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  }%
```

@index

The `@index` entry type is designed for entries that don't have a description. Only the label is required. If `name` is omitted, it's assumed to be the same as the label, even if `parent` is present. (Note this is different to the fallback behaviour of `@entry`, which fetches the name from the parent entry.) If the name contains any characters that can't be used in the label, you must use the `name` field. If the `sort` field is missing the default is obtained from the `name`.

Example:

```

@index{duck}
@index{goose,plural={geese}}
@index{sealion,name={sea lion}}
@index{facade,name={fa\c{c}ade}}

```

Terms that are defined using `@index` will be written to the output file using the command `\bibglsnewindex`.

@indexplural

The `@indexplural` entry type is similar to the `@index` entry type except that the `name` field, if missing, is obtained from the `plural` field. If the `plural` field is missing it's obtained from the `text` field with the plural suffix appended. If the `text` field is missing, it's obtained from the original entry label. If the `sort` field is missing the default is obtained from the `name` field. All fields are optional. For example:

```

@indexplural{goose,
  plural = {geese}
}

@indexplural{duck}

@indexplural{chateau,
  text = {ch\^ateau},
  plural = {ch\^ateaux}
}

```

This is equivalent to:

```

@indexplural{goose,
  name = {geese},
  text = {goose},
  plural = {geese}
}

@indexplural{duck,
  name = {ducks},
  text = {duck},
  plural = {ducks}
}

@indexplural{chateau,
  name = {ch\^ateaux},
  text = ch\^ateau,
  plural = ch\^ateaux
}

```

Terms that are defined using `@indexplural` will be written to the output file using the command `\bibglsnewindexplural`.

@abbreviation

The `@abbreviation` entry type is designed for abbreviations. The required fields are `short` and `long`. If the `sort` key is missing, `bib2gls` will use the field given by `abbreviation-sort-fallback`, which defaults to the `short` field. (If you want an equivalent of `\newdualentry`, use `@dualabbreviationentry` instead.)

If you use `sort-field={name}` (rather than the default `sort-field={sort}`), then the fallback for the `name` field is always the `short` field, regardless of the `abbreviation-sort-fallback` setting, unless you use `abbreviation-name-fallback` to change the fallback for the `name` field.

Note that you must set the abbreviation style before loading the resource file to ensure that the abbreviations are defined correctly, however `bib2gls` has no knowledge of the abbreviation style so it doesn't know if the `description` field must be included or if the default `sort` value isn't simply the value of the `short` field.

You can instruct `bib2gls` to sort by the `long` field instead using `abbreviation-sort-fallback={long}`. You can also tell `bib2gls` to ignore certain fields using `ignore-fields`, so you can include a `description` field in the `.bib` file if you sometimes need it, and then instruct `bib2gls` to ignore it when you don't want it.

For example:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {html},
  long  = {hypertext markup language},
  description = {a markup language for creating web pages}
}
```

If you want the `long-noshort-desc` style, then you can put the following in your document (where the `.bib` file is called `entries-abbrev.bib`):

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-noshort-desc}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-abbrev},
  abbreviation-sort-fallback={long}]
```

Whereas, if you want the `long-short-sc` style, then you can instead do:

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-sc}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-abbrev},ignore-fields={description}]
```

or to convert the short value to upper case and use the `long-short-sm` style instead:

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-sm}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-abbrev},
  short-case-change={uc},% convert short value to upper case
  ignore-fields={description}]
```

Case-changing can be applied with `short-case-change` to convert the case of the `short` field, as illustrated above. If you use a style that obtains the `description` from the `long` form, but you want to apply a case-change to the `description` field with `description-case-change`, then you can copy the `long` field to the `description` with `replicate-fields={long=description}`.

For example, if `entries-abbrev.bib` contains:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {html},
  long  = {hypertext markup language}
}
```

then the document may include:

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-sc}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-abbrev},
  description-case-change={firstuc},
  replicate-fields={long=description}]
```

Note that this can cause a problem for styles that set the `description` field to the `long` form encapsulated by a style command (such as with the `long-em-short-em` style) as this will override the style setting.

Similarly, if you want to change the case of the `name` field:

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-sc}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-abbrev},
  description-case-change={firstuc},
  name-case-change={uc},
  replicate-fields={long=description,short=name}]
```

Again, this will lose any custom formatting command that would usually be applied by the abbreviation style to the `name` field (and `description`, if applicable).

Terms defined using `@abbreviation` will be written to the output file using the command `\bibglsnewabbreviation`.

@acronym

The `@acronym` entry type is like `@abbreviation` except that the term is written to the output file using the command `\bibglsnewacronym`.

@contributor

The `@contributor` entry type is primarily provided for use by the `@bibtexentry` type. You may use it explicitly if you want, but you need to take care that it doesn't clash with `@bibtexentry`. It behaves much like `@index` except that the term is written to the `.glsstex` file using the command `\bibglsnewcontributor`. There are no required fields. As with `@index`, if the `name` field is missing, the fallback value is the entry's label. When this entry type is automatically created by `@bibtexentry`, the `name` is set to

```
\bibglscontributor{<forenames>}{<von>}{<surname>}{<suffix>}
```

If you do explicitly use `@contributor` you need to make sure it's defined *before* the first instance of `@bibtexentry` that tries to access it, but within the same resource set. If you ensure that the label of `@contributor` matches the contributor label generated by `@bibtexentry` then they can have their dependency lists updated, and the `bibtexentry` and `bibtexentry@<entry-type>` internal fields can be set for the `@contributor` entry. For example:

```
@contributor{KnuthDonaldE,
  name={\bibglscontributor{Donald E.}{}{Knuth}{}},
  description={Famous mathematician and computer scientist who
    created \TeX}
}
```

```
@book{texbook,
  title = {The \TeX book},
  author = {Donald E. Knuth},
  publisher = {Addison-Wesley},
  year = 1986
}
```

The resource options then need to include:

```
entry-type-aliases={\GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases},
labelify-replace={
  {[ \string\-\string\.]}}
}
```

If the `@contributor` entry is deferred until after the corresponding `@bibtexentry` then you will end up with a label clash.

4.6 Dual Entry Types

The entry types described in this section create two separate (but related) glossaries-extra entry definitions per `.bib` entry. The first of these entries is considered the primary entry, and the second is the dual entry (also referred to as the secondary entry, but is not related to the `secondary` option). The naming scheme is `@dual<entry-type>` where both the primary and dual are considered to have the same type of entry (such as `@dualsymbol` where both the primary and dual are functionally like `@symbol`) or `@dual<primary><dual>` where the primary is functionally like `@<primary>` and the dual is functionally like `@<dual>`.

For example:

```
@dualabbreviationentry{svm,
  short = {SVM},
  long = {support vector machine},
  description = {statistical pattern recognition technique}
}
```

is like:

```
@abbreviation{svm,
  short = {SVM},
  long = {support vector machine},
}
@entry{dual.svm,
  text = {SVM},
  name = {support vector machine},
  description = {statistical pattern recognition technique}
}
```

and is analogous to:

```
\newabbreviation{svm}{SVM}{support vector machine}
\newglossaryentry{dual.svm}{name={support vector machine},text={SVM},
  description={statistical pattern recognition technique}}
```

but both entries are considered dependent on each other. This means that if you only reference the primary entry (using `\gls` etc) then the dual entry will still be selected if the `selection` setting includes dependencies.

The creation of the dual entry involves mapping or copying fields from the primary entry. Each dual entry type has a set of mappings. If a field in the set of mappings is missing, its fallback value is used. Any fields that aren't listed in the mappings are simply copied, except for the `alias` field, which will never be copied to the dual entry, nor can it be mapped. The alias will only apply to the primary entry. The dual entry is given the label $\langle prefix \rangle \langle id \rangle$ where $\langle prefix \rangle$ is set by the `dual-prefix` option and $\langle id \rangle$ is the label supplied in the .bib file.

If `dual-sort={combine}` then the dual entries will be sorted along with the primary entries, otherwise the `dual-sort` indicates how to sort the dual entries and the dual entries will be appended to the end of the .gls`tex` file. The `dual-sort-field` determines what field to use for the sort value if the dual entries should be sorted separately.

Take care if you have a mixture of entry types (such as `@dualindexentry`, `@dualindex-symbol` and `@index`) and you're not using the default `dual-sort={combine}`. Remember that the primary entries are all sorted together along with the single entries types described in section 4.6 (but they may be assigned to different glossary types), and then the dual entries are sorted together (but may be assigned to different glossary types). This may result in an odd ordering if some of the primaries and some of the duals are assigned to the same glossary. For example, don't mix `@dualindexabbreviation` (duals are abbreviations) with `@dualabbreviationentry` (primaries are abbreviations) when you aren't using `dual-sort={combine}` (unless you have two different glossaries for the primary vs dual abbreviations).

Remember that `bib2gls` is designed to take advantage of `\printunsrtglossary`, which simply iterates over all defined entries in the order in which they were defined (or, more precisely, the order of the internal list of entry labels associated with that glossary). The aim of `bib2gls` is to write the entry definitions to the .gls`tex` file so that the internal list of labels is in the appropriate order.

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```

@index{aardvark}
@index{mouse}
@index{zebra}
@dualindexabbreviation{xml,
  short={XML},
  long={extensible markup language}
}
@dualabbreviationentry{ssi,
  short={SSI},
  long={server-side includes},
  description={directives placed in \gls{html} pages
    evaluated by the server}
}
@dualindexabbreviation{html,
  short={HTML},
  long={hypertext markup language}
}
@dualabbreviationentry{css,
  short={CSS},
  long={cascading stylesheets},
  description={a language that describes the style of an
    \gls{html} document}
}

```

This contains a mixture of entry types, including `@dualindexabbreviation` (where the dual is the abbreviation) and `@dualabbreviationentry` (where the primary is the abbreviation).

Now consider the following document:

```

\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,abbreviations]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[selection={all},src={entries}]

\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

This uses the default `sort={combine}`, so all the entries are sorted together, resulting in the order: aardvark, dual.css, css, html, dual.html, mouse, dual.ssi, ssi, xml, dual.xml, zebra.

The \LaTeX code written to the `.glstex` file is essentially (but not exactly):

```

% from @index{aardvark}:
\newglossaryentry{aardvark}{name={aardvark},description={}}

```

```

% dual of @dualabbreviationentry{css,...}:
\newglossaryentry{dual.css}{name={cascading stylesheets},{text}={CSS},
description={a language that describes the style of an
\glxtrshort{html} document}}

% primary of @dualabbreviationentry{css,...}:
\newabbreviation{css}{CSS}{cascading stylesheets}

% primary of @dualindexabbreviation{html,...}:
\newglossaryentry{html}{name={HTML},description={}}

% dual of @dualindexabbreviation{html,...}:
\newabbreviation{dual.html}{HTML}{hypertext markup language}

% from @index{mouse}:
\newglossaryentry{mouse}{name}={mouse},description={}}

% dual of @dualabbreviationentry{ssi,...}:
\newglossaryentry{dual.ssi}{name={server-side includes},text={SSI},
description={directives placed in \glxtrshort{html} pages
evaluated by the server}}

% primary of @dualabbreviationentry{ssi,...}:
\newabbreviation{ssi}{SSI}{server-side includes}

% primary of @dualindexabbreviation{xml,...}:
\newglossaryentry{xml}{name={XML},description={}}

% dual of @dualindexabbreviation{xml,...}:
\newabbreviation{dual.xml}{XML}{extensible markup language}

% from @index{zebra}:
\newglossaryentry{zebra}{name}={zebra},description={}}

```

Since the document uses the `abbreviations` package option, `\newabbreviation` automatically assigns the abbreviation to the `abbreviations` glossary (created through that package option). This means that the main (default) glossary contains the entries (in order):

- `aardvark` (name: `aardvark`),
- `dual.css` (name: `cascading stylesheets`),
- `html` (name: `HTML`),
- `mouse` (name: `mouse`),

- `dual.ssi` (name: server-side includes),
- `xml` (name: XML),
- `zebra` (name: zebra).

The abbreviations glossary contains:

- `css` (short: CSS),
- `dual.html` (short: HTML),
- `ssi` (short: SSI),
- `dual.xml` (short: XML).

Since all the entries were combined and sorted together, the resulting glossaries are both ordered alphabetically (using `short` for the abbreviations and `name` for the rest), but note that you need to take care when referencing the abbreviations if you want to make use of the abbreviation style. You need `\gls{css}` and `\gls{ssi}` for the primary abbreviations created with `@dualabbreviationentry` and `\gls{dual.html}` and `\gls{dual.xml}` for the dual abbreviations created with `@dualindexabbreviation`. Also the `name` of the primary/dual alternative of the abbreviations is also inconsistent (short form for `html` and `xml` and long form for `dual.css` and `dual.ssi`), as different field mappings are used.

If the document is changed so that the dual entries are now sorted and written after all the primary entries have been dealt with:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},
  dual-sort={letter-nocase},
  selection={all}
]
```

then `bib2gls` first orders the primaries:

- `aardvark` (name: aardvark),
- `css` (short: CSS),
- `html` (name: HTML),
- `mouse` (name: mouse),
- `ssi` (short: SSI),
- `xml` (name: XML),
- `zebra` (name: zebra)

and writes them to the `.glstex` file (functionally like):

```

% from @index{aardvark}:
\newglossaryentry{aardvark}{name={aardvark},description={}}

% primary of @dualabbreviationentry{css,...}:
\newabbreviation{css}{CSS}{cascading stylesheets}

% primary of @dualindexabbreviation{html,...}:
\newglossaryentry{html}{name={HTML},description={}}

% from @index{mouse}:
\newglossaryentry{mouse}{name={mouse},description={}}

% primary of @dualabbreviationentry{ssi,...}:
\newabbreviation{ssi}{SSI}{server-side includes}

% primary of @dualindexabbreviation{xml,...}:
\newglossaryentry{xml}{name={XML},description={}}

% from @index{zebra}:
\newglossaryentry{zebra}{name={zebra},description={}}

```

Then bib2gls orders the duals:

- dual.css (name: cascading stylesheets),
- dual.html (short: HTML),
- dual.ssi (name: server-side includes),
- dual.xml (short: XML)

and writes them to the .glstex file (functionally like):

```

% dual of @dualabbreviationentry{css,...}:
\newglossaryentry{dual.css}{name={cascading stylesheets},text={CSS},
description={a language that describes the style of an
\glstrshort{html} document}}

% dual of @dualindexabbreviation{html,...}:
\newabbreviation{dual.html}{HTML}{hypertext markup language}

% dual of @dualabbreviationentry{ssi,...}:
\newglossaryentry{dual.ssi}{name={server-side includes},text={SSI},
description={directives placed in \glstrshort{html} pages
evaluated by the server}}

```

```
% dual of @dualindexabbreviation{xml,...}:
\newabbreviation{dual.xml}{XML}{extensible markup language}
```

When the .glstex file is input (during the next L^AT_EX run) the entries are defined in the order:

1. aardvark (type: main),
2. css (type: abbreviations),
3. html (type: main),
4. mouse (type: main),
5. ssi (type: abbreviations),
6. xml (type: main),
7. zebra (type: main),
8. dual.css (type: main),
9. dual.html (type: abbreviations),
10. dual.ssi (type: main),
11. dual.xml (type: abbreviations).

This means that the main glossary's internal list is in the order:

- aardvark (aardvark),
- html (HTML),
- mouse (mouse),
- xml (XML),
- zebra (zebra),
- dual.css (cascading stylesheets),
- dual.ssi (server-side includes)

and the abbreviations glossary's internal list is in the order:

- css (CSS),
- ssi (SSI),
- dual.html (HTML),

- `dual.xml` (XML).

The lists are no longer in alphabetical order as they have a mixture of primary and dual entries that were separated before sorting.

The above is a fairly contrived example as it wouldn't make sense in a real document to have glossary terms (that include a description) mixed with index terms (that don't include a description). A better solution would be to use `@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry` instead of `@dualabbreviationentry`.

`@dualentry`

The `@dualentry` entry type is similar to `@entry` but actually defines two entries. The dual entry contains the same information as the primary entry but some of the fields are swapped around. The default mappings are:

- `name` \mapsto `description`
- `plural` \mapsto `descriptionplural`
- `description` \mapsto `name`
- `descriptionplural` \mapsto `plural`

The required fields are as for `@entry`.

For example:

```
@dualentry{child,
  name={child},
  plural={children},
  description={enfant}
}
```

is like:

```
@entry{child,
  name={child},
  plural={children},
  description={enfant}
  descriptionplural={enfants}
}
```

```
@entry{dual.child,
  description={child},
  descriptionplural={children},
  name={enfant}
  plural={enfants}
}
```

where `dual.` is replaced by the value of the `dual-prefix` option. However, instead of defining the entries with `\bibglsnewentry` both the primary and dual entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualentry`. The `category` and `type` fields can be set for the dual entry using the `dual-category` and `dual-type` options.

For example:

```
\newglossary*{english}{English}
\newglossary*{french}{French}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries-dual},% data in entries-dual.bib
  type={english},% put primary entries in glossary 'english'
  dual-type={french},% put dual entries in glossary 'french'
  category={dictionary},% set the primary category to 'dictionary'
  dual-category={dictionary},% set the dual category to 'dictionary'
  sort={en},% sort primary entries according to language 'en'
  dual-sort={fr}% sort dual entries according to language 'fr'
]
```

@dualindexentry

There are no required fields. The primary entry behaves like `@index` and the dual entry behaves like `@entry`. The default field mapping is:

- `name` \mapsto `name`

This doesn't actually perform any swapping of fields, but it provides the field used for backlinks (if `dual-indexentry-backlink` is set). The reason that the primary (rather than the dual) is like `@index` is to allow the primaries to merge with any `@index` entries found in the resource set, since glossary entries with descriptions are likely to be a subset of all indexed entries.

If no `name` is given, the dual entry is assigned the (unprefixed) entry label. For example:

```
@dualindexentry{array,
  description={ordered list of values}
}
```

This is effectively like:

```
@index{array}

@entry{dual.array,
  name={array},
  description={ordered list of values}
}
```

The primary entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualindexentry`, which by default sets the `category` to `index` (although this may be overridden, for example, by the `category` option). The dual entries are defined with `\bibglsnewdualindexentrysecondary`.

This is the most convenient way of having an entry that's also automatically indexed. For example, suppose the file `terms.bib` contains:

```
@index{duck}
@index{zebra}
@index{aardvark}
```

and suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@dualindexentry{array,
  description={ordered list of values}
}

@dualindexentry{vector,
  name={vector},
  description={column or row of values}
}

@dualindexentry{set,
  description={collection of values}
}

@dualindexentry{matrix,
  plural={matrices},
  description={rectangular array of values}
}
```

These entries can be used in an example document that has an index and a glossary:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,index,stylemods={mcols}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={terms,entries},
  type={index},
  label-prefix={idx.},
  dual-prefix={gls.},
  combine-dual-locations={primary},
  dual-type={main}
]
```

```

\begin{document}
\gls{gls.array}, \gls{gls.vector}, \gls{gls.set}, \gls{gls.matrix}.

\gls{idx.duck}, \gls{idx.aardvark}, \gls{idx.zebra}.

\renewcommand{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{\textsc{#1}}
\printunsrtglossary[type={main},style={index},nogroupskip]

\renewcommand{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{#1}
\renewcommand{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}
\printunsrtglossary[type={index},style={mcolindexgroup}]
\end{document}

```

This uses `combine-dual-locations` to combine the locations for the primary and dual entries so that they only appear in the index.

To avoid the inconvenience of remembering which prefix to use, you can set up the prefixes with `\glsxtraddlabelprefix` and reference entries with `\dgl`s, `\dGls` etc instead of `\gls`s, `\Gls` etc.

@dualindexabbreviation

The `@dualindexabbreviation` entry type is similar to `@dualindexentry` and again, by default, the field mapping is:

- `name` \mapsto `name`

However in this case the required fields are `short` and `long`. The `name` for the primary entry defaults to `short` if omitted. (This may be changed with the `abbreviation-name-fallback` option.) The fallback for the `sort` field is given by `abbreviation-sort-fallback`, which defaults to the `short` field.

For example:

```

@dualindexabbreviation{html,
  short = {HTML},
  long  = {hypertext markup language}
}

```

is like:

```

@index{html,name={HTML}}

```

```

@abbreviation{dual.html,
  short = {HTML},
  long  = {hypertext markup language}
}

```

The primary term is defined using `\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation`, which encapsulates the `name` to match the font used by the dual abbreviation. The encapsulation command depends on the `abbreviation-name-fallback` value. If it's the `short` field then `\bibgls-useabbrvfont` is used, otherwise `\bibglsuselongfont` is used.

The primary definition also by default sets the `category` to `index` (although this again may be overridden). The dual term is defined using `\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation-secondary`.

@dualindexsymbol

The `@dualindexsymbol` entry type is similar to `@dualindexentry`, but by default the field mappings are:

- `symbol` \mapsto `name`
- `name` \mapsto `symbol`
- `symbolplural` \mapsto `plural`
- `plural` \mapsto `symbolplural`

The required field is: `symbol`. If the `name` field is omitted, the dual entry is assigned a symbol from the original (unprefixed) label. The primary entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualindexsymbol`, which by default sets the `category` to `index`, and the dual entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualindexsymbolsecondary`, which by default sets the `category` to `symbol`. For example:

```
@dualindexsymbol{pi,
  symbol={\ensuremath{\pi}},
  description={ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter}
}
```

is like:

```
@index{pi,symbol={\ensuremath{\pi}}}
```

```
@symbol{dual.pi,
  name={\ensuremath{\pi}},
  symbol={pi},
  description={ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter}
}
```

For example, suppose I have a file called `symbols.bib` that contains:

```
@dualindexsymbol{pi,
  symbol={\ensuremath{\pi}},
  description={ratio of a circle's circumference to its diameter}
```

```
}
```

```
@dualindexsymbol{e,
  name={Euler's number},
  symbol={\ensuremath{e}},
  description={base of the natural logarithm}
}
```

Then the previous example document can be modified to have an index, a glossary and a list of symbols:

```
\documentclass{report}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,symbols,index,stylemods={mcols}]{glossaries-extra}

\newcommand{\bibglsnewdualindexsymbolsecondary}[5]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},category=symbol,%
    symbol={#4},#2,type={symbols}}{#5}%
}

\newcommand{\indexprimary}[1]{\glsadd[format={hyperbf}]{idx.#1}}

\glsdefpostdesc{symbol}{\indexprimary{\glscurrententrylabel}}
\glsdefpostdesc{general}{\indexprimary{\glscurrententrylabel}}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries,terms,symbols},
  type={index},
  set-widest,
  label-prefix={idx.},
  dual-prefix={},
  combine-dual-locations={primary},
  dual-sort={letter-case},
  dual-type={main}
]

\glsxtrnewglslike[hyper={false}]{idx.}{\idx}{\idxpl}{\Idx}{\Idxpl}

\begin{document}
\gls{array}, \gls{vector}, \gls{set}, \glspl{matrix}.
\idx{duck}, \idx{aardvark}, \idx{zebra}.
\gls{e} and \gls{pi}.

\newpage
```

```

\gls{array}, \idx{vector}, \idx{set}, \gls{matrix}.

\newpage
\gls{array}, \gls{vector}, \gls{set}, \gls{matrix}.

\renewcommand{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{\textsc{#1}}
\printunsrtglossary[type={main},nogroupskip,style={alttree}]

\renewcommand{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{#1}
\printunsrtglossary[type={symbols},nogroupskip,style={index}]

\renewcommand{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{#1}
\renewcommand{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}
\printunsrtglossary[type={index},style={mcolindexgroup}]

\end{document}

```

Here I've provided some convenient commands for referencing the primary (index) terms (`\idx`, `\idxpl`, `\Idx` and `\Idxpl`). This means I don't need to worry about the label prefix and it also switches off the hyperlinks (with `hyper={false}`). These custom commands are defined using:

```

\glsxtrnewglslike[<options>]{<prefix>}{<gls-like cs>}{<glspl-like cs>}{<Gls-like cs>}{<Glspl-like cs>}

```

which, in this case, essentially does:

```

\newcommand{\idx}[2] [] {\gls[hyper={false},#1]{idx.#2}}
\newcommand{\Idx}[2] [] {\Gls[hyper={false},#1]{idx.#2}}
\newcommand{\idxpl}[2] [] {\glspl[hyper={false},#1]{idx.#2}}
\newcommand{\Idxpl}[2] [] {\Glspl[hyper={false},#1]{idx.#2}}

```

but the new commands will also recognise the `\gls` modifiers, so `\idx+` will behave like `\gls+` which wouldn't be possible if `\idx` was defined using `\newcommand` in the above manner. There's a similar command:

```

\glsxtrnewgls[<options>]{<prefix>}{<cs>}

```

if no case-changing versions are required.

I've also redefined `\bibglsnewdualindexsymbolsecondary` to put the dual entries created with `@dualindexsymbol` into the symbols glossary (which is created with the `symbols` package option), so it overrides the `dual-type={main}` setting.

This command also sets the `category` to `symbol`, so I can redefine the post-description hook for symbols (`\glsxtrpostdescsymbol`) to automatically index the symbol definition. Similarly for the general post-description hook `\glsxtrpostdescgeneral`.

Since the post-description hook isn't done until the glossary has been created, this requires a slightly longer build process. If the document file is called `myDoc.tex`, then the complete document build is:

```
pdflatex myDoc
bib2gls -g myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
bib2gls -g myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
```

As from `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` version 1.37, an alternative method is to identify possible label prefixes with `\glxtraddlabelprefix` or `\glxtrprependlabelprefix` and use `\dgl`, `\dgl spl`, `\dGls` or `\dGls pl`. See the `glossaries-extra` user manual [13] for further details.

@dualindexnumber

The `@dualindexnumber` entry type is almost identical to `@dualindexsymbol`, but the primary entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualindexnumber`, which by default sets the `category` to `index`, and the dual entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualindexnumber-secondary`, which by default sets the `category` to `number`.

@dualabbreviationentry

The `@dualabbreviationentry` entry type is similar to `@dualentry`, but by default the field mappings are:

- `long` \mapsto `name`
- `longplural` \mapsto `plural`
- `short` \mapsto `text`

You may need to add a mapping from `shortplural` to `plural` if the default is inappropriate. (In `bib2gls` version 1.0 this entry type was originally called `@dualentryabbreviation`. In version 1.1, it was renamed `@dualabbreviationentry` which makes for a more consistent naming scheme `@dual<primary><dual>`.)

The required fields are: `short`, `long` and `description`. This entry type is designed to emulate the example `\newdualentry` command given in the `glossaries` user manual [14]. The primary entry is an abbreviation with the given `short` and `long` fields (but not the `description`) and the secondary entry is a regular entry with the `name` copied from the `long` field. The fallback for the `sort` is given by `abbreviation-sort-fallback`, which defaults to the `short` field.

For example:

```
@dualabbreviationentry{svm,
  long = {support vector machine},
  short = {SVM},
  description = {statistical pattern recognition technique}
}
```

is rather like doing:

```
@abbreviation{svm,
  long = {support vector machine},
  short = {SVM}
}
```

```
@entry{dual.svm,
  name = {support vector machine},
  description = {statistical pattern recognition technique}
}
```

but `dual.svm` will automatically be selected if `svm` is indexed in the document. If `dual.svm` isn't explicitly indexed, it won't have a location list.

If the `sort` field is missing `bib2gls` by default falls back on the `name` field. If this is missing, this sort value will fallback on the `short` field. This means that if `name` isn't explicitly given in `@dualabbreviationentry`, then the primary entry will be sorted according to `short` but the dual will be sorted according its `name` (which has been copied from the primary `long`).

Entries provided using `@dualabbreviationentry` will be defined with:

```
\bibglsnewdualabbreviationentry
```

(which uses `\newabbreviation`) for the primary entries and with :

```
\bibglsnewdualabbreviationentrysecondary
```

(which uses `\longnewglossaryentry`) for the secondary entries. This means that if the `abbreviations` package option is used, the primary entry will be put in the `abbreviations` glossary and the secondary entry in the main glossary. Use the `type` and `dual-type` options to override this.

`@dualentryabbreviation`

This entry type is deprecated as from `bib2gls` version 1.1. It's functionally equivalent to `@dualabbreviationentry` but its name doesn't fit the general dual entry naming scheme.

`@dualsymbol`

This is like `@dualentry` but the default mappings are:

- `name` \mapsto `symbol`

- `plural` \mapsto `symbolplural`
- `symbol` \mapsto `name`
- `symbolplural` \mapsto `plural`

The `name` and `symbol` fields are required. For example:

```
@dualsymbol{pi,
  name={pi},
  symbol={\ensuremath{\pi}},
  description={the ratio of the length of the circumference
    of a circle to its diameter}
}
```

Entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualsymbol`, which by default sets the `category` to `symbol`.

@dualnumber

This is almost identical to `@dualsymbol` but entries are defined using `\bibglsnewdualnumber`, which by default sets the `category` to `number`.

The above example could be defined as a number since π is a constant:

```
@dualnumber{pi,
  name={pi},
  symbol={\ensuremath{\pi}},
  description={the ratio of the length of the circumference
    of a circle to its diameter},
  user1={3.14159}
}
```

This has stored the approximate value in the `user1` field. The post-description hook could then be adapted to show this.

```
\glsdefpostdesc{number}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}
  { (approximate value: \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  }%
}
```

This use of the `user1` field means that the dual entries could be sorted numerically according to the approximate value:

```
\usepackage[record,postdot,numbers,style={index}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
```

```

src={entries},% entries.bib
dual-type={numbers},
dual-sort={double},% decimal sort
dual-sort-field={user1}
]

```

@dualabbreviation

The `@dualabbreviation` entry type is similar to `@dualentry`, but by default the field mappings are:

- `short` \mapsto `dualshort`
- `shortplural` \mapsto `dualshortplural`
- `long` \mapsto `duallong`
- `longplural` \mapsto `duallongplural`
- `dualshort` \mapsto `short`
- `dualshortplural` \mapsto `shortplural`
- `duallong` \mapsto `long`
- `duallongplural` \mapsto `longplural`

The required fields are: `short`, `long`, `dualshort` and `duallong`. This includes some new fields: `dualshort`, `dualshortplural`, `duallong` and `duallongplural`. If these aren't already defined, they will be provided in the `.glstex` file with

```
\glstrprovidestoragekey{<key>}{-}{}
```

Note that this use with an empty third argument prevents the creation of a field access command (analogous to `\glstentrytext`). The value can be accessed with `\glstrusefield` instead. Remember that the field won't be available until the `.glstex` file has been created.

Note that `bib2gls` doesn't know what abbreviation styles are in used, so if the `sort` field is missing it will fallback on the `short` field. If the abbreviations need to be sorted according to the `long` field instead, use `abbreviation-sort-fallback={long}`.

Terms that are defined using `@dualabbreviation` will be written to the output file using `\bibglsnewdualabbreviation`.

If the `dual-abbrv-backlink` option is on, the default field used for the backlinks is the `dualshort` field, so you'll need to make sure you adapt the glossary style to show that field. The simplest way to do this is through the category post-description hook.

For example, if the entries all have the `category` set to `abbreviation`, then this requires redefining `\glstrpostdescabbreviation` (either with `\renewcommand` or via `\glsdefpostdesc`).

Here's an example dual abbreviation for a document where English is the primary language and German is the secondary language:

```
@dualabbreviation{rna,
  short={RNA},
  dualshort={RNS},
  long={ribonucleic acid},
  duallong={Ribonukleinsäure}
}
```

If the abbreviation is in the file called `entries-dual-abbrev.bib`, then here's an example document:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}

\usepackage[ngerman,main=english]{babel}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,nomain]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{english}{English}
\newglossary*{german}{German}

\setabbreviationstyle{long-short}

\glsdefpostdesc{abbreviation}{%
  \ifglshasfield{dualshort}{\glscurrententrylabel}
  {%
    \space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)%
  }%
  {}%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries-dual-abbrev},% entries-dual-abbrev.bib
  type={english},% put primary entries in glossary 'english'
  dual-type={german},% put primary entries in glossary 'german'
  label-prefix={en.},% primary label prefix
  dual-prefix={de.},% dual label prefix
  sort={en},% sort primary entries according to language 'en'
  dual-sort={de-1996},% sort dual entries according to 'de-1996'
  % (German new orthography)
  dual-abbrev-backlink% add links in the glossary to the opposite entry
]

\begin{document}
```

English: `\gls{en.rna}; \gls{en.rna}`.

German: `\gls{de.rna}; \gls{de.rna}`.

```
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

If the `label-prefix` is omitted, then only the dual entries will have a prefix:

English: `\gls{rna}; \gls{rna}`.

German: `\gls{de.rna}; \gls{de.rna}`.

Another variation is to use the long-short-user abbreviation style and modify the associated `\glsxtruserfield` so that the `duallong` field is selected for the parenthetical material:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsxtruserfield}{duallong}
```

This means that the first use of the primary entry is displayed as

ribonucleic acid (RNA, Ribonukleinsäure)

and the first use of the dual entry is displayed as:

Ribonukleinsäure (RNS, ribonucleic acid)

Here's an example to be used with the long-short-desc style:

```
@dualabbreviation{rna,
  short={RNA},
  dualshort={RNS},
  long={ribonucleic acid},
  duallong={Ribonukleinsäure}
  description={a polymeric molecule},
  user1={Ein polymeres Molekül}
}
```

This stores the dual description in the `user1` field, so this needs a mapping. The new example document is much the same as the previous one, except that the `dual-abbrev-map` option is needed to include the mapping between the `description` and `user1` fields:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}

\usepackage[ngerman,main=english]{babel}
```

4 .bib Format

```
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,nomain]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{english}{English}
\newglossary*{german}{German}

\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-desc}

\glsdefpostdesc{abbreviation}{%
  \ifglshasfield{dualshort}{\glscurrententrylabel}
  {%
    \space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)%
  }%
  }%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries-dual-abbrev-desc},% entries-dual-abbrev-desc.bib
  type={english},% put primary entries in glossary 'english'
  dual-type={german},% put primary entries in glossary 'german'
  label-prefix={en.},% primary label prefix
  dual-prefix={de.},% dual label prefix
  sort={en},% sort primary entries according to language 'en'
  abbreviation-sort-fallback={long},% fallback on 'long' field
  dual-sort={de-1996},% sort dual entries according to 'de-1996'
  % (German new orthography)
  dual-abbrev-backlink,% add links in the glossary to the opposite entry
% dual key mappings:
  dual-abbrev-map={%
    {short,shortplural,long,longplural,dualshort,dualshortplural,
      duallong,duallongplural,description,user1},
    {dualshort,dualshortplural,duallong,duallongplural,short,shortplural,
      long,longplural,user1,description}
  }
]

\begin{document}

English: \gls{en.rna}; \gls{en.rna}.

German: \gls{de.rna}; \gls{de.rna}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

Note that since this document uses the long-short-desc abbreviation style, the `abbreviation-sort-fallback` needs to be changed to `long`.

If I change the order of the mapping to:

```
dual-abbrev-map={%
  {long,longplural,short,shortplural,dualshort,dualshortplural,
   duallong,duallongplural,description,user1},
  {duallong,duallongplural,dualshort,dualshortplural,short,shortplural,
   long,longplural,user1,description}
}
```

Then the back-link field will switch to `duallong`. The post-description hook can be modified to allow for this:

```
\glsdefpostdesc{abbreviation}{%
  \ifglshasfield{duallong}{\glscurrententrylabel}
  {%
    \space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)%
  }%
  {}}%
}
```

An alternative is to use the long-short-user-desc style without the post-description hook:

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-user-desc}
\renewcommand*{\glsextruserfield}{duallong}
```

However be careful with this approach as it can cause nested hyperlinks. In this case it's better to use the long-postshort-user-desc style which defers the parenthetical material until after the link-text:

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-postshort-user-desc}
\renewcommand*{\glsextruserfield}{duallong}
```

If the back-link field has been switched to `duallong` then the post-description hook is no longer required.

@dualacronym

As `@dualabbreviation` but defines the entries with `\bibglsnewdualacronym`.

4.7 Tertiary Entry Types

A tertiary entry type is essentially a dual entry that creates three separate (but related) glossaries-extra entry definitions per `.bib` entry. As with dual entries, the first and second of these are the primary and secondary. The third of these is the tertiary which is effectively an

appendage of the secondary, and is defined by the same associated `\bibglsnew...secondary` command that defines the secondary entry. Therefore the secondary and tertiary are both considered the dual and are treated as a single entry for the purposes of sorting and collating.

The tertiary entry will never have any locations. Any records found will be assigned to the secondary (and may then be moved to the primary with `combine-dual-locations={primary}`). The tertiary will always have the same order as the secondary and will have the same `group` value. You can set the `type` for the tertiary with `tertiary-type` and the `category` with `tertiary-category`. The label prefix defaults to `tertiary.` and can be changed with `tertiary-prefix`.

@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry

This entry type is very similar to `@dualindexabbreviation` but creates a tertiary entry as well. The required fields are: `short` and `long` (as for `@dualindexabbreviation`) and also `description`. The mappings are shared by both entry types. For example:

```
@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry{html,
  short = {HTML},
  long = {hypertext markup language},
  description = {a markup language for creating web pages}
}
```

is analogous to:

```
\newglossaryentry{html,name={HTML},description={}}
```

```
\newabbreviation{dual.html}{HTML}{hypertext markup language}
```

```
\newglossaryentry{tertiary.html,
  name={hypertext markup language},
  description={a markup language for creating web pages}
}
```

The last two are actually defined using one command:

```
\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary
  {dual.html}% secondary label
  {tertiary.html}% tertiary label
  {...}% secondary fields
  {...}% tertiary fields
  {HTML}% primary name
  {HTML}% short
  {hypertext markup language}% long
  {a markup language for creating web pages}% description
```

The `\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary` command is provided in the `.glstex` file as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary}[8]{%
  \newabbreviation[#3]{#1}{#6}{#7}%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#2}%
  {name={\protect\bibglsuselongfont{#7}{\glscategory{#1}}},#4}%
  {#8}%
}
```

which defines the secondary as an abbreviation using `\newabbreviation` and the tertiary as a regular entry using `\longnewglossaryentry`. This means that the tertiary entry is always defined immediately after the corresponding secondary entry. The primary may be defined earlier or later in the file depending on the way the entries are sorted and on the `dual-sort` setting.

4.8 Multi-Entry Types

A multi-entry type is a primary entry that may spawn multiple primary entries. This means that both the main entry and the spawned entries are sorted together along with all the other primary entries.

@bibtexentry

The `@bibtexentry` type will typically need to be aliased as it's designed for converting `BibTeX` entries into `bib2gls` entries. For example, to make `bib2gls` treat `@article` and `@book` as though they were both `@bibtexentry`:

```
entry-type-aliases={
  article=bibtexentry,
  book=bibtexentry
}
```

For convenience, `glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.29+` provides `\GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases` which covers all the standard `BibTeX` entry types. If you use `category={same as original entry}`, the `category` field will be set to the original entry type (for example, `article` or `book`). Similarly you can use `type={same as original entry}` to set the `type` field (but remember that the glossary types will need to be defined in the document).

There are no required fields. The fallback for the `sort` field is given by `bibtexentry-sort-fallback`. If you want to access any of the `BibTeX` fields, you will need to alias or define them. For example:

```
field-aliases={
  title=name
}
```

Since `BibTeX`'s `type` field conflicts with `bib2gls`'s `type` field, when `bib2gls` parses `@bibtexentry` it will convert `type` to `bibtexentry`, so you must use `bibtexentry` as the identifier when aliasing.

Alternatively, you can use `\GlsXtrProvideBibTeXFields` which uses `\glsaddstoragekey` to provide all the standard BibTeX fields. (Remember that new fields must be defined before the first resource set.)

The `@bibtexentry` essentially creates an `@index` form of entry, but it additionally defines a `@contributor` entry for each listed author or editor and updates the dependency lists: each `@contributor` is added to the main `@bibtexentry`'s list of dependencies (so if the `@bibtexentry` has a record then all its satellite `@contributors` are selected with the default `selection={recorded and deps}`), and each `@contributor` is treated as having a cross-reference to the main `@bibtexentry` (so if a `@contributor` has a record then all the linked `@bibtexentry` terms will be selected if `selection={recorded and deps and see}`). You can instruct `bib2gls` to treat `\citation` as an ignored record using `--cite-as-record`.

Each contributor is effectively defined as:

```
@contributor{<label>,
  name={\bibglscontributor{<forenames>}{<von>}{<surname>}{<suffix>}}
}
```

The label is obtained by converting the `name` to a label, using the same function as `labelify` (which means it's governed by `labelify-replace`).

The `author` and `editor` fields are always checked, even if those fields aren't recognised by `bib2gls`, (which they aren't by default). These checks are performed before field aliases are applied. If neither field is present, no additional entries are spawned. If the dependent `@contributor` entry has already been defined, it won't be redefined, but will have the new `@bibtexentry` added to its internal `bibtexentry` field.

The main `@bibtexentry` is defined using `\bibglsnewbibtexentry` and is followed by:

```
\glsxtrfieldlistadd{<id>}{bibtexcontributor}{<contributor-id>}
```

where `<id>` is the label identifying the main `@bibtexentry` and `<contributor-id>` is the label identifying the contributor, for each contributor that has been selected.

Each contributor is defined using `\bibglsnewcontributor`. The definition is followed by:

```
\glsxtrfieldlistadd{<contributor-id>}{bibtexentry}{<id>}
\glsxtrfieldlistadd{<contributor-id>}{bibtexentry@<entry-type>}{<id>}
```

for each selected `@bibtexentry` associated with that contributor. The second line provides the internal list field `bibtexentry@<entry-type>`, where `<entry-type>` is the original entry type (before it was aliased to `@bibtexentry` and converted to lower case). For example article or book.

You can iterate over these internal list fields using `\glsxtrfielddolistloop` or `\glsxtrfieldforlistloop`. For example:

```
\newcommand{\contributorhandler}[1]{\par\glsentryname{#1}}
\newcommand{\glsxtrpostdesccontributor}{%
  \glsxtrifhasfield{bibtexentry}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
```

```
{%
  \glstrfieldforlistloop
  {\glscurrententrylabel}{bibtexentry}%
  {\contributorhandler}%
}%
{\par No titles.}%
}
```

(where the resource option `field-aliases={title=name}` has been used).

Here's an example that uses the test `xampl.bib` file that's provided with \TeX distributions:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,nomain]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{contributors}{Authors/Editors}
\newglossary*{titles}{Titles}

\newcommand{\bibglsnewbibtexentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name=#3,#2,type={titles}}{#4}%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={xampl},
  write-preamble={false},
  entry-type-aliases={
    \GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases
  },
  field-aliases={
    title=name
  },
  replicate-fields={
    note=name
  },
  labelify-replace={
    {[ \string\-\string\.] }{ }
  },
  type={contributors},
  category={same as original entry},
  sort-field={category},
  sort-suffix={name}
]

\glstrsetgrouptitle{article}{Articles}
\glstrsetgrouptitle{booklet}{Booklets}
```

4 .bib Format

```
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{book}{Books}
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{inbook}{Book Chapters}
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{misc}{Miscellaneous}

\newcommand{\contributorhandler}[1]{\par\glsentryname{#1} (#1)}

\newcommand{\glxtrpostdesccontributor}%
  \glxtrifhasfield{bibtexentry}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {%
    \glxtrfieldforlistloop
    {\glscurrententrylabel}{bibtexentry}%
    {\contributorhandler}%
  }%
  {\par No titles.}%

\begin{document}
Sample~\cite{book-minimal,article-full,inbook-full,misc-minimal}.
Another sample~\cite{booklet-minimal,misc-full,article-minimal}.

\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{xampl}

\printunsrtglossary[type={contributors},style={altlist}]
\printunsrtglossary*[type={titles},style={indexgroup}]
{%
  \renewcommand{\glxtrgroupfield}{category}%
  \renewcommand{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{\emph{#1}}%
  \renewcommand{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}%
}

\end{document}
```

If the file is called `myDoc.tex` then the document build is:

```
pdflatex myDoc
bib2gls --cite-as-record myDoc
bibtex myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
```

5 Resource File Options

Make sure that you use `glossaries-extra` with the `record` package option. This ensures that `bib2gls` can pick up the required information from the `.aux` file, and both `record={only}` and `record={nameref}` additionally load the supplementary `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` package. These two `record` option values also switch on the `sort={none}` package option (if you have a new enough version of the base `glossaries` package), which means that there's no attempt to assign or process the `sort` key if it's omitted from `\newglossaryentry` (or similar commands). The `sort` key will be provided by `bib2gls` for informational purposes, but there's no need for \LaTeX to write it to any external files (unless you use the hybrid `record={alsoindex}`, in which case you need to prevent `bib2gls` from sorting using the `sort={none}` resource option).

The `.glstex` resource files created by `bib2gls` are loaded in the document using

```
\glxtrresourcefile[<options>]{<filename>}
```

where *<filename>* is the name of the resource file without the `.glstex` extension. You can have multiple `\glxtrresourcefile` commands within your document, but each *<filename>* must be unique, otherwise \LaTeX would attempt to input the same `.glstex` file multiple times (`bib2gls` checks for non-unique file names). The associated data for each resource file is called the resource set (see section 1.3).

There's a shortcut command that uses `\jobname` in the *<filename>*:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[<options>]
```

The first instance of this command is equivalent to:

```
\glxtrresourcefile[<options>]{\jobname}
```

Any additional use of `\GlsXtrLoadResources` is equivalent to:

```
\glxtrresourcefile[<options>]{\jobname-<n>}
```

where *<n>* is number. For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-en},sort={en}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-fr},sort={fr}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-de},sort={de-1996}]
```

This is equivalent to:

```
\glxtrresourcefile[src={entries-en},sort={en}]{\jobname}
\glxtrresourcefile[src={entries-fr},sort={fr}]{\jobname-1}
\glxtrresourcefile[src={entries-de},sort={de-1996}]{\jobname-2}
```

In general, it's simplest just to use `\GlsXtrLoadResources`.

The optional argument *<options>* is a comma-separated key=value list. Allowed options are listed below. The option list applies only to that specific *<filename>.gls.tex* and are not carried over to the next instance of `\glsxtrresourcefile`. Only the definitions provided in `@preamble` (if the interpreter is on and `interpret-preamble={true}`) are carried over to the next resource set and, possibly, cross-resource references if permitted (see section 1.3). The glossaries-extra package doesn't parse the options, but just writes the information to the `.aux` file. This means that any invalid options will be reported by `bib2gls` not by `glossaries-extra`.

If you have multiple `.bib` files you can either select them all using `src={<bib list>}` in a single `\glsxtrresourcefile` call, if they all require the same settings, or you can load them separately with different settings applied.

For example, if the files `entries-terms.bib` and `entries-symbols.bib` have the same settings:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-terms,entries-symbols}]
```

Alternatively, if they have different settings:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-terms},type={main}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-symbols},sort={use},type={symbols}]
```

Note that the sorting is applied to each resource set independently of other resource sets. This means that if you have multiple instances of `\glsxtrresourcefile` but only one glossary type, the glossary will effectively contain blocks of sorted entries. For example, if `file1.bib` contains:

```
@index{duck}
@index{zebra}
@index{aardvark}
```

and `file2.bib` contains:

```
@index{caterpillar}
@index{bee}
@index{wombat}
```

then

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={file1,file2}]
```

will result in the list: aardvark, bee, caterpillar, duck, wombat, zebra. These six entries are all defined when `\jobname.gls.tex` is read. Whereas

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={file1}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={file2}]
```

will result in the list: aardvark, duck, zebra, bee, caterpillar, wombat. The first three (aardvark, duck, zebra) are defined when `\jobname.glstex` is read. The second three (bee, caterpillar, wombat) are defined when `\jobname-1.glstex` is read. Since `\printunsrtglossary` simply iterates over all defined entries, this is the ordering used.

Abbreviation styles must be set (using `\setabbreviationstyle`) before the resource command that selects the abbreviations from the appropriate `.bib` file, since the entries are defined (through `\newabbreviation` or `\newacronym`) when `\glxtrresourcefile` inputs the `.glstex` file. (Similarly for any associated abbreviation style commands that must be set before abbreviations are defined, such as `\glxtrlongshortdescname`.)

Note `bib2gls` allows `.bib` files that don't provide any entries. This can be used to provide commands in `@preamble`. For example, suppose I have `defs.bib` that just contains:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\strong}[1]{\textbf{\color{red}#1}}
\providecommand{\parenswap}[2]{#2 (#1)}"}
```

This provides two commands:

```
\strong{<text>}
```

(which sets the font weight and colour) and

```
\parenswap{<text1>}{<text2>}
```

(which just displays its second argument followed by the first in parentheses).

Suppose I also have `entries.bib` that contains:

```
@index{example,
  name={\strong{\parenswap{stuff}{example}}}
}
@index{sample}
@index{test}
@index{foo}
@index{bar}
```

This contains an entry that requires the commands provided in `defs.bib`, so to ensure those commands are defined, I can do:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={defs,entries}]
```

Unfortunately this results in the sort value for `example` being set to `redexample (stuff)` because the interpreter has detected the provided commands and expanded:

```
\strong{\parenswap{stuff}{example}}
```

to:

```
\textbf{\color{red}example (stuff)}
```

It discards font changes, so `\textbf` is ignored, but it doesn't recognise `\color` and so doesn't know that the first argument is just the colour specifier and therefore doesn't discard it. This means that “**example (stuff)**” is placed between “foo” and “sample” instead of between “bar” and “foo”.

I can prevent the interpreter from parsing `@preamble`:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={defs,entries},interpret-preamble={false}]
```

Now when the sort value for `example` is obtained from:

```
\strong{\parenswap{stuff}{example}}
```

no expansion occurs (since `\strong` and `\parenswap` are now unrecognised) so the sort value ends up as: `stuffexample` which places “**example (stuff)**” between “sample” and “test”, which is again incorrect.

The best thing to do in this situation is to split the provided commands into two `.bib` files: one that shouldn't be interpreted and one that should.

For example, `defs-nointerpret.bib`:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\strong}[1]{\textbf{\color{red}#1}}"}
and defs-interpret.bib:
```

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\parenswap}[2]{#2 (#1)}"}
Now the first one can be loaded with interpret-preamble={false}:
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={defs-nointerpret},interpret-preamble={false}]
```

This creates a `.glstex` file that provides `\strong` but doesn't define any entries. The other file `defs-interpret.bib` can then be loaded with the default `interpret-preamble={true}`:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={defs-interpret,entries}]
```

The provided commands are remembered by the interpreter, so you can also do:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={defs-interpret}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
```

The *contents* of `@preamble` are only written to the associated `.glstex` file, but the definitions contained within the `@preamble` are retained by the interpreter for subsequent resource sets.

5.1 General Options

`charset`= \langle *encoding-name* \rangle

If the character encoding hasn't been supplied in the `.bib` file with the encoding comment

```
% Encoding:  $\langle$ encoding-name $\rangle$ 
```

then you can supply the correct encoding using `charset={encoding-name}`. In general, it's better to include the encoding in the `.bib` file where it can also be read by a `.bib` managing systems, such as `JabRef`.

See `--tex-encoding` for the encoding used to write the `.glstex` file.

interpret-preamble=*<boolean>*

This is a boolean option that determines whether or not the interpreter should parse the contents of `@preamble`. The default is `true`. If `false`, the preamble contents will still be written to the `.gls.tex` file, but any commands provided in the preamble won't be recognised by the interpreter (see chapter 2).

Related options are: `set-widest` (which uses the interpreter to determine the widest name for the `altnode` style or the `glossary-longextra` styles), `interpret-label-fields` (which governs whether or not fields that must only contain a label should be interpreted), `labelify` (which converts a field into a string suitable for use as a label), and `labelify-list` (which converts a field into a string suitable for use as a comma-separated list of labels).

write-preamble=*<boolean>*

This is a boolean option that determines whether or not the preamble should be written to the `.gls.tex` file. The default is `true`. Note that the preamble will still be parsed if `interpret-preamble={true}` even if `write-preamble={false}`. This means it's possible to provide `bib2gls` command definitions in `@preamble` that don't get seen by \LaTeX .

set-widest=*<boolean>*

The `altnode` glossary style needs to know the widest `name` (for each level, if hierarchical). This can be set using `\glssetwidest` provided by the `glossary-tree` package (or similar commands like `\glsupdatewidest` provided by `glossaries-extra-stylemods`), but this requires knowing which name is the widest. Alternatively, one of the iterative commands such as `\glsFindWidestTopLevelName` can be used, which slows the document build as it has to iterate over all defined entries.

The `glossary-longextra` package, provided with `glossaries-extra` v1.37+, also needs to know the widest name, but in this case only the top-level is needed. If this has already been found through the commands provided with the `altnode` style then that value will be used as the default, but you can set another value that's only used for the `glossary-longextra` styles with `\glslongextraSetWidest`.

The `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` package provides `\glsxtrSetWidest`, which sets the widest name for those styles that need it. As from version 1.8, `bib2gls` now checks for the existence of this command and will use it with `set-widest` to allow for the new styles provided by the `glossary-longextra` package.

The boolean option `set-widest={true}` will try to calculate the widest names for each hierarchical level to help remove the need to determine the correct value within the document. Since `bib2gls` doesn't know the fonts that will be used in the document or if there are any non-standard commands that aren't provided in the `.bib` files preamble, *this option may not work*. For example, if one entry has the `name` defined as:

```
name={some {\Huge huge} text}
```

and another entry has the `name` defined as:

```
name={some {\small small} text}
```

then bib2gls will determine that the second name is the widest although the first will actually be wider when it's rendered in the document.

When using this option, the transcript file will include the message:

```
Calculated width of '<text>': <number>
```

where $\langle text \rangle$ is bib2gls's interpretation of the contents of the `name` field and $\langle number \rangle$ is a rough guide to the width of $\langle text \rangle$ assuming the operating system's default serif font. The entry that has the largest $\langle number \rangle$ is the one that will be selected. This will then be implemented as follows:

- If the `type` is unknown then:
 - if the interpreter resolves all `name` fields to the empty string (that is the `name` fields all consist of unknown commands) then
 - * if there are child entries `\bibglssetwidestfallback` is used,
 - * otherwise `\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfallback` is used;
 - otherwise `\bibglssetwidest` is used.
- If the `type` is known then:
 - if the interpreter resolves all `name` fields for that type to the empty string (that is the `name` fields all consist of unknown commands) then
 - * if there are child entries `\bibglssetwidestfortypefallback` is used,
 - * otherwise `\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfortypefallback` is used;
 - otherwise `\bibglssetwidestfortype` is used.

This leaves \TeX to compute the width according to the document fonts. If bib2gls can't correctly determine the widest entry then you will need to use one of the commands provided by `glossary-tree`, `glossary-longextra` or `glossaries-extra-stylemods` to set it.

In general, if you have more than one glossary it's best to set the `type` using options like `type` and `dual-type` if you use `set-widest`.

```
entry-type-aliases=<key=value list>
```

In the `.bib` file, the data is identified by $\@<entry-type>$, such as $\@abbreviation$. It may be that you want to replace all instances of $\@<entry-type>$ with a different type of entry. For example, suppose my `.bib` file contains abbreviations defined in the form:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {html},
  long  = {hypertext markup language},
  description = {a markup language for creating web pages}
}
```

but suppose in one of my documents I actually want all these abbreviations defined with `@dualabbreviationentry` instead of `@abbreviation`. Instead of editing the `.bib` file I can just supply a mapping:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  entry-type-aliases={abbreviation=dualabbreviationentry}
]
```

This makes all instances of `@abbreviation` behave as `@dualabbreviationentry`. You can have more than one mapping. For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  entry-type-aliases={
    % @abbreviation -> @dualabbreviationentry:
    abbreviation=dualabbreviationentry,
    % @entry -> @index:
    entry=index
  }
]
```

This option isn't cumulative. Multiple instances of `entry-type-aliases` override previous instances. If `<key=value list>` is empty there will be no mappings.

Here's another example entry in a `.bib` file:

```
@foo{html,
  name = {HTML},
  short = {HTML},
  long = {hypertext markup language},
  description = {hypertext markup language}
}
```

Ordinarily this entry would be ignored since `@foo` isn't recognised, but it can be mapped like this:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  ignore-fields={short,long},
  entry-type-aliases={foo=entry}
]
```

This treats the entry as though it had been defined as:

```
@entry{html,
  name = {HTML},
  description = {hypertext markup language}
}
```

whereas:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  ignore-fields={name,description},
  entry-type-aliases={foo=abbreviation}
]
```

treats the entry as though it had been defined as:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {HTML},
  long = {hypertext markup language}
}
```

action= \langle value \rangle

This governs how the entries are written in the .glstex file. The \langle value \rangle may be one of:

- define: define the entries;
- copy: copy the entries;
- define or copy: copy existing entries and define non-existing entries.

The default setting is `action={define}`, which writes the entry definition to the .glstex file using one of the commands described in section 6.1. Since the `record` package option automatically switches on the `undefaction={warn}` option, any attempt at defining an entry that's already been defined will generate a warning rather than an error. The duplicate definition will be ignored. (The warnings can be found in the .log file since they are warnings produce by glossaries-extra not by bib2gls.)

For example, if you try:

```
\newglossary*{copies}{Copies}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[sort={use},type={copies},src={entries}]
```

you'll find that the `copies` glossary is empty and there will be warnings in the .log file when the second resource file is loaded.

There are various ways of having the same entries in multiple glossaries. The simplest method is to use `secondary`, but another method is to use `action={copy}` which simply writes

```
\glsxtrcopytoglossary{<label>}{<type>}
```

instead of using one of the commands listed in section 6.1. This copies the entries rather than defining them, which means the entries must already have been defined. The \langle type \rangle is determined as follows:

- if the entry has the `type` field set, that's used;
- if the entry is a tertiary and `tertiary-type` is set, that's used;
- if the entry is a dual and `dual-type` is set, that's used;
- otherwise the value of the `type` option is used.

If you're not sure whether the entries may already be defined, you can use `action={define or copy}` which will use `\ifglentryexists` in the resource file to determine whether to define or copy the entry.

Options that set or modify fields, such as `category`, `group`, `save-locations`, `flatten` or `name-case-change`, will be ignored if entries are copied. However the `copy-action-group-field` may be used to copy the `group` field (which may have been locally set by the `sort` method) to another field. This ensures that the original `group` value from the entry definition in an earlier resource set won't be overwritten (unless you set `copy-action-group-field={group}`).

Remember that `\glstrcopytoglossary` simply copies the entry's label to the glossary's internal list. The only checks that `bib2gls` performs if `action` is not `define` is to ensure that the `master` or `secondary` options have not been used, since they're incompatible, and that the `type` option is set, since it's required as a fallback for any entries that don't have the `type` field set. (There are too many options that alter field values to check them all and some may be used to alter the sorting.) The purpose of the copy action is simply to provide a duplicate list in a different order.

Remember that if you are using `hyperref`, you need to use `target={false}` in the optional argument of `\printunsrtglossary` for the glossary containing the copies to prevent duplicate hypertargets. Commands like `\gls` will link to the original entries. For example, in the preamble:

```
\newignoredglossary{copies}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  sort={use},
  action={copy},
  type={copies},
  src={entries}
]
```

and later in the document:

```
\printunsrtglossary[title={Glossary (Alphabetical)},style={indexgroup}]
\printunsrtglossary[type={copies},title={Glossary (Order of Use)},
  style={index},nogroupskip,% no grouping
  target={false}]
```

Note also the need to use `nogroupskip` and a non-group style for the duplicates since the `group` field will have been assigned in the first resource set if `bib2gls` was invoked with `--group`. The grouping is appropriate for alphabetical ordering but not for order of use.

If you want different grouping for the duplicates, you can specify the field name to use in which to store the group information using `copy-action-group-field`. Unlike `secondary`, you will need to redefine `\glstrgroupfield` to the relevant field before you display the glossary. The simplest way to do this is with the starred form of `\printunsrtglossary`. For example, if `copy-action-group-field={dupgroup}` is added to the options for the second resource set:

```
\printunsrtglossary*[type={copies},title={Duplicates},style={indexgroup}]
  {\renewcommand{\glstrgroupfield}{dupgroup}}
```

This just does:

```
\begingroup
  \renewcommand{\glstrgroupfield}{dupgroup}%
  \printunsrtglossary[type={copies},title={Duplicates},style=
{indexgroup}]
\endgroup
```

5.2 Selection Options

`src`= $\langle list \rangle$

This identifies the `.bib` files containing the entry definitions. The value should be a comma-separated list of the required `.bib` files. These may either be in the current working directory or in the directory given by the `--dir` switch or on \TeX 's path (in which case `kpsewhich` will be used to find them). The `.bib` extension may be omitted. Remember that if $\langle list \rangle$ contains multiple files it must be grouped to protect the comma from the $\langle options \rangle$ list.

For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-terms,entries-symbols}]
```

indicates that `bib2gls` must read the files `entries-terms.bib` and `entries-symbols.bib` and create the file given by `\jobname.glstex` on the first instance or `\jobname- $\langle n \rangle$.glstex` on subsequent use.

With `\glstrresourcefile`[$\langle options \rangle$]{ $\langle filename \rangle$ }, if the `src` option is omitted, the `.bib` file is assumed to be $\langle filename \rangle$.`bib`. For example:

```
\glstrresourcefile{entries-symbols}
```

indicates that `bib2gls` needs to read the file `entries-symbols.bib`, which contains the entry data, and create the file `entries-symbols.glstex`. If the `.bib` file is different or if you have multiple `.bib` files, you need to use the `src` option.

`\GlsXtrLoadResources` uses `\jobname` as the argument of `\glstrresourcefile` on the first instance, so:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources []
```

will assume `src={\jobname}`. Remember that subsequent uses of `\GlsXtrLoadResources` append a suffix, so in general it's best to always supply `src`.

If you have non-ASCII characters in the `.bib` filename but aren't using $X_{\text{E}}\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ or $\text{LuaL}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$, then you will need to use `\detokenize` to prevent expansion when the information is written to the `.aux` file. Similarly for any special characters that need protecting (although it's better not to use special characters in filenames). For example:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T2A]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[russian]{babel}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={\detokenize{кириллица}},% data in кириллица.bib
  selection={all}
]

\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossary
\end{document}
```

selection= \langle *value* \rangle

By default all entries that have records in the `.aux` file will be selected as well as all their dependent entries. The dependent entries that don't have corresponding records on the first $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ run, may need an additional build to ensure their location lists are updated.

Remember that on the first $\text{L}^{\text{A}}\text{T}_{\text{E}}\text{X}$ run the `.glstex` files don't exist. This means that the entries aren't defined at that point. The `record` package option additionally switches on the `undefaction={warn}` option, which means that you'll only get warnings rather than errors when you reference entries in the document. You can't use `\glsaddall` with `bib2gls` because the glossary lists are empty on the first run, so there's nothing for `\glsaddall` to iterate over. Instead, if you want to add all defined entries, you need to instruct `bib2gls` to do this with the `selection` option. The following values are allowed:

- `recorded` and `deps`: add all recorded entries and their dependencies (default).
- `recorded` and `deps` and `see`: as above but will also add unrecorded entries whose `see` or `seealso` field refers to a recorded entry.
- `recorded` no `deps`: add all recorded entries but not their dependencies. The dependencies include those referenced in the `see` or `seealso` field or fields identified by `dependency-fields`, `parent` entries and those found referenced with commands like

`\gls` in the field values that are parsed by `bib2gls`. With this setting, parents will be omitted unless they've been referenced in the document through commands like `\gls`.

- `recorded` and `ancestors`: this is like the previous setting but parents are added even if they haven't been referenced in the document. The other dependent entries are omitted if they haven't been referenced in the document.
- `all`: add all entries found in the `.bib` files supplied in the `src` option.

The `<value>` must be supplied.

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@index{run}
@index{sprint,see={run}}
@index{dash,see={sprint}}
```

If the document only references the “run” entry (for example, using `\gls{run}`) then:

- If `selection={recorded and deps}`, only the “run” entry is selected. The “run” entry has a record, so it's selected, but it has no dependencies. Neither “sprint” nor “dash” have records, so they're not selected.
- If `selection={recorded and deps and see}`, the “run” and “sprint” entries are selected, but not the “dash” entry. The “run” entry is selected because it has a record. The “sprint” entry doesn't have a record but its `see` field includes “run”, which does have a record, so “sprint” is also selected. The “dash” entry doesn't have a record. Its `see` field references “sprint”. Although “sprint” has been selected, it doesn't have any records, so “dash” isn't selected.

The above is just an example. The circuitous redirection of “dash” to “sprint” to “run” is unhelpful to the reader and is best avoided (especially for an index where there are no accompanying descriptions and no location list for the intermediate “sprint”). A better method would be:

```
@index{run}
@index{sprint,see={run}}
@index{dash,see={run}}
```

The `selection={recorded and deps and see}` in this case will select all three entries, and the document won't send the reader on a long-winded detour.

Now suppose that the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@entry{run,
  name = {run},
  description={move fast using legs}
}

@entry{sprint,
```

```

name = {sprint},
description={run at full speed over short distance},
seealso={run}
}

```

```

@entry{dash,
name = {dash},
description={run in a great hurry},
seealso={sprint}
}

```

and suppose the document only references “dash” (for example, with `\gls{dash}`), then with the default `selection={recorded and deps}` “dash” will be selected because it has a record, and “sprint” will be selected because “dash” requires it (for the cross-reference), and “run” will be selected because “sprint” requires it (for the cross-reference). In this case, neither “sprint” nor “run” have a location list but they do both provide additional information for the reader in their descriptions.

A better method here would be for each entry to have a cross-reference list that includes all related terms:

```

@entry{run,
name = {run},
description={move fast using legs},
seealso={sprint,dash}
}

```

```

@entry{sprint,
name = {sprint},
description={run at full speed over short distance},
seealso={run,dash}
}

```

```

@entry{dash,
name = {dash},
description={run in a great hurry},
seealso={sprint,run}
}

```

Now, whichever one is indexed in the document, the other two will automatically be selected.

match=*<key=value list>*

It’s possible to filter the selection by matching field values. If *<key=value list>* is empty no filtering will be applied, otherwise *<key=value list>* should be a *<key>*=*<regexp>* list, where *<key>* is the name of a field or id for the entry’s label or entrytype for the `bib2gls` entry

type (as in the part after @ identifying the entry not the `type` field identifying the glossary label). If you've used `entry-type-aliases`, this refers to the target entry type not the original entry type specified in the `.bib` file.

The `<regex>` part should be a regular expression conforming to Java's `Pattern` class [5]. The pattern is anchored (`oo.*` matches `oops` but not `loops`) and `<regex>` can't be empty. Remember that \TeX will expand the option list as it writes the information to the `.aux` file so take care with special characters. For example, to match a literal period use `\string\.` not `\.` (backslash dot).

If the field is missing its value it is assumed to be empty for the purposes of the pattern match even if it will be assigned a non-empty default value when the entry is defined. If the field is unrecognised by `bib2gls` any reference to it in `<key=value list>` will be ignored.

If a field is listed multiple times, the pattern for that field is concatenated using:

```
(?:<pattern-1>)|(?:<pattern-2>)
```

where `<pattern-1>` is the current pattern for that field and `<pattern-2>` is the new pattern. This means it performs a logical OR. For the non-duplicate fields the logical operator is given by `match-op`. For example:

```
match-op={and},
match={
  category=animals,
  topic=biology,
  category=vegetables
}
```

This will keep all the selected entries that satisfy:

- `category` matches `(?:animals)|(?:vegetables)`
(the `category` is either `animals` or `vegetables`)

AND

- `topic` (custom key provided by user) is `biology`.

and will discard any entries that don't satisfy this condition. A message will be written to the log file for each entry that's discarded.

Patterns for unknown fields will be ignored. If the entire list consists of patterns for unknown fields it will be treated as `match={}`. That is, no filtering will be applied. In the above example, the custom `topic` key must be provided before the first `\GlsXtrLoadResources` with `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey`.

`match-op=<value>`

If the value of `match` contains more than one `<key>=<pattern>` element, the `match-op` determines whether to apply a logical AND or a logical OR. The `<value>` may be either `and` or `or`. The default is `match-op={and}`.

not-match= \langle key=value list \rangle

If `match={ \langle key=value list \rangle }` would cause an entry to be selected then `not-match={ \langle key=value list \rangle }` would cause that entry to be ignored. If \langle key=value list \rangle is missing, the filtering is removed. If you have both `match` and `not-match` in the same resource set, the last one listed takes precedence.

match-action= \langle value \rangle

The default behaviour with `match` or `not-match` is to filter the selection. This may be changed to append to the selection instead. The \langle value \rangle may be one of:

- `filter`: (default) filter selection;
- `add`: append any matches (with `match`) or non-matches (with `not-match`) to the selection. This setting can't be used with `sort={use}`.

For example, if I want to select all record entries and their dependencies, but I also want to make sure that any entries with the category set to `important` are always selected regardless of whether or not they have any records:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  match-action={add},
  match={category=important}
]
```

limit= \langle number \rangle

If \langle number \rangle is greater than 0 then this will truncate the list of selected entries after sorting to \langle number \rangle (if the list size is greater than that value). The transcript will show the message:

Truncating according to `limit= \langle number \rangle`

When used with `shuffle`, this provides a means of randomly selecting at most \langle number \rangle entries. The default setting is `limit={0}` (no truncation). A negative value of \langle number \rangle is not permitted.

If you have any dual entries, then the truncation will be applied to the combined list of primary and duals if `dual-sort={combine}` otherwise each list will be truncated separately by \langle number \rangle , which results in a maximum of $2 \times \langle$ number \rangle . Remember that tertiary entries are created when dual entries are defined in the `.gls.tex` file, so this will increase the total number of entries.

5.3 Hierarchical Options

`save-child-count`=*<boolean>*

This is a boolean option. The default setting is `save-child-count={false}`. If `save-child-count={true}`, each entry will be assigned a field called `childcount` with the value equal to the number of child entries that have been selected. As from version 1.5, this option also creates the `childlist` field for entries that have children selected. This field is in etoolbox's internal list format and can be iterated over using `\glstrfieldforlistloop`.

The assignment is done using `\GlsXtrSetField` so there's no associated key. You can test if the field is set and non-zero using:

```
\GlsXtrIfHasNonZeroChildCount{<entry label>}{<true>}{<false>}
```

which is provided with `glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.31+`. Within *<true>*, you can access the actual value with `\glscurrentfieldvalue`. If `save-child-count={false}`, this command will do *<false>* as the `childcount` field won't be set.

For example, suppose `entries.bib` contains:

```
@index{birds}
@index{duck,parent={birds}}
@index{goose,plural={geese},parent={birds}}
@index{swan,parent={birds}}
```

```
@index{minerals}
@index{quartz,parent={minerals}}
@index{corundum,parent={minerals}}
@index{amethyst,parent={minerals}}
@index{gypsum,parent={minerals}}
@index{gold,parent={minerals}}
```

and the document contains:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,style={indexgroup}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},save-child-count]

\begin{document}
\gls{duck} and \gls{goose}.
\gls{quartz}, \gls{corundum}, \gls{amethyst}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

Then the .glstex file will contain:

```
\GlsXtrSetField{birds}{childcount}{2}
\GlsXtrSetField{duck}{childcount}{0}
\glstrfieldlistadd{birds}{childlist}{duck}
\GlsXtrSetField{goose}{childcount}{0}
\glstrfieldlistadd{birds}{childlist}{goose}
\GlsXtrSetField{minerals}{childcount}{3}
\GlsXtrSetField{amethyst}{childcount}{0}
\glstrfieldlistadd{minerals}{childlist}{amethyst}
\GlsXtrSetField{corundum}{childcount}{0}
\glstrfieldlistadd{minerals}{childlist}{corundum}
\GlsXtrSetField{quartz}{childcount}{0}
\glstrfieldlistadd{minerals}{childlist}{quartz}
```

Note that although `birds` has three children defined in the .bib file, only two have been selected, so the child count is set to 2. Similarly the `minerals` entry has five children defined in the .bib file, but only three have been selected, so the child count is 3.

The following uses the post-description hook to show the child count in parentheses:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},category={general},save-child-count]

\glsdefpostdesc{general}{%
  \glstrifhasfield{childcount}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  { (child count: \glscurrentfieldvalue.)}%
  }%
}
```

`\glstrifhasfield` requires at least `glossaries-extra v1.19`. It's slightly more efficient than `\ifglshasfield` provided by the base `glossaries` package, and it doesn't complain if the entry or field don't exist, but note that `\glstrifhasfield` implicitly scopes its content. Use the starred version to omit the grouping. With `glossaries-extra v1.31+` you can perform a numerical test with `\GlsXtrIfFieldNonZero` or `\GlsXtrIfFieldEqNum`.

`flatten`=*<boolean>*

This is a boolean option. The default value is `flatten={false}`. If `flatten={true}`, the sorting will ignore hierarchy and the `parent` field will be omitted when writing the definitions to the .glstex file, but the parent entries will still be considered a dependent ancestor from the `selection` point of view.

Note the difference between this option and using `ignore-fields={parent}` which will remove the dependency (unless a dependency is established through another field).

`flatten-lonely`=*<value>*

This may take one of three values: `false` (default), `presort` and `postsort`. The value must be supplied.

Unlike the `flatten` option, which completely removes the hierarchy, the `flatten-lonely` option can be used to selectively alter the hierarchy. In this case only those entries that have a parent but have no siblings are considered. This option is affected by the `flatten-lonely-rule` setting. The conditions for moving a child up one hierarchical level are as follows:

- The child must have a parent, and
- the child can't have any selected siblings, and
- if `flatten-lonely-rule={only unrecorded parents}` then the parent can't have a location list, where the location list includes records and `see` or `seealso` cross-references (for the other rules the parent may have a location list as long as it only has the one child selected).

If the child is selected for hierarchical adjustment, the parent will be removed if:

- The parent has no location list, and
- `flatten-lonely-rule` isn't set to `no discard`.

The value of `flatten-lonely` determines whether the adjustment should be made before sorting (`presort`) or after sorting (`postsort`). To disable this function use `flatten-lonely={false}`.

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@index{birds}
@index{duck,parent={birds}}
@index{goose,plural={geese},parent={birds}}
@index{swan,parent={birds}}
@index{chicken,parent={birds}}

@index{vegetable}
@index{cabbage,parent={vegetable}}

@index{minerals}
@index{quartz,parent={minerals}}
@index{corundum,parent={minerals}}
@index{amethyst,parent={minerals}}
@index{gypsum,parent={minerals}}

@index{aardvark}
@index{bard}
@index{buzz}

@index{item}
@index{subitem,parent={item}}
@index{subsubitem,parent={subitem}}
```

and suppose the document contains:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,style={indexgroup}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries.bib}]

\begin{document}
\gls{duck}.
\gls{quartz}, \gls{corundum}, \gls{amethyst}.
\gls{aardvark}, \gls{bard}, \gls{buzz}.
\gls{vegetable}, \gls{cabbage}.
\gls{subsubitem}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

Although the duck entry has siblings in the entries.bib file, none of them have been recorded (indexed) in the document, nor has the parent birds entry.

This document hasn't used `flatten-lonely`, so the default `flatten-lonely={false}` is assumed. This results in the hierarchical structure:

A

aardvark 1

B

bard 1

birds

duck 1

buzz 1

I

item

subitem

subsubitem 1

M

minerals

amethyst 1

corundum 1

quartz 1

V

vegetable 1

cabbage 1

(The “1” in the above indicates the page number.) There are some entries here that look a little odd: duck, cabbage and subsubitem. In each case they are a lone child entry. It would look better if they could be compressed, but I don’t want to use the `flatten` option, as I still want to keep the mineral hierarchy.

If I now add `flatten-lonely={postsort}`:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries.bib},flatten-lonely={postsort}]
```

the hierarchy becomes:

A

aardvark 1

B

bard 1

birds, duck 1

buzz 1

I

item, subitem, subsubitem 1

M

minerals

amethyst 1

corundum 1

quartz 1

V

vegetable 1

cabbage 1

The `name` field of the duck entry has been set to:

```
name={\bibglsflattenedchildpostsort{birds}{duck}}
```

the `text` field has been set to:

```
text={duck}
```

the `group` field is copied over from the parent entry (“B”), and the `parent` field has been adjusted, moving duck up one hierarchical level. Finally, the former parent birds entry has been removed (the default `flatten-lonely-rule={only unrecorded parents}` is in effect).

The default definition of `\bibglsflattenedchildpostsort` formats its arguments so that they are separated by a comma and space (“birds, duck”). If the `text` field had been set in the original `@index` definition of duck, it wouldn’t have been altered. This adjustment ensures that in the document `\gls{duck}` still produces “duck” rather than “birds, duck”. (If the child and parent `name` fields are identical, the terms are considered homographs. See below for further details.)

The `subsubitem` entry has also been adjusted. This was done in a multi-stage process, starting with sub-items and then moving down the hierarchical levels:

- The `subitem` entry was adjusted, moving it from a sub-entry to a top-level entry. The `name` field was then modified to:

```
name={\bibglsflattenedchildpostsort{item}{subitem}}
```

This now means that the `subsubitem` entry is now a sub-entry (rather than a sub-sub-entry). The `subitem` entry now has no parent, but at this stage the `subsubitem` entry still has `subitem` as its parent.

- The `subsubitem` entry is then adjusted moving from a sub-entry to a top-level entry. The `name` field was then modified to:

```
name=
{%
  \bibglsflattenedchildpostsort
  {%
    % name from former parent
    \bibglsflattenedchildpostsort{item}{subitem}%
  }%
  {subsubitem}% original name
}
```

The first argument of `\bibglsflattenedchildpostsort` is obtained from the `name` field of the entry’s former parent (which is removed from the child’s set of ancestors). This field value was changed in the previous step, and the change is reflected here.

This means that the name for `subitem` will be displayed as “item, subitem” and the name for `subsubitem` will be displayed as “item, subitem, subsubitem”.

- The parent entries `item` and `subitem` are removed from the selection as they have no location lists.

Note that the cabbage sub-entry hasn't been adjusted. It doesn't have any siblings but its parent entry (`vegetable`) has a location list so it can't be discarded. If I change the rule:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries.bib},  
  flatten-lonely-rule={discard unrecorded},  
  flatten-lonely={postsort}  
]
```

then this will move the cabbage entry up a level but the original parent entry `vegetable` will remain:

A

aardvark 1

B

bard 1

birds, duck 1

buzz 1

I

item, subitem, subsubitem 1

M

minerals

amethyst 1

corundum 1

quartz 1

V

vegetable 1

vegetable, cabbage 1

Remember that `flatten-lonely={postsort}` performs the adjustment after sorting. This means that the entries are still in the same relative location that they were in with the original `flatten-lonely={false}` setting. For example, `duck` remains in the B letter group before “`buzz`”.

With `flatten-lonely={presort}` the adjustments are made before the sorting is performed. For example, using:

5 Resource File Options

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [src={entries.bib},  
  flatten-lonely-rule={discard unrecorded},  
  flatten-lonely={presort}  
]
```

the hierarchical order is now:

A

aardvark 1

B

bard 1

buzz 1

C

cabbage 1

D

duck 1

M

minerals

amethyst 1

corundum 1

quartz 1

S

subsubitem 1

V

vegetable 1

This method uses a different format for the modified `name` field. For example, the duck entry now has:

```
name={\bibglsflattenedchildpresort{duck}{birds}}
```

The default definition of `\bibglsflattenedchildpresort` simply does the first argument and ignores the second. The sorting is then performed, but the interpreter recognises this command and can deduce that the sort value for this entry should be duck, so “duck” now ends up in the D letter group.

If you provide a definition of `\bibglsflattenedchildpresort` in the `@preamble`, it will be picked up by the interpreter. For example:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\bibglsflattenedchildpresort}[2]{#1 (#2)}"}
```

Note that the `text` field is only changed if not already set. This option may have unpredictable results for abbreviations as the `name` field (and sometimes the `text` field) is typically set by the abbreviation style. Remember that if the parent entry doesn't have a location list and the rule isn't set to `no discard` then the parent entry will be discarded after all relevant entries and their dependencies have been selected, so any cross-references within the parent entry (such as `\gls` occurring in the description) may end up being selected even if they wouldn't be selected if the parent entry didn't exist.

With both `presort` and `postsort`, if the parent `name` is the same as the child's `name` then the child is considered a homograph and the child's name is set to:

```
\bibglsflattenedhomograph{<name>}{<parent label>}
```

instead of the corresponding `\bibglsflattenedchild...sort`. This defaults to just `<name>`.

flatten-lonely-rule=`<value>`

This option governs the rule used by `flatten-lonely` to determine which sub-entries (that have no siblings) to adjust and which parents to remove. The value may be one of the following:

only unrecorded parents Only the sub-entries that have a parent without a location list will be altered. The parent entry will be removed from the selection. This value is the default setting.

discard unrecorded This setting will adjust all sub-entries that have no siblings regardless of whether or not the parent has a location list. Only the parent entries that don't have a location list will be removed from the selection.

no discard This setting will adjust all sub-entries that don't have siblings regardless of whether or not the parent has a location list. No entries will be discarded, so parent entries that don't have a location list will still appear in the glossary.

In the above, the location list includes records and cross-references obtained from the `see` or `seealso` fields. See `flatten-lonely` for further details.

`strip-missing-parents=<boolean>`

The glossaries package requires that all child entries must be defined after the parent entry. An error occurs otherwise, so `bib2gls` will omit the `parent` field if it can't be found in the given resource set. However, when the default `strip-missing-parents={false}` is on, this omission only occurs while writing the definitions in the `.gls.tex` file (after selection and sorting).

Sorting is performed hierarchically and the `group` field is set accordingly for the top-level entries (but not for child entries), which means that an entry with a `parent` field will be treated by the sort method as a child entry. This can lead to a strange result, which `bib2gls` warns about:

```
Parent 'parent id' not found for entry child-id
```

This is the default behaviour as it may simply be a result of a typing mistake in the `parent` field. If you actually want missing parents to be stripped before sorting (but after the selection process) then use `strip-missing-parents={true}`. If you want all parents stripped then use `flatten` or `ignore-fields={parent}` instead. As from version 1.4, if you want `bib2gls` to create the missing parents, then you can use `missing-parents={create}`.

`missing-parents=<value>`

As an alternative to `strip-missing-parents`, as from version 1.4 you can now use `missing-parents={<value>}` where `<value>` may be one of:

- `strip`: this is equivalent to `strip-missing-parents={true}`;
- `warn`: this is equivalent to the default `strip-missing-parents={false}`;
- `create`: this will create a new `@index` entry with the missing parent's label (after it's been processed by options such as `labelify`) with the `name` obtained from the *original* value of the `parent` field (before being processed by options like `labelify`). If the child entry has the `type` field set, then the new parent entry will be given the same value. The `category` for the new parent entry can be assigned with `missing-parent-category`.

For example, consider the `books.bib` file which contains entries like:

```
@entry{ubik,
  name={Ubik},
  description={novel by Philip K. Dick},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Philip K.}{Dick}},
  year={1969}
}
```

then the field alias:

```
field-aliases={author=parent}
```

will treat:

```
author={\sortmediacreator{Philip K.}{Dick}},
```

as though it had been defined as:

```
parent={\sortmediacreator{Philip K.}{Dick}},
```

This can be converted into a label with the options:

```
labelify={parent},
labelify-replace={
  {[ \string\.]}}
}
```

If the interpreter has been provided with the definition:

```
\providecommand*\sortmediacreator}[2]{#2 #1}
```

then the `parent` field for the `ubik` entry will become `DickPhilipK` but the original value is stored internally when `missing-parents={create}` is set so that it can be used as the `name` if the parent needs to be created. Once all the entries have been processed, if `ubik` has been selected but no entry can be found with the label `DickPhilipK` then a new entry will be added as though it had been defined with:

```
@index{DickPhilipK,
  name={\sortmediacreator{Philip K.}{Dick}}
}
```

This is an alternative approach to the `sample-authors.tex` document from the examples chapter.

`missing-parent-category=⟨value⟩`

If a missing parent entry is created through the use of `missing-parents={create}` then the `category` field can be assigned to the new parent entry with this option. The `⟨value⟩` may be one of:

- `same as child`: the parent entry's `category` field is set to the same value as the child's (if set);
- `same as base`: the parent entry's `category` is set to the base name of the `.bib` file that provided the child entry's definition;
- `no value`: don't set the `category` field;
- `⟨label⟩`: the parent entry's `category` field is set to `⟨label⟩` (which shouldn't contain any special characters).

The default setting is `missing-parent-category={no value}`.

5.4 Master Documents

Suppose you have two documents `mybook.tex` and `myarticle.tex` that share a common glossary that's shown in `mybook.pdf` but not in `myarticle.pdf`. Furthermore, you'd like to use `hyperref` and be able to click on a term in `myarticle.pdf` and be taken to the relevant page in `mybook.pdf` where the term is listed in the glossary.

This can be achieved with the `targeturl` and `targetname` category attributes. For example, without `bib2gls` the file `mybook.tex` might look like:

```
\documentclass{book}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage{glossaries-extra}

\makeglossaries

\newglossaryentry{sample}{name={sample},description={an example}}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Example}
\gls{sample}.

\printglossaries
\end{document}
```

The other document `myarticle.tex` might look like:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage{glossaries-extra}

\newignoredglossary*{external}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{external}{targeturl}{mybook.pdf}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{external}{targetname}{\glolinkprefix\glslabel}

\newglossaryentry{sample}{type=external,category=external,
name={sample},description={an example}}

\begin{document}
\gls{sample}.
\end{document}
```

In this case the main glossary isn't used, but the category attributes allow a mixture of internal and external references, so the main glossary could be used for the internal references. (In which case, `\makeglossaries` and `\printglossaries` would need to be added back to `myarticle.tex`.)

5 Resource File Options

Note that both documents had to define the common terms. The above documents can be rewritten to work with bib2gls. First a .bib file needs to be created:

```
@entry{sample,  
  name={sample},  
  description={an example}  
}
```

Assuming this file is called `myentries.bib`, then `mybook.tex` can be changed to:

```
\documentclass{book}  
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}  
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}  
  
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={myentries}]  
  
\begin{document}  
\chapter{Example}  
\gls{sample}.  
  
\printunsrtglossaries  
\end{document}
```

and `myarticle.tex` can be changed to:

```
\documentclass{article}  
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}  
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}  
  
\newignoredglossary*{external}  
\glsssetcategoryattribute{external}{targeturl}{mybook.pdf}  
\glsssetcategoryattribute{external}{targetname}{\glolinkprefix\glslabel}  
  
\GlsXtrLoadResources[  
  src={myentries},  
  sort={none},  
  type={external},  
  category={external}  
]  
  
\begin{document}  
\gls{sample}.  
\end{document}
```

Most of the options related to sorting and the glossary format are unneeded here since the glossary isn't being displayed. This may be sufficient for your needs, but it may be that

the book has changed various settings that have been written to `mybook.glstex` but aren't present in the `.bib` file (such as `short-case-change={uc}`). In this case, you could just remember to copy over the settings from `mybook.tex` to `myarticle.tex`, but another possibility is to simply make `myarticle.tex` input `mybook.glstex` instead of using `\GlsXtrLoadResources`. This can work but it's not so convenient to set the label prefix, the type and the category. The `master` option allows this, but it has limitations (see below), so in complex cases (in particular different label prefixes combined with hierarchical entries or cross-references) you'll have to use the method shown in the example code above.

master= $\langle name \rangle$

This option will disable most of the options that relate to parsing and processing data contained in `.bib` files (since this option doesn't actually read any `.bib` files). It also can't be used with `action={copy}` or `action={define or copy}`.

The use of `master` isn't always suitable. In particular if any of the terms cross-reference each other, such as through the `see` or `seealso` field or the `parent` field or using commands like `\gls` in any of the other fields when the labels have been assigned prefixes. In this case you will need to use the method described in the example above.

The $\langle name \rangle$ is the name of the `.aux` file for the master document without the extension (in this case, `mybook`). It needs to be relative to the document referencing it or an absolute path using forward slashes as the directory divider. Remember that if it's a relative path, the PDF files (`mybook.pdf` and `myarticle.pdf`) will also need to be located in the same relative position.

When `bib2gls` detects the `master` option, it won't search for entries in any `.bib` files (for that particular resource set) but will create a `.glstex` file that inputs the master document's `.glstex` files, but it will additionally temporarily adjust the internal commands used to define entries so that the prefix given by `label-prefix`, the glossary type and the category type are all automatically inserted. If the `type` or `category` options haven't been used, the corresponding value will default to `master`. The `targeturl` and `targetname` category attributes will automatically be set, and the glossary type will be provided using `\provideignoredglossary*{ $\langle type \rangle$ }`.

The above `myarticle.tex` can be changed to:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[label-prefix={book.},master={mybook}]

\begin{document}
\gls{book.sample}.
\end{document}
```

There are some settings from the master document that you still need to repeat in the other document. These include the label prefixes set when the master document loaded the

resource files, and any settings in the master document that relate to the master document's entries.

For example, if the master document loaded a resource file with `label-prefix={term.}` then you also need this prefix when you reference the entries in the dependent document in addition to the `label-prefix` for the dependent document. Suppose `mybook.tex` loads the resources using:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={myentries},label-prefix={term.}]
```

and `myarticle.tex` loads the resources using:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[label-prefix={book.},master={mybook}]
```

Then the entries referenced in `myarticle.tex` need to use the prefix `book.term.` as in:

This is a `\gls{book.term.sample}` term.

Remember that the category labels will need adjusting to reflect the change in category label in the dependent document.

For example, if `mybook.tex` included:

```
\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-sc}
```

then `myarticle.tex` will need:

```
\setabbreviationstyle[master]{long-short-sc}
```

(change `master` to `<value>` if you have used `category={<value>}`). You can, of course, choose a different abbreviation style for the dependent document, but the category in the optional argument needs to be correct.

`master-resources=<list>`

If the master document has multiple resource files then by default all the master document's `.glstex` files will be input. If you don't want them all you can use `master-resources` to specify only those files that should be included. The value `<list>` is a comma-separated list of names, where each name corresponds to the final argument of `\glsxtrresourcefile`. Remember that `\GlsXtrLoadResources` is just a shortcut for `\glsxtrresourcefile` that bases the name on `\jobname`. (Note that, as with the argument of `\glsxtrresourcefile`, the `.glstex` extension should not be included in `<list>`.) The file `\jobname.glstex` is considered the primary resource file and the files `\jobname-<n>.glstex` (starting with `<n>` equal to 1) are considered the supplementary resource files.

For example, to just select the first and third of the supplementary resource files (omitting the primary `mybook.glstex`):

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  master={mybook},
  master-resources={mybook-1,mybook-3}
]
```

5.5 Field and Label Options

The options in this section may be used to set or adjust field values or labels. Some field values are expected to be labels (such as `group`). These labels must not contain special characters or commands, but it's possible to convert a field value into a valid label using options such as `labelify`.

Label Options

`interpret-label-fields=<boolean>`

This is a boolean option that determines whether or not the fields that may only contain labels should have their values interpreted (`parent`, `category`, `type`, `group`, `seealso` and `alias`). Although this option interprets commands within those fields, it doesn't strip any characters that can't be used within a label. The `see` field isn't included as it may optionally start with [`<tag>`] where `<tag>` may legitimately contain \LaTeX code that shouldn't be interpreted.

The default setting is `interpret-label-fields={false}`. Note that if this setting is on, cross-resource references aren't permitted. This setting has no effect if the interpreter has been disabled.

Related settings are `labelify` and `labelify-list` which can be used to strip content that can't be used in labels and may be used more generally for other fields. The `labelify` and `labelify-list` options are performed before `interpret-label-fields`.

`labelify=<list>`

This option should take a comma-separated list of recognised field names as the value. (If a field is present in both `labelify` and `labelify-list`, then `labelify-list` takes precedence.) Note that if this setting is on, cross-resource references aren't permitted.

Each listed field will be converted into a string suitable for use as a label. (Not necessarily a glossary entry label, but any label that may be used in the construction of a control sequence name.)

The conversion is performed in the following order:

1. If the interpreter is on and the field value contains any of the characters `\` (backslash), `{` (begin group), `}` (end group), `~` (non-breakable space) or `$` (maths shift), then the value is interpreted.
2. Any substitutions that have been specified with `labelify-replace` are performed.
3. All characters that aren't alphanumeric or the space character or any of the following punctuation characters `.` (full stop), `-` (hyphen), `+` (plus), `:` (colon), `;` (semi-colon), `|` (pipe), `/` (forward slash), `!` (exclamation mark), `?` (question mark), `*` (asterisk), `<` (less than), `>` (greater than), ``` (backtick), `'` (apostrophe) or `@` (at-sign) are stripped. If you want to retain commas, use `labelify-list` instead. If you want to strip any of the allowed punctuation, use `labelify-replace` to remove the unwanted characters. (Re-

member that babel can make some of these punctuation characters active, in which case they need to be stripped.)

4. If `bib2gls` hasn't detected `fontspec` in the document's transcript file, the value is then decomposed and all non-ASCII characters are removed.

For example, suppose the `.bib` file contains:

```
@index{sample,
  name={\AA ngstr\ "om, \0 stergaard, d'Arcy, and Fotheringay-Smythe}
}
```

Then:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  labelify={name}
]
```

will convert the `name` field into:

Angstrom stergaard d'Arcy and Fotheringay-Smythe

if the document hasn't used `fontspec` otherwise it will be:

Ångström Østergaard d'Arcy and Fotheringay-Smythe

Note that \emptyset is considered an unmodified letter and so can't be decomposed into a basic Latin letter with a combining diacritic. It's therefore removed completely from the non-`fontspec` version. Whereas Å can be decomposed into “A” followed by the “combining ring above” character and ö can be decomposed into “o” followed by the “combining diaeresis” character. You can use `labelify-replace` to replace non-ASCII characters into the closest match. Alternatively, switch to using $X_{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$ or LuaTeX .

You can use this option with `replicate-fields` if you need to retain the original:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  replicate-fields={name={user1}},
  labelify={user1}
]
```

`labelify-list`= $\langle list \rangle$

This option is like `labelify` but it retains commas, as it's designed for fields that should be converted into a comma-separated list of labels. Any empty elements are removed. For example, with the `.bib` entry from above:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  replicate-fields={name={user1}},
  labelify-list={user1}
]
```

will convert the `user1` field into:

Angstrom, stergaard, d'Arcy, and Fotheringay-Smythe

or:

Ångström, Østergaard, d'Arcy, and Fotheringay-Smythe

depending on whether or not fontspec was detected.

`labelify-replace=<list>`

This option takes a comma-separated list as a value with each element in the list in the form `{<regex>}{<replacement>}` where `<regex>` is a regular expression (that conforms to Java's Pattern class [5]) and `<replacement>` is the replacement text. Remember that the argument of `\GlsXtrLoadResources` is expanded when written to the `.aux` file so take care to protect any special characters. For example, to match a literal full stop use `\string\.` rather than just `\.` (backslash dot).

In the `<replacement>` part, you can use `\glsapturedgroup<n>` to reference a captured sub-sequence. For example:

```
labelify-replace={{([A-Z])\string\.}{\glsapturedgroup1}}
```

This removes any full stop that follows any of the characters A,...,Z. Alternatively, you can just use `\string\$` instead of `\glsapturedgroup`. If you want a literal dollar character, you need to use `\glshex24` (or `\string\u24`). This isn't recommended for labels (since special characters are automatically stripped), but `sort-replace` follows the same rules as `labelify-replace`, and it may be needed for that.

Both `labelify` and `labelify-list` use the `labelify-replace` setting to perform substitutions. For example, to replace the sub-string " and " (including spaces) with a comma:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  replicate-fields={name={user1}},
  labelify-replace={{ and }{,}},
  labelify-list={user1}
]
```

The earlier example will now end up as:

Angstrom, stergaard, d'Arcy,Fotheringay-Smythe

or:

Ångström, Østergaard, d'Arcy,Fotheringay-Smythe

depending on whether or not fontspec was detected.

Note that this produces the same result regardless of whether or not the Oxford comma is present as , and would first be converted to , , and then the empty element is removed resulting in a single comma.

You can have more than one replacement:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  replicate-fields={name={user1}},
  labelify-replace={
    { and }{,},% first substitution
    {[ '\string\ - ]}{},% second substitution
    {\glshex00D8}{O}% third substitution
  },
  labelify-list={user1}
]
```

This additionally removes the space, apostrophe and hyphen characters (second substitution) and replaces “Ø” (0x00D8) with “O” (third substitution) so the string now ends up as:

Angstrom,Ostergaard,dArcy,FotheringaySmythe

or:

Ångström,Ostergaard,dArcy,FotheringaySmythe

depending on whether or not fontspec was detected.

`label-prefix=<tag>`

The `label-prefix` option prepends `<tag>` to each entry’s label. This `<tag>` will also be inserted in front of any cross-references, unless they start with `dual.` or `tertiary.` or `ext<n>`. (where `<n>` is an integer). Use `dual-prefix` to change the dual label prefixes and `ext-prefixes` to change the external label prefixes.

As from version 1.8, the primary label prefix is identified in the `.glstex` file with:

```
\bibglsprimaryprefixlabel{<prefix>}
```

For example, if the `.bib` file contains:

```
@entry{bird,
  name={bird},
  description = {feathered animal, such as a \gls{duck} or \gls{goose}}
}
```

```
@entry{waterfowl,
  name={waterfowl},
  description={Any \gls{bird} that lives in or about water},
  see={ [see also]{duck,goose}}
}
```

```
@index{duck}
```

```
@index{goose,plural="geese"}
```

Then if this .bib file is loaded with `label-prefix={gls.}` it's as though the entries had been defined as:

```
@entry{gls.bird,
  name={bird},
  description = {feathered animal, such as a \gls{gls.duck} or \gls
{gls.goose}}
}
```

```
@entry{gls.waterfowl,
  name={waterfowl},
  description={Any \gls{gls.bird} that lives in or about water},
  see={ [see also]{gls.duck,gls.goose}}
}
```

```
@index{gls.duck,name={duck}}
```

```
@index{gls.goose,name={goose},plural="geese"}
```

Remember to use this prefix when you reference the terms in the document with commands like `\gls`.

`duplicate-label-suffix=<value>`

The glossaries package doesn't permit entries with duplicate labels (even if they're in different glossaries). If you have multiple resource sets and an entry that's selected in one resource set is also selected in another, by default, `bib2gls` will issue a warning, but it will still write the entry definition to the .gls.tex file, which means you'll also get a warning from `glossaries-extra` and the duplicate definition will be ignored, but associated internal fields set with commands like `\GlsXtrSetField` may still be set.

If you actually want the duplicate, you need to specify a suffix with `duplicate-label-suffix`. This suffix is only set just before writing the entry definition to the .gls.tex file, so it doesn't affect selection criteria nor can label substitutions be performed in any cross-references. Options such as `set-widest` that reference entry labels are incompatible as they will use the unsuffixed label.

The actual suffix is formed from $\langle value \rangle \langle n \rangle$ where $\langle n \rangle$ is an integer that's incremented in the event of multiple duplicates. For example, `duplicate-label-suffix={.copy}` will change the label to $\langle id \rangle .copy1$ for the first duplicate of the entry whose label is $\langle id \rangle$, and $\langle id \rangle .copy2$ for the second duplicate, etc.

`record-label-prefix= $\langle tag \rangle$`

If set, this option will cause bib2gls to pretend that each record label starts with $\langle tag \rangle$, if it doesn't already. For example, suppose the records in the `.aux` file are:

```
\glstr@record{bird}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glstr@record{waterfowl}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glstr@record{idx.duck}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glstr@record{idx.goose}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
```

The use of `record-label-prefix={idx.}` makes bib2gls act as though the records were given as:

```
\glstr@record{idx.bird}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glstr@record{idx.waterfowl}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glstr@record{idx.duck}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glstr@record{idx.goose}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
```

`cs-label-prefix= $\langle tag \rangle$`

If you have commands such as `\gls{ $\langle label \rangle$ }` or `\glstext{ $\langle label \rangle$ }` in field values (in situations where nested link text won't cause a problem) the $\langle label \rangle$ will be converted as follows:

- if $\langle label \rangle$ starts with `dual.` then `dual.` will be replaced by the `dual-prefix` value;
- if $\langle label \rangle$ starts with `tertiary.` then `tertiary.` will be replaced by the `tertiary-prefix` value;
- if $\langle label \rangle$ starts with `ext $\langle n \rangle$.` then `ext $\langle n \rangle$.` will be replaced by the corresponding `ext-prefixes` setting (if cross-resource reference mode is enabled, see section 1.3);
- if $\langle label \rangle$ doesn't start with one of the above recognised prefixes then, if `cs-label-prefix` has been used the supplied value will be inserted otherwise the `label-prefix` setting will be inserted.

For example, given:

```
@entry{bird,
  name={bird},
  description = {feathered animal, such as a \gls{duck} or \gls{goose}}
}
```

then if `label-prefix={idx.}` is set but `cs-label-prefix` isn't included in the resource option list this will convert the `description` field to:

```
description = {feathered animal, such as a \gls{idx.duck} or
\gls{idx.goose}}
```

However with `cs-label-prefix={gls.}` the `description` field will be converted to:

```
description = {feathered animal, such as a \gls{gls.duck} or
\gls{gls.goose}}
```

regardless of the `label-prefix` setting. Whereas if the original entry definition is:

```
@entry{bird,
  name={bird},
  description = {feathered animal, such as a \gls{dual.duck} or
\gls{dual.goose}}
}
```

then `dual.` will be replaced by the value of the `dual-prefix` option regardless of the `cs-label-prefix` setting.

The `cs-label-prefix` setting doesn't affect labels in the fields that have an entry label or label list as the value (`parent`, `alias`, `see` and `seealso`).

`ext-prefixes=<list>`

Any cross-references in the `.bib` file that start with `ext<n>`. (where `<n>` is a positive integer) will be substituted with the `<n>`th tag listed in the comma-separated `<list>`. If there aren't that many items in the list, the `ext<n>`. will simply be removed. The default setting is an empty list, which will strip all `ext<n>`. prefixes. Remember that cross-resource reference mode needs to be enabled for this option to work (see section 1.3).

As from version 1.8, the external label prefixes are identified in the `.gls.tex` file with:

```
\bibglsexternalprefixlabel{<n>}{<prefix>}
```

For example, suppose the file `entries-terms.bib` contains:

```
@entry{set,
  name={set},
  description={collection of values, denoted \gls{ext1.set}}
}
```

and the file `entries-symbols.bib` contains:

```
@symbol{set,
  name={\ensuremath{\mathcal{S}}},
  description={a \gls{ext1.set}}
}
```

5 Resource File Options

These files both contain an entry with the label set but the `description` field includes `\gls{ext1.set}` which is referencing the entry from the other file. These two files can be loaded without conflict using:

```
\usepackage[record,symbols]{glossaries-extra}
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-terms},  
  label-prefix={gls.},  
  ext-prefixes={sym.}  
]
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-symbols},  
  type={symbols},  
  label-prefix={sym.},  
  ext-prefixes={gls.}  
]
```

Now the set entry from `entries-terms.bib` will be defined with the label `gls.set` and the description will be:

```
collection of values, denoted \gls{sym.set}
```

The set entry from `entries-symbols.bib` will be defined with the label `sym.set` and the description will be:

```
a \gls{gls.set}
```

Note that in this case the `.bib` files have to be loaded as two separate resources. They can't be combined into a single `src` list as the labels aren't unique.

If you want to allow the flexibility to choose between loading them together or separately, you'll have to give them unique labels. For example, `entries-terms.bib` could contain:

```
@entry{set,  
  name={set},  
  description={collection of values, denoted \gls{ext1.S}}  
}
```

and `entries-symbols.bib` could contain:

```
@symbol{S,  
  name={\ensuremath{\mathcal{S}}},  
  description={a \gls{ext1.set}}  
}
```

Now they can be combined with:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-terms,entries-symbols}]
```

which will simply strip the `ext1.` prefix from the cross-references. Alternatively:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-terms,entries-symbols},
  label-prefix={gls.},
  ext-prefixes={gls.}
]
```

which will insert the supplied `label-prefix` at the start of the labels in the entry definitions and will replace the `ext1.` prefix with `gls.` in the cross-references.

`save-original-id=<value>`

The `<value>` may be either the keyword `false` or the name of an internal field in which to store the entry's original label (as given in the `.bib` file). The default setting is `save-original-id={false}`. If `<value>` is omitted, `save-original-id={originalid}` is assumed.

If `<value>` is a known field, it will be set after the field aliases, otherwise it will simply be added to the `.glstex` file using `\GlsXtrSetField` after the entry definition.

`dependency-fields=<list>`

The `<list>` should be a comma-separated list of fields that have values in the form `[<tag>]<id-list>` where `<id-list>` is a comma-separated list of entry labels. This makes those fields act like the `see` field by identifying the listed entries as dependencies, but the information isn't added to the cross-reference part of the location list. This action is performed after `labelify-list`, if that's also set.

For example, suppose the file `entries-en.bib` contains:

```
@index{cat,
  translations-pt={gato,gatinho},
  seealso={kitten}
}
```

```
@index{kitten,
  translations-pt={gato,gatinho}
}
```

```
@index{staple}
@index{rivet}
@index{mat}
@index{carpet}
@index{rug}
@index{tapestry}
@index{doormat}
@index{matting}
```

```
@index{coconut-matting,
  name={coconut matting}
}
@index{track}
@index{furrow}
```

and suppose the file `entries-pt.bib` contains:

```
@index{gato,
  prefix={o},
  translations-en={cat,staple,rivet},
  seealso={gatinho}
}

@index{gatinho,
  translations-en={kitten}
}

@index{tapete,
  translations-en={carpet,rug,mat,tapestry}
}

@index{esteira,
  prefix={a},
  translations-en={mat,track,matting,furrow}
}

@index{capacho,
  prefix={o},
  translations-en={doormat,matting,mat,coconut-matting}
}
```

The aim here is to have a document containing an English-to-Portuguese and a Portuguese-to-English dictionary. The custom `translations-pt` and `translations-pt` fields contain comma-separated lists of possible translations. In this case I don't want to use the `see` field (and, in fact, can't for the entries that have the `seealso` field set), but I can identify the values of those fields as dependent entries to ensure that they are selected even if they're not referenced in the document.

For convenience I've aliased the custom fields to `user1`:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[british,brazilian]{babel}
```

```

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,
  nomain,
  nostyles,
  stylemods={bookindex},
  style={bookindex}
]{glossaries-extra}
\usepackage{glossaries-prefix}

\newglossary*{en}{English Terms}
\newglossary*{pt}{Portuguese Terms}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  type={en},
  src={entries-en},
  sort={en-GB},
  category={en},
  field-aliases={translations-pt=user1},
  dependency-fields={user1},
  sort-label-list={user1:pt-BR:glstentryname}
]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  type={pt},
  src={entries-pt},
  sort={pt-BR},
  category={pt},
  field-aliases={translations-en=user1},
  dependency-fields={user1},
  sort-label-list={user1:en-GB:glstentryname}
]

\apptoglossarypreamble[en]{\selectlanguage{british}}
\apptoglossarypreamble[pt]{\selectlanguage{brazilian}}

\begin{document}
\selectlanguage{british}
The \gls{cat} sat on the \gls{mat}.

\selectlanguage{brazilian}
O \gls{gato} sentou-se no \gls{tapete}.

\renewcommand*{\glstxrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glstxrifhasfield{prefix}{#1}{\xmakefirsttuc\glscurrentfieldvalue\_\_}{}}%
\glossentryname{#1}%

```

```

\glxtrifhasfield{useri}{#1}
{; translations: \glxtrseelist\glscurrentfieldvalue}{}%
}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

Assignments

`group=<label>`

The `group` option may only be used with the `--group` switch. This will set the `group` field to `<label>` unless `<label>` is `auto`, in which case the value is set automatically during the sorting (see also `group-formation`). The corresponding title can be set with `\glxtrsetgroup-title` if the title is different from the label. The default behaviour is `group={auto}`.

For example:

```

\GlsXtrLoadResources[sort={integer},group={Constants},
src={entries-constants}% data in entries-constants.bib
]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[sort={letter-case},group={Variables},
src={entries-variables}% data in entries-variables.bib
]

```

In this case, if the `type` field hasn't been set in the `.bib` files, these entries will be added to the same glossary, but will be grouped according to each instance of `\GlsXtrLoadResources`, with the provided group label.

`category=<value>`

The selected entries may all have their `category` field changed before writing their definitions to the `.gls.tex` file. The `<value>` may be:

- `same as entry`: set the `category` to the `.bib` entry type used to define it (lower case and without the initial @) after any aliasing, if applicable;
- `same as original entry`: (new to v1.4) set the `category` to the original entry type (lower case and without the initial @) before it was aliased (behaves like `same as entry` if the entry type wasn't aliased);
- `same as base`: (new to v1.1) set the `category` to the base name of the `.bib` file (without the extension) that provided the entry definition;
- `same as type`: set the `category` to the same value as the `type` field (if that field has been provided either in the `.bib` file or through the `type` option);
- `<label>`: the `category` is set to `<label>` (which mustn't contain any special characters).

This will override any `category` fields supplied in the `.bib` file.

When used with `entry-type-aliases`, the option `category={same as entry}` refers to the *target* entry type whereas `category={same as original entry}` refers to the *original* entry type given in the `.bib` file. In both cases, the value is converted to lower case to ensure consistency.

For example, if the `.bib` file contains:

```
@entry{bird,
  name={bird},
  description = {feathered animal}
}
```

```
@index{duck}
```

```
@index{goose,plural="geese"}
```

```
@dualentry{dog,
  name={dog},
  description={chien}
}
```

then if the document contains:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[category={same as entry},src={entries}]
```

this will set the `category` of the `bird` term to `entry` (since it was defined with `@entry`), the `category` of the `duck` and `goose` terms to `index` (since they were defined with `@index`), and the `category` of the `dog` term to `dualentry` (since it was defined with `@dualentry`). Note that the dual entry `dual.dog` doesn't have the `category` set, since that's governed by `dual-category` instead.

If, instead, the document contains:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[category={animals},src={entries}]
```

then the `category` of all the primary selected entries will be set to `animals`. Again the dual entry `dual.dog` doesn't have the `category` set.

Note that the categories may be overridden by the commands that are used to actually define the entries (such as `\bibglsnewindex`).

For example, if the document contains:

```
\newcommand{\bibglsnewdualentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2,category={dual}}{#4}%
}
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[category={animals},src={entries}]
```

then both the `dog` and `dual.dog` entries will have their `category` field set to `dual` since the new definition of `\bibglsnewdualentry` has overridden the `category={animals}` option.

`type=<value>`

The `<value>` may be one of:

- `same as entry` set the `type` field to the entry type (lower case and without the initial @);
- `same as original entry` set the `type` to the original entry type (lower case and without the initial @) before it was aliased (behaves like `same as entry` if the entry type wasn't aliased);
- `same as base` set the `type` field to the base name of the corresponding `.bib` file (without the extension);
- `same as category` set the `type` field to the same value as the `category` field (`type` unchanged if `category` not set);
- `<label>` sets the `type` field to the glossary identified by `<label>`.

When used with `entry-type-aliases`, the option `type={same as entry}` refers to the *target* entry type and `type={same as original entry}` refers to the *original* entry type given in the `.bib` file. It's not possible to have both `category={same as type}` and `type={same as category}`.

Note that this setting only changes the `type` field for primary entries. Use `dual-type` for dual entries.

For example:

```
\usepackage[record,symbols]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-symbols},type={symbols}]
```

Make sure that the glossary type has already been defined (see section 1.2). In the above, the `symbols` option defines the `symbols` glossary. If you want to use a custom glossary, you need to provide it. For example:

```
\usepackage[record,nomain]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{dictionary}{Dictionary}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries-symbols},type={dictionary}]
```

(The `nomain` option was added to suppress the creation of the default main glossary.)

`trigger-type=<type>`

The record counting commands, such as `\rgls`, use the special format `\glstriggerrecord-format`, which `bib2gls` also treats as an ignored record. This means the entry will still be identified as having a record for selection purposes, which is necessary for the entry to be

defined for use in the document, but in order to prevent it from appearing in the glossary you need to transfer the entry with `trigger-type={⟨type⟩}`. This will override the `type`, `dual-type`, `tertiary-type` and the type specification in `secondary`.

The provided value `⟨type⟩` must be a glossary label (not one of the keywords allowed by `type`). You can define the glossary before loading the resource, but it's not required as `bib2gls` will write `\provideignoredglossary*{⟨type⟩}` to the `.glstex` file (see section 1.2).

`abbreviation-name-fallback=⟨field⟩`

The entry types that define abbreviations (such as `@abbreviation` and `@acronym`) will, by default, fallback on the `short` field if the `name` field is missing and it's required for some reason (for example, with `sort-field={name}`). If you prefer to fallback on a different field, then you can use this option to specify the field. For example, `abbreviation-name-fallback={long}`. The `⟨field⟩` value must be a known field label.

`ignore-fields=⟨list⟩`

The `ignore-fields` key indicates that you want `bib2gls` to skip the fields listed in the supplied comma-separated `⟨list⟩` of field labels. Remember that unrecognised fields will always be skipped.

For example, suppose my `.bib` file contains:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = "html",
  long  = {hypertext markup language},
  description={a markup language for creating web pages},
  seealso={xml}
}
```

but I want to use the short-long style and I don't want the cross-referenced term, then I can use `ignore-fields={seealso,description}`.

Note that `ignore-fields={parent}` removes the `parent` before determining the dependency lists. This means that `selection={recorded and deps}` and `selection={recorded and ancestors}` won't pick up the label in the `parent` field.

If you want to maintain the dependency and ancestor relationship but omit the `parent` field when writing the entries to the `.glstex` file, you need to use `flatten` instead.

`field-aliases=⟨key=value list⟩`

You can instruct `bib2gls` to treat one field as though it was another using this option. The value should be a comma-separated list of `⟨field1⟩=⟨field2⟩` pairs, where `⟨field1⟩` and `⟨field2⟩` are field names. Identical mappings and trails aren't permitted. (That is, `⟨field1⟩` and `⟨field2⟩` can't be the same nor can you have both `⟨field1⟩=⟨field2⟩` and `⟨field2⟩=⟨field3⟩`.) If you want to swap fields you need to use one of the dual entry types instead. Field aliases are performed

before `ignore-fields`, so if $\langle field1 \rangle$ is listed in `ignore-fields` it won't be ignored (unless $\langle field2 \rangle$ is in `ignore-fields`).

For example, suppose `people.bib` contains:

```
@entry{alexander,
  name={Alexander III of Macedon},
  description={Ancient Greek king of Macedon},
  born={20 July 356 BC},
  died={10 June 323 BC},
  othername={Alexander the Great}
}
```

This contains three non-standard fields: `born`, `died` and `othername`. I could define these fields using `\glsaddkey`, but another possibility is to map these onto the user keys `user1`, `user2` and `user3`, which saves the overhead of providing new keys:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={people},% data in people.bib
  field-aliases={born=user1,died=user2,othername=user3}
]
```

`replicate-fields`= $\langle key=value list \rangle$

The value of one field can be copied to other fields using this option where each $\langle key \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ pair is in the form $\langle field1 \rangle = \{ \langle field2 \rangle, \langle field3 \rangle, \dots \}$ where all values are field names. This copies the contents of $\langle field1 \rangle$ to $\langle field2 \rangle$, $\langle field3 \rangle$, ... (only if the target field isn't already set with `replicate-override={false}`). This action is performed after `ignore-fields` (see section 1.3).

For example, suppose `people.bib` contains:

```
@entry{alexander,
  name={Alexander III of Macedon (Alexander the Great)},
  text={Alexander},
  description={Ancient Greek king of Macedon}
}
```

Since the `first` field hasn't been supplied, it will default to the value of the `text` field, but perhaps for one of my documents I'd like the `first` field to be the same as the `name` field. Rather than editing the `.bib` file, I can just do:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={people},% data in people.bib
  replicate-fields={name=first}
]
```

This copies the contents of the `name` field into the `first` field. If you have more than one field in the list take care to brace the lists to avoid confusion. For example, if for some reason I want to copy the value of the `name` field to both `first` and `firstplural` and copy the value of the `text` field to the `plural` field, then this requires braces for the inner list:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={people},% data in people.bib
  replicate-fields={name={first,firstplural},text=plural}
]
```

If my `people.bib` file instead contained:

```
@entry{alexander,
  name={Alexander III of Macedon (Alexander the Great)},
  first={Alexander the Great},
  text={Alexander},
  description={Ancient Greek king of Macedon}
}
```

then:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={people},% data in people.bib
  replicate-fields={name=first}
]
```

won't alter the `first` field since `replicate-fields` doesn't override existing values by default. You can use `replicate-override` to change this. Alternatively, since `replicate-fields` is always performed after `ignore-fields` it's possible to ignore the `first` field which means that the `name` value can then be copied into it:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={people},% data in people.bib
  ignore-fields={first},
  replicate-fields={name=first}
]
```

Note that the ordering within the resource options doesn't make a difference. The same result occurs with:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={people},% data in people.bib
  replicate-fields={name=first},
  ignore-fields={first}
]
```

`replicate-override={boolean}`

This is a boolean option. The default setting is `replicate-override={false}`. If true, `replicate-fields` will override the existing value if the target field is already set.

`counter={value}`

The `counter` option assigns the default counter to use for the selected entries. (This can be overridden with the `counter` key when using commands like `\gls`.) The value must be the name of a counter. Since `bib2gls` doesn't know which counters are defined within the document, there's no check to determine if the value is valid (except for ensuring that `<value>` is non-empty).

Note that this will require an extra \LaTeX and `bib2gls` call since the counter can't be used for the indexing until the entry has been defined.

`copy-action-group-field={value}`

This option may only be used when invoking `bib2gls` with the `--group` (or `-g`) switch. If an action other than the default `action={define}` is set, this option can be used to identify a field in which to save the letter group information where `<value>` is the name of the field. This just uses `\GlsXtrSetField`. You will need to redefine `\glsxtrgroupfield` to `<value>` before displaying the glossary. For example, if `copy-action-group-field={dupgroup}`, `action={copy}` and `type={copies}` are set in the resource options and `copies` identifies a custom glossary:

```
\printunsrtglossary[type={copies},style={indexgroup}]
  {\renewcommand{\glsxtrgroupfield}{dupgroup}}
```

This option is ignored when used with `action={define}`. This option is not used by `secondary` which will always save the group information in the `secondarygroup` field. When used with `action={define or copy}`, entries that are defined will have both `group` and the field given by `copy-action-group-field` set.

Note that you may do `copy-action-group-field={group}` which will override the `group` field from the original definition. This may be useful if you don't use grouping in the primary glossary. That is, you use `nogroupskip` and a non-group style. For example:

```
\printunsrtglossary[nogroupskip,style={index}]
\printunsrtglossary[type={copies},style={indexgroup}]
```

`copy-alias-to-see={boolean}`

If set, the value of the `alias` field is copied to the `see` field. The default setting is `copy-alias-to-see={false}`.

Field Adjustments

`post-description-dot=<value>`

The `postdot` package option (or `nopostdot={false}`) can be used to append a full stop (.) to the end of all the descriptions. This can be awkward if some of the descriptions end with punctuation characters. This resource option can be used instead. The `<value>` may be one of:

- `none`: don't append a full stop (default);
- `all`: append a full stop to all `description` fields in this resource set;
- `check`: selectively append a full stop (see below).

Note that if you have dual entries and you use this option to append a full stop, then it will be copied over to the mapped field. This is different to the `postdot` option which doesn't add the dot to the field but incorporates it in the post-description hook. This means that a dot inserted with `post-description-dot` will come before the post-description hook whereas with `postdot` the punctuation comes after any category-specific hook.

The `post-description-dot={check}` setting determines whether to append the dot as follows:

- If the `description` field ends with `\nopostdesc` or `\glstrnopostpunc`, then a dot isn't appended.
- If the `description` field doesn't end with a regular (ungrouped letter or other) character, then a dot is appended. (For example, if the description ends with a control sequence or an end group token.)
- If the `description` field ends with a character that belongs to the Unicode category "Punctuation, Close" or "Punctuation, Final quote" then the token preceding that character is checked.
- If the `description` field doesn't end with a character that belongs to the Unicode category "Punctuation, Other" then the dot is added.

Note that the interpreter isn't used during the check. If the `description` ends with a command then a dot will be appended (unless it's `\glstrnopostpunc` or `\nopostdesc`) even if that command expands in such a way that it ends with a terminating punctuation character. This option only applies to the `description` field.

`strip-trailing-nopost=<boolean>`

This option is always performed before `post-description-dot`. The default setting is `strip-trailing-nopost={false}`. If `true` any trailing ungrouped `\nopostdesc` or `\glstrnopostpunc` found in the `description` field will be removed. Note that the command (possibly followed by ignored space) must be at the very end of the description for it to be

removed. A description should not contain both commands. This option only applies to the `description` field.

For example, `\nopostdesc` will be stripped from:

```
description={sample\nopostdesc}
```

since it's at the end. It will also be stripped from:

```
description={sample\nopostdesc }
```

since the trailing space is ignored as it follows a control word. It won't be stripped from:

```
description={sample\nopostdesc{} }
```

because the final space is now significant, but even without the space it still won't be stripped as the field ends with an empty group not with `\nopostdesc`. Similarly it won't be stripped from:

```
description={sample\nopostdesc\relax}
```

because again it's not at the end.

```
check-end-punctuation=<list>
```

This options checks the end of all the fields given in `<list>` for end of sentence punctuation. This is determined as follows, for each `<field>` in the comma-separated `<list>`:

- if the last character is of type "Punctuation, Close" or "Punctuation, Final quote", check the character that comes before it;
- if the character is of type "Punctuation, Other", then check if it's listed in the entry given by `sentence.terminators` in `bib2gls`'s language resource file.

If a sentence terminator is found, an internal field is created called `<field>endpunc` that contains the punctuation character. Fields whose values must be labels (such as `parent`, `category` and `type`) aren't checked, even if they're included in `<list>`.

The default `sentence.terminators` is defined in `bib2gls-en.xml` as:

```
<entry key="sentence.terminators">.!</entry>
```

Any character that isn't of type "Punctuation, Other" won't match.

For example, the sample `books.bib` file contains:

```
@entry{whydidnttheyaskevans,
  name={Why Didn't They Ask Evans?},
  description={novel by Agatha Christie},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Agatha}{Christie}},
  year={1934}
}
```

With `check-end-punctuation={name}`, this entry will be assigned an internal field called `nameendpunc` set to ? as that's included in `sentence.terminators` and is found at the end of the `name` field:

```
\GlsXtrSetField{whydidnttheyaskevans}{nameendpunc}{?}
```

(Note that `check-end-punctuation={first,text}` won't match as there's no `first` or `text` field supplied.)

If you have a field that ends with an abbreviation followed by a full stop, this will be considered an end of sentence terminator, but the main purpose of this option is to provide a way to deal with cases like:

```
Agatha Christie wrote \gls{whydidnttheyaskevans}.
```

where the end of sentence punctuation following `\gls` needs to be discarded. This is needed regardless of whether or not the link text ends with an abbreviation or is a complete sentence.

It's then possible to hook into the post-link hook "discard period" check. By default this just checks the category attributes that govern whether or not to discard a following period, but (with `glossaries-extra v1.23+`) it's possible to provide an additional check by redefining:

```
\glstrifcustomdiscardperiod{<true>}{<false>}
```

This should expand to `<true>` if the check should be performed otherwise it should expand to `<false>`. You can reference the label using `\glslabel`. For example:

```
\renewcommand*{\glstrifcustomdiscardperiod}[2]{%
  \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{nameendpunc}{\glslabel}{#2}{#1}%
}
```

This uses `\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef` rather than `\glstrifhasfield*` since there's no need to access the field's value. (The unstarred form `\glstrifhasfield` can't be used as it introduces implicit scoping, which would interfere with the punctuation lookahead.) The other difference between `\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef` and the other `\...hasfield` tests is the case where the field is set to an empty value. In this case the field is defined (so `\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef` does the `<false>` argument) but it's considered unset (so commands like `\ifglshasfield` do the `<false>` argument).

```
sort-label-list=<list>
```

This option takes a list as the value with each element in the list in the form:

```
<field-list> : <sort> : <cname>
```

or:

```
<field-list> : <sort>
```

where:

- $\langle field-list \rangle$ is a comma-separated list of valid fields;
- $\langle sort \rangle$ is a valid sort method as per the `sort` option, but not including `none` or `unsorted`;
- $\langle csname \rangle$ is the name (without a leading backslash) of a command that takes a label as its sole mandatory argument that's recognised by `bib2gls`'s interpreter (such as those listed in table 2.1).

The final $:\langle csname \rangle$ part may be omitted if no command need be applied. (That is, sort by label.)

The sorting options are as those for the main list. For example, for entries in the primary list the break point is obtained from the `break-at` setting and for entries in the dual list the break point is obtained from `dual-break-at`. (Remember that if `dual-sort={combine}` then there is only one list that contains both the primary and dual entries, which is governed by the primary options only.)

If the $\langle field-list \rangle$ has more than one element take care to use braces `{}` to avoid confusion for the list-parser. For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  sort-label-list={{see,seealso}:en:glsentryname}
]
```

Note that strange results may occur if this setting is used on any fields that don't simply contain a list of entry labels or if any of the referenced entries are processed in different resource sets (see section 1.3).

After the main sorting of each set of selected entries is performed (as per `sort` or `dual-sort`), if this option is set, then for each $\{\langle field-list \rangle\}:\langle sort \rangle:\langle csname \rangle$ the following steps are performed:

1. For each entry $\langle id \rangle$:
 - a) For each $\langle field \rangle$ in $\langle field-list \rangle$, if the field is set for entry $\langle id \rangle$ then:
 - i. The field value must be in the form `[\langle tag \rangle]\langle label-list \rangle` where `[\langle tag \rangle]` is optional and $\langle label-list \rangle$ is a comma-separated list of entry labels $\langle label_1 \rangle, \dots, \langle label_n \rangle$;
 - ii. A new list is constructed where the i th element is: `\{ \langle csname \rangle \{ \langle label_i \rangle \}` unless $\langle csname \rangle$ hasn't been set, in which case the i th element is just `\{ \langle label_i \rangle \}` (the optional `[\langle tag \rangle]` part is omitted);
 - iii. This new list is sorted according to the interpreter's definition of the command given by $\langle csname \rangle$ (if provided) and the designated $\langle sort \rangle$ method;
 - iv. The field value is reconstructed with the labels in the corresponding order (prefixed with `[\langle tag \rangle]` if it was present in the original).

Note that there is no hierarchical structure in the sorting of the field list even if any of the referenced entries has a parent.

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@index{bird}
```

```
@index{waterfowl, parent={bird} }
```

```
@index{duck,
  parent={waterfowl},
  seealso={swan,duckling,parrot,goose}
}
```

```
@index{swan,
  parent={waterfowl},
  seealso={goose,duck}
}
```

```
@index{goose,
  parent={waterfowl},
  seealso={duck}
}
```

```
@index{parrot, parent={bird} }
```

```
@index{duckling,
  see={ [related terms]fluffy,velociraptor,duck,tardigrade}
}
```

```
@index{fluffy}
```

```
@index{tardigrade, name={water bear} }
```

```
@index{velociraptor}
```

And suppose the document contains:

```
\documentclass{article}
```

```
\usepackage[record,style={tree}]{glossaries-extra}
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},
  sort={en},
  sort-label-list={{seealso,see}:en:glstryname}
]
```

```
\begin{document}
```

```
\Gls{parrot}, \gls{tardigrade}, \gls{swan}, \gls{duck},
```

```
\gls{goose}, \gls{fluffy} \gls{duckling}, \gls{velociraptor}.
```

```
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

Then this reorders the `see` and `seealso` fields according to the referenced entry’s name (obtained with `\glsentryname`).

For example, the `see` field for the `duckling` entry was originally:

```
see={ [related terms] fluffy, velociraptor, duck, tardigrade }
```

but in the `.gls.tex` file it’s written as:

```
see={ [related terms] duck, fluffy, velociraptor, tardigrade }
```

The reason for `tardigrade` being placed after `velociraptor` is because `\glsentryname{tardigrade}` is expanded to “water bear” (and “W” comes after “V”). If no encapsulating command was specified:

```
sort-label-list={{seealso,see}:en}
```

then the list would have been sorted according to the labels instead (and so `tardigrade` would come before `velociraptor`). Note that the optional tag is kept at the start of the list.

The `seealso` fields have also been changed. For example, the `duck` entry originally had:

```
seealso={swan, duckling, parrot, goose}
```

but in the `.gls.tex` file it’s written as:

```
seealso={duckling, goose, parrot, swan}
```

Note that the hierarchical structure hasn’t been maintained. The glossary lists “`duckling`” (a top-level entry) after “`swan`” (a level 2 entry) but the `seealso` field has `duckling` first.

If you want to maintain the hierarchy you can use `\glsxtrhiername` instead of `\glsentryname`:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},
  sort={en},
  sort-label-list={{seealso,see}:en:glsxtrhiername}
]
```

The separator between the levels is given by `\glsxtrhiernamesep` which is defined by `glossaries-extra` to produce “▷”. The `bib2gls` interpreter’s definition of this command is different to assist sorting and simply expands to a full stop to prevent it from being replaced by the default word break marker.

In this case `\glsxtrhiername{swan}` would be displayed as “bird▷waterfowl▷swan” if used in the document, but the interpreter converts it to “bird.waterfowl.swan”, so with the default `break-at` setting the actual sort value becomes `bird.waterfowl.swan|` (instead of `bird|waterfowl|swan|` which would be the result if the interpreter used the same definition as `glossaries-extra`).

Therefore the `seealso` field for the `duck` entry ends up as:

```
seealso={parrot,goose,swan,duckling}
```

Now swan comes before duckling because the actual sort value started with a “B” not “S”.

This hierarchical information isn’t shown in the cross-reference by default, so the duck cross-reference list appears in the document as: parrot, goose, swan & duckling.

If you want the hierarchical information to appear to help assist the reader, you can redefine `\glsseeitemformat` in the document to use `\glxtrhiername`:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsseeitemformat}[1]{\glxtrhiername{#1}}
```

This means that the duck cross-reference now appears in the document as: bird▷ parrot, bird▷ waterfowl▷ goose, bird▷ waterfowl ▷ swan & duckling.

This next example document has two languages, English and Portuguese. The file entries-`en.bib` contains the English terms, such as:

```
@index{cat, translations={gato,gatinho} }
@index{kitten, translations={gatinho} }
@index{staple, translations={grampo}}
@index{rivet, translations={rebite}}
```

The file entries-`pt.bib` contains the Portuguese terms, such as:

```
@index{gato, translations={cat,staple,rivet} }
@index{gatinho, translations={kitten} }
```

Both files have a custom field called `translations` that will need to be either defined or aliased. This field contains a comma-separated list of labels for the corresponding entries in the other language file that provide a possible translation. Where a word has multiple possible translations, I’d like the list sorted alphabetically. (In practice, it would make more sense to sort them according to how likely the translation is, but this is for illustrative purposes.) For convenience, the custom field is simply aliased to the `user1` field.

The document has two glossaries for each set of terms. The English terms are sorted according to `sort={en-GB}` in one resource set and the Portuguese terms are sorted according to `sort={pt-BR}` in another resource set. This means that there are cross-resource references, but since there are no instances of `@preamble` it should be possible to resolve the references.

The document code is:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[british,brazilian]{babel}
\usepackage[record,
  nomain,
  nostyles,
  stylemods={bookindex},
```

```

style={bookindex}
]{glossaries-extra}
\usepackage{glossaries-prefix}

\newglossary*{en}{English Terms}
\newglossary*{pt}{Portuguese Terms}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  selection={all},
  type={en},
  src={entries-en},
  sort={en-GB},
  field-aliases={translations=user1},
  sort-label-list={user1:pt-BR:glentryname}
]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  selection={all},
  type={pt},
  src={entries-pt},
  sort={pt-BR},
  field-aliases={translations=user1},
  sort-label-list={user1:en-GB:glentryname}
]

\apptoglossary preamble[en]{\selectlanguage{british}}
\apptoglossary preamble[pt]{\selectlanguage{brazilian}}

\begin{document}
\renewcommand*{\glxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glossentryname{#1}%
  \glxtrifhasfield{user1}{#1}{: \glxtrseelist\glscurrentfieldvalue}{}%
}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

In verbose mode, the transcript file indicates that it's performing the label list sorting. For example, when sorting according to `sort-label-list={user1:pt-BR:glentryname}`, the transcript file contains:

```
Label list sort method 'pt-BR' on field: user1
```

The cat entry has a list of two elements in this field: `gato,gatinho`. This is converted into a new list where the first element is:

```
{\glentryname{gato}}
```

and the second element is:

```
{\glstentryname{gatinho}}
```

Regardless of the level of verbosity, the transcript file will contain the conversions obtained by the interpreter:

```
texparserlib: {\glstentryname{gato}} -> gato
texparserlib: {\glstentryname{gatinho}} -> gatinho
```

The kitten entry has the same list, and the same process is repeated for that entry. The `--verbose` mode will provide additional information. The `--debug` mode will indicate whether the referenced label was found in the current resource set or if it had to be fetched from another resource set. So if the resulting order isn't what you expect, check the transcript file for messages.

```
bibtex-contributor-fields=<list>
```

This option indicates that the listed fields all use BibTeX's name syntax (as used in BibTeX's author and editor fields). The values of these fields will be converted into the form:

```
\bibglscontributorlist{<contributor list>}{<n>}
```

where `<n>` is the number of names in the list and `<contributor-list>` is a comma-separated list of names in the form:

```
\bibglscontributor{<forenames>}{<von-part>}{<surname>}{<suffix>}
```

The `\bibglscontributorlist` command is initially defined in `bib2gls`'s interpreter to just do the first argument and ignore the second. This means that if you're sorting on this field, the "and" part between the final names doesn't appear in the sort value. The actual definition of `\bibglscontributorlist` provided in the `.glstex` file depends on whether or not `\DTLformatlist` is defined. (Note that glossaries automatically loads `datatool-base` so this command will be defined if you have at least v2.28 of `datatool-base`.)

For example, if the `name` field is specified as:

```
name={John Smith and Jane Doe and Dickie von Duck}
```

then `bibtex-contributor-fields={name}` will convert the `name` field value to:

```
\bibglscontributorlist{%
  \bibglscontributor{John}{}{Smith}{},%
  \bibglscontributor{Jane}{}{Doe}{},%
  \bibglscontributor{Dickie}{von}{Duck}{}}{3}
```

With `contributor-order={von}` the sort value obtained from this field will be:

```
Smith, John,Doe, Jane,von Duck, Dickie
```

With one of the locale sort methods and with the default `break-at={word}`, this will end up as:

```
Smith|John|Doe|Jane|von|Duck|Dickie
```

`contributor-order=<value>`

The `\bibglscontributor` command is defined in `bib2gls`'s interpreter and its definition is dependent on this setting. The `<value>` may be one of (where the parts in square brackets are omitted if that argument is empty):

- `surname`: `\bibglscontributor` expands to `<surname>[,<suffix>][,<forenames>][,<von-part>]`;
- `von`: `\bibglscontributor` expands to `[<von-part>]<surname>[,<suffix>][,<forenames>]`;
- `forenames`: `\bibglscontributor` expands to `[<forenames>][<von-part>]<surname>[,<suffix>]`.

The default value is `von`. Note that if you have multiple resource sets, this option governs the way `bib2gls`'s version of `\bibglscontributor` behaves. The actual definition is written to the `.glstex` using `\providecommand`, which means that \TeX will only pick up the first definition.

For example:

```
\newcommand*{\bibglscontributor}[4]{%
  #1\ifstrempy{#2}{}{ #2} #3\ifstrempy{#4}{}{, #4}%
}
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  bibtex-contributor-fields={name}
]
```

This will display the names in the glossary with the forenames first, but `bib2gls` will sort according to surname.

An alternative approach, if you need an initial resource set such as with the `no-interpret-preamble.bib` file:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={no-interpret-preamble},
  interpret-preamble={false},
  bibtex-contributor-fields={name},
  contributor-order={forenames}
]
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  bibtex-contributor-fields={name}
]
```

Note the need to use `bibtex-contributor-fields={name}` in the first resource set even though there are no entries in the `.bib` file. This is because the definition of `\bibtex-contributor` is only written to the `.glstex` file if `bibtex-contributor-fields` has been set to a non-empty list. The second resource set will use the default `bibtex-contributor-fields={von}` setting when obtaining the sort value.

`date-time-fields=<list>`

This option indicates that the listed fields all contain date and time information. Primary entries will have these fields parsed according to `date-time-field-format` and `date-time-field-locale` and dual entries will have these fields parsed according to `dual-date-time-field-format` and `dual-date-time-field-locale`. If the field value is missing or doesn't match the given pattern it remains unchanged, otherwise it's converted into the form:

```
\bibglstatetime{<year>}{<month>}{<day-of-month>}{<day-of-week>}{<day-of-year>}{<era>}{<hour>}{<minute>}{<second>}{<millisec>}{<dst>}{<zone>}{<original>}
```

where `<original>` is the value of the field before conversion. If the interpreter is on, the value will be interpreted before being parsed if it contains `\`, `$`, `{`, `}` or `~`. (Remember that `~` is converted to the non-breaking space character `0xA0` unless `--break-space` is used.)

`date-fields=<list>`

As `date-time-fields` but for fields that only contain date (not time) information. If parsed correctly, the field is converted to:

```
\bibglstdate{<year>}{<month>}{<day-of-month>}{<day-of-week>}{<day-of-year>}{<era>}{<original>}
```

The fields are parsed according to `date-field-format` and `date-field-locale` for primary entries and according to `dual-date-field-format` and `dual-date-field-locale` for dual entries.

`time-fields=<list>`

As `date-time-fields` but for fields that only contain time (not date) information. If parsed correctly, the field is converted to:

```
\bibglstime{<hour>}{<minute>}{<second>}{<millisec>}{<dst>}{<zone>}{<original>}
```

The fields are parsed according to `time-field-format` and `time-field-locale` for primary entries and according to `dual-time-field-format` and `date-time-field-locale` for dual entries.

`date-time-field-format=<value>`

This option also sets `dual-date-time-field-format={<value>}`. The value is the format pattern used when parsing fields identified by `date-time-fields`. The `<value>` is as for `date-sort-format`.

`date-field-format=<value>`

This option also sets `dual-date-field-format={<value>}`. The value is the format pattern used when parsing fields identified by `date-fields`. The `<value>` is as for `date-sort-format`.

`time-field-format=<value>`

This option also sets `dual-time-field-format={<value>}`. The value is the format pattern used when parsing fields identified by `time-fields`. The `<value>` is as for `date-sort-format`.

`date-time-field-locale=<value>`

This option also sets `dual-date-time-field-locale={<value>}`. The value is the locale used when parsing fields identified by `date-time-fields`. The `<value>` is as for `date-sort-locale`.

`date-field-locale=<value>`

This option also sets `dual-date-field-locale={<value>}`. The value is the locale used when parsing fields identified by `date-fields`. The `<value>` is as for `date-sort-locale`.

`time-field-locale=<value>`

This option also sets `date-time-field-locale={<value>}`. The value is the locale used when parsing fields identified by `time-fields`. The `<value>` is as for `date-sort-locale`.

Case-Changing

The `glossaries-extra` package comes with the category attributes `glossdesc` and `glossname`, which may take the values `firsttuc` or `title`. These don't change the actual `name` or `description` fields, but instead `\glossentryname` and `\glossentrydesc` (which are used by the default glossary styles) check for the corresponding attribute and apply the appropriate case-change to the field value.

So `\glossentryname` will use `\Glsentryname` if the `glossname` attribute for the given entry is set to `firsttuc` and `\glossentrydesc` will use `\Glsentrydesc` if the `glossdesc` attribute is set to `firsttuc`. The `title` setting will instead use `\capitalisewords` applied to the field value.

The resource options described in this section provide an alternative to those attributes that actually modify the relevant field (rather than just adjusting the style code used to display it). There are two forms of modification: the field is adjusted so that the original value is encapsulated by a command or `bib2gls` will perform the actual case-change according to its own algorithm. The results can vary according to the field content.

Only a subset of known fields have a resource option that can be used to apply a case-change. For example, `name-case-change` can be used to change the case of the `name` field, but there's no equivalent option for the `text` field.

Each of the case-changing resource options may take one of the following values:

- `none`: don't apply any case-changing (default);
- `lc-cs`: make `bib2gls` behave as though the field assignment:

```
<field> = {<text>}
```

had actually been specified as:

```
<field> = {\bibglslowercase{<text>}}
```

which uses \TeX to convert the field to lower case;

- `uc-cs`: make `bib2gls` behave as though the field assignment:

```
<field> = {<text>}
```

had actually been specified as:

```
<field> = {\bibglsuppercase{<text>}}
```

which uses \TeX to convert the field to upper case;

- `firstuc-cs`: make `bib2gls` behave as though the field assignment:

```
<field> = {<text>}
```

had actually been specified as:

```
<field> = {\bibglsfirstuc{<text>}}
```

which uses \TeX to convert the field to first-letter upper case;

- `title-cs`: make `bib2gls` behave as though the field assignment:

```
<field> = {<text>}
```

had actually been specified as:

```
<field> = {\bibglstitlecase{<text>}}
```

which uses \TeX to convert the field to title case;

- `lc`: convert to lower case by making the appropriate modifications to tokens in the field value that have a known lower case alternative (see below);

- `uc`: convert to upper case by making the appropriate modifications to tokens in the field value that have a known upper case alternative (see below);
- `firstuc`: convert to first letter upper case by making the appropriate modification, if it has a known upper case alternative (see below);
- `title`: convert to title case by making the appropriate modifications to the first letter of each identified word in the field value that has a known upper case alternative (see below).

A word-boundary is identified according to the `word-boundaries` setting. Words to be excluded from the case-changing (unless they occur at the start) can be identified with `\MFUnocap` in the `@preamble` or you can use `--packages mfirstuc-english` for the exclusion list provided by the `mfirstuc-english` package. Alternatively, you can use `--custom-packages` to load a simple package that contains the required `\MFUnocap` commands (in a similar style to `mfirstuc-english`).

The `bib2gls` word-boundary implementation is slightly different with this setting than with the `\capitalisewords` command (implemented in \TeX or by the \TeX parser library when interpreting field values). Only words in the exclusion list that start with an alphabetical character can be matched. Punctuation following a word-boundary is not considered part of the next word.

The `firstuc-cs` and `firstuc` options are essentially a sentence case change, but there's no check for sentence-breaks within the value, so even if the value contains multiple sentences, only the first is changed.

The `<option>-cs` settings defer the actual case-changing to \TeX , which means that the case-changing has to be applied every time the field is typeset (and it introduces non-expandable content to the field value). Be aware of the limitations of using any of the case-changing commands. See the `textcase` and `mfirstuc` package documentation for further details [1, 11]. You may use `\NoCaseChange{<content>}` (provided by `textcase`) to prevent any case-change to `<content>`.

For the settings where `bib2gls` itself performs the case-change, then `bib2gls` will iterate over each token of the field value and apply the following rules:

1. If the token is a normal Unicode alphabetic character, it will be replaced with the corresponding upper or lower case character, as appropriate. For `title` and `firstuc`, the title case character is used as the replacement, for `uc` the upper case character is used as the replacement, and for `lc` the lower case character is used as the replacement. Many characters have the same upper and title case alternative (for example, “a” will be converted to “A” for the `title`, `firstuc` and `uc` settings), but some characters have different title and upper versions (for example, the digraph “dz” has the title version “Dz” and upper case version “DZ”).

If the option is `firstuc` then all the remaining tokens are skipped. If the option is `title` then the subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found.

2. If the token is a normal Unicode character that isn't alphabetical, then this token will be skipped for all options.
3. If $\langle\mathit{maths}\rangle$ is encountered, it will be skipped. If the option is `firstuc` then all remaining tokens are skipped, so no case-change will be performed.
4. If a group $\{\langle\mathit{content}\rangle\}$ is found, then the case-change is applied to the entire $\langle\mathit{content}\rangle$ (which may be empty). This corresponds to the way `\makefirstuc` and `\capitalisewords` work if a word starts with a group. Note that with `firstuc` and `title` the group content will be converted according to `uc`, so the normal upper case character is used rather than the title case character (if they are different).

If the option is `firstuc` then all the remaining tokens are skipped. If the option is `title` then the subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found.

5. If a control sequence $\langle\mathit{cname}\rangle$ is found, then:
 - a) If the control sequence is `\protect`, this token is skipped for all options.
 - b) If the control sequence is one of: `\o`, `\O`, `\l`, `\L`, `\ae`, `\AE`, `\oe`, `\OE`, `\aa`, `\AA`, `\ss`, `\SS`, `\ng`, `\NG`, `\th`, `\TH`, `\dh`, `\DH`, `\dj` or `\DJ`, then it's replaced with its case-change counterpart (if not already the correct case).

If the option is `firstuc` then all the remaining tokens are skipped. If the option is `title` then the subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found.

- c) If the control sequence is `\NoCaseChange`, then the control sequence and its argument is ignored. With `firstuc` and `title`, if `\NoCaseChange{\langle\mathit{text}\rangle}` occurs at the start of a word, then `bib2gls` will act as though the word hasn't started yet (so the next token will be considered for a case-change). This is different to the way `\makefirstuc` and `\capitalisewords` work.
 - d) If the control sequence is `\ensuremath`, `\si` or if $\langle\mathit{cname}\rangle$ ends with "ref" (for example, `\ref` or `\pageref`) then the control sequence and its argument is ignored. In the case where $\langle\mathit{cname}\rangle$ ends with "ref", a following star (*) or optional argument before the mandatory argument will also be skipped. This allows for some common cross-referencing commands, such as `hyperref`'s `\autoref`, which may have a starred form, but does not allow for more complicated commands with multiple arguments.

If the option is `firstuc` then all the remaining tokens are skipped (so no case-change will be performed). If the option is `title` then the subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found (so no case-change is performed for this word).

- e) If the control sequence is `\glstentrytitlecase` then:
 - `lc` the control sequence is converted to `\glstxtrusefield`;
 - `uc` the control sequence is converted to `\GLStxtrusefield`;

firstuc the control sequence is converted to `\Glsxtrusefield` and the remaining tokens are skipped;

title the control sequence is left unchanged and subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found.

The field and entry label arguments are skipped.

- f) If the control sequence is `\gls hyperlink` then the case-change is applied to its optional argument. (If there was no optional argument in the original field value, one will be inserted.) The label argument is skipped.

If the option is `firstuc` then all the remaining tokens are skipped. If the option is `title` then the subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found.

- g) If the control sequence is `\glsdisp`, `\glslink`, `\dglstdisp` or `\dglslink` then the case-change will be applied to the appropriate argument. The optional argument (if present) and the label are skipped.

If the option is `firstuc` then all the remaining tokens are skipped. If the option is `title` then the subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found.

- h) If the control sequence has a known case variant, it will be substituted. For example, `\gls` will be changed to `\Gls` or `\GLS`. In some cases there isn't an appropriate variant. For example, `\glsentrytext` has a first-letter upper case version `\Glsentrytext`, but not an all-caps version.

If the option is `firstuc` then all the remaining tokens are skipped. If the option is `title` then the subsequent tokens are skipped until a word-boundary is found.

- i) If the control sequence is followed by a group, then the appropriate case-change is applied to the group contents. Unlike step 4, the case-change isn't applied to the entire group content with `firstuc` and `title`. (Again, this follows the way that `\makefirstuc` and `\capitalisewords` work.)

If there are subsequent groups, they won't be considered arguments, but will be treated as groups, as per step 4. (This will only affect the `title` setting as they will be skipped by the `firstuc` setting.) For complex cases, consider using a semantic command that hides non-textual context such as the `\strong` example described on page 84.

- j) Otherwise the control sequence is skipped.

6. Anything else is skipped.

For example, if an entry is defined as:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {HTML},
  long  = {hypertext markup language},
  description={a markup language for creating web pages}
}
```

then:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  short-case-change={lc},
  long-case-change={title},
  description-case-change={firstuc}
]
```

will make the entry behave as if it had been defined as:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {html},
  long  = {Hypertext Markup Language},
  description={A markup language for creating web pages}
}
```

whereas:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  short-case-change={lc-cs},
  long-case-change={title-cs},
  description-case-change={firstuc-cs}
]
```

will make the entry behave as if it had been defined as:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {\bibglslowercase{HTML}},
  long  = {\bibglstitlecase{hypertext markup language}},
  description={\bibglsfirstuc{a markup language for creating web pages}}
}
```

If the given field is missing, no change is made, except under certain circumstances (see the relevant resource option for details). For example, if an abbreviation is simply defined as:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {html},
  long  = {hypertext markup language}
}
```

then:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  name-case-change={uc},
  description-case-change={title}
]
```

won't have an effect. Although the default long-short abbreviation style sets the `name` and `description` fields, `bib2gls` doesn't have access to this information.

Remember that you can create missing fields by copying the value from another field. So if the resource options are changed to:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  name-case-change={uc},
  description-case-change={title},
  replicate-fields={short=name,long=description}
]
```

then `bib2gls` will act as though the entry had been defined as:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = {html},
  long  = {hypertext markup language},
  name  = {HTML},
  description = {Hypertext Markup Language}
}
```

If the `long-short-sc` abbreviation style is set (before `\GlsXtrLoadResources`) then this will override the default style for the `name` and `description`, so `\gls{html}` will display the short form using `\textsc{html}` but the `name` in the glossary will be displayed using just HTML.

Note that with `@index` the `name` and `text` fields will automatically be created if they are missing and `name-case-change` is used. For example, if an entry is defined as:

```
@index{duck}
```

then `name-case-change={firstuc}` will make this entry behave as though it was defined as:

```
@index{duck,
  name = {Duck},
  text = {duck}
}
```

Suppose I have a slightly eccentric abbreviation definition:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = "ht\emph{ml}",
  long  = "hypertext markup language"
}
```

then `short-case-change={uc}` would convert the value of the `short` field into:

```
HT\emphML
```

Note that `\emph` isn't modified as it's recognised as a command. There's a difference between a group that follows a control sequence and one that doesn't. For example:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = "{ht}ml",
  long  = "hypertext markup language"
}
```

In this case `short-case-change={firstuc}` will convert the `short` field value to:

```
{HT}ml
```

(The entire contents of the group `{ht}` has been converted.) Whereas with:

```
@abbreviation{html,
  short = "\emph{ht}ml",
  long  = "hypertext markup language"
}
```

then `short-case-change={firstuc}` will convert the `short` field value to:

```
\emph{Ht}ml
```

(Only the first letter of the argument `{ht}` has been converted.)

There's no attempt at interpreting the field contents at this point (but the value may later be interpreted during sorting). For example, suppose a `name` field is defined using:

```
name = "z\ae\oe",
```

then with `name-case-change={uc}`, the value would be converted to

```
Z\AE\OE
```

because `\ae` and `\oe` have known upper case versions.

With `name-case-change={uc-cs}`, the `name` value would be converted to:

```
\bibglsupercase{z\ae\oe}
```

If the interpreter is used during sorting, the sort value will be set to `ZÆË` because the interpreter recognises all three commands.

You can use `\NoCaseChange{<text>}` to prevent the given `<text>` from having the case changed. For example, if the `short` field is defined as:

```
short = {a\NoCaseChange{bc}d}
```

then with `short-case-change={uc}`, this would be converted to

```
A\NoCaseChange{bc}D
```

Note that with `firstuc` and `title`, if `\NoCaseChange{⟨text⟩}` occurs at the start of a word then it's skipped, and the case change is applied to the material following its argument. For example, suppose the `short` field is defined as:

```
short={\NoCaseChange{h}tml}
```

then the result is:

```
\NoCaseChange{h}Tml
```

whereas with:

```
short={{}html}
```

then the result is just `{ }html` (since the case change is applied to the empty group, which has no effect).

If you have a command that takes a label or identifier as an argument then it's best to hide the label in a custom command. For example, if the `short` field in the `.bib` definition is defined as:

```
short = "ht\textcolor{red}{ml}",
```

then with `short-case-change={uc}` this would end up as:

```
HT\textcolor{RED}{ML}
```

which is incorrect. Instead, provide a command that hides the label (such as the `\strong` example described on page 84).

```
word-boundaries=⟨list⟩
```

Governs how the `title` case-change option determines word boundaries. The `⟨list⟩` must contain one or more of the following keywords:

white space any white space Unicode character that is not a non-breakable space indicates a word-boundary;

cs space the control sequences `\space` or `_` indicate a word-boundary;

dash a Unicode character that belongs to the “Punctuation, Dash” block indicates a word-boundary;

nbspace the `~` active character or the Unicode non-breakable characters `0x00A0`, `0x2007` and `0x202F` indicate a word-boundary.

Any keyword that is not listed indicates that particular setting is off. This option is not cumulative. Any subsequent use of `word-boundaries` within the same set of resource options will override previous settings.

The default setting is `word-boundaries={white space,cs space}`, which excludes non-breakable spaces and dashes.

`short-case-change=⟨value⟩`

Applies a case-change to the `short` field (if present). This option may take one of the values described above.

See `dual-short-case-change` to adjust the `dualshort` field.

`long-case-change=⟨value⟩`

Applies a case-change to the `long` field (if present). This option may take one of the values described above.

See `dual-long-case-change` to adjust the `duallong` field.

`name-case-change=⟨value⟩`

Applies a case-change to the `name` field. This option may take one of the values described above.

If the `text` field hasn't been set, the `name` value is first copied to the `text` field. If the `name` field hasn't been set (for example, with the `@index` entry type), it's copied from the fallback value (which depends on the entry type) unless the entry type is `@abbreviation` or `@acronym`, in which case if the `name` field is missing no action is performed.

`description-case-change=⟨value⟩`

Applies a case-change to the `description` field (if present). This option may take one of the values described above.

5.6 Plurals

Some languages, such as English, have a general rule that plurals are formed from the singular with a suffix appended. This isn't an absolute rule. There are plenty of exceptions (for example, geese, children, churches, elves, fairies, sheep, mice), so a simplistic approach of just doing `\gls{⟨label⟩}[s]` will sometimes produce inappropriate results, so the glossaries package provides a `plural` key with the corresponding command `\glspl`.

In some cases a plural may not make any sense (for example, if the term is a verb or symbol), so the `plural` key is optional, but to make life easier for languages where the majority of plurals can simply be formed by appending a suffix to the singular, the glossaries package lets the `plural` field default to the value of the `text` field with `\glspluralsuffix` appended. This command is defined to be just the letter "s". This means that the majority of terms in such languages don't need to have the `plural` supplied as well, and you only need to use it for the exceptions.

For languages that don't have this general rule, the `plural` field will always need to be supplied for nouns.

There are other plural fields, such as `firstplural`, `longplural` and `shortplural`. Again, if you are using a language that doesn't have a simple suffix rule, you'll have to supply the plural forms if you need them (and if a plural makes sense in the context).

If these fields are omitted, the glossaries package follows these rules:

- If `firstplural` is missing, then `\glspluralsuffix` is appended to the `first` field, if that field has been supplied. If the `first` field hasn't been supplied but the `plural` field has been supplied, then the `firstplural` field defaults to the `plural` field. If the `plural` field hasn't been supplied, then both the `plural` and `firstplural` fields default to the `text` field (or `name`, if no `text` field) with `\glspluralsuffix` appended.
- If the `longplural` field is missing, then `\glspluralsuffix` is appended to the `long` field, if the `long` field has been supplied.
- If the `shortplural` field is missing then, *with the base glossaries acronym mechanism*, `\acrpluralsuffix` is appended to the `short` field.

The last case is different with the glossaries-extra extension package. The `shortplural` field defaults to the `short` field with `\abbrvpluralsuffix` appended *unless overridden by category attributes*. This suffix command is set by the abbreviation styles. This means that every time an abbreviation style is implemented, `\abbrvpluralsuffix` is redefined. Most styles simply define this command as:

```
\renewcommand*{\abbrvpluralsuffix}{\glsxtrabbrvpluralsuffix}
```

where `\glsxtrabbrvpluralsuffix` expands to `\glspluralsuffix`. The “sc” styles (such as long-short-sc) use a different definition:

```
\renewcommand*{\abbrvpluralsuffix}{\protect\glsxtrscsuffix}
```

This allows the suffix to be reverted back to the upright font, counteracting the affect of the small-caps font.

This means that if you want to change or strip the suffix used for the plural short form, it's usually not sufficient to redefine `\abbrvpluralsuffix`, as the change will be undone the next time the style is applied. Instead, for a document-wide solution, you need to redefine `\glsxtrabbrvpluralsuffix`. Alternatively you can use the category attributes.

There are two attributes that affect the short plural suffix formation. The first is `apospplural` which uses the suffix

```
'\abbrvpluralsuffix
```

That is, an apostrophe followed by `\abbrvpluralsuffix` is appended. The second attribute is `noshortplural` which suppresses the suffix and simply sets `shortplural` to the same as `short`.

With `bib2gls`, if you have some abbreviations where the plural should have a suffix and some where the plural shouldn't have a suffix (for example, the document has both English and French abbreviations) then there are two approaches.

The first approach is to use the category attributes. For example:

```
\glssetcategoryattribute{french}{noshortplural}
```

Now just make sure all the French abbreviations are have their `category` field set to french:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [src={fr-abbrvs}, category={french}]
```

The other approach is to use the options listed below for the given resource set. For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [src={fr-abbrvs}, short-plural-suffix={}]
```

short-plural-suffix=*<value>*

Sets the plural suffix for the default `shortplural` to *<value>*. The *<value>* may be one of:

- *<suffix>*: add the `shortplural` field, if missing, with the given *<suffix>*.
- *<empty>*: add the `shortplural` field, if missing, with no suffix.
- `use-default`: leave it to glossaries-extra to determine the appropriate default.

The default setting is `short-plural-suffix={use-default}`. If the *=<value>* part is omitted, then `short-plural-suffix={}` is assumed.

dual-short-plural-suffix=*<value>*

Sets the plural suffix for the default `dualshortplural` field to *<value>*. As with `short-plural-suffix`, the default setting is `dual-short-plural-suffix={use-default}`. If the *<value>* is omitted or empty, the suffix is set to empty.

5.7 Location List Options

The `record` package option automatically adds two new keys: `loclist` and `location`. These two fields are set by `bib2gls` from the information supplied in the `.aux` file (unless the option `save-locations={false}` is used). The `location` field contains the code to typeset the formatted location list.

The `loclist` field has the syntax of an `etoolbox` internal list and includes every location (except for the discarded duplicates and ignored records) with no range formations. Any explicit range markup is stripped from the `format` information to leave just the encapsulating command (`encap`) name, so you just get the start and end locations added as individual elements but they are still encapsulated with the associated formatting command. Each item in the list is provided in one of the following forms:

```
\glsseeformat [<tag>]{<label list>}{}
```

for the cross-reference supplied by the `see` field,

```
\glsxtruseseealsoformat{<xr list>}
```

for the cross-reference supplied by the `seealso` field,

```
\glsnoidxdisplayloc{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}
```

for standard the internal locations,

```
\glstrdisplaysupplloc{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<src>}{<location>}
```

for supplemental (external) locations and

```
\glstrdisplaylocnameref{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}{<title>}
{<href>}{<hcounter>}{<file>}
```

for `nameref` records. (See section 5.8 for more information about supplemental locations and `--merge-nameref-on` for more information about `nameref` records.)

You can iterate through the `loclist` value using one of `etoolbox`'s internal list loops (either by first fetching the list using `\glsfieldfetch` or through `glossaries-extra`'s `\glstrfield-dolistloop` or `\glstrfieldforlistloop` shortcuts).

The `<format>` is that supplied by the `format` key when using commands like `\gls` or `\glsadd` (the encapsulator or `encap` in `makeindex` parlance). If omitted, the default `format={glsnumberformat}` is assumed (unless this default value is changed with `\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat`). The value of the `format` key must be the name of a text-block command without the leading backslash that takes a single argument (the location). The location is encapsulated by that command. For example,

```
\gls[format={textbf}]{sample}
```

will display the corresponding location in bold, but note that this will no longer have a hyperlink if you've used `hyperref`. If you want to retain the hyperlink you need the location encapsulated with `\hyperbf` instead of `\textbf`:

```
\gls[format={hyperbf}]{sample}
```

The `\hyper<xx>` set of commands all internally use `\glsnumber` which adds the appropriate hyperlink to the location. See Table 6.1 in the `glossaries` [14] user manual for a list of all the `\hyper<xx>` commands.

Ranges can be explicitly formed using the parenthetical syntax `format={ () }` and `format={ () }` or `format={ (<cname>) }` and `format={ (<cname>) }` (where `<cname>` is again the name of a text-block command without the initial backslash) in the optional argument of commands like `\gls` or `\glsadd`. These will always form a range, regardless of `min-loc-range`, and will be encapsulated by `\bibglsrange`. (This command is not used with ranges that are formed by collating consecutive locations.) The initial marker is stripped from the `<format>` argument of the location formatting commands, such as `\glsnoidxdisplayloc`, to allow for easy conversion to the corresponding text-block command.

Explicit ranges don't merge with neighbouring locations, but will absorb any single locations within the range that don't conflict. (Conflicts will be moved to the start of the explicit range.) For example, if `\gls{sample}` is used on page 1, `\gls[format={ () }]{sample}` is

used on page 2, `\gls{sample}` is used on page 3, and `\gls[format={}] {sample}` is used on page 4, then the location list will be 1, 2–4. The entry on page 3 is absorbed into the explicit range, but the range can't be expanded to include page 1. If the entry on page 3 had a different format to the explicit range, for example `\gls[format={textbf}] {sample}` then it would cause a warning and be moved before the start of the range so that the location list would then be 1, 3, 2–4.

An ignored record identifies a term that needs to be treated as though it has a record for selection purposes, but the record should not be included in the location list. The special format `format={glsignore}` is provided by the glossaries package for cases where the location should be ignored. (The command `\glsignore` simply ignores its argument.) This works reasonably well if an entry only has the one location, but if the entry happens to be indexed again, it can lead to an odd empty gap in the location list with a spurious comma. If `bib2gls` encounters a record with this special format, the entry will be selected but the record will be discarded.

This means that the location list will be empty if the entry was only indexed with the special ignored format, but if the entry was also indexed with another format then the location list won't include the ignored records. (This format is used by `\glsaddallunused` but remember that iterative commands like this don't work with `bib2gls`. Instead, just use `selection={all}` to select all entries. Those that don't have records won't have a location list.)

For example, suppose you only want main matter locations in the number list, but you want entries that only appear in the back matter to still appear in the glossary (without a location list), then you could do:

```
\backmatter
\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat{glsignore}
```

If you also want to drop front matter locations as well:

```
\frontmatter
\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat{glsignore}
...
\mainmatter
\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat{glsnumberformat}
...
\backmatter
\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat{glsignore}
```

Note that explicit range formations aren't discarded, so if `glsignore` is used in a range, such as:

```
\glsadd[format={(glsignore)}]{sample}
...
\glsadd[format={}glsignore]{sample}
```

then the range will be included in the location list (encapsulated with `\glsignore`), but this case would be a rather odd use of this special format and is not recommended.

The record counting commands, such as `\rgls`, use the special format `glstriggerrecordformat`, which `bib2gls` also treats as an ignored record and the same rules as for `glsignore` apply.

The locations are always listed in the order in which they were indexed, (except for the cross-reference which may be placed at the start or end of the list or omitted). This is different to `xindy` and `makeindex` where you can specify the ordering (such as lower case Roman first, then digits, etc), but unlike those applications, `bib2gls` allows any location, although it may not be able to work out an integer representation. (With `xindy`, you can define new location formats, but you need to remember to add the appropriate code to the custom module.)

It's possible to define a custom glossary style where `\glossentry` (and the child form `\subglossentry`) ignore the final argument (which will be the `location` field) and instead parse the `loclist` field and re-order the locations or process them in some other way. Remember that you can also use `\glsnoidxloclist` provided by glossaries. For example:

```
\glsfieldfetch{gls.sample}{loclist}{\loclist}% fetch location list
\glsnoidxloclist{\loclist}% iterate over locations
```

This uses `\glsnoidxloclisthandler` as the list's handler macro, which simply displays each location separated by `\delimN`. (See also Iteration Tips and Tricks [15].)

Each regular location is listed in the `.aux` file in the form:

```
\glsxtr@record{<label>}{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}
```

(See `--merge-nameref-on` for `nameref` records.) Exact duplicates are discarded. For example, if `cat` is indexed twice on page 1:

```
\glsxtr@record{cat}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glsxtr@record{cat}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
```

then the second record is discarded. Only the first record is added to the location list.

Partial duplicates, where all arguments match except for `<format>`, may be discarded depending on the value of `<format>`. For example, if page 1 of the document uses `\gls{cat}` and `\gls[format={hyperbf}]{cat}` then the `.aux` file will contain:

```
\glsxtr@record{cat}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}
\glsxtr@record{cat}{}{page}{hyperbf}{1}
```

This is a partial record match. In this case, `bib2gls` makes the following tests:

- If one of the formats includes a range formation, the range takes precedence.
- If one of the formats is `glsnumberformat` (as in the above example) or an ignored record format such as `glsignore`, that format will be skipped. So in the above example, the second record will be added to the location list, but not the first. (A message will only be written to the transcript if the `--debug` switch is used.) The default `glsnumberformat` will take precedence over the ignored record formats (`glsignore` and `glstriggerrecordformat`).

- If a mapping has been set with the `--map-format` switch that mapping will be checked.
- Otherwise the duplicate record will be discarded with a warning.

The `location` field is used to store the formatted location list. The code for this list is generated by `bib2gls` based on the information provided in the `.aux` file, the presence of the `see` or `seealso` field and the various settings described in this chapter. When you display the glossary using `\printunsrtglossary`, if the `location` field is present it will be displayed according to the glossary style (and other factors, such as whether the `nonumberlist` option has been used, either as a package option or supplied in the optional argument of `\printunsrtglossary`). For more information on adjusting the formatting see the glossaries [14] and `glossaries-extra` [13] user manuals.

`save-locations=<boolean>`

By default, the locations will be processed and stored in the `location` and `loclist` fields. However, if you don't want the location lists (for example, you are using the `nonumberlist` option or you are using `xindy` with a custom location rule), then there's no need for `bib2gls` to process the locations. To switch this function off, just use `save-locations={false}`. Note that with this setting, if you're not additionally using `makeindex` or `xindy`, then the locations won't be available even if you don't have the `nonumberlist` option set.

`save-loclist=<boolean>`

If you want the `location` field but don't need `loclist`, you can use `save-loclist={false}`. This can help to save resources and build time.

`save-primary-locations=<value>`

It's sometimes useful to identify primary locations with a different format, such as bold or italic. This helps the reader select which location to try first in the event of a long location list. However, you may prefer to store the primary location in a different field to give it a more prominent position. In order to do this you need to specify the format (or formats) used to identify primary locations with `primary-location-formats` and use `save-primary-locations` to determine how to deal with these locations.

This option may take one of the following values:

- `false`: don't save primary locations (default);
- `retain`: save primary locations in the `primarylocations` field but don't remove from the usual location list;
- `default format`: similar to `retain` but the format for the primary records in the `location` field is converted to the default `glsnumberformat` `encap` (the records in the `primarylocations` field retain their given format);

- `start`: save primary locations in the `primarylocations` field and also move to the start of the usual location list;
- `remove`: save primary locations in the `primarylocations` field and remove from the usual location list.

The primary locations are copied to the `primarylocations` field and encapsulated with `\bibglsprimary`. If you use `save-primary-locations={remove}`, the `location` field will end up empty if the locations for the associated entry were all identified as primary. If you use `save-primary-locations={start}`, all primary locations will be moved to the start of the location list stored in the `location` field, but there will be no additional markup (other than the given format) to identify them. If you need additional markup, then use `save-primary-locations={remove}` and adjust the location list format to insert the primary locations at the start. This can be done by modifying the glossary style.

For example, the `bookindex` style inserts `\glxtrbookindexprelocation` before the location, so you could redefine this:

```
\renewcommand*{\glxtrbookindexprelocation}[1]{%
  \glxtrifhasfield{primarylocations}{#1}%
  {%
    \glxtrprelocation
    \glscurrentfieldvalue
    \glxtrifhasfield{location}{#1}{;}{}%
  }%
  {}%
  \glxtrprelocation
}
```

(Note that if `loc-prefix` is used, the prefix will be in the `location` field and so will come after the primary locations in the above example. Similarly for cross-references unless they've been omitted.)

You can switch from using the `location` field to the `primarylocations` field by locally changing `\GlsXtrLocationField`:

```
\printunsrtglossary*{%
  \renewcommand{\GlsXtrLocationField}{primarylocations}%
}
```

Remember that the handler used by `\printunsrtglossary` will fallback on the `loclist` field if the field identified by `\GlsXtrLocationField` is missing or empty. You may want to consider using `save-loclist={false}` to prevent this.

`primary-location-formats=<list>`

This option will automatically set `save-primary-locations={retain}` unless it has already been changed from the default `save-primary-locations={false}` setting. The argument should be a comma-separated list of formats. If a record's format is contained in

this list then it will be considered a primary location and it will be included in the associated entry's `primarylocations` field.

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@entry{bird,
  name={bird},
  description={feathered animal}
}
@entry{waterfowl,
  name={waterfowl},
  description={any bird that lives in or about water}
}
@entry{zebra,
  name={zebra},
  description={striped African horse}
}
@entry{parrot,
  name={parrot},
  description={mainly tropical bird with bright plumage}
}
```

and the document `test.tex` contains:

```
\documentclass{report}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,
  postpunc={dot},
  nostyles,
  stylemods={tree,bookindex},
  style={bookindex}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},
  primary-location-formats={hyperbf,hyperemph},
  save-primary-locations={remove}
]

\renewcommand*{\glstxrbookindexprelocation}[1]{%
  \glstxrifhasfield{primarylocations}{#1}%
  {%
    \glstxrprelocation
    \glscurrentfieldvalue
    \glstxrifhasfield{location}{#1}{;}{;}%
  }%
}
```

```

    {}%
    \glstrprelocation
}

\glstrnewglslike[format={hyperbf}]{\primary}{\primarypl}{\Primary}
{\Primarypl}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Sample}
\Primary{waterfowl}, \gls{bird} and \gls{zebra}.

\chapter{Another Sample}
\Gls{waterfowl}, \primary{bird} and \gls{zebra}.

\chapter{Yet Another Sample}
\Gls{waterfowl}, \gls{bird} and \primary{zebra}.

\chapter{Yet Another Sample Again}
\Gls{waterfowl}, \gls{bird}, \primarypl{parrot} and \gls{zebra}.

\printunsrtglossary*[style={tree},nonumberlist]{%
  \renewcommand*{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{\glsadd[format={hyperemph}]
  {#1}}%
}

\printunsrtglossary[title={Index},target={false}]
\end{document}

```

The `primary-location-formats={hyperbf,hyperemph}` setting in the above indicates that locations encapsulated with `\hyperbf` and `\hyperemph` are primary records. In this case, the bold format is used to indicate the primary location in the main document text and the emphasized format is used to indicate the location in the main glossary.

The primary records are removed from the `location` field due to the `save-primary-locations={remove}` setting. This can lead to a ragged location list. The option `save-primary-locations={default format}` can allow the primary location to be absorbed into a range.

The main glossary records are added through the category-independent post-name hook with `\glsadd`. This won't be implemented until the entries are actually defined as the page number can't be determined until the glossary can be displayed. This means that the document build requires an extra `bib2gls` and \LaTeX run:

```

pdflatex test
bib2gls --group test
pdflatex test
bib2gls --group test

```

pdflatex test

For consistency, I've used `\glstrnewglslike` to provide commands used to indicate a primary reference in the text. This means that if I decide to change the optional arguments used for primary references I only need to edit one line. For example, I might want to change the default counter:

```
\glstrnewglslike [format={hyperbf}, counter={chapter}] {}{\primary}
{\primarypl}{\Primary}{\Primarypl}
```

Here's another example that only has one primary format (`hyperrm`) that's indexed through the use of `\GlsXtrAutoAddOnFormat`, which sets up a hook that automatically inserts:

```
\glsadd[counter={chapter}, format={hyperrm}] {<label>}
```

on each instance of `\gls [format={primaryfmt}] {<label>}` (or similar). This means that the entry is indexed twice when this particular format is used: first with the `hyperrm` format and chapter counter (from the `\glsadd` command in the hook), and then with the `primaryfmt` format and the default counter (as per normal behaviour):

```
\documentclass{report}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[
  record={nameref},
  postpunc={dot},
  nostyles,
  stylemods={tree,bookindex},
  style={bookindex}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={topics},
  primary-location-formats={hyperrm},
  save-primary-locations={remove},
  save-loclist={false}
]

\newcommand{\primaryfmt}[1]{\hyperbf{#1}}

\GlsXtrAutoAddOnFormat{primaryfmt}{counter={chapter}, format={hyperrm}}

\glstrnewglslike [format={primaryfmt}] {}{\primary}{\primarypl}{\Primary}
{\Primarypl}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Sample}
```

```

\Primary{waterfowl}, \gls{bird} and \gls{zebra}.

\chapter{Another Sample}
\Gls{waterfowl}, \primary{bird} and \gls{zebra}.

\chapter{Yet Another Sample}
\Gls{waterfowl}, \gls{bird} and \primary{zebra}.

\chapter{Yet Another Sample Again}
\Gls{waterfowl}, \gls{bird}, \primarypl{parrot} and \gls{zebra}.

\printunsrtglossary*[style={tree},title={Summary}]{%
  \renewcommand*{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{\glsadd[format={hyperrm}]
{#1}}%
  \renewcommand{\GlsXtrLocationField}{primarylocations}%
}

\printunsrtglossary[title={Index},target={false}]
\end{document}

```

Note that in this case, from `bib2gls`' point of view, the primary format is `hyperrm` not `primaryfmt`. This picks out the records created with the automated `\glsadd`, which have the counter set to `chapter`. The first glossary (with the title "Summary") switches the location field to `primarylocations` so that only the primary records are listed. Since `record={nameref}` has been used this means that the chapter title is shown rather than the chapter number.

The second glossary ("Index") shows the location lists that only have the page counter (because the automated `\glsadd` records with the chapter counter have been removed because they were identified as primary records). These just show the page number as that's the default display with `record={nameref}` for records with the page counter.

An alternative to `\GlsXtrAutoAddOnFormat` would be to simply define the custom commands as follows:

```

\newcommand{\primary}[2] [] {%
  \glsadd[counter={chapter},format={hyperrm}]{#2}%
  \gls[format={primaryfmt},#1]{#2}%
}
\newcommand{\primarypl}[2] [] {%
  \glsadd[counter={chapter},format={hyperrm}]{#2}%
  \glspl[format={primaryfmt},#1]{#2}%
}
\newcommand{\Primary}[2] [] {%
  \glsadd[counter={chapter},format={hyperrm}]{#2}%
  \Gls[format={primaryfmt},#1]{#2}%
}
\newcommand{\Primarypl}[2] [] {%

```

```

\glsadd[counter={chapter},format={hyperrm}]{#2}%
\Glspl[format={primaryfmt},#1]{#2}%
}

```

This is more useful if you want to simply omit the `format={primaryfmt}` option (just remove it from the above four definitions), which makes it easier to merge the locations into ranges in the index.

`min-loc-range=<value>`

By default, three or more consecutive locations $\langle loc-1 \rangle$, $\langle loc-2 \rangle$, ..., $\langle loc-n \rangle$ are compressed into the range $\langle loc-1 \rangle \backslash \text{delimR} \langle loc-n \rangle$. Otherwise the locations are separated by `\bibglsdelimN` or `\bibglslastDelimN`. As mentioned above, these aren't merged with explicit range formations.

You can change this with the `min-loc-range` setting where $\langle value \rangle$ is either none (don't form ranges) or an integer greater than one indicating how many consecutive locations should be converted into a range.

`bib2gls` determines if one location $\{\langle prefix-2 \rangle\}\{\langle counter-2 \rangle\}\{\langle format-2 \rangle\}\{\langle location-2 \rangle\}$ is one unit more than another location $\{\langle prefix-1 \rangle\}\{\langle counter-1 \rangle\}\{\langle format-1 \rangle\}\{\langle location-1 \rangle\}$ according to the following:

1. If $\langle prefix-1 \rangle$ is not equal to $\langle prefix-2 \rangle$ or $\langle counter-1 \rangle$ is not equal to $\langle counter-2 \rangle$ or $\langle format-1 \rangle$ is not equal to $\langle format-2 \rangle$, then the locations aren't considered consecutive.
2. If either $\langle location-1 \rangle$ or $\langle location-2 \rangle$ are empty, then the locations aren't considered consecutive.
3. If both $\langle location-1 \rangle$ and $\langle location-2 \rangle$ match the pattern (line break for clarity only)¹

```

(.*) (?:\protect\s*)?(\[[\p{javaAlphabetic}@]+\s*\{([\p{javaDigit}
\p{javaAlphabetic}]+\)\}

```

then:

- if the control sequence matched by group 2 isn't the same for both locations, the locations aren't considered consecutive;
- if the argument of the control sequence (group 3) is the same for both locations, then the test is retried with $\langle location-1 \rangle$ set to group 1 of the first pattern match and $\langle location-2 \rangle$ set to group 1 of the second pattern match;
- otherwise the test is retried with $\langle location-1 \rangle$ set to group 3 of the first pattern match and $\langle location-2 \rangle$ set to group 3 of the second pattern match.

¹The Java class `\p{javaDigit}` used in the regular expression will match any digits in the Unicode "Number, Decimal Digit" category not just the digits in the Basic Latin set. Similarly `\p{javaAlphabetic}` will also match alphabetic characters outside the Basic Latin set.

4. If both $\langle location-1 \rangle$ and $\langle location-2 \rangle$ match the pattern

```
(. *?) ([^\p{javaDigit}]?) (\p{javaDigit}+)
```

then:

- a) if group 3 of both pattern matches are equal then:
 - i. if group 3 isn't zero, the locations aren't considered consecutive;
 - ii. if the separators (group 2) are different the test is retried with $\langle location-1 \rangle$ set to the concatenation of the first two groups $\langle group-1 \rangle \langle group-2 \rangle$ of the first pattern match and $\langle location-2 \rangle$ set to the concatenation of the first two groups $\langle group-1 \rangle \langle group-2 \rangle$ of the second pattern match;
 - iii. if the separators (group 2) are the same the test is retried with $\langle location-1 \rangle$ set to the first group $\langle group-1 \rangle$ of the first pattern match and $\langle location-2 \rangle$ set to the first group $\langle group-1 \rangle$ of the second pattern match.
 - b) If $\langle group-1 \rangle$ of the first pattern match (of $\langle location-1 \rangle$) doesn't equal $\langle group-1 \rangle$ of the second pattern match (of $\langle location-2 \rangle$) or $\langle group-2 \rangle$ of the first pattern match (of $\langle location-1 \rangle$) doesn't equal $\langle group-2 \rangle$ of the second pattern match (of $\langle location-2 \rangle$) then the locations aren't considered consecutive;
 - c) If $0 < l_2 - l_1 \leq d$ where l_2 is $\langle group 3 \rangle$ of the second pattern match, l_1 is $\langle group 3 \rangle$ of the first pattern match and d is the value of `max-loc-diff` then the locations are consecutive otherwise they're not consecutive.
5. The next pattern matches for $\langle prefix \rangle \langle sep \rangle \langle n \rangle$ where $\langle n \rangle$ is a lower case Roman numeral, which is converted to a decimal value and the test is performed in the same way as the above decimal test.
 6. The next pattern matches for $\langle prefix \rangle \langle sep \rangle \langle n \rangle$ where $\langle n \rangle$ is an upper case Roman numeral, which is converted to a decimal value and the test is performed in the same way as the above decimal test.
 7. The next pattern matches for $\langle prefix \rangle \langle sep \rangle \langle c \rangle$ where $\langle c \rangle$ is either a lower case letter from a to z or an upper case letter from A to Z. The character is converted to its code point and the test is performed in the same way as the decimal pattern above.
 8. If none of the above, the locations aren't considered consecutive.

Examples:

1. `\glstr@record{gls.sample}{-}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}`
`\glstr@record{gls.sample}{-}{page}{glsnumberformat}{2}`

These records are consecutive. The prefix, counter and format are identical (so the test passes step 1), the locations match the decimal pattern and the test in step 4c passes.

2. `\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1}`
`\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{textbf}{2}`

These records aren't consecutive since the formats are different.

3. `\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{A.i}`
`\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{A.ii}`

These records are consecutive. The prefix, counter and format are identical (so it passes step 1). The locations match the lower case Roman numeral pattern, where A is considered a prefix and the dot is considered a separator. The Roman numerals i and ii are converted to decimal and the test is retried with the locations set to 1 and 2, respectively. This now passes the decimal pattern test (step 4c).

4. `\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{i.A}`
`\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{ii.A}`

These records aren't consecutive. They match the alpha pattern. The first location is considered to consist of the prefix i, the separator . (dot) and the number given by the character code of A. The second location is considered to consist of the prefix ii, the separator . (dot) and the number given by the character code of A.

The test fails because the numbers are equal and the prefixes are different.

5. `\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1.0}`
`\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{2.0}`

These records are consecutive. They match the decimal pattern, and then step 4a followed by step 4(a)iii. The .0 part is discarded and the test is retried with the first location set to 1 and the second location set to 2.

6. `\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{1.1}`
`\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{2.1}`

These records aren't consecutive as the test branches off into step 4(a)i.

7. `\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{\@alph{1}}`
`\glxtr@record{gls.sample}{}{page}{glsnumberformat}{\@alph{2}}`

These records are consecutive. The locations match the control sequence pattern. The control sequences are the same, so the test is retried with the first location set to 1 and the second location set to 2.

In this example, the location has been written to the file as `\@alph{<number>}` instead of fully expanding according to the normal behaviour of `\alph{<counter>}`. (Note that `\glxtrresourcefile` changes the category code of @ to allow for internal commands in locations.) This unusual case is for illustrative purposes.

`max-loc-diff=<value>`

This setting is used to determine whether two locations are considered consecutive. The value must be an integer greater than or equal to 1. (The default is 1.)

For two locations, $\langle location-1 \rangle$ and $\langle location-2 \rangle$, that have numeric values n_1 and n_2 (and identical prefix, counter and format), then the sequence $\langle location-1 \rangle$, $\langle location-2 \rangle$ is considered consecutive if

$$0 < n_2 - n_1 \leq \langle max-loc-diff \rangle$$

The default value of 1 means that $\langle location-2 \rangle$ immediately follows $\langle location-1 \rangle$ if $n_2 = n_1 + 1$.

For example, if $\langle location-1 \rangle$ is “B” and $\langle location-2 \rangle$ is “C”, then $n_1 = 66$ and $n_2 = 67$. Since $n_2 = 67 = 66 + 1 = n_1 + 1$ then $\langle location-2 \rangle$ immediately follows $\langle location-1 \rangle$.

This is used in the range formations within the location lists (as described in the above section). So, for example, the list “1, 2, 3, 5, 7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 58, 59, 61” becomes “1–3, 5, 7, 8, 10–12, 58, 59, 61”.

The automatically indexing of commands like `\gls` means that the location lists can become long and ragged. You could deal with this by switching off the automatic indexing and only explicitly index pertinent use or you can adjust the value of `max-loc-diff` so that a range can be formed even if there are one or two gaps in it. By default, any location ranges that have skipped gaps in this manner will be followed by `\bibglspace`. The default definition of this command is obtained from the resource file. For English, this is `\space` (space followed by “passim”).

So with the above set of locations, if `max-loc-diff={2}` then the list becomes “1–12 passim, 58–61 passim” which now highlights that there are two blocks within the document related to that term.

`suffixF`= $\langle value \rangle$

If set, a range consisting of two consecutive locations $\langle loc-1 \rangle$ and $\langle loc-2 \rangle$ will be displayed in the location list as $\langle loc-1 \rangle \langle value \rangle$.

Note that `suffixF={}` sets the suffix to the empty string. To remove the suffix formation use `suffixF={none}`.

The default is `suffixF={none}`.

`suffixFF`= $\langle value \rangle$

If set, a range consisting of three or more consecutive locations $\langle loc-1 \rangle$ and $\langle loc-2 \rangle$ will be displayed in the location list as $\langle loc-1 \rangle \langle value \rangle$.

Note that `suffixFF={}` sets the suffix to the empty string. To remove the suffix formation use `suffixFF={none}`.

The default is `suffixFF={none}`.

`see`= $\langle value \rangle$

If an entry has a `see` field, this can be placed before or after the location list, or completely omitted (but the value will still be available in the `see` field for use with `\glsxtrusesee`). The required $\langle value \rangle$ must be one of:

- `omit`: omit the see reference from the location list.

- `before`: place the see reference before the location list.
- `after`: place the see reference after the location list (default).

The separator between the location list and the cross-reference is provided by `\bibgls-seesep`. This separator is omitted if the location list is empty. The cross-reference is written to the `location` field using `\bibglsusesee{⟨label⟩}`.

`seealso=⟨value⟩`

This is like `see` but governs the location of the cross-references provided by the `seealso` field. You need at least v1.16 of `glossaries-extra` for this option. The values are the same as for `see` but the separator is given by `\bibglsseealsosep`. The cross-reference is written to the `location` field using `\bibglsuseseealso{⟨label⟩}`.

`alias=⟨value⟩`

This is like `alias` but governs the location of the cross-references provided by the `alias` field. The separator is given by `\bibglsaliassep`. The cross-reference is written to the `location` field using `\bibglsusealias{⟨label⟩}`.

`alias-loc=⟨value⟩`

If an entry has an `alias` field, the location list may be retained or omitted or transferred to the target entry. The required `⟨value⟩` must be one of:

- `keep`: keep the location list;
- `transfer`: transfer the location list;
- `omit`: omit the location list.

The default setting is `alias-loc={transfer}`. In all cases, the target entry will be added to the `see` field of the entry with the `alias` field, unless it already has a `see` field (in which case the `see` value is left unchanged).

Note that with `alias-loc={transfer}`, both the aliased entry and the target entry must be in the same resource set. (That is, both entries have been selected by the same instance of `\glxtrresourcefile`.) If you have `glossaries-extra` version 1.12, you may need to redefine `\glxtrsetaliasnoindex` to do nothing if the location lists aren't showing correctly with aliased entries. (This was corrected in version 1.13.)

`loc-prefix=⟨value⟩`

The `loc-prefix` setting indicates that the location lists should begin with `\bibglsloc-prefix{⟨n⟩}`. The `⟨value⟩` may be one of the following:

- `false`: don't insert `\bibglslocprefix{⟨n⟩}` at the start of the location lists (default).

- $\langle prefix-1 \rangle, \langle prefix-2 \rangle, \dots, \langle prefix-n \rangle$: insert `\bibglslocprefix{⟨n⟩}` (where $\langle n \rangle$ is the number of locations in the list) at the start of each location list and the definition of `\bibglslocprefix` will be appended to the glossary preamble providing an `\ifcase` condition:

```
\providecommand{\bibglslocprefix}[1]{%
  \ifcase#1
  \or \langle prefix-1 \rangle\bibglspostlocprefix
  \or \langle prefix-2 \rangle\bibglspostlocprefix
  ...
  \else \langle prefix-n \rangle\bibglspostlocprefix
  \fi
}
```

- `comma`: equivalent to `loc-prefix={⟨, ⟩}` but avoids confusion with the list syntax. That is, the prefix is a comma followed by a space for non-empty locations.
- `list`: equivalent to `loc-prefix={\pagelistname }`.
- `true`: equivalent to `loc-prefix={\bibglspagename, \bibglspagesname}`, where the definitions of `\bibglspagename` and `\bibglspagesname` are obtained from the `tag.page` and `tag.pages` entries in `bib2gls`'s language resource file. This setting works best if the document's language matches the language file. However, you can redefine these commands within the document's language hooks or in the glossary preamble.

If $\langle value \rangle$ is omitted, `true` is assumed. Take care not to mix different values of `loc-prefix` for entries for the same `type` setting. It's okay to mix `loc-prefix={false}` with another value, but don't mix non-`false` values. See the description of `\bibglslocprefix` for further details.

For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [type={main}, src={entries1}, loc-prefix={false}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources [type={main}, src={entries2}, loc-prefix]
\GlsXtrLoadResources [type={symbols}, src={entries3}, loc-prefix={p., pp.}]
```

This works since the conflicting `loc-prefix={p., pp.}` and `loc-prefix={true}` are in different glossaries (assigned through the `type` key). The entries fetched from `entries1.bib` won't have a location prefix. The entries fetched from `entries2.bib` will have the location prefix obtained from the language resource file. The entries fetched from `entries3.bib` will have the location prefix "p." or "pp." (Note that using the `type` option isn't the same as setting the `type` field for each entry in the `.bib` file.)

If the `type` option isn't used:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [src={entries1}, loc-prefix={false}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources [src={entries2}, loc-prefix]
\GlsXtrLoadResources [src={entries3}, loc-prefix={p., pp.}]
```

then `loc-prefix={true}` takes precedence over `loc-prefix={p.,pp.}` (since it was used first). The entries fetched from `entries1.bib` still won't have a location prefix, but the entries fetched from both `entries2.bib` and `entries3.bib` have the location prefixes obtained from the language resource file.

`loc-suffix=<value>`

This is similar to `loc-prefix` but there are some subtle differences. In this case `<value>` may either be the keyword `false` (in which case the location suffix is omitted) or a comma-separated list `<suffix-0>, <suffix-1>, ..., <suffix-n>` where `<suffix-0>` is the suffix to use when the location list only has a cross-reference with no locations, `<suffix-1>` is the suffix to use when the location list has one location (optionally with a cross-reference), and so on. The final `<suffix-n>` in the list is the suffix when the location list has `<n>` or more locations (optionally with a cross-reference).

This option will append `\bibglslocsuffix{<n>}` to location lists that either have a cross-reference or have at least one location. Unlike `\bibglslocprefix`, this command isn't used when the location list is completely empty. Also, unlike `\bibglslocprefix`, this suffix command doesn't have an equivalent to `\bibglspostlocprefix`.

If `<value>` omitted, `loc-suffix={\@.}` is assumed. The default is `loc-suffix={false}`.

As with `loc-prefix`, take care not to mix different values of `loc-suffix` for entries in the same glossary type.

`loc-counters=<list>`

Commands like `\gls` allow you to select a different counter to use for the location for that specific instance (overriding the default counter for the entry's glossary type). This is done with the `counter` option. For example, consider the following document:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,style={tree}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries}% data in entries.bib
]

\begin{document}

\gls{pi}.
\begin{equation}
\gls[counter={equation}]{pi}
\end{equation}
\begin{equation}
```

```
\gls[counter={equation}]{pi}
\end{equation}
```

```
\newpage
\begin{equation}
\gls[counter={equation}]{pi}
\end{equation}
```

```
\newpage
\gls{pi}.
```

```
\newpage
\gls{pi}.
```

```
\newpage
\gls{pi}.
```

```
\newpage
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

This results in the location list “1, 1–3, 3–5”. This looks a little odd and it may seem as though the range formation hasn’t worked, but the locations are actually: page 1, equation 1, equation 2, equation 3, page 3, page 4 and page 5. Ranges can’t be formed across different counters.

The `loc-counters={⟨list⟩}` option instructs `bib2gls` to group the locations according to the counters given in the comma-separated `⟨list⟩`. If a location has a counter that’s not listed in `⟨list⟩`, then the location is discarded.

For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  loc-counters={equation,page},% group locations by counter
  src={entries}% data in entries.bib
]
```

This will first list the locations for the equation counter and then the locations for the page counter. Each group of locations is encapsulated within the command `\bibglslocationgroup{⟨n⟩}{⟨counter⟩}{⟨locations⟩}`. The groups are separated by `\bibglslocationgroupsep`.

The `⟨list⟩` value must be non-empty. Use `loc-counters={as-use}` to restore the default behaviour, where the locations are listed in the document order of use, or `save-locations={false}` to omit the location lists. Note that you can’t form counter groups from supplemental location lists.

`save-index-counter=<value>`

This option requires at least version 1.29 of *glossaries-extra*. The *<value>* may be one of:

- `false`: don't create the `indexcounter` field (default);
- `true`: create the `indexcounter` field with the value set to the first `wrglossary` location;
- *<encap>*: create the `indexcounter` field with the value set to the first `wrglossary` location where the `format` is *<encap>*.

This setting will have no effect if the `indexcounter` package option hasn't been used. In the case where the *<value>* is *<encap>*, make sure that this format takes priority in the location precedence rules (`--map-format`). If the location with that *<encap>* format value is discarded then it can't be saved.

The `indexcounter` package option (*glossaries-extra* v1.29+) creates a new counter called `wrglossary` that's incremented every time a term is indexed (recorded), except for cross-references such as `\glssee`. The increment is performed using `\refstepcounter` and is followed by `\label{wrglossary.<n>}` where *<n>* is the value of the `wrglossary` counter. This option is intended for use with the `hyperref` package to allow locations to link back to the particular part of the page where the term was referenced rather than to the top of the page.

The `indexcounter` package option also automatically implements the option `counter={wrglossary}`, which means that each instance of `\gls{<id>}` writes the label information to the `.aux` file:

```
\newlabel{wrglossary.<n>}{<n>}{<page>}{wrglossary.<n>}
```

(where *<page>* is the page number) followed by the record:

```
\glsxtr@record{<id>}{wrglossary}{glsnumberformat}{<n>}
```

The location here is actually the value of the `wrglossary` counter not the page number, but `bib2gls` can pick up the corresponding *<page>* from the `\newlabel` command. It then replaces the record's location *<n>* with:

```
\glsxtr@wrglossarylocation{<n>}{<page>}
```

(but it only does this for records that have the `wrglossary` counter).

The *glossaries-extra* package (v1.29+) adjusts the definition of `\glsnumberformat` (which is internally used by `\glsnumberformat`, `\hyperbf` etc when `hyperref` has been loaded) so that if the counter is `wrglossary` then `\pageref` is used instead of `\hyperlink`. This means that the page number is displayed in the location list but it links back to the place where the corresponding `\label` occurred.

This method works partially with `makeindex` and `xindy` but from their point of view the location is the value of the `wrglossary` counter, which interferes with their ability to merge duplicate page numbers and form ranges. Since `bib2gls` is designed specifically to work

with `glossaries-extra`, it's aware of this special counter and will merge and collate the locations according to the corresponding page number instead.

With the default `--merge-wrglossary-records` switch, if a term has multiple `wrglossary` records for a given page they will be merged. The reference link will be the dominant record for that page.

The `save-index-counter` option allows you to save the first of the `wrglossary` locations for a given entry or the first instance of a specific format of the `wrglossary` locations for a given entry. This location is stored in the `indexcounter` internal field using:

```
\GlsXtrSetField{<id>}{indexcounter}{\glstr@wrglossarylocation{<n>}
{<page>}}
```

Since `\glstr@wrglossarylocation` simply expands to its first argument, the corresponding label can be obtained with:

```
wrglossary.\glstr@wrglossarylocation{<n>}{<page>}
```

For convenience, `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` provides:

```
\GlsXtrIndexCounterLink{<text>}{<label>}
```

which will do:

```
\hyperref[wrglossary.<value>]{<text>}
```

where `<value>` is the value of the `indexcounter` field if it has been set. If the `indexcounter` field hasn't been set (or if `hyperref` hasn't been loaded) then just `<text>` is done.

This provides a convenient way of encapsulating the `name` in the glossary so that it links back to the first `wrglossary` entry or the first `format={<encap>}` `wrglossary` entry. This encapsulation can be done by providing a new glossary style or more simply by redefining `\glsnamefont`:

```
\renewcommand{\glsnamefont}[1]{%
  \GlsXtrIndexCounterLink{#1}{\glscurrententrylabel}}
```

Here's a complete example:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage{lipsum}% dummy filler text
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,indexcounter]{glossaries-extra}

\newcommand{\primary}[1]{\hyperbf{#1}}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},% terms defined in entries.bib
  save-index-counter={primary}
```

```

]

\renewcommand{\glsnamefont}[1]{%
  \GlsXtrIndexCounterLink{#1}{\glscurrententrylabel}}

\begin{document}

A \gls{sample}. \lipsum*[1] A \gls{duck}.

An equation:
\begin{equation}
\gls[counter={equation}]{pi}
\end{equation}

\lipsum[2]

Another \gls[format={primary}]{sample}. \lipsum*[3] Another
\gls{duck}.

\gls{pi}. \lipsum[4]

A \gls{sample}. \lipsum*[5] A \gls{duck} and
\gls[format={primary}]{pi}.

\lipsum*[6] A \gls[format={primary}]{duck}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

Note that the `counter={equation}` entry will have its own independent location. In this example, it's difficult to tell the difference between 1 (the equation reference) and 1 (the page reference) in the location list for the `pi` entry.

The `format={primary}` instances indicate primary references. They're displayed in bold (since `\primary` is defined to use `\hyperbf`) and these are the locations saved in the `index-counter` field because that's the *encap* identified by the `save-index-counter={primary}` setting.

5.8 Supplemental Locations

These options require at least version 1.14 of `glossaries-extra`. If you require locations from multiple external sources, then you need at least version 1.36 of `glossaries-extra` (or, more specifically, `glossaries-extra-bib2gls`, which is automatically loaded by the `record={only}` package option).

5 Resource File Options

The `glossaries-extra` package (from v1.14) provides a way of manually adding locations in supplemental documents through the use of the `thevalue` option in the optional argument of `\glsadd`. Setting values manually is inconvenient and can result in errors, so `bib2gls` provides a way of doing this automatically. Both the main document and the supplementary document need to use the `record` option. The entries provided in the `src` set must have the same labels as those used in the supplementary document. (The simplest way to achieve this is to ensure that both documents use the same `.bib` files and the same prefixes.)

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@entry{sample,
  name={sample},
  description="an example entry"
}

@abbreviation{html,
  short="html",
  long={hypertext markup language}
}

@abbreviation{ssi,
  short="ssi",
  long="server-side includes"
}

@index{goose,plural="geese"}
```

Now suppose the supplementary document is contained in the file `suppl.tex`:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,counter={section}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]

\renewcommand{\thesection}{S\arabic{section}}
\renewcommand{\theHsection}{\thepart.\thesection}

\begin{document}
\part{Sample Part}
\section{Sample Section}
\gls{goose}. \gls{sample}.

\part{Another Part}
\section{Another Section}
```

```
\gls{html}.
\gls{ssi}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

This uses the section counter for the locations and has a prefix (`\thepart.`) for the section hyperlinks.

Now let's suppose I have another document called `main.tex` that uses the `sample` entry, but also needs to include the location (S1) from the supplementary document. The manual approach offered by `glossaries-extra` is quite cumbersome and requires setting the external-location attribute and using `\glsadd` with `thevalue={S1}`, `theHvalue={I.S1}` and `format={glsxtrsupphypernumber}`.

This can be simplified with `bib2gls` by using the `supplemental-locations` option, described below.

Version 1.36 of `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` introduces some special location formatting commands that don't use the `externallocation` attribute, but instead have an extra argument that indicates the external reference. The additional argument means that it can't be used by the `format` key, but with `bib2gls` you don't use `\glsadd` to record the external locations. Instead it obtains the records from the corresponding supplementary `.aux` file, and adjusts the location encapsulator as appropriate.

If `bib2gls` detects an older version of `glossaries-extra`, it will only allow one external supplemental source, and will set the `externallocation` attribute and use the `glsxtrsupphypernumber` format. Otherwise `bib2gls` will allow multiple sources and use the newer method.

`supplemental-locations=<basename>`

The value should be the base name (without the extension) of the supplementary document (`suppl` in the above example). If you have at least version 1.36 of `glossaries-extra`, the value may be a comma-separated list of base names (without the extensions) of the supplementary documents. If an older version is detected, `bib2gls` will issue a warning and only accept the first element of the list.

For example:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  supplemental-locations={suppl},% fetch records from suppl.aux
  src={entries}]

\begin{document}
\Gls{sample} document.
```

```
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

The location list for `sample` will now be “1, S1” (page 1 from the main document and S1 from the supplementary document).

With `glossaries-extra` v1.36+, a regular location from the supplementary document will be encapsulated with:

```
\glxtrdisplaysupplc{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<src>}{<location>}
```

By default, this simply creates an external hyperlink to the supplementary document with the location as the hyperlink text. The hyperlink is created using `<src>` as the target path with the fragment part (anchor) formed from the prefix and location. The `externallocation` attribute is not set in this case. The actual formatting is done via:

```
\glxtrmultisupplocation{<location>}{<src>}{<format>}
```

which ignores the `<format>` argument by default. Its definition is simply:

```
\newcommand*{\glxtrmultisupplocation}[3]{%
  {% scope required to localise changes
    \def\glxtrsupplocationurl{#2}%
    \glshypernumber{#1}%
  }%
}
```

This locally sets the command `\glxtrsupplocationurl`, which is checked by `\glshypernumber` to establish an external rather than internal link. You can redefine the supplemental location command to retain the original encap used in the target document:

```
\renewcommand*{\glxtrmultisupplocation}[3]{%
  {% scope required to localise changes
    \def\glxtrsupplocationurl{#2}%
    \csuse{#3}{#1}%
  }%
}
```

but remember that if a hyperlink is required, the identified control sequence name must correspond to a command that uses `\glshyperlink` (such as `\hyperbf`), otherwise you will lose the hyperlink.

With older versions of `glossaries-extra`, the original location format from the supplementary document will be replaced by `glxtrsupphypernumber`, which again produces an external hyperlink. The `externallocation` attribute also needs to be set (this can be done automatically with `supplemental-category`) to identify the external document. The original format can't be accessed.

In both cases, if the document hasn't loaded the `hyperref` package, the location will simply be displayed without a hyperlink. Even if both the main and the supplementary documents have loaded `hyperref`, note that not all PDF viewers can handle external hyperlinks, and some that can open the external PDF file may not recognise the destination within that file.

The special `nameref` locations (see `--merge-nameref-on`) are still identified with `\glsxtrdisplaylocnameref` but the `\file` argument will now be set.

As from `bib2gls` v1.7, any awkward characters in the file path are replaced with `\bibglshrefchar` or (for non-ASCII characters when `fontspec` is loaded) `\bibglshrefunicode`. Both commands take two arguments: the hexadecimal character code and the actual character. In the case of `\bibglshrefchar`, the second argument is ignored, and the first is preceded by a literal percent character, so `file name.pdf` will be converted to:

```
file\bibglshrefchar{20}{ }name.pdf
```

which will expand to `file%20name.pdf`. In the case of `\bibglshrefunicode`, the first argument is ignored, so `skrárnafn.pdf` will be converted to:

```
skr\bibglshrefunicode{E1}{á}arnafn.pdf
```

which will expand to `skrárnafn.pdf`.

The supplementary locations lists are encapsulated within `\bibgls supplemental`. With `glossaries-extra` v1.36+, this command will encapsulate the sub-lists with `\bibgls supplementalsublist`.

So the above example with an old version of `glossaries-extra` (pre 1.36) will set the supplementary location list (which only consists of one location) to:

```
\bibgls supplemental
{1}{\setentrycounter[I]{section}\glsxtrsupphypernumber{S1}}
```

and the external target must be supplied through the `externallocation` attribute, which can be set with the `supplemental-category` option.

Whereas with at least version 1.36, the list will be:

```
\bibgls supplemental{1}{\bibgls supplementalsublist{1}{suppl.pdf}
{\glsxtrdisplaysupplloc{I}{section}\glsnumberformat}{suppl.pdf}{S1}}
```

If an entry has both a main location list and a supplementary location list (such as the sample entry above), the lists will be separated by `\bibgls supplementalsep`. The sub-lists (when supported) are separated by `\bibgls supplementalsubsep`.

supplemental-selection=`\langle value \rangle`

In the above example, only the sample entry is listed in the main document, even though the supplementary document also references the `goose`, `html` and `ssi` entries. By default, only those entries that are referenced in the main document will have supplementary locations added (if found in the supplementary document's `.aux` file). You can additionally include other entries that are referenced in the supplementary document but not in the main document using `supplemental-selection`. The `\langle value \rangle` may be one of the following:

- `all`: add all the entries in the supplementary document that have been defined in the `.bib` files listed in `src` for this resource set in the main document.
- `selected`: only add supplemental locations for entries that have already been selected by this resource set.
- `<label-1>, ..., <label-2>`: in addition to all those entries that have already been selected by this resource set, also add the entries identified in the comma-separated list. If a label in this list doesn't have a record in the supplementary document's `.aux` file, it will be ignored.

Any records in the supplementary `.aux` file that aren't defined by the current resource set (through the `.bib` files listed in `src`) will be ignored. Entry aliases aren't taken into account when including supplementary locations.

For example:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  supplemental-locations={suppl},
  supplemental-selection={html,ssi},
  src={entries}]

\begin{document}
\Gls{sample} document.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

This will additionally add the `html` and `ssi` entries even though they haven't been used in this document. The `goose` entry used in the supplementary document won't be included.

`supplemental-category=<value>`

The `category` field for entries containing supplemental location lists may be set using this option. If unset, `<value>` defaults to the same as that given by the `category` option. The `<value>` may either be a known identifier (as per `category`) or the category label. For example:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}
```

```

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  supplemental-locations={suppl},
  supplemental-selection={html,ssi},
  supplemental-category={supplemental},
  src={entries}]

\begin{document}
\Gls{sample} document.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

5.9 Sorting

Entries are typically displayed in an ordered list, but the `glossaries-extra` package is versatile enough to be used in wider contexts than simple terms, symbols or abbreviations. For example, entries could contain theorems or problems where the `name` supplies the title and the `description` provides a description of the theorem or problem. Another field might then contain the proof or solution. Therefore, somewhat unusually for an indexing application, `bib2gls` also provides the option to shuffle the entries instead of sorting them.

This section covers the resource options for sorting primary entries. See section 5.11 for sorting dual entries and also `sort-label-list` for sorting field values that contain a comma-separated list of entry labels (such as the `see` or `seealso` fields).

Remember that you can have `@preamble` definitions that can be hidden from `bib2gls`'s interpreter. For example, `no-interpret-preamble.bib` might contain:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\sortop}[2]{#1 #2}"}
```

which is loaded using:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={no-interpret-preamble},
  interpret-preamble={false}]
```

This provides a custom command:

```
\sortop{<text1>}{<text2>}
```

for internal use in the document. (Remember it won't be defined on the first \LaTeX run before the `.glstex` file has been created and so is only used within entry fields.)

Another file, say, `interpret-preamble.bib` may provide a definition for `bib2gls`:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\sortop}[2]{#2, #1}"}
```

which can be processed with:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={interpret-preamble}]
```

to provide `bib2gls` with this definition. The `entries.bib` file could contain:

```
@entry{caesar,
  name={\sortop{Gaius Julius}{Caesar}},
  first={Julius Caesar},
  text={Caesar},
  description={Roman politician and general}
}
```

and then be processed with:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
```

The definition provided in `interpret-preamble.bib`, which swaps the two arguments around, is now picked up by `bib2gls`, so the sort value becomes `Caesar, Gaius Julius`, but this new definition doesn't affect the document since \LaTeX has already defined `\sortop` from the first resource set, so the name will appear as "Gaius Julius Caesar" in the glossary. (If you have `\renewcommand` rather than `\providecommand`, you can prevent the redefinition occurring in the document with `write-preamble={false}`.)

Alternatively both of these `.bib` files can be loaded in one resource set:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={interpret-preamble,entries}]
```

Another possibility is to provide a custom package that contains the command definitions for the `bib2gls` interpreter and load it with `--custom-packages` instead of having the `interpret-preamble.bib` file.

`sort=<value>`

The `sort` key indicates how primary entries should be sorted. If the `<value>` is omitted, `sort={doc}` is assumed. If the `sort` option isn't used then `sort={doc}` is assumed if the document has a language that's been detected by `tracklang`, otherwise `sort={locale}` is assumed.

The `<method>-reverse` options reverse the result returned by the corresponding `<method>` comparator. However `<method>-reverse` may not produce a list that's the exact reverse of the underlying non-reversed `<method>` as the hierarchical structure or associated settings can affect the order.

No Sort

The sort methods listed in table 5.1 don't actually perform any sorting. This may cause a problem for hierarchical entries. In some cases this can lead to detached child entries or an attempt to define a child entry before its parent.

- `none` (or `unsrt`): don't sort the entries. (The entries will be in the order they were processed when parsing the data.)

Table 5.1: Summary of Available Sort Options: No Actual Sorting

none or unsrt	don't sort
random	shuffle entries
use	order of use
use-reverse	reverse order of use

Table 5.2: Summary of Available Sort Options: Alphabet

<code><lang tag></code>	sort according to this language tag
<code><lang tag>-reverse</code>	reverse sort according to this language tag
<code>doc</code>	sort according to the document language
<code>doc-reverse</code>	reverse sort according to the document language
<code>locale</code>	sort according to the default locale
<code>locale-reverse</code>	reverse sort according to the default locale
<code>custom</code>	sort according to <code>sort-rule={<custom rule>}</code>
<code>custom-reverse</code>	reverse sort according to <code>sort-rule={<custom rule>}</code>

Table 5.3: Summary of Available Sort Options: Letter (Non-Locale)

<code>letter-case</code>	case-sensitive letter sort
<code>letter-case-reverse</code>	reverse case-sensitive letter sort
<code>letter-nocase</code>	case-insensitive letter sort
<code>letter-nocase-reverse</code>	reverse case-insensitive letter sort
<code>letter-upperlower</code>	upper-lower letter sort
<code>letter-upperlower-reverse</code>	reverse upper-lower letter sort
<code>letter-lowerupper</code>	lower-upper letter sort
<code>letter-lowerupper-reverse</code>	reverse lower-upper letter sort

Table 5.4: Summary of Available Sort Options: Letter-Number

<code>letternumber-case</code>	case-sensitive letter-number sort
<code>letternumber-case-reverse</code>	reverse case-sensitive letter-number sort
<code>letternumber-nocase</code>	case-insensitive letter-number sort
<code>letternumber-nocase-reverse</code>	reverse case-insensitive letter-number sort
<code>letternumber-upperlower</code>	upper-lower letter-number sort
<code>letternumber-upperlower-reverse</code>	reverse upper-lower letter-number sort
<code>letternumber-lowerupper</code>	lower-upper letter-number sort
<code>letternumber-lowerupper-reverse</code>	reverse lower-upper letter-number sort

Table 5.5: Summary of Available Sort Options: Numerical

<code>integer</code>	<code>integer sort</code>
<code>integer-reverse</code>	<code>reverse integer sort</code>
<code>hex</code>	<code>hexadecimal sort</code>
<code>hex-reverse</code>	<code>reverse hexadecimal sort</code>
<code>octal</code>	<code>octal sort</code>
<code>octal-reverse</code>	<code>reverse octal sort</code>
<code>binary</code>	<code>binary sort</code>
<code>binary-reverse</code>	<code>reverse binary sort</code>
<code>float</code>	<code>float sort</code>
<code>float-reverse</code>	<code>reverse float sort</code>
<code>double</code>	<code>double sort</code>
<code>double-reverse</code>	<code>reverse double sort</code>
<code>numeric</code>	<code>locale-sensitive numeric sort</code>
<code>numeric-reverse</code>	<code>reverse locale-sensitive numeric sort</code>
<code>currency</code>	<code>locale-sensitive currency sort</code>
<code>currency-reverse</code>	<code>reverse locale-sensitive currency sort</code>
<code>percent</code>	<code>locale-sensitive percent sort</code>
<code>percent-reverse</code>	<code>reverse locale-sensitive percent sort</code>
<code>numberformat</code>	<code>locale-sensitive custom numeric sort</code>
<code>numberformat-reverse</code>	<code>reverse locale-sensitive custom numeric sort</code>

Table 5.6: Summary of Available Sort Options: Date-Time

<code>date</code>	<code>locale-sensitive date sort</code>
<code>date-reverse</code>	<code>reverse locale-sensitive date sort</code>
<code>datetime</code>	<code>locale-sensitive date-time sort</code>
<code>datetime-reverse</code>	<code>reverse locale-sensitive date-time sort</code>
<code>time</code>	<code>locale-sensitive time sort</code>
<code>time-reverse</code>	<code>reverse locale-sensitive time sort</code>

- `random`: shuffles rather than sorts the entries. This won't work if there are hierarchical entries, so it's best to use this option with `flatten`. The seed for the random generator can be set using `shuffle` (which also automatically sets `sort={random}` and `flatten`).
- `use`: order of use. This order is determined by the records written to the `.aux` file by the `record` package option. Dependencies and cross-references (including those identified with `\glssee`) come after entries with records.

Note that this is different from using the analogous option with `makeindex` or `xindy`, which does actually sort numerically, where each entry has an associated number set on the first use of that term that's used as the sort value.

- `use-reverse`: reverses the order that would be obtained with `sort={use}` without reference to hierarchy.

Alphabet

The sort methods listed in table 5.2 are for alphabets that are defined by a rule. These usually ignore most punctuation and may ignore modifiers (such as accents). Use with `break-at` to determine whether or not to split at word boundaries. The collation rules (except for the custom options) are obtained from the locale provider (see page 20).

- `<lang tag>`: sort according to the rules of the locale given by the IETF language tag `<lang tag>`.
- `<lang tag>-reverse`: reverse sort according to the rules of the locale given by the IETF language tag `<lang tag>`.
- `locale`: equivalent to `sort={<lang tag>}` where `<lang tag>` is obtained from the JRE (which usually matches the operating system's locale).
- `locale-reverse`: equivalent to `sort={<lang tag>-reverse}` where `<lang tag>` is obtained from the JRE.
- `doc`: sort the entries according to the document language. This is equivalent to `sort={<lang tag>}` where `<lang tag>` is the locale associated with the document language. In the case of a multi-lingual document, `<lang tag>` is the locale of the last language resource file to be loaded through `tracklang`'s interface. It's best to explicitly set the locale for multi-lingual documents to avoid confusion. If no languages have been tracked, this option is equivalent to `sort={locale}`.
- `doc-reverse`: as `doc` but in reverse order.
- `custom`: sort the entries according to the rule provided by `sort-rule`.
- `custom-reverse`: reverse sort the entries according to the rule provided by `sort-rule`.

Note that `sort={\langle locale \rangle}` can provide more detail about the given locale than `sort={doc}`, depending on how the document language has been specified. For example, with:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={german-terms}]
```

the language tag will be `de-1996`, which doesn't have an associated region, so this is equivalent to using `sort={de-1996}`. Whereas with:

```
\documentclass[de-DE-1996]{article}
\usepackage[ngerman]{babel}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={german-terms}]
```

the language tag will be `de-DE-1996` because `tracklang` has picked up the locale from the document class options, so this is equivalent to using `sort={de-DE-1996}`. This is only likely to cause a difference if a language has different sorting rules according to the region or if the language may be written in multiple scripts.

If no language package is loaded then the default is `sort={locale}` rather than `sort={doc}`. For example, with:

```
\documentclass{article}
\usepackage[record]{glossaries}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={german-terms}]
```

the language tag will be whatever is the default locale for the JVM. For a user in Germany, this could be `de-DE-1996` and for a user in Austria this could be `de-AT-1996`.

A multilingual document will need to have the `sort` specified when loading the resource set to ensure the correct language is chosen. For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={english-terms},sort={en-GB}]
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={german-terms},sort={de-DE-1996}]
```

Letter (Non Locale)

The sort methods listed in table 5.3 use letter comparators. These simply compare the character codes. The `-nocase` options first convert the `sort` field to lower case before performing the sort to provide a case-insensitive comparison.

Punctuation isn't ignored. Use `sort={\langle lang tag \rangle}` with `break-at={none}` to emulate `xindy`'s locale letter ordering. The examples below show the ordering of the list antelope, bee, Africa, aardvark and Brazil.

- `letter-case`: case-sensitive letter sort. Upper case and lower case are in separate letter groups. Example:

Africa (letter group upper case "A"), Brazil (letter group upper case "B"), aardvark (letter group lower case "a"), antelope (letter group lower case "a"), bee (letter group lower case "b").

- `letter-case-reverse`: reverse case-sensitive letter sort. Example:
bee (letter group lower case “b”), antelope (letter group lower case “a”), aardvark (letter group lower case “a”) Brazil (letter group upper case “B”), Africa (letter group upper case “A”).
- `letter-nocase`: case-insensitive letter sort. (All upper case characters will have first been converted to lower case in the sort value.) Example:
aardvark (letter group “A”), Africa (letter group “A”), antelope (letter group “A”), bee (letter group “B”), Brazil (letter group “B”).
- `letter-nocase-reverse`: reverse case-insensitive letter sort. Example:
Brazil (letter group “B”), bee (letter group “B”), antelope (letter group “A”), Africa (letter group “A”), aardvark (letter group “A”).
- `letter-upperlower`: each character pair is first compared according to their lower case values. If these are equal, then they are compared according to case. This puts upper and lower case in the same letter group but the upper case comes first. Example:
Africa (letter group “A”), aardvark (letter group “A”), antelope (letter group “A”), Brazil (letter group “B”), bee (letter group “B”).
- `letter-upperlower-reverse`: reverse upper-lower letter sort. This now puts the lower case letters first within the letter group. Example:
bee (letter group “B”), Brazil (letter group “B”), antelope (letter group “A”), aardvark (letter group “A”), Africa (letter group “A”).
- `letter-lowerupper`: each character pair is first compared according to their lower case values. If these are equal, then they are compared according to case. This puts upper and lower case in the same letter group but the lower case comes first. Example:
aardvark (letter group “A”), antelope (letter group “A”), Africa (letter group “A”), bee (letter group “B”), Brazil (letter group “B”).
- `letter-lowerupper-reverse`: reverse lower-upper letter sort. This now puts the upper case letters first within the letter group. Example:
Brazil (letter group “B”), bee (letter group “B”), Africa (letter group “A”), antelope (letter group “A”), aardvark (letter group “A”).

Letter-Number

The sort methods listed in table 5.4 use a letter-integer hybrid. They behave in a similar way to the above letter sort methods, but if an integer number pattern is detected in the string then the sub-string containing the number will be compared. This only detects base 10 integers (unlike the numeric methods such as `sort={hexadecimal}` or `sort={float}`) but in addition to recognising all the digits in the Unicode “Number, Decimal Digit” category it also recognises the subscript and superscript digits, such as ¹ (0x00B9) and ² (0x00B2).

As with the letter sort methods, letters are compared using a character code comparison not by a locale alphabet. The closest locale-sensitive equivalent is to use `sort-number-pad` with a locale sort method.

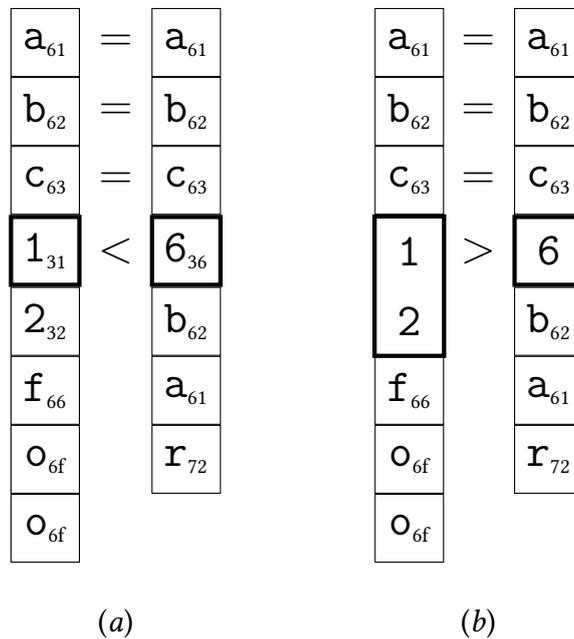


Figure 5.1: Regular letter comparison vs letter-number comparison. Comparing the strings `abc12foo` and `abc6bar`: (a) `letter-case`; (b) `letternumber-case`.

For example, suppose the first string is `abc12foo` and the second string is `abc6bar`. Figure 5.1(a) shows the regular letter comparison using `sort={letter-case}`, where the subscript indicates the hexadecimal character code. The first three characters from each string are identical (`abc`). At this point there's no difference detected, so the comparator moves on to the next character, `131` for the first string and `636` for the second string. Since `0x31` is less than `0x36`, the first string (`abc12foo`) is considered less than the second (`abc6bar`).

With the letter-number comparison using `sort={letternumber-case}`, the comparator starts in much the same way. The first three characters from each string are still identical, so the comparator moves on to the next character, `1` for the first string and `6` for the second. These are now both recognised as digits, so the comparator looks ahead and reads in any following digits (if present). For the first case, this is the sub-string `12` and, for the second case, `6` (figure 5.1(b)). These are both compared according to their integer representation `12 > 6`, so `abc12bar` is considered greater than `abc6foo` (that is, `abc12bar` comes after `abc6foo`).

The same result occurs for other numbering systems, for example if the Basic Latin digits `1`, `2` and `6` are replaced with the corresponding Devanagari digits `१`, `२` and `६`. (But note that the letter comparisons will still be based on their Unicode values not according to a particular locale. This type of sort method is intended primarily for symbolic values, such as chemical formulae, rather than for words or phrases.)

Signed integers are also recognised, so `abc-12foo` is less than `abc+6bar`, which is again different from the result obtained with a straight letter comparator where the character `+` (0x2B) comes before the character `-` (0x2D). The sign must be followed by at least one digit for it to be recognised as a number otherwise it's treated as a punctuation character.

If only one sub-string is numeric then the `letter-number-rule` is used to determine the result. Where both sub-strings are non-numeric, then the `letter-number-punc-rule` setting is used to determine the result according to the category of the characters, which may be one of the following:

- white space: belongs to the Unicode “Separator, Space” category. If both characters are white space, then they are compared according to their Unicode values otherwise they are ordered according to the `letter-number-punc-rule` setting.
- letter: belongs to one of the Unicode categories “Letter, Uppercase”, “Letter, Lowercase”, “Letter, Titlecase”, “Letter, Modifier” or “Letter, Other”. If both characters are letters then, for sort method `letternumber-⟨modifier⟩`, the characters are compared in the same way as the corresponding `letter-⟨modifier⟩` sort method otherwise they are ordered according to the `letter-number-punc-rule` setting.
- punctuation: everything else. If both characters are punctuation, then they are compared according to their Unicode value otherwise they are ordered according to the `letter-number-punc-rule` setting.

For simplicity, the actual sort value used during sorting isn't a simple string but is converted into a list of objects that represent one of: letter, integer, space or other (punctuation). This reduces the amount of parsing of substrings that needs to be performed.

The examples below show the ordering of the list: `CH2O`, `C10H10O4`, `C5H4NCOOH`, `CO`, `Cl`, `Co`, `Co2O3`, `Co2`, `CO2`, `CoMoO4` and `CoCl2`, for the setting `letter-number-rule={between}`, where the subscripts are the Unicode subscript characters.

- `letternumber-case`: case-sensitive letter-number sort. Example:
`CH2O`, `CO`, `CO2`, `C5H4NCOOH`, `C10H10O4`, `Cl`, `Co`, `CoCl2`, `CoMoO4`, `Co2`, `Co2O3`.
 (Order determined by: `H < O < 5 < 10 < 1 < o`.)
- `letternumber-case-reverse`: reverse case-sensitive letter-number sort. Example:
`Co2O3`, `Co2`, `CoMoO4`, `CoCl2`, `Co`, `Cl`, `C10H10O4`, `C5H4NCOOH`, `CO2`, `CO`, `CH2O`.
- `letternumber-nocase`: case-insensitive letter-number sort. The sort value is first converted to lower case. Note that `letter-number-rule={between}` doesn't make sense in this context as there won't be any upper case characters in the sort value, so numbers will always come before letters. Example:
`C5H4NCOOH`, `C10H10O4`, `CH2O`, `Cl`, `CO`, `Co`, `CO2`, `Co2`, `Co2O3`, `CoCl2`, `CoMoO4`.
 (Order determined by: `5 < 10 < h < 1 < o`.)

5 Resource File Options

- `letternumber-nocase-reverse`: reverse case-insensitive letter-number sort, so numbers will now always come after letters. Example:

`CoMoO4, CoCl2, Co2O3, Co2, CO2, Co, CO, Cl, CH2O, C10H10O4, C5H4NCOOH.`

- `letternumber-upperlower`: upper-lower letter-number sort. This behaves slightly differently to `letter-upperlower` when used with `letter-number-rule={between}` and has a more complicated rule that's determined by the character following the number and implied numbers inserted between letters. (There was a bug in earlier versions that has been corrected in v1.8 so you may find a slightly different ordering when upgrading.) Example:

`CH2O, C5H4NCOOH, C10H10O4, Cl, CO, CO2, Co, Co2, CoCl2, CoMoO4, Co2O3.`

(Order determined by: $H < 5H < 10H < 1 < O < o$, and for the terms starting with CO or Co: 2 comes after null and $C < M < 2O$.)

Compare this with `letter-number-rule={before letter}` which results in the order:

`C5H4NCOOH, C10H10O4, CH2O, Cl, CO, CO2, Co, Co2, Co2O3, CoCl2, CoMoO4.`

- `letternumber-upperlower-reverse`: reverse upper-lower letter-number sort. Example (with `letter-number-rule={between}`):

`Co2O3, CoMoO4, CoCl2, Co2, Co, CO2, CO, Cl, C10H10O4, C5H4NCOOH, CH2O.`

Compare this with `letter-number-rule={before letter}` which results in the order:

`CoMoO4, CoCl2, Co2O3, Co2, Co, CO2, CO, Cl, CH2O, C10H10O4, C5H4NCOOH.`

Remember that the associated settings are reversed well. So `letter-number-rule={before letter}` results in numbers *after* letters.

- `letternumber-lowerupper`: lower-upper letter-number sort. As with the upper-lower option, this behaves slightly differently to `letter-lowerupper` when used with `letter-number-rule={between}` and has a more complicated rule. Example:

`CH2O, C5H4NCOOH, C10H10O4, Cl, Co, Co2, CoCl2, CoMoO4, Co2O3, CO, CO2.`

Compare this with `letter-number-rule={before letter}` which results in the order:

`C5H4NCOOH, C10H10O4, CH2O, Cl, Co, Co2, Co2O3, CoCl2, CoMoO4, CO, CO2.`

- `letternumber-lowerupper-reverse`: reverse lower-upper letter-number sort. Example (with `letter-number-rule={between}`):

`CO2, CO, Co2O3, CoMoO4, CoCl2, Co2, Co, Cl, C10H10O4, C5H4NCOOH, CH2O.`

Numerical

The sort methods listed in table 5.5 use numeric comparisons. The sort value is expected to be a numeric value. If it can't be parsed then it's treated as 0 (and a warning will be written to the transcript). These all recognise the digits in the Unicode "Number, Decimal Digit" category but, unlike the hybrid letter-number comparators above, they don't recognise the superscript or subscript digits. The "non-locale" in some of the descriptions below indicates that the method doesn't recognise locale-sensitive formatting, such as group separators.

- `integer`: integer sort. This is for non-locale integer sort values.
- `integer-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `hex`: hexadecimal integer sort. This is for non-locale hexadecimal sort values.
- `hex-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `octal`: octal integer sort. This is for non-locale octal sort values.
- `octal-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `binary`: binary integer sort. This is for non-locale binary sort values.
- `binary-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `float`: single-precision sort. This is for non-locale decimal sort values.
- `float-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `double`: double-precision sort. This is for non-locale decimal sort values.
- `float-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `numeric`: locale-sensitive numeric sort. Use `numeric-locale` to set the locale.
- `numeric-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `currency`: locale-sensitive currency sort. Use `numeric-locale` to set the locale.
- `currency-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `percent`: locale-sensitive percent sort. Use `numeric-locale` to set the locale.
- `percent-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `numberformat`: locale-sensitive custom numeric sort. Use `numeric-locale` to set the locale and `numeric-sort-pattern` to set the number pattern.
- `numberformat-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.

In general, it doesn't make much sense to have hierarchical entries that need to be sorted by a number, but it is possible as long as each level uses the same type of numbering.

Date-Time

The sort methods listed in table 5.6 are for dates and times. Use `date-sort-format` and `date-sort-locale` to specify the date format and locale.

- `date`: sort dates.
- `date-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `datetime`: sort date and time information.
- `datetime-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.
- `time`: sort times.
- `time-reverse`: as above but reverses the order.

If the field you want to sort by contains a date then the simplest way to sort is to ensure the date is in ISO format and then just use a letter sort. However it may be that the date is in the format particular to your locale or you have a mix of AD and BC. In which case you can use one of the date/time sort options (such as `sort={date}` or `sort={date-reverse}`). The locale is assumed to be your default locale (as given by the JVM) but if you are using a different locale this can be set with `date-sort-locale`. The pattern is assumed to be the default for that locale but you can change this with `date-sort-format`. If you provide your own custom pattern you must make sure that it matches the selected sort option.

Take care if you switch from using the JRE to the CLDR locale provider as you may find the default pattern changes.

The locale and pattern information is used by `bib2gls` to parse the field. If the field value can't be parsed then `bib2gls` will issue a warning and assume the current date (or time).

The actual sort value that's used by the comparator is numeric. In the case of the time-based `sort={datetime}` and `sort={time}` (or their `-reverse` versions), this value is the number of milliseconds since 1st January, 1970. In the case of `sort={date}` (or `sort={date-reverse}`), this value is obtained from $a(y \times 10000 + m \times 100 + d)$ where y is the year, m is the month number, d is the day of month number, and a is an integer representation of the era (-1 for BC and $+1$ for AD).

Unlike the numeric sort methods (such as `sort={integer}`) the date-time sort methods set the `sort` field to a value that can be more easily parsed within the document and that should mostly achieve the same ordering if a letter comparator were to be used with it (except for BC dates, where the order needs to be reversed). This has the by-product of providing a field that you can access within the document that can be more easily parsed by `LaTeX`.

In general, it doesn't make much sense to have hierarchical entries that need to be sorted by date, but it is possible as long as each level uses the same date format.

For example, suppose my `.bib` file contains:

```
@entry{journalentry,
  name={10 Jan 2017},
  description={an interesting journal entry}
}
```

The `name` field uses an abbreviated UK date format. If all my other entries also use this format in the `name` then I can sort them chronologically:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  sort={date},
  date-sort-locale={en-GB},
  date-sort-format={medium}
]
```

(The `medium` format is actually the default for this locale, and the locale matches my system locale, so I could omit both `date-sort-locale` and `date-sort-format`.)

If `--verbose` mode is on, the transcript will show the label, sort value and numeric value for each entry. In this case, the information is:

```
journalentry -> '+1 2017-01-10' [20170110]
```

The first value is the label (`journalentry`), the second value is assigned to the `sort` field (`+1 2017-01-10`) and the number in square brackets is the actual numeric value used by the comparator. The signed number at the start of the sort field `+1` is the numeric representation of the era as used for the `a` variable in the computation of the numeric value (as described earlier).

If I change the format to `date-sort-format={short}`, then the date can't be parsed correctly and `bib2gls` will issue the following warning:

```
Warning: Can't parse sort value '10 Jan 2017' for 'journalentry'
(pattern: 'dd/MM/yyyy')
```

This shows the value that `bib2gls` is trying to parse (`10 Jan 2017`) for the entry identified by the given label (`journalentry`). The pattern `bib2gls` expects is also given (`dd/MM/yyyy`).

`shuffle`=*<seed>*

Automatically sets `sort={random}` and `flatten`. The value *<seed>* may be omitted. If present, it should be an integer used as a seed for the random number generator.

`sort-field`=*<field>*

The `sort-field` key indicates which field provides the sort value. The *<field>* must be a recognised field name or you may use `sort-field={id}` to sort according to the label. The default value is the `sort` field (which is typically inferred rather than explicitly set).

Example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries-terms},% data in entries-terms.bib
  sort-field={category},% sort by 'category' field
  sort={letter-case}% case-sensitive letter sort
]
```

This sorts the entries according to the `category` field using a case-sensitive letter comparison.

If an entry is missing a value for $\langle field \rangle$, then the value of the fallback field will be used instead. If `missing-sort-fallback` is set, then that's used as the fallback, otherwise it depends on the entry type. If no fallback field can be found, the entry's label will be used.

For the specific case with the default `sort-field={sort}` setting, the fallback for the `sort` field is governed not only by the entry type but also by some associated settings:

- For entries types like `@entry` or `@index`, then if the `sort` field is missing the value is obtained from the `name` field. If that field is also missing, then the value is obtained from the particular entry type's fallback for the `name` field. (For example, `parent` for `@entry`.)
- If the entry is defined with an abbreviation type (for example, `@abbreviation` or `@acronym`) then if the `sort` field is missing, `bib2gls` will fallback on the field given by `abbreviation-sort-fallback`.
- The symbol-like entry types fallback on the field given by `symbol-sort-fallback` if the `sort` field is missing.
- Entries defined using `@bibtexentry` fallback on the field given by `bibtexentry-sort-fallback`, which defaults to the `name` field. Note that this only applies to the main entry. The spawned `@contributor` entries behave like `@index`.

Use `dual-sort-field` when sorting dual entries.

`missing-sort-fallback= $\langle field \rangle$`

With `sort-field={ $\langle sort-field \rangle$ }`, if the value of the field identified by $\langle sort-field \rangle$ is missing, then `bib2gls` behaves as follows:

1. If `missing-sort-fallback={ $\langle fallback-field \rangle$ }` is set, then `bib2gls` will fallback on the value provided by the field $\langle fallback-field \rangle$. If $\langle fallback-field \rangle$ is missing, then `bib2gls` will query the entry type's fallback for $\langle fallback-field \rangle$ (not for $\langle sort-field \rangle$).
2. If the entry type has a fallback rule for $\langle sort-field \rangle$, then that rule is used. When `sort-field={sort}` this means:
 - If the entry was defined using one of the symbol types, then `bib2gls` will fallback on the value given by `symbol-sort-fallback`.
 - If the entry was defined using one of the abbreviation types, then `bib2gls` will fallback on the value given by `abbreviation-sort-fallback`.
 - If the entry was defined using `@bibtexentry` (but not the spawned `@contributor` entries), then `bib2gls` will fallback on the value given by `bibtexentry-sort-fallback`.

If `<sort-field>` is not `sort`, then there may not be a fallback, in which case the next condition applies:

3. Otherwise the sort value will be set to the entry label and `bib2gls` will issue a warning.

The default setting is `missing-sort-fallback={}`, which means that step 1 above is omitted.

Use `dual-missing-sort-fallback` when sorting dual entries separately from primaries, and use `secondary-missing-sort-fallback` for secondary sorting.

`abbreviation-sort-fallback=<field>`

The entry types that define abbreviations (such as `@abbreviation` and `@acronym`) will, by default, fallback on the `short` field if the `sort` field is missing (assuming `sort-field={sort}`). If you prefer to fallback on a different field, then you can use this option to specify the field. For example, `abbreviation-sort-fallback={long}`. Note that if you use `sort-field={name}`, then the fallback field will be given by `abbreviation-name-fallback` if the `name` field is omitted. The `<field>` value must be a known field label.

Note that `missing-sort-fallback` overrides this setting.

`symbol-sort-fallback=<field>`

The entry types that define symbols (such as `@symbol` and `@number`) will, by default, fallback on the label if the `sort` field is missing (assuming the default `sort-field={sort}`). If you prefer to fallback on a different field, then you can use this option to specify the field. For example, `symbol-sort-fallback={name}`. The `<field>` value must be a known field label.

Note that `missing-sort-fallback` overrides this setting.

`bibtexentry-sort-fallback=<field>`

The main `@bibtexentry` entry types will, by default, fallback on the `name` if the `sort` field is missing (assuming the default `sort-field={sort}`). If you prefer to fallback on a different field, then you can use this option to specify the field.

Note that `missing-sort-fallback` overrides this setting.

`trim-sort=<boolean>`

If the interpreter is used to determine the sort value, this setting governs whether or not the interpreter should trim leading and trailing spaces. The default setting is `trim-sort={true}`.

This option automatically sets `dual-trim-sort={<boolean>}` and `secondary-trim-sort={<boolean>}`.

`sort-replace`= $\langle list \rangle$

This option may be used to perform regular expression substitutions on the sort value and has the same syntax as `labelify-replace`. This action is done after the interpreter parses the sort value (if applicable) and before `sort-number-pad` (if applicable). For example, suppose the sort value is:

```
\ensuremath{\approx 3.14}
```

then the interpreter will convert this to ≈ 3.14 but:

```
sort-replace={{\glshex2248}{}}
```

can be used to strip the \approx symbol (0x2248) so that the value can now be parsed as a number if `sort={double}` has been used.

Use `dual-sort-replace` for dual and `secondary-sort-replace` for secondary sort methods.

`sort-rule`= $\langle value \rangle$

If the `sort={custom}` option is used, the sort rule must be provided with `sort-rule`. If `sort` is not set to `custom`, the `sort-rule` setting will be ignored. This setting uses Java's RuleBasedCollator class [6], and the rule syntax needs to conform to that format.

Remember that the options will be expanded as they are written to the `.aux` file, so be careful of any special characters that occur in the rule. For the special characters `# % _ & {` and `}` you can use `\#`, `\%`, `_`, `\&`, `\{` and `\}`. These will be written to the `.aux` file with the leading backslash, but `bib2gls` will remove it for this resource option. Remember that the glossaries package provides `\glsbackslash` and `\glsildechar` which can be used to produce a literal backslash (`\`) and tilde (`~`).

You can also use `\string\u<hex>` (where $\langle hex \rangle$ is a hexadecimal code) to represent a Unicode character. For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  sort={custom},
  sort-rule={< a,A < b,B < c,C < ch,Ch,CH < d,D
    < dd,Dd,DD < e,E < f,F < ff,Ff,FF
    < g,G < ng,Ng,NG < h,H < ij,Ij,IJ
    < i,I < j,J < k,K < l,L < ll,Ll,LL < m,M
    < n,N < o,O < p,P < ph,Ph,PH < q,Q < r,R < rh,Rh,RH
    < s,S < t,T < th,Th,TH < u,U < v,V < w,W < x,X < y,Y < z,Z
    < \string\u00E6,\string\u00C6}
]
```

It's best to use `\string` rather than `\protect` to avoid unwanted spaces interfering with $\langle hex \rangle$. Note that `glossaries-extra v1.21+` provides² `\glshex` which just does `\string\u` so

²The command definition was moved to `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` from version 1.27 since it's only needed with `bib2gls`.

you can do `\glshex 00E6` instead of `\string\u00E6`. This is only one character different, but you can redefine `\glxtrresourceinit` to locally set `\u` to `\glshex` while the protected write is performed. For example:

```
\renewcommand*{\glxtrresourceinit}{\let\u\glshex}
```

Then you can just do `\u00E6` instead of `\string\u00E6`.

The `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` package (which is automatically loaded by the `record` option) provides some commands for common rule blocks that may be used in the construction of custom rules. For example:

```
sort-rule={\glxtrcontrolrules
; \glxtrspacerules
; \glxtrnonprintablerules
; \glxtrcombiningdiacriticrules
, \glxtrhyphenrules
< \glxtrgeneralpuncrules
< \glxtrdigitrules
< \glxtrfractionrules
< \glxtrMathItalicGreekIrules
< \glxtrGeneralLatinIVrules
< \glxtrLatinAA
< \glxtrLatinOslash
}
```

This places the Greek maths symbols (such as `\alpha`) before the Latin block. See the `glossaries-extra` documentation for further details of these commands.

You might find it convenient to provide similar commands in a package for rules you may often need. For example, suppose I have a package called, say, `mapsymbols` for providing map symbols:

```
\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
\ProvidesPackage{mapsymbols}
% some package or font loading stuff here to provide
% the appropriate symbols
\newcommand{\Stadium}{...}
\newcommand{\Battlefield}{...}
\newcommand{\Harbour}{...}
% etc

% Provide a rule block:
\newcommand{\MapSymbolOrder}{%
  \glshex 2694 % crossed-swords 0x2694
  < \glshex 2693 % anchor 0x2693
  < \glshex 26BD % football 0x26BD
}
```

In addition to `mapsymbols.sty`, I also need to create `mapsymbols.bib` to provide the appropriate definitions for `bib2gls`:

```
@preamble{"\glxtrprovidecommand{\Harbour}{\char"2693}
\glxtrprovidecommand{\Battlefield}{\char"2694}
\glxtrprovidecommand{\Stadium}{\char"26BD}"}
```

The use of `\glxtrprovidecommand` will override any previous definitions of these commands in `bib2gls`'s interpreter but will act like `\providecommand` within the document, and so won't interfere with the commands defined in `mapsymbols.sty`. Now I can just do:

```
\usepackage{mapsymbols}% my custom package
\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={mapsymbols,% <--- my custom mapsymbols.bib
  entries% data in entries.bib
  },
  sort={custom},
  sort-rule={\glxtrcontrolrules
; \glxtrspacerules
; \glxtrnonprintablerules
; \glxtrcombiningdiacriticrules
, \glxtrhyphenrules
< \glxtrgeneralpuncrules
< \glxtrdigitrules
< \glxtrfractionrules
< \MapSymbolOrder % <--- custom map symbols
< \glxtrMathItalicGreekIrules
< \glxtrGeneralLatinIrules
}
]
```

An alternative to providing `mapsymbols.bib` is to provide a custom package just for `bib2gls`' use. For example, `mapsymbols-bib2gls.sty`:

```
% Provided for bib2gls only.
% Use \usepackage{mapsymbols} in the document.
\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}
\ProvidesPackage{mapsymbols-bib2gls}
\glxtrprovidecommand{\Harbour}{\char"2693}
\glxtrprovidecommand{\Battlefield}{\char"2694}
\glxtrprovidecommand{\Stadium}{\char"26BD}
\endinput
```

and instruct `bib2gls` to parse it with `--custom-packages mapsymbols-bib2gls` (and use `mapsymbols.sty` in the document). Remember that `bib2gls` isn't a \TeX engine so make sure to only use simple commands in this file.

break-at=*<option>*

This option automatically implements `dual-break-at={<option>}` and `secondary-break-at={<option>}`.

The alphabet sort options (table 5.2) typically list non-letter characters before alphabetical characters and spaces are quite often in the ignored set. This means that the alphabet sort options are naturally in a letter order, similar to xindy's `ord/letorder` module. (This isn't the same as `sort={letter-nocase}`, which just sorts according to the Unicode value not according to a particular alphabet.)

In order to replicate `makeindex` and xindy's default word order, `bib2gls` splits up the sort value at word boundaries and inserts a marker (identified by `break-marker`). For example, if the sort value is "sea lion" then it's actually converted to `sea|lion|` whereas "sea" becomes `sea|` and "seal" becomes `sea|`. The default marker is `|` which is commonly placed in collation rules before digits but after the ignored characters, such as spaces and hyphens.

Note that this action removes non-letters, so for example, if the sort value is `# (parameter)` then it will be converted to `parameter|` (hash, space and parentheses removed). If you only want to break at spaces (optionally following a comma) use the following instead:

```
break-at={none},
sort-replace={[,? +]{|}}
```

You can change the construction of the break points with `break-at={<option>}` where *<option>* may be one of:

- `word`: break at word boundaries (default). Note that what constitutes a word varies according to the locale but usually anything that's not alphanumeric will designate a word-boundary. The characters between words are discarded. For example, the sort value "Tom, Dick, and Harry" becomes `Tom|Dick|and|Harry`, which has discarded the comma and space characters.
- `character`: break after each character.
- `sentence`: break after each sentence.
- `upper-notlower`: break after any upper case character that's not followed by a lower case character. For example, "MathML" becomes `MathM|L|` and "W3C" becomes `W|3C|`.
- `upper-upper`: break after any upper case character that's followed by an upper case character.
- `upper-notlower-word`: first applies break-points according to `upper-notlower` and then according to `word`.
- `upper-upper-word`: first applies break-points according to `upper-upper` and then according to `word`.
- `none`: don't create break points. Use this option to emulate `makeindex` or xindy's letter ordering, or combine with `sort-replace` to insert custom break points.

This option is ignored when used with the non-alphabetic `sort` options. You can find the break points in the `sort` field for the entry’s definition in the `.glstex` file (which is provided for information rather than for use in the document). Alternatively, use the `--debug` switch to show the break points in the transcript. (This will also show the collation rule.)

`break-marker=<marker>`

This option automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-break-marker={<marker>}` and `secondary-break-marker={<marker>}`.

The break marker can be changed using `break-marker={<marker>}`, where `<marker>` is the character to use. For example, `break-marker={-}` will use a hyphen. The marker may be empty, which effectively strips the inter-word punctuation. For example, with `break-marker={}`, “Tom, Dick, and Harry” becomes TomDickandHarry and “sea lion” simply becomes sealion. If `<marker>` is omitted, `break-marker={}` is assumed.

`sort-number-pad=<number>`

This option automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-sort-number-pad={<number>}`, `secondary-sort-number-pad={<number>}`.

If `<number>` is greater than 1, any integer sub-strings found in the sort value will be zero-padded up to this value. Since the `-` character is often ignored by rule-based sort methods, any signs found will be replaced with the markers given by `sort-pad-plus` and `sort-pad-minus`, which should be chosen to ensure that negative numbers are ordered before positive numbers (if this is desired). An unsigned number will have the `sort-pad-plus` marker inserted before it. The default value is `sort-number-pad={0}`, which doesn’t implement any padding.

If you use this with a locale sort method, it’s best to also set `break-at={none}`, as the default word boundary break points will likely be confused by a mix of alphanumerics.

`sort-pad-plus=<marker>`

This option automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-sort-pad-plus={<marker>}`, `secondary-sort-pad-plus={<marker>}`.

This option only has an effect when used with `sort-number-pad={<number>}` where `<number>` is greater than 1. Positive numbers will have their sign replaced with `<marker>`. The default setting is `sort-pad-plus={>}`.

`sort-pad-minus=<marker>`

This option automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-sort-pad-minus={<marker>}`, `secondary-sort-pad-minus={<marker>}`.

This option only has an effect when used with `sort-number-pad={<number>}` where `<number>` is greater than 1. Negative numbers will have their sign replaced with `<marker>`. The default setting is `sort-pad-plus={<}`.

identical-sort-action=*<value>*

This option automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-identical-sort-action={<value>}` and `secondary-identical-sort-action={<value>}`.

This option determines what the comparator should do if two entries at the same hierarchical level are considered equal. The *<value>* may be one of:

- `none`: don't take any further action if sort values are identical;
- `id`: if sort values are identical, compare the entry labels;
- `original id`: if sort values are identical, compare the original unprefixed entry labels (as given in the `.bib` file);
- *<field>*: if sort values are identical, compare the values from the given *<field>*.

In each case (other than `identical-sort-action={none}`) a simple case-sensitive string comparison is used. If *<value>* isn't a recognised keyword or valid field an error will occur. The default setting is `identical-sort-action={id}`. If you're using one of the sort rules listed in table 5.2 and you also want a locale-sensitive sort used on the fallback, then you need to use `sort-suffix` instead.

`bib2gls` allows duplicate sort values, but this can cause a problem for hierarchical entries where parent entries with duplicate sort fields are clumped together and their children follow. To prevent this from happening, the `identical-sort-action={id}` setting will fallback on comparing the labels. Since all labels must be unique, this means comparisons between two different entries are all either strictly higher or strictly lower.

This action occurs after any suffixes have been appended through `sort-suffix`.

sort-suffix=*<value>*

This option automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-sort-suffix={<value>}` and `secondary-sort-suffix={<value>}`. The value may be one of:

- `none`: don't append a suffix to any `sort` value;
- `non-unique`: append a numeric suffix to non-unique `sort` values;
- *<field>*: append the value of the given field (if set) to the `sort` field. The given field must be defined (has an associated key for use in `\newglossaryentry`) but may be unset. If the interpreter is on, the field contents will be interpreted. If the field is just a label (such as the `category` field) you may find it simpler to use `identical-sort-action={<field>}` instead.

The default setting is `sort-suffix={none}`.

This option only affects the alphabetic (table 5.2), letter (table 5.3) and letter-number (table 5.4) sort rules. For the other types of sort methods (not including the no-sort options listed in table 5.1) you'll need to use `identical-sort-action` to prevent problems occurring with duplicate sort values.

In the case of `sort-suffix={non-unique}`, this will only append a suffix to the duplicate sort values (within the same hierarchical level). The first sort value to be encountered isn't given a suffix.

The `sort-suffix={field}` setting will only append a suffix if that field is set, but (if set) it will apply the suffix to all `sort` values, even those that are unique.

If you use `--verbose`, then `bib2gls` will write information in the transcript when it appends a suffix to the sort value. The message:

```
Sort value '<sort>' (entry '<id>') not unique for the entry's
hierarchical level.
```

indicates that an entry with the given `<sort>` value has already been found within the same hierarchical level as the currently processed entry (whose label is given by `<id>`). The same hierarchical level in this context means that either both entries don't have a parent or both entries have the same parent. (That is, the entries are considered siblings.)

This message will then be followed by:

```
Appending suffix '<suffix>' to the sort value '<sort>'
for entry '<id>'.
```

which indicates that the entry (identified by the label `<id>`) has been assigned the sort value given by `<sort><suffix>`. If any break markers are applied, this is done after the suffix has been appended.

For example, suppose in my document I want to write about `makeglossaries` (the application) and `\makeglossaries` (the command). I might decide to define semantic commands:

```
\newcommand*{\application}[1]{\texttt{#1}}
\newcommand*{\command}[1]{\texttt{\glsbackslash #1}}
```

In my `.bib` file I might have:

```
@entry{cs.makeglossaries,
  name={\command{makeglossaries}},
  category={command},
  description={opens glossary files}
}

@entry{ap.makeglossaries,
  name={\application{makeglossaries}},
  category={application},
  description={Perl script}
}
```

If `bib2gls` is provided with the definitions of `\application` and `\command` (by interpreting the `@preamble` or a package provided with `--custom-packages`) then it will determine that the sort value for `cs.makeglossaries` is `\makeglossaries` and the sort value for `ap.makeglossaries` is just `makeglossaries`. These are two distinct sort values from

bib2gls’s point of view although the sort rule may consider them identical if the rule ignores the `\` character (such as the locale sort methods), in which case, bib2gls will then act according to `identical-sort-action`.

If bib2gls isn’t provided with these custom definitions, then it will ignore those semantic commands and both entries will end up with the sort value `makeglossaries`. The second instance will be recognised as a duplicate and the sort value will be converted to `makeglossaries1` (where the automated suffix is 1 and the suffix marker, see below, is the empty string). Whereas with, say, `sort-suffix-marker={.}` then the sort value would become `makeglossaries.1`.

For comparison, consider the following document:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[style={indexgroup}]{glossaries}

\makeglossaries

\newcommand*{\application}[1]{\texttt{#1}}
\newcommand*{\command}[1]{\texttt{\glsbackslash #1}}

\newglossaryentry{cs.makeglossaries}{%
  name={\command{makeglossaries}},
  description={opens glossary files}}

\newglossaryentry{ap.makeglossaries}{%
  name={\application{makeglossaries}},
  description={Perl script}}

\begin{document}
\gls{cs.makeglossaries} and \gls{ap.makeglossaries}.
\printglossaries
\end{document}
```

This uses `makeindex`, which puts both entries in the “Symbols” group (since they both start with `\` from the start of `\command` and `\application`, respectively). The ordering is `makeglossaries`, `\makeglossaries` because “a” (second character of `\application`) comes before “c” (second character of `\command`).

The switch to `xindy` just involves adding the `xindy` package option:

```
\usepackage[xindy,style={indexgroup}]{glossaries}
```

This results in a glossary that only contains one entry, `\makeglossaries`, because `xindy` merges entries with duplicate sort values and the sort values end up as duplicates because `xindy` discards the `\application` and `\command` control sequences. Although bib2gls also ignores unknown control sequences, it doesn’t perform this merger.

If I add:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand*{\application}[1]{\texttt{#1}}
\providecommand{\command}[1]{\texttt{\glsbackslash #1}}"}

```

to the earlier .bib file (called, say, entries.bib) then the document can be altered to use bib2gls:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,style={indexgroup}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries.bib},
  sort-suffix={non-unique},
  identical-sort-action={none}
]

\begin{document}
\gls{cs.makeglossaries} and \gls{ap.makeglossaries}.
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

This uses the default `sort={locale}` which considers `\` an ignored (punctuation) character, so both `\makeglossaries` and `makeglossaries` are listed in the “M” letter group, even though the interpreter has determined that the sort value for `cs.makeglossaries` is the literal string `\makeglossaries`. Note that in this case `bib2gls` doesn’t detect duplicate sort values since it only uses a simple string comparison to detect duplicates rather than using the collator.

If I switch to using a letter-based sort rule instead, for example `sort={letter-nocase}`, then `\makeglossaries` will be listed in the “Symbols” letter group since the leading `\` from the sort value `\makeglossaries` isn’t ignored with this rule.

Now let’s suppose I use `interpret-preamble={false}` to prevent `bib2gls` from interpreting the preamble:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries.bib},interpret-preamble={false}]

```

This means that the custom commands won’t be recognised and will therefore be ignored, so both entries will have their sort values reduced to `makeglossaries`.

The first entry to be processed is `cs.makeglossaries` because it’s the first to be selected. This is assigned the sort value `makeglossaries`. (Note that, unless you use `sort={unsrt}`, the initial selection order is based on the record order. In this example, `cs.makeglossaries` has the first record in the .aux file.)

The next entry to be processed is `ap.makeglossaries`. This also ends up with the sort value `makeglossaries` so `bib2gls` converts this to `makeglossaries1` and (with verbose mode on) the following messages are written to the transcript:

```
Sort value 'makeglossaries' (entry 'ap.makeglossaries') not unique
for the entry's hierarchical level.

```

Appending suffix '1' to the sort value 'makeglossaries' for entry 'ap.makeglossaries'.

Both entries are listed in the “M” letter group in the order `\makeglossaries,makeglossaries`.

If the records are reversed:

`\gls{ap.makeglossaries}` and `\gls{cs.makeglossaries}`.

then the sort value for `cs.makeglossaries` is now considered the duplicate and the order is reversed: `makeglossaries, \makeglossaries`.

Suppose now I modify the `.bib` file so that `ap.makeglossaries` is defined as:

```
@entry{ap.makeglossaries,
  name={\application{makeglossaries}},
  category={application},
  description={Perl script (must be used with \gls{cs.makeglossaries})}
}
```

and suppose the document only contains an explicit reference to `ap.makeglossaries`:

```
\begin{document}
\gls{ap.makeglossaries}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

Now `ap.makeglossaries` is the first entry to be selected because entries with records are always selected before any (unrecorded) dependencies. In this case `cs.makeglossaries` is only selected because it's required by `ap.makeglossaries`. Now `ap.makeglossaries` is the first to have its sort value assigned, and it's `cs.makeglossaries` that has the duplicate. This means that the ordering in the glossary is now: `makeglossaries, \makeglossaries`.

An oddity occurs if the glossary is moved to the start of the document:

```
\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossaries
\gls{ap.makeglossaries}
\end{document}
```

In this case, the first document build:

```
pdflatex myDoc
bibgls --group --verbose myDoc
pdflatex myDoc
```

leads to the ordering described above: `makeglossaries, \makeglossaries`. However, the next document build has a new record for `cs.makeglossaries` occurring in the glossary (within the description of `ap.makeglossaries`) which means it's now the first entry to be selected so the ordering switches to: `\makeglossaries, makeglossaries`. In this type of situation you might be better off with the `identical-sort-action={id}` option instead.

Remember that you can temporarily switch off the indexing by locally setting:

```
\GlsXtrSetDefaultGlsOpts{noindex}
```

Since the glossary preamble is scoped, you can simply do

```
\appto\glossarypreamble{\GlsXtrSetDefaultGlsOpts{noindex}}
```

to switch off the indexing within the glossary (or use `\apptoglossarypreamble`). Note that this is different to using:

```
\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat{glsignore}
```

which creates an ignored record. Even though the record is ignored (and so won't show in the location list) the record still influences the selection order and the record count.

sort-suffix-marker=*<value>*

This automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-sort-suffix-marker={<value>}` and `secondary-sort-suffix-marker={<value>}`.

If a suffix is appended to the sort value (see above) then it will be separated by the suffix marker, which can be set with `sort-suffix-marker={<value>}` where *<value>* is the marker. By default the marker is empty. You can use `\string\u<hex>` or `\glshex<hex>` to indicate Unicode characters outside the ASCII range. If, for some reason, you want to use a special character, such as #, you will need to precede it with `\string` (for example `\string#`) or use the above hexadecimal markup. If you use `\#` it will be treated as a literal string containing a backslash followed by a hash character.

strength=*<value>*

This option automatically implements `dual-strength={<value>}` and `secondary-strength={<value>}`.

The collation strength used by the alphabet sort methods (table 5.2) can be set to the following values: `primary` (default), `secondary`, `tertiary` or `identical`. These indicate the difference between two characters, but the exact assignment is locale dependent. See the documentation for Java's `Collator` class [3] for further details.

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@index{resume}
@index{RESUME}
@index{resumee, name={r\'esum\'e}}
@index{rat}
@index{rot}
@index{aardvark}
@index{zoo}
```

and the document contains:

```

\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[sort={en},src={entries}]

\begin{document}
\gls{resumee}, \gls{resume}, \gls{RESUME},
\gls{aardvark}, \gls{rat}, \gls{rot}, \gls{zoo}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

then this uses the default `strength={primary}`, so the entries are listed as aardvark, rat, résumé, resume, RESUME, rot, zoo.

If the strength is changed to `secondary`:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[sort={en},src={entries},strength={secondary}]
```

then the entries are listed as aardvark, rat, resume, RESUME, résumé, rot, zoo.

If the strength is changed to `tertiary` or `identical`, there's no difference from `strength={secondary}` for this particular example.

This option is ignored by non-alphabet sorts (such as letter or numeric).

`decomposition=⟨value⟩`

This option automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-decomposition=⟨value⟩` and `secondary-decomposition=⟨value⟩`.

The collation decomposition used by alphabet sort methods (table 5.2) can be set to the following values: `canonical` (default), `full` or `none`. This determines how Unicode composed characters are handled. The fastest mode is `none` but is only appropriate for languages without accents. The slowest mode is `full` but is the most complete for languages with non-ASCII characters. See the documentation for Java's `Collator` class [3] for further details. This option is ignored by non-alphabet sorts (such as letter or numeric).

`letter-number-rule=⟨value⟩`

This automatically implements the dual and secondary settings `dual-letter-number-rule=⟨value⟩` and `secondary-letter-number-rule=⟨value⟩`.

If you use one of the letter-number sort methods (table 5.4), then you can determine the comparison between a number and letter. The `⟨value⟩` may be one of:

- `before letter`: numbers are considered less than any letter.
- `after letter`: numbers are considered greater than any letter.

- `between`: (default) numbers come between letter cases. With the `letternumber-case` sort option, this will put numbers after upper case and before lower case. This setting doesn't make much sense with the `letternumber-nocase` option but, if used, this will put numbers before letters. The `letternumber-upperlower` and `letternumber-lowerupper` options are more complicated. See section 5.9 for more detail.
- `first`: numbers are considered less than all characters (including punctuation and spaces).
- `last`: numbers are considered greater than all characters (including punctuation and spaces).

Note that the reverse sort methods will invert this setting. Remember also that the case-insensitive letter-number sort methods always first convert the `sort` field to lower case, which means that if you use one of them then there won't be any upper case characters.

Use `letter-number-punc-rule` to determine the relative position of white space and punctuation.

`letter-number-punc-rule`=*<value>*

This automatically implements the dual and secondary `dual-letter-number-punc-rule`=*{<value>}* and `secondary-letter-number-punc-rule`=*{<value>}*.

If you use one of the letter-number sort methods (table 5.4), then you can determine the order of white space and punctuation. In this context, punctuation means any character that's not considered a letter, a number or white space. This means that characters such as combining marks are considered punctuation.

The *<value>* may be one of the following:

- `punc-space-first`: punctuation comes first, followed by white space (then letters and optionally numbers according to the letter-number rule);
- `punc-space-last`: punctuation followed by white space come last (after letters and optionally numbers according to the letter-number rule);
- `space-punc-first`: white space comes first, followed by punctuation (then letters and optionally numbers according to the letter-number rule);
- `space-punc-last`: white space followed by punctuation come last (after letters and optionally numbers according to the letter-number rule);
- `space-first-punc-last`: white space comes first (followed by letters and optionally numbers according to the letter-number rule) and punctuation comes last;
- `punc-first-space-last`: punctuation comes first (followed by letters and optionally numbers according to the letter-number rule) and white space comes last;
- `punc-first-space-zero`: punctuation comes first (although numbers may come before) and white space is replaced by the digit 0 (0x30);

- `punc-last-space-zero`: punctuation comes last (although numbers may come after) and white space is replaced by the digit 0 (0x30).
- `punc-first-space-zero-match-next`: punctuation comes first (although numbers may come before) and white space is replaced by the appropriate zero character (see below);
- `punc-last-space-zero-match-next`: punctuation comes last (although numbers may come after) and white space is replaced by the appropriate zero character (see below).

Remember that the reverse sort methods will invert order governed by this setting.

For the `space-zero-match-next` settings, the sort value will have all spaces replaced with a digit that represents zero. If the space isn't followed by a digit, the basic Latin 0 (0x30) will be used, otherwise `bib2gls` will try to match the zero with the following digit group. For example, if the space is followed by ¹ (0xB9) the space will be replaced by ⁰ (0x2070), resulting in the sub-string ⁰¹ (0xB9 0x2070).

If just the `space-zero` (without the `-match-next`) is used then the space will just be replaced with 0 resulting in the sub-string 0¹ (0x30 0x2070). In this case, the 0 will be distinct from ¹ (rather than being considered a leading zero). However, for other numbering systems the 0 will be treated as a leading zero. For example, if the space is followed by the Devanagari digit one (0x0967) then the sub-string will be 0x30 0x0967 but here the mixture is allowed to form a number (with a leading zero) as both characters belong to the Unicode category "Number, Decimal Digit".

This means that the `-match-next` settings are only really needed if the sort string contains the superscript or subscript digits that don't belong to the "Number, Decimal Digit" category. The plain `space-zero` alternatives are more efficient as they just perform a simple substitution.

The \TeX parser library used by `bib2gls` recognises the standard \TeX text-mode commands `<text>` and `\textsubscript{<text>}` and will use the Unicode superscript or subscript characters if they cover every character in `<text>`, otherwise HTML markup is used, but that's then stripped by `bib2gls`. This means that:

```
C\textsubscript{10}H\textsubscript{10}O\textsubscript{4}
```

will be converted to: $C_{10}H_{10}O_4$ but:

```
X\textsubscript{1, 2}
```

will be converted to:

```
X<sub>1, 2</sub>
```

which ends up as $X_{1, 2}$.

Note that `letter-number-rule={first}` and `letter-number-rule={last}` overrides this option when comparing a number with white space or punctuation.

numeric-sort-pattern=*<value>*

If you use the custom `sort={numberformat}` or `sort={numberformat-reverse}`, you need to specify the format pattern with this option where *<value>* is a pattern recognised by Java's `java.text.DecimalFormat` class [4]. You can use `\string\u<hex>` or `\glshex<hex>` to indicate Unicode characters by their hexadecimal code. You can also use `\#, \%, _, \&, \{` and `\}` to indicate `#, %, _, &, {` and `}`.

Where the dual or secondary sort uses `numberformat` or `numberformat-reverse`, use `dual-numeric-sort-pattern` for `dual-sort` and `secondary-numeric-sort-pattern` for `secondary`.

numeric-locale=*<value>*

If you use any of the locale-sensitive numeric sort methods described in section 5.9, such as `sort={numeric}`, use this option to set the locale. The value may be:

- `locale`: use Java's default locale (which is usually the operating system's locale);
- `doc`: use the document's locale or, if not set, assume `numeric-locale={locale}`;
- *<lang-tag>*: set to the locale identified by the given a valid language tag *<lang-tag>*.

Use `dual-numeric-locale` for `dual-sort` and `secondary-numeric-locale` for `secondary`.

date-sort-locale=*<value>*

If you use a date/time sort method (table 5.6), then you can set the locale used by Java's date-time parser. The default setting is `date-sort-locale={locale}`.

The value may be `locale` (use Java's default locale), `doc` (use the document's locale) or a valid language tag *<lang-tag>* identifying the locale.

Use `dual-date-sort-locale` and `secondary-date-sort-locale` for the dual and secondary.

date-sort-format=*<value>*

If you use a date/time sort method (table 5.6), then you can set the format used by Java's date-time parser. If omitted, `date-sort-format={default}` is assumed. The *<value>* may be one of:

- `default`: use the locale's default format.
- `short`: use the locale's short format.
- `medium`: use the locale's medium format.
- `long`: use the locale's long format.
- `full`: use the locale's full format.

- `<pattern>`: provide a custom pattern. This should match the specifications for Java's `SimpleDateFormat` class [7]. You may use `\string\u<hex>` or `\glshex <hex>` to indicate Unicode characters or `\#, \% , _ , \& , \{` and `\}` to indicate `#, %, _, &, {` and `}`.

With the custom setting, if the pattern only contains date (but not time) information, then it must be used with `sort={date}` or `sort={date-reverse}`. If the pattern only contains time (but not date) information, then it must be used with `sort={time}` or `sort={time-reverse}`. If the pattern contains date and time information, then it must be used with `sort={datetime}` or `sort={datetime-reverse}`.

For example, suppose each entry provides information about a person and the `user1` field is used to store their date of birth:

```
@entry{caesar,
  name={Gaius Julius Caesar},
  first={Julius Caesar},
  text={Caesar},
  description={Roman politician and general},
  user1={13 July 100 BC}
}

@entry{wellington,
  name={Arthur Wellesley, 1st Duke of Wellington},
  first={Arthur Wellesley (Duke of Wellington)},
  text={Wellington},
  description={Anglo-Irish soldier and statesman},
  user1={1 May 1769 AD}
}
```

Then the entries can be sorted by date of birth using:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries},% data in entries.bib
  sort-field={user1},
  sort={date},
  date-sort-format={d MMM y G}
]
```

The G (era) date pattern specifier expects a string, such as “AD”. It will match lower case forms, such as “ad”, so if you have `\textsc{ad}` the interpreter will convert this to `ad` (stripping the `text-block` command). However, in general it's best to supply a semantic command that ensures that the interpreted result matches the required format.

For example, if `\era` is provided with:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\era}[1]{\textsc{\MakeLowercase{#1}}}"}
```

If the definition is hidden from the interpreter (`interpret-preamble={false}`) and the field value contains `\era{AD}` then the custom command will simply be stripped leaving `AD` which can be matched by `G`.

If the definition is picked up by the interpreter then the field value will contain `ad` (from `\MakeLowercase`) but this can be matched by `G`, so it isn't a problem. However, if the definition of `\era` is changed so that the era label supplied in the argument is converted to something that doesn't match `G` then the definition should be hidden from the interpreter.

Here's a complete document that changes the `group` fields to use the year and era:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,style={indexgroup}]{glossaries-extra}

\newcommand{\bibglsdategroup}[7]{#1#4#7}
\newcommand{\bibglsdategrouptitle}[7]{\number#1\_\#4}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},
  sort-field={user1},
  sort={date},
  date-sort-format={d MMM y G},
  selection={all}
]

\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

(The use of `\number` strips the leading zero from the year.)

`group-formation=⟨value⟩`

If the `group` field hasn't been set in the `.bib` file or through options like `group`, then it is assigned according to this option's setting during sorting. Permitted values:

- `default`: the group is assigned according to the sort method's default group formation. This is the default setting.
- `codepoint`: the group is set to `\bibglsunicodegroup{⟨label⟩}{⟨character⟩}{⟨id⟩}{⟨type⟩}`, where the first argument is the first significant character (converted to lower case and decomposed, if applicable) of the sort value.
- `unicode category`: the group is set to `\bibglsunicodegroup{⟨label⟩}{⟨character⟩}{⟨id⟩}{⟨type⟩}`, where the first argument is the label identifying the Unicode category of the first significant character of the sort value. For example, the label `Ll` signifies a lower case letter and `Lu` signifies an upper case letter.

- `unicode script`: the group is set to `\bibglsunicodegroup{⟨label⟩}{⟨character⟩}{⟨id⟩}{⟨type⟩}`, where the first argument is the label identifying the Unicode script of the first significant character of the sort value. For example, the label `LATIN` indicates Latin, `GREEK` indicates Greek and `COMMON` indicates common characters (such as mathematical Greek characters that are often used with non-Greek scripts).
- `unicode category` and `script`: the group is set to `\bibglsunicodegroup{⟨label⟩}{⟨character⟩}{⟨id⟩}{⟨type⟩}`, where the first argument is the label corresponding to the Unicode category and script of the first significant character of the sort value. For example, the label `L1.LATIN` indicates a lower case Latin letter.

This option has no effect with `--no-group` or if no sorting is applied. Use `secondary-group-formation` for secondary sorting and `dual-group-formation` for dual entries.

5.10 Secondary Glossary

The secondary glossary may only be used with `action={define}` (within the same resource set) since it's incompatible with the copy actions. You may use `secondary` in the first resource set and a copy action in a subsequent resource set.

`secondary=⟨value⟩`

It may be that you want to display a glossary twice but with a different order. For example, the first time alphabetically and the second time by category. One way to do this is to have two `\GlsXtrLoadResources` that both load the same `.bib` file with different `label-prefix` and `sort` settings, but this is only possible with `selection={all}` or by ensuring you reference each entry with both label prefixes. Another method is to use `action={copy}` but this requires a second resource command with the same selection criteria.

A simpler method is to use a single `\GlsXtrLoadResources` with the `secondary` option. The value (which must be supplied) should be in the format:

```
⟨sort⟩:⟨field⟩:⟨type⟩
```

or

```
⟨sort⟩:⟨type⟩
```

If the `⟨field⟩` is omitted, the value of `sort-field` is used. Remember that when the primary entries are sorted, the `sort` field will be set, which means that the fallback field (such as `name`) won't be used in the secondary sort. In general it's best to supply the field unless one type is sorted and the other isn't. (The actual sort value obtained by the secondary sort will be saved in the `secondarysort` field in case you require it.)

The value of `⟨sort⟩` is as for `sort`, but note that in this case the sort value `unsrt` or `none` means to use the same ordering as the primary entries. For example, with `sort={de-CH-1996}`, `secondary={none:copies}` the `copies` list will be ordered according to `de-CH-1996` and not according to the order in which they were read when the `.bib` file or files were parsed. If `⟨sort⟩` is `custom`, then the rule should be provided with `secondary-sort-rule`.

This option will copy all the selected entries into the glossary labelled $\langle type \rangle$ sorted according to $\langle sort \rangle$ (using $\langle field \rangle$ as the sort value). Note that this *just copies the entry's label* to the second glossary list rather than creating a duplicate entry, which saves resources but it means that all the fields will be identical. If you want groups in your glossary, the group information for the secondary glossary will be stored in the internal `secondarygroup` field. The `group` field will contain the group for the primary glossary.

In order to switch fields in `\printunsrtglossary`, you need at least v1.21 of `glossaries-extra` which provides `\glstrgroupfield` to keep track of the appropriate field label. If this command is defined, the preamble for the secondary glossary will be adjusted to locally change the field to `secondarygroup`. With older versions, the group information in the secondary glossary will be the same as for the primary glossary.

(If the glossary $\langle type \rangle$ doesn't exist, it will be defined with `\provideignoredglossary*{\langle type \rangle}`.) Note that if the glossary already exists and contains entries, the existing entries aren't re-ordered. The new entries are simply appended to the list.

For example, suppose the `.bib` file contains entries like:

```
@entry{quartz,
  name={quartz},
  description={hard mineral consisting of silica},
  category={mineral}
}

@entry{cabbage,
  name={cabbage},
  description={vegetable with thick green or purple leaves},
  category={vegetable}
}

@entry{waterfowl,
  name={waterfowl},
  description={any bird that lives in or about water},
  category={animal}
}
```

and the document preamble contains:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},sort={en-GB},
  secondary={en-GB:category:topic}
]
```

This sorts the primary entries according to the default `sort-field` and then sorts the entries according to the `category` field and copies this list to the `topic` glossary (which will be provided if not defined.)

The secondary list can be displayed with the `hypertargets` switched off to prevent duplicates. The cross-references will link to the original glossary.

For example:

5 Resource File Options

```
\printunsrtglossary[title={Summary (alphabetical)}]  
\printunsrtglossary[title={Summary (by topic)},target={false}]
```

The alternative (or if more than two lists are required) is to reload the same .bib file with different label prefixes. For example, if the entries are stored in `entries.bib`:

```
\newglossary*{nosort}{Symbols (Unsorted)}  
\newglossary*{byname}{Symbols (Letter Order)}  
\newglossary*{bydesc}{Symbols (Ordered by Description)}  
\newglossary*{byid}{Symbols (Ordered by Label)}
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[  
  src={entries},% entries.bib  
  sort={unsrt},  
  type={nosort}  
]
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[  
  src={entries},% entries.bib  
  sort={letter-case},  
  type={byname},  
  label-prefix={byname.}  
]
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[  
  src={entries},% entries.bib  
  sort={locale},  
  sort-field={description},  
  type={bydesc},  
  label-prefix={bydesc.}  
]
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[  
  src={entries},% entries.bib  
  sort={letter},  
  sort-field={id},  
  type={byid},  
  label-prefix={byid.}  
]
```

secondary-missing-sort-fallback=*<field>*

As `missing-sort-fallback` but for secondary sorting.

`secondary-trim-sort=<boolean>`

As `trim-sort` but for secondary sorting.

`secondary-sort-replace=<list>`

As `sort-replace` but for secondary sorting.

`secondary-sort-rule=<value>`

As `sort-rule` but for secondary custom sorting.

`secondary-break-at=<value>`

As `break-at` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-break-marker=<marker>`

As `break-marker` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-sort-number-pad=<number>`

As `sort-number-pad` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-sort-pad-plus=<marker>`

As `sort-pad-plus` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-sort-pad-minus=<marker>`

As `sort-pad-minus` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-identical-sort-action=<value>`

As `identical-sort-action` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-sort-suffix=<value>`

As `sort-suffix` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-sort-suffix-marker=<value>`

As `sort-suffix-marker` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-strength=<value>`

As `strength` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-decomposition=<value>`

As `decomposition` but for secondary entries.

`secondary-letter-number-rule=<value>`

As `letter-number-rule` but for secondary letter-number sorting.

`secondary-letter-number-punc-rule=<value>`

As `letter-number-punc-rule` but for secondary letter-number sorting.

`secondary-numeric-sort-pattern=<value>`

As `numeric-sort-pattern` but for secondary locale-sensitive numeric sorting.

`secondary-numeric-locale=<value>`

As `numeric-locale` but for secondary locale-sensitive numeric sorting.

`secondary-date-sort-locale=<value>`

As `date-sort-locale` but for secondary date-time sorting.

`secondary-date-sort-format=<value>`

As `date-sort-format` but for secondary date-time sorting.

`secondary-group-formation=<value>`

As `group-formation` but for secondary sorting.

5.11 Dual Entries

General Dual Settings

`dual-prefix=<value>`

This option indicates the prefix to use for the dual entries. The default value is `dual.` (including the terminating period). Any references to dual entries within the `.bib` file should use the prefix `dual.` which will be replaced by `<value>` when the `.bib` file is parsed.

As from version 1.8, the dual label prefix is identified in the `.glstex` file with:

```
\bibglsdualprefixlabel{<prefix>}
```

```
primary-dual-dependency=<boolean>
```

This is a boolean setting that determines whether or not primary and dual entries should be considered mutual dependencies. The default value is `primary-dual-dependency={true}`, which means that if a primary has records then the dual is added as a dependency and vice versa. The setting `primary-dual-dependency={false}` can't be used with `dual-sort={none}` or `dual-sort={use}` (but may be used with `dual-sort={combine}` and `sort={none}` or `sort={use}`).

```
combine-dual-locations=<value>
```

This setting allows the location lists for each primary entry to be merged with that of the corresponding dual entry. The `<value>` may be one of:

- `false` This is the default setting. The location lists aren't combined.
- `both` Both the primary and dual are given the combined location list.
- `dual` Only the dual is given the combined location list. The primary's location list is emptied.
- `primary` Only the primary is given the combined location list. The dual's location list is emptied.

For example, suppose the file `entries.bib` contains:

```
@dualindexentry{array,
  description={ordered list of values}
}

@dualindexentry{vector,
  name={vector},
  description={column or row of values}
}

@dualindexentry{set,
  description={collection of values}
}

@dualindexentry{matrix,
  plural={matrices},
  description={rectangular array of values}
}
```

and the document contains:

```

\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,index,style={indexgroup}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={entries},
  type={index},
  label-prefix={idx.},
  dual-prefix={gls.},
  dual-type={main}
]

\begin{document}
\gls{gls.array}, \gls{gls.vector}, \gls{gls.set}, \gls{gls.matrix}.

\newpage
\gls{gls.array}, \gls{idx.vector}, \gls{idx.set}, \gls{gls.matrix}.

\newpage
\gls{gls.array}, \gls{gls.vector}, \gls{gls.set}, \gls{gls.matrix}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

In this case, the primary entries are placed in the index glossary type and are assigned the prefix `idx.` but only two of the primary entries have been used in the document (both on page 2).

The dual entries are assigned the prefix `gls.` and are placed in the main glossary. The `gls.array` and `gls.matrix` entries have been indexed on pages 1, 2 and 3. The `gls.vector` and `gls.set` entries have been indexed on pages 1 and 3.

With the default setting, some of the locations are in the main glossary (corresponding to `\gls{gls.array}`, `\gls{gls.vector}`, `\gls{gls.set}` and `\gls{gls.matrix}`) and some of the locations are in the index glossary (corresponding to `\gls{idx.vector}` and `\gls{idx.set}`).

If the option `combine-dual-locations={primary}` is added to the resource set, then all the locations are moved to the index glossary. The entries in the main glossary no longer have locations. This is actually preferable for this type of document and it's best not to reference the primary (index) entries as the hyperlink created by `\gls` will point to the index, but these entries don't have descriptions, so it's less useful than referencing the dual (main) entries as then the hyperlink can point to the definition in the main glossary.

Dual Fields

`dual-type=<value>`

This option sets the `type` field for all dual entries. (The primary entries obey the `type` option.) This will override any value of `type` provided in the `.bib` file (or created through a mapping). The `<value>` is required and should be one of:

- `same as entry`: sets the `type` to the entry type (lower case and without the initial @). For example, if the entry was defined with `@dualentry`, the `type` will be set to `dualentry`. If you've used `entry-type-aliases`, this refers to the target entry type not the original entry type provided in the `.bib` file.
- `same as original entry`: set the `type` field to the original entry type (lower case and without the initial @) before it was aliased (behaves like `same as entry` if the entry type wasn't aliased).
- `same as base`: sets the `type` to the base name of the `.bib` file (without the extension) that provided the entry definition (new to v1.1);
- `same as primary`: sets the `type` to the same as the corresponding primary entry's `type` (which may have been set with `type`). If the primary entry doesn't have the `type` field set, the dual's `type` will remain unchanged.
- `<label>`: sets the `type` field to `<label>`.

Remember that the glossary with that label must have already been defined (see section 1.2). For example:

```
\newglossary*{english}{English}
\newglossary*{french}{French}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},sort={en},dual-sort={fr},
  type={english},
  dual-type={french}]
```

Alternatively:

```
\newglossary*{dictionary}{Dictionary}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},sort={en},dual-sort={fr},
  type={dictionary},
  dual-type={same as primary}]
```

`dual-category=<value>`

This option sets the `category` field for all dual entries. (The primary entries obey the `category` option.) This will override any value of `category` provided in the `.bib` file (or created through a mapping). The `<value>` may be empty or one of:

- `same as entry`: sets the `category` to the entry type (lower case and without the initial @). For example, if the entry was defined with `@dualentry`, the `category` will be set to `dualentry`. If you've used `entry-type-aliases`, this refers to the target entry type not the original entry type provided in the `.bib` file.
- `same as original entry`: set the `category` field to the original entry type (lower case and without the initial @) before it was aliased (behaves like `same as entry` if the entry type wasn't aliased).
- `same as base`: sets the `category` to the base name of the `.bib` file (without the extension) that provided the entry definition (new to v1.1);
- `same as primary`: sets the `category` to the same as the corresponding primary entry's `category` (which may have been set with `category`). If the primary entry doesn't have the `category` field set, the dual's `category` will remain unchanged.
- `same as type`: sets the `category` to the same as the value of the entry's `type` field (which may have been set with `dual-type`). If the entry doesn't have the `type` field set, the `category` will remain unchanged.
- `<label>`: sets the `category` field to `<label>`.

`dual-counter=<value>`

As `counter` but for the dual entries. In this case `<value>` may be the name of the counter or `same as primary` which uses the counter for the primary entry.

`dual-short-case-change=<value>`

As `short-case-change` but applies to the `dualshort` field instead.

`dual-long-case-change=<value>`

As `long-case-change` but applies to the `duallong` field instead.

`dual-field=<value>`

If this option is used, this will add `\glstrprovidestoragekey` to the start of the `.glstex` file providing the key given by `<value>`. Any entries defined using a dual entry type, such as `@dualentry`, will be written to the `.glstex` file with an extra field called `<value>` that is set to the mirror entry. If `<value>` is omitted `dual-field={dual}` is assumed. If you use a different value, you will need to redefine `\GlsXtrDualField` (either locally or globally).

For example, if the `.bib` file contains:

```
@dualentry{child,
  name={child},
  plural={children},
```

```
description={enfant}
}
```

Then with `dual-field={dual}` (or simply `dual-field` without a value) this will first add the line:

```
\glxtrprovidestoragekey{dual}{-}
```

at the start of the file and will include the line:

```
dual={dual.child},
```

for the primary entry (`child`) and the line:

```
dual={child},
```

for the dual entry (`dual.child`). It's then possible to reference one entry from the other. For example, the post-description hook could contain:

```
\ifglshasfield{dual}{\glscurrententrylabel}
{%
  \space
  (\glshyperlink{\glscurrentfieldvalue})%
}%
{}
```

Note that this new field won't be available for use within the `.bib` file (unless it was previously defined in the document before `\glxtrresourcefile`).

```
dual-date-time-field-format=<value>
```

As `date-time-field-format` but is used for dual entries.

```
dual-date-field-format=<value>
```

As `date-field-format` but is used for dual entries.

```
dual-time-field-format=<value>
```

As `time-field-format` but is used for dual entries.

```
dual-date-time-field-locale=<value>
```

As `date-time-field-locale` but is used for dual entries.

```
dual-date-field-locale=<value>
```

As `date-field-locale` but is used for dual entries.

`date-time-field-locale=⟨value⟩`

As `time-field-locale` but is used for dual entries.

Dual Sorting

`dual-sort=⟨value⟩`

This option indicates how to sort the dual entries. The primary entries are sorted with the normal entries according to `sort`, and the dual entries are sorted according to `dual-sort` unless `dual-sort={combine}` in which case the dual entries will be combined with the primary entries and all the entries will be sorted together according to the `sort` option.

If `⟨value⟩` isn't set to `combine` then the dual entries are sorted separately according to `⟨value⟩` (as per `sort`) and the dual entries will be appended at the end of the `.glstex` file. The field used by the comparator is given by `dual-sort-field`. If `dual-sort={custom}`, then the dual entries are sorted according to the rule provided by `dual-sort-rule`.

For example:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries-dual},
  sort={en},
  dual-sort={de-CH-1996}
]
```

This will sort the primary entries according to `en` (English) and the secondary entries according to `de-CH-1996` (Swiss German new orthography) whereas:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={entries-dual},
  sort={en-GB},
  dual-sort={combine}
]
```

will combine the dual entries with the primary entries and sort them all according to the `en-GB` locale (British English).

If not set, `dual-sort` defaults to `combine`. If `⟨value⟩` is omitted, `locale` is assumed.

`dual-sort-field=⟨field⟩`

This option indicates the field to use when sorting dual entries (when they haven't been combined with the primary entries). The default value is the same as the `sort-field` value.

`dual-missing-sort-fallback=⟨field⟩`

As `missing-sort-fallback` but for dual sorting.

`dual-trim-sort=<boolean>`

As `trim-sort` but for dual sorting.

`dual-sort-replace=<list>`

As `sort-replace` but for dual sorting.

`dual-sort-rule=<value>`

As `sort-rule` but for `dual-sort={custom}`.

`dual-break-at=<value>`

As `break-at` but for dual entries.

`dual-break-marker=<marker>`

As `break-marker` but for dual entries.

`dual-sort-number-pad=<number>`

As `sort-number-pad` but for dual entries.

`dual-sort-pad-plus=<marker>`

As `sort-pad-plus` but for dual entries.

`dual-sort-pad-minus=<marker>`

As `sort-pad-minus` but for dual entries.

`dual-identical-sort-action=<value>`

As `identical-sort-action` but for dual entries.

`dual-sort-suffix=<value>`

As `sort-suffix` but for dual entries.

`dual-sort-suffix-marker=<value>`

As `sort-suffix-marker` but for dual entries.

`dual-strength=<value>`

As `strength` but for dual entries.

`dual-decomposition=<value>`

As `decomposition` but for dual entries.

`dual-letter-number-rule=<value>`

As `letter-number-rule` but for dual entries that use a letter-number sort.

`dual-letter-number-punc-rule=<value>`

As `letter-number-punc-rule` but for dual entries that use a letter-number sort.

`dual-numeric-sort-pattern=<value>`

As `numeric-sort-pattern` but for dual entries that use a locale-sensitive numeric sort.

`dual-numeric-locale=<value>`

As `numeric-locale` but for dual entries that use a locale-sensitive numeric sort.

`dual-date-sort-locale=<value>`

As `date-sort-locale` but for dual entries that use a date/time sort.

`dual-date-sort-format=<value>`

As `date-sort-format` but for dual entries that use a date/time sort.

`dual-group-formation=<value>`

As `group-formation` but for dual sorting.

Dual Mappings

`dual-entry-map={{<list1>},{<list2>}}`

This setting governs the behaviour of `@dualentry` definitions. The value consists of two comma-separated lists of equal length identifying the field mapping used to create the dual entry from the primary one. Note that the `alias` field can't be mapped.

The default setting is:

```
dual-entry-map={
  {name,plural,description,descriptionplural},
  {description,descriptionplural,name,plural}
}
```

The dual entry is created by copying the value of the field in the first list $\langle list1 \rangle$ to the field in the corresponding place in the second list $\langle list2 \rangle$. Any additional fields are copied over to the same field. For example:

```
@dualentry{cat,
  name={cat},
  description={chat},
  see={dog}
}
```

defines two entries. The primary entry is essentially like:

```
@entry{cat,
  name={cat},
  plural={cat\glspluralsuffix },
  description={chat},
  descriptionplural={chat\glspluralsuffix },
  see={dog}
}
```

and the dual entry is essentially like:

```
@entry{dual.cat,
  description={cat},
  descriptionplural={cat\glspluralsuffix },
  name={chat},
  plural={chat\glspluralsuffix },
  see={dog}
}
```

(except they're defined using `\bibglsnewdualentry` instead of `\bibglsnewentry`, and each is considered dependent on the other.)

The `see` field isn't listed in `dual-entry-map` so its value is simply copied directly over to the `see` field in the dual entry. Note that the missing `plural` and `descriptionplural` fields have been filled in using their fallback values.

In general `bib2gls` doesn't try to supply missing fields, but in the dual entry cases it needs to do this for the mapped fields. This is because the shuffled fields might have different default values from the `glossaries-extra` package's point of view. For example, `\longnewglossary-entry` doesn't provide a default for `descriptionplural` if it hasn't been set.

```
dual-abbrev-map={{\langle list1 \rangle},{\langle list2 \rangle}}
```

This is like `dual-entry-map` but applies to `@dualabbreviation` rather than `@dualentry`. Note that the `alias` field can't be mapped. The default setting is:

```
dual-abbrev-map={
  {short,shortplural,long,longplural,dualshort,dualshortplural,
   duallong,duallongplural},
  {dualshort,dualshortplural,duallong,duallongplural,short,shortplural,
   long,longplural}
}
```

This essentially flips the `short` field with the `dualshort` field and the `long` field with the `duallong` field. See `@dualabbreviation` for further details.

```
dual-abbreventry-map={{<list1>},{<list2>}}
```

This is like `dual-entry-map` but applies to `@dualabbreviationentry` rather than `@dual-entry`. Note that the `alias` field can't be mapped. The default setting is:

```
dual-abbreventry-map={
  {long,short,shortplural},
  {name,text,plural}
}
```

See `@dualabbreviationentry` for further details.

```
dual-symbol-map={{<list1>},{<list2>}}
```

This is like `dual-entry-map` but applies to `@dualsymbol` rather than `@dualentry`. Note that the `alias` field can't be mapped. The default setting is:

```
dual-symbol-map={
  {name,plural,symbol,symbolplural},
  {symbol,symbolplural,name,plural}
}
```

This essentially flips the `name` field with the `symbol` field.

```
dual-indexentry-map={{<list1>},{<list2>}}
```

This is like `dual-entry-map` but applies to `@dualindexentry` rather than `@dualentry`. The default setting is:

```
dual-indexentry-map={
  {name},
  {name}
}
```

Note that there must always be at least one pair, even if it's the same field, since this identifies the field to use for the backlink, if set.

```
dual-indexsymbol-map={{\list1}},{\list2}}
```

This is like `dual-entry-map` but applies to both `@dualindexsymbol` and `@dualindexnumber`. The default setting is:

```
dual-indexsymbol-map={
  {symbol,name,symbolplural,plural},
  {name,symbol,plural,symbolplural}
}
```

```
dual-indexabbrv-map={{\list1}},{\list2}}
```

This is like `dual-entry-map` but applies to both the dual `@dualindexabbreviation` and tertiary `@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry` entry types. The default setting is:

```
dual-indexabbrv-map={
  {name},
  {name}
}
```

Dual Back-Links

```
dual-entry-backlink={{\boolean}}
```

This is a boolean setting. If `\boolean` is missing true is assumed.

When used with `@dualentry`, if `\boolean` is true, this will wrap the contents of the first mapped field with `\bibglshyperlink`. The field is obtained from the first mapping listed in `dual-entry-map`.

For example, if the document contains:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[dual-entry-backlink,
  dual-entry-map={
    {name,plural,description,descriptionplural},
    {description,descriptionplural,name,plural}
  },
  src={entries-dual}]
```

and if the `.bib` file contains:

```
@dualentry{child,
  name={child},
  plural={children},
  description={enfant}
}
```

Then the definition of the primary entry (`child`) in the `.glstex` file will set the `description` field to:

```
\bibgls hyperlink{enfant}{dual.child}
```

and the dual entry (`dual.child`) will have the `description` field set to:

```
\bibgls hyperlink{child}{child}
```

This use of the wrapper `\bibgls hyperlink` (rather than explicitly using `\gls hyperlink`) and inserting the actual field value (rather than using commands like `\gls entryname`) allows it to work with `\makefirstuc` if the field requires a case-change.

The reason the `description` field is chosen for the modification is because the first field listed in $\langle list1 \rangle$ of `dual-entry-map` is the `name` field which maps to `description` (the first field in the second list $\langle list2 \rangle$). This means that the hyperlink for the dual entry should be put in the `description` field.

For the primary entry, the `name` field is looked up in the second list from the `dual-entry-map` setting. This is the third item in this second list, so the third item in the first list is selected, which also happens to be the `description` field, so the hyperlink for the primary entry is put in the `description` field.

```
dual-abbrev-backlink={\boolean}
```

This is analogous to `dual-entry-backlink` but for entries defined with `@dualabbreviation` instead of `@dualentry`.

```
dual-symbol-backlink={\boolean}
```

This is analogous to `dual-entry-backlink` but for entries defined with `@dualsymbol` instead of `@dualentry`.

```
dual-abbreventry-backlink={\boolean}
```

Analogous to `dual-entry-backlink` but for entries defined with `@dualabbreviation-entry` instead of `@dualentry`. This setting can be problematic as the backlinks rely on the relevant field being known to `bib2gls`. Since the abbreviation style typically sets the `name` field (and sometimes the `description` field as well), you may find that no backlink appears. A simple workaround is to use `dual-field` (or `dual-field={dual}`) to store the dual label in the `dual` field, and then use a style that checks for this field and adds the backlink.

With `glossaries-extra` v1.30+ you can use:

```
\GlsXtrDualBackLink{\text}{\label}
```

which encapsulates $\langle text \rangle$ with a hyperlink to the dual. The $\langle label \rangle$ identifies the entry that requires a backlink. The dual's label is obtained from the field given by:

```
\GlsXtrDualField
```

which defaults to `dual`. Note that if you assign a different field label with `dual-field`, then you will need to redefine `\GlsXtrDualField` as appropriate.

For example:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsuserdescription}[2]{%
  \GlsXtrDualBackLink{\glslonguserfont{#1}}{#2}%
}
\setabbreviationstyle{long-short-user}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},dual-field]
```

`dual-entryabbrv-backlink`={*boolean*}

As `dual-abbrventry-backlink` but for entries defined with `@dualentryabbreviation` instead of `@dualabbreviationentry`.

`dual-indexentry-backlink`={*boolean*}

This is analogous to `dual-entry-backlink` but for entries defined with `@dualindexentry` instead of `@dualentry`.

`dual-indexsymbol-backlink`={*boolean*}

This is analogous to `dual-entry-backlink` but for entries defined with `@dualindexsymbol` and `@dualindexnumber`.

`dual-indexabbrv-backlink`={*boolean*}

This is analogous to `dual-entry-backlink` but for entries defined with `@dualindexabbreviation` and `@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry`.

`dual-backlink`={*boolean*}

Shortcut for:

```
dual-entry-backlink={boolean},
dual-abbrventry-backlink={boolean},
dual-abbrv-backlink={boolean},
dual-symbol-backlink={boolean},
dual-indexentry-backlink={boolean},
dual-indexsymbol-backlink={boolean},
dual-indexabbrv-backlink={boolean}
```

5.12 Tertiary Entries

`tertiary-prefix`={*value*}

This option indicates the prefix to use for the tertiary entries. The default value is `tertiary.` (including the terminating period).

As from version 1.8, the tertiary label prefix is identified in the `.gls.tex` file with:

```
\bibglsstertiaryprefixlabel{prefix}
```

`tertiary-type={⟨value⟩}`

This option indicates that the tertiary entries should have their `type` field set to `⟨value⟩`. If `⟨value⟩` is empty the `type` is left unchanged. Unlike the `type` and `dual-type` options, there are no recognised keywords.

`tertiary-category={⟨value⟩}`

This option indicates that the tertiary entries should have their `category` field set to `⟨value⟩`. If `⟨value⟩` is empty the `category` is left unchanged. Unlike the `category` and `dual-category` options, there are no recognised keywords.

6 Provided Commands

When `bib2gls` creates the `.gls.tex` file, it writes some definitions for custom commands in the form `\bibgls...` which may be changed as required. The command definitions all use `\providecommand` which means that you can define the command with `\newcommand` before the resource file is loaded.

Note that if you try to redefine any of these commands after the resource file has been loaded with `\renewcommand`, you will get an error on the first \TeX run when the `.gls.tex` file doesn't exist. You may prefer to use `\glsrenewcommand` instead, which will generate a warning instead of an error.

Since many of the commands are actually used within the `.gls.tex` file, it's best to use `\newcommand` before the first resource set and `\renewcommand` between resource sets if adjustments are necessary.

6.1 Entry Definitions

This section lists the commands (`\bibglsnew...`) used to define entries. Note that the entry definition commands are actually used when \TeX inputs the resource file, so redefining them after the resource file is loaded won't have an effect on the entries defined in that resource file (but will affect entries defined in subsequent resource files). Each provided command is defined in the `.gls.tex` file immediately before the first entry that requires it, so only the commands that are actually needed are provided.

The `sort` key may be set within the `.gls.tex` entry definition, but its value is usually not required in the document unless you are using a hybrid method with `record={alsoindex}`.

After each entry is defined, if it has any associated locations and the default `save-loclist={true}` is set, then the locations are added using:

```
\glsxtrfieldlistadd{<label>}{<field>}{<item>}
```

Any additional fields that don't have associated keys are then set (if required) with `\GlsXtrSetField`.

`\bibglsnewentry`

```
\bibglsnewentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@entry` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2}{#4}%
}
```

This uses the starred form `\longnewglossaryentry*` that doesn't automatically append `\nopostdesc` (which interferes with the post-description hooks provided by category attributes).

`\bibglsnewsymbol`

```
\bibglsnewsymbol{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@symbol` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewsymbol}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},sort={#1},category={symbol},#2}
  {#4}%
}
```

Note that this sets the `sort` field to the label, but this may be overridden by the `<options>` if the `sort` field was supplied or if `bib2gls` has determined the value whilst sorting the entries.

This also sets the `category` to `symbol`, but again this may be overridden by `<options>` if the entry had the `category` field set in the `.bib` file or if the `category` was overridden with `category={<value>}`.

`\bibglsnewnumber`

```
\bibglsnewnumber{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@number` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewnumber}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},sort={#1},category={number},#2}
  {#4}%
}
```

This is much the same as `\bibglsnewsymbol` above but sets the `category` to `number`. Again the `sort` and `category` keys may be overridden by `<options>`.

`\bibglsnewindex`

```
\bibglsnewindex{<label>}{<options>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@index` type. The definition provided in the `.glsstex` file is:

```
\providecommand*\bibglsnewindex}[2]{%
  \newglossaryentry{#1}{name={#1},category={index},description={},#2}%
}
```

This makes the `name` default to the `<label>`, assigns the `category` to `index` and sets an empty `description`. These settings may be overridden by `<options>`.

Note that the `description` doesn't include `\nopostdesc` to allow for the post-description hook used by category attributes.

`\bibglsnewindexplural`

```
\bibglsnewindexplural{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@indexplural` type. The definition provided in the `.glsstex` file is:

```
\providecommand*\bibglsnewindexplural}[3]{%
  \newglossaryentry{#1}{name={#3},category={indexplural},description=
  {},#2}%
}
```

This assigns the `category` to `indexplural` and sets an empty `description`. These settings may be overridden by `<options>`.

`\bibglsnewabbreviation`

```
\bibglsnewabbreviation{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@abbreviation` type. The definition provided in the `.glsstex` file is:

```
\providecommand*\bibglsnewabbreviation}[4]{%
  \newabbreviation[#2]{#1}{#3}{#4}%
}
```

Since this uses `\newabbreviation`, it obeys the abbreviation style for its given `category` (which may have been set in `<options>`, either from the `category` field in the `.bib` file or through the `category` option). Similarly the `type` will obey `\glstextrabbrvtype` unless the value is supplied in the `.bib` file or through the `type` option.

\bibglsnewacronym

```
\bibglsnewacronym{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@acronym` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewacronym}[4]{%
  \newacronym[#2]{#1}{#3}{#4}%
}
```

This works in much the same way as `\bibglsnewabbreviation`. Remember that with the `glossaries-extra` package `\newacronym` is redefined to just use `\newabbreviation` with the default `type` set to `\acronymtype` and the default `category` set to `acronym`.

\bibglsnewdualentry

```
\bibglsnewdualentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@dualentry` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2}{#4}%
}
```

\bibglsnewdualindexentry

```
\bibglsnewdualindexentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define primary terms identified with the `@dualindexentry` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualindexentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},category={index},#2}{#4}%
}
```

Note that this definition ignores the `<description>` argument.

\bibglsnewdualindexentrysecondary

```
\bibglsnewdualindexentrysecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define secondary terms identified with the `@dualindexentry` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualindexentrysecondary}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2}{#4}%
}
```

\biblsnewdualindexsymbol

```
\biblsnewdualindexsymbol{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<symbol>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define primary terms identified with the `@dualindexsymbol` type. The definition provided in the `.glstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\biblsnewdualindexsymbol}[5]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},category={index},symbol={#4},#2}
}%
}
```

Note that this definition ignores the `<description>` argument.

\biblsnewdualindexsymbolsecondary

```
\biblsnewdualindexsymbolsecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define secondary terms identified with the `@dualindexsymbol` type. The definition provided in the `.glstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\biblsnewdualindexsymbolsecondary}[5]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},category={symbol},symbol={#4},#2}
  {#5}%
}
```

\biblsnewdualindexnumber

```
\biblsnewdualindexnumber{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<symbol>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define primary terms identified with the `@dualindexnumber` type. The definition provided in the `.glstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\biblsnewdualindexnumber}[5]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},category={index},symbol={#4},#2}
  {}%
}
```

Note that this definition ignores the `<description>` argument.

\biblsnewdualindexnumbersecondary

```
\biblsnewdualindexnumbersecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define secondary terms identified with the `@dualindexnumber` type. The definition provided in the `.glstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualindexnumbersecondary}[5]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},category={number},symbol={#4},#2}
  {#5}%
}
```

\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation

```
\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation{<label>}{<dual-label>}{<options>}{<name>}
{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define primary terms identified with the `@dualindexabbreviation` type. The default definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation}[7]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{%
    name={\protect\bibglsuseabbrvfont{#4}{\glscategory{#2}}},%
    category={index},#3}{%
  }
```

In this case `<dual-label>` is the dual entry's label, which is used to fetch the category label in `\bibglsuseabbrvfont`. (The `category` field for the dual isn't used since a custom definition of `\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviationsecondary` may override the value known to `bib2gls`.)

Note that (as shown above) with the default `abbreviation-name-fallback={short}` the `name` uses:

```
\bibglsuseabbrvfont{<text>}{<category>}
```

to format the name, which ensures that it uses the same font as the short form for the dual abbreviation. This will use `\glsuseabbrvfont` if it's defined otherwise it will be defined to replicate that command. If `abbreviation-name-fallback` is set to some other field then the `name` uses:

```
\bibglsuselongfont{<text>}{<category>}
```

instead, which ensures that it uses the same font as the long form for the dual abbreviation.

\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviationsecondary

```
\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviationsecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}
{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define secondary terms identified with the `@dualindexabbreviation` entry type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglstnewdualindexabbreviationsecondary}[6]{%
  \ifstrempy{#6}%
  {\newabbreviation[#2]{#1}{#4}{#5}}%
  {\newabbreviation[#2,description={#6}]{#1}{#4}{#5}}%
}
```

This ensures that a missing or empty `description` doesn't interfere with the abbreviation style.

`\bibglstnewdualabbreviationentry`

```
\bibglstnewdualabbreviationentry{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}
{<description>}
```

This command is used to define primary terms identified with the `@dualabbreviationentry` type. The definition provided in the `.glstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglstnewdualabbreviationentry}[5]{%
  \newabbreviation[#2]{#1}{#3}{#4}%
}
```

Note that this definition ignores the `<description>` argument.

`\bibglstnewdualabbreviationentrysecondary`

```
\bibglstnewdualabbreviationentrysecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}
{<long>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define secondary terms identified with the `@dualabbreviationentry` type. The definition provided in the `.glstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglstnewdualabbreviationentrysecondary}[5]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{#2}{#5}%
}
```

Note that this definition ignores the `<short>` and `<long>` arguments (which will typically be empty unless the default mappings are changed).

`\bibglstnewdualentryabbreviation`

```
\bibglstnewdualentryabbreviation{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}
{<description>}
```

This command is used to define primary terms identified with the (now deprecated) entry type `@dualentryabbreviation`. The definition provided in the `.glstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviation}[5]{%
  \newabbreviation[#2]{#1}{#3}{#4}%
}
```

Note that this definition ignores the $\langle description \rangle$ argument.

\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviationsecondary

```
\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviationsecondary{\langle label \rangle}{\langle options \rangle}{\langle short \rangle}
{\langle long \rangle}{\langle description \rangle}
```

This command is used to define secondary terms identified with the (now deprecated) entry type `@dualentryabbreviation`. The definition provided in the `.glsstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviationsecondary}[5]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{#2}{#5}%
}
```

Note that this definition ignores the $\langle short \rangle$ and $\langle long \rangle$ arguments (which will typically be empty unless the default mappings are changed).

\bibglsnewdualsymbol

```
\bibglsnewdualsymbol{\langle label \rangle}{\langle options \rangle}{\langle name \rangle}{\langle description \rangle}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@dualsymbol` type. The definition provided in the `.glsstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualsymbol}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3}, sort={#1}, category={symbol}, #2}
  {#4}}
```

\bibglsnewdualnumber

```
\bibglsnewdualnumber{\langle label \rangle}{\langle options \rangle}{\langle name \rangle}{\langle description \rangle}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@dualnumber` type. The definition provided in the `.glsstex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualnumber}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3}, sort={#1}, category={symbol}, #2}
  {#4}}
```

\bibglsnewdualabbreviation

```
\bibglsnewdualabbreviation{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@dualabbreviation` type where the `duallong` field is swapped with the `long` field and the `dualshort` field is swapped with the `short` field. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualabbreviation}[4]{%
  \newabbreviation[#2]{#1}{#3}{#4}%
}
```

\bibglsnewdualacronym

```
\bibglsnewdualacronym{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with the `@dualacronym` type. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewdualacronym}[4]{%
  \newacronym[#2]{#1}{#3}{#4}%
}
```

This works in much the same way as `\bibglsnewdualabbreviation`. Remember that with the `glossaries-extra` package `\newacronym` is redefined to just use `\newabbreviation` with the default `type` set to `\acronymtype` and the default `category` set to `acronym`.

\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentry

```
\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentry{<label>}{<dual-label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}
```

This is used to define primary terms identified with the `@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry` type. It's essentially the same as `\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation`. The definition provided in the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentry}[7]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{%
    name={\protect\bibglsuseabbrvfont{#4}{\glscategory{#2}}},%
    category={index},#3}%
}
```

\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary

```
\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary{<label>}{<tertiary-label>}
{<options>}{<tertiary-opts>}{<primary-name>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define both the secondary and tertiary terms identified with the `@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry` type. The secondary term is an abbreviation and the tertiary term is a regular entry. The definition written to the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary}[8]{%
  \newabbreviation[#3]{#1}{#6}{#7}%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#2}%
  {name={\protect\bibglsuselongfont{#7}{\glscategory{#1}}},#4}%
  {#8}%
}
```

The `<label>` is the label for the secondary (abbreviation) entry and `<tertiary-label>` is the label for the tertiary (regular) entry. The fifth argument (`<primary name>`) isn't used but is provided if required for a custom redefinition. The `name` field for the tertiary is obtained from the `<long>` argument encapsulated by `\bibglsuselongfont` to format the name, which ensures that it uses the same font as the long form for the dual abbreviation. This will use `\glsuselongfont` if it's defined otherwise it will be defined to replicate that command.

\bibglsnewbibtexentry

```
\bibglsnewbibtexentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define the main term identified with `@bibtexentry`. The definition written to the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewbibtexentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2}{#4}%
}
```

\bibglsnewcontributor

```
\bibglsnewcontributor{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}
```

This command is used to define terms identified with `@contributor` (typically implicitly created through `@bibtexentry`). The definition written to the `.gls.tex` file is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsnewcontributor}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2}{#4}%
}
```

6.2 Location Lists and Cross-References

These commands deal with the way the location lists and cross references are formatted. The commands typically aren't used until the entry information is displayed in the glossary, so you may redefine these commands after the resource file has been loaded.

`\bibglsseesep`

```
\bibglsseesep
```

Any entries that provide a `see` field (and that field hasn't be omitted from the location list with `see={omit}`) will have `\bibglsseesep` inserted between the `see` part and the location list (unless there are no locations, in which case just the `see` part is displayed without `\bibglsseesep`).

This command is provided with:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsseesep}{, }
```

You can define this before you load the `.bib` file:

```
\newcommand{\bibglsseesep}{; }
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
```

Or you can redefine it afterwards:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
\glsrenewcommand{\bibglsseesep}{; }
```

`\bibglsseealsosep`

```
\bibglsseealsosep
```

This is like `\bibglsseesep` but is used with cross-reference lists provided with the `seealso` field, if supported.

`\bibglsaliassep`

```
\bibglsaliassep
```

This is like `\bibglsseesep` but is used with cross-reference lists provided with the `alias` field.

`\bibglsuseesee`

```
\bibglsuseesee{<label>}
```

Displays the formatted cross-reference list stored in the `see` field for the given entry. This just defaults to `\glsxtruseesee{<label>}`.

\bibglsuseseealso

```
\bibglsuseseealso{<label>}
```

Displays the formatted cross-reference list stored in the `seealso` field for the given entry. This just defaults to `\glsxtruseseealso{<label>}`.

\bibglsusealias

```
\bibglsusealias{<label>}
```

Displays the formatted cross-reference stored in the `alias` field for the given entry. This is defined to use `\glsseeformat`.

\bibglsdelimN

```
\bibglsdelimN
```

Separator between individual locations, except for the last. This defaults to `\delimN`.

\bibglslastDelimN

```
\bibglslastDelimN
```

Separator between penultimate and final individual locations. This defaults to `,~` to discourage lonely locations.

\bibglspassim

```
\bibglspassim
```

If `max-loc-diff` is greater than 1, then any ranges that have skipped over gaps will be followed by `\bibglspassim`, which is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglspassim}{ \bibglspassimname}
```

You can define this before you load the `.bib` file:

```
\newcommand{\bibglspassim}{}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
```

Or you can redefine it afterwards:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
\glsrenewcommand{\bibglspassim}{}
```

\bibglspassimname

```
\bibglspassimname
```

The default definition is obtained from the language resource file. For example, with `bib2gls-en.xml` the provided definition is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglspassimname}{passim}
```

\bibglsrangle

```
\bibglsrangle{<start>\delimR <end>}
```

Explicit ranges formed using `format={ () }` and `format={ } }` or `format={{<csname>}}` and `format={ } <csname>}` (where `<csname>` matches and is a text-block command without the initial backslash) in the optional argument of commands like `\gls` or `\glsadd` are encapsulated within the argument of `\bibglsrangle`. By default this simply does its argument. This command is not used with ranges that are formed by collating consecutive locations.

\bibglsinterloper

```
\bibglsinterloper{<location>}
```

If an explicit range conflicts with a record, a warning will be issued and the conflicting record will be shifted to the front of the range inside the argument of `\bibglsinterloper`. The default definition just does `<location>\bibglsdelimN` so that it fits neatly into the list.

For example, suppose on page 4 of my document I start a range with:

```
\glsadd[format={ ( ) }]{sample}
```

and end it on page 9 with:

```
\glsadd[format={ } ]]{sample}
```

This forms an explicit range, but let's suppose on page 6 I have:

```
\gls[format={hyperbf}]{sample}
```

This record conflicts with the explicit range (which doesn't include `hyperbf` in the format). This causes a warning and the conflicting entry will be moved before the start of the explicit range resulting in **6**, 4–9.

Note that implicit ranges can't be formed from interlopers (nor can implicit ranges be merged with explicit ones), so if `\gls[format={hyperbf}]{sample}` also occurs on pages 7 and 8 then the result will be **6**, **7**, **8**, 4–9. Either remove the explicit range or remove the conflicting entries. (Alternatively, redefine `\bibglsinterloper` to ignore its argument, which will discard the conflicting entries.)

\bibglspostlocprefix

```
\bibglspostlocprefix
```

If the `loc-prefix` option is on, `\bibglsllocprefix` will be inserted at the start of location lists, and its default definition includes `\bibglspostlocprefix` placed after the prefix text. This command is provided with:

```
\providecommand{\bibglspostlocprefix}{\ }

```

which puts a space between the prefix text and the location list. You can define this before you load the `.bib` file:

```
\newcommand{\bibglspostlocprefix}{: }
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},loc-prefix]

```

Or you can redefine it afterwards:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries},loc-prefix]
\glsrenewcommand{\bibglspostlocprefix}{: }

```

\bibglsllocprefix

```
\bibglsllocprefix{<n>}
```

If the `loc-prefix` option is on, this command will be provided. If the glossary type has been provided by `type` (and `dual-type` if there are any dual entries) then the definition of `\bibglsllocprefix` will be appended to the glossary preamble for the given type (or types if there are dual entries). For example, if the document has:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[type={main},loc-prefix={p.,pp.},src={entries}]

```

and there are no dual entries, then the following will be added to the `.gls.tex` file:

```
\apptoglossarypreamble[main]{%
\providecommand{\bibglsllocprefix}[1]{%
\ifcase##1
\or p.\bibglspostlocprefix
\else pp.\bibglspostlocprefix
\fi
}%
}

```

However, if the `type` key is missing, then the following will be added instead:

```
\appto\glossary preamble{%
\providecommand{\bibglslocprefix}[1]{%
\ifcase#1
\or p.\bibglspostlocprefix
\else pp.\bibglspostlocprefix
\fi
}%
}
```

\bibglspagename

```
\bibglspagename
```

If `loc-prefix={true}` is used, then this command is provided using the value of `tag.page` from the language resource file. For example with `bib2gls-en.xml` the definition is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglspagename}{Page}
```

\bibglspagesname

```
\bibglspagesname
```

If `loc-prefix={true}` is used, then this command is provided using the value of `tag.pages` from the language resource file. For example with `bib2gls-en.xml` the definition is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglspagesname}{Pages}
```

\bibglslocsuffix

```
\bibglslocsuffix{<n>}
```

If the `loc-suffix` option is on, this command will be provided. If the glossary type has been provided by `type` (and `dual-type` if there are any dual entries) then the definition of `\bibglslocsuffix` will be appended to the glossary preamble for the given type (or types if there are dual entries).

This command's definition depends on the value provided by `loc-suffix`. For example, with `loc-suffix={\@.}` the command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglslocsuffix}[1]{\@.}
```

(which ignores the argument).

Whereas with `loc-suffix={<A>,,<C>}` the command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglslocsuffix}[1]{\ifcase#1 <A>\or <B>\else <C>\fi}
```

Note that this is slightly different from `\bibglslocprefix` as it includes the 0 case, which in this instance means that there were no locations but there was a cross-reference. This command isn't added when the location list is empty.

`\bibglsprimary`

```
\bibglsprimary{<n>}{<locations>}
```

When the `save-primary-locations` option is used, the primary locations are stored in the `primarylocations` field encapsulated with this command. The first argument is the number of locations in the list. The second argument is the list of locations formatted in the usual way. The default definition is to ignore the first argument and simply do the second.

`\bibglslocationgroup`

```
\bibglslocationgroup{<n>}{<counter>}{<list>}
```

When the `loc-counters` option is used, the locations for each entry are grouped together according to the counter (in the order specified in the value of `loc-counters`). Each group of locations is encapsulated within `\bibglslocationgroup`, where `<n>` is the number of locations within the group, `<counter>` is the counter name and `<list>` is the formatted location sub-list. By default, this simply does `<list>`, but may be defined (before the resources are loaded) or redefined (after the resources are loaded) as required.

For example:

```
\newcommand*{\bibglslocationgroup}[3]{%
  \ifnum#1=1
    #2:
  \else
    #2s:
  \fi
  #3%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  loc-counters={equation,page},% group locations by counter
  src={entries}% data in entries.bib
]
```

This will prefix each group with the counter name, if there's only one location, or the counter name followed by "s", if there are multiple locations within the group.

There are various ways to adapt this to translate the counter name to a different textual label, such as:

```
\providecommand{\pagename}{Page}
\providecommand{\pagesname}{Pages}
\providecommand{\equationname}{Equation}
\providecommand{\equationsname}{Equations}
```

```
\newcommand*{\bibglslocationgroup}[3]{%
  \ifnum#1=1
    \ifcsdef{#2name}{\csuse{#2name}}{#2}:
  \else
    \ifcsdef{#2sname}{\csuse{#2sname}}{#2s}:
  \fi
  #3%
}
```

\bibglslocationgroupsep

```
\bibglslocationgroupsep
```

When the `loc-counters` option is set, this command is used to separate each location subgroup. It may be defined before the resources are loaded:

```
\newcommand*{\bibglslocationgroupsep}{; }
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  loc-counters={equation,page},% group locations by counter
  src={entries}% data in entries.bib
]
```

or redefined after the resources are loaded:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  loc-counters={equation,page},% group locations by counter
  src={entries}% data in entries.bib
]
```

```
\glsrenewcommand*{\bibglslocationgroupsep}{; }
```

\bibglssupplemental

```
\bibglssupplemental{<n>}{<list>}
```

When the `supplemental-locations` option is used, the locations from a supplementary document are encapsulated within the `<list>` part of `\bibglssupplemental`. The first argument `<n>` (ignored by default) is the number of supplementary locations.

If multiple supplemental sources are permitted (that is, `bib2gls` has detected that the document is using at least version 1.36 of `glossaries-extra`), then the `<list>` part will consist of sub-lists for each external source. In this case, `<n>` will be the total number of elements across all the sub-lists.

\bibglssupplementalsublist

```
\bibglssupplementalsublist{<n>}{<external document>}{<list>}
```

If multiple supplemental sources are permitted, this will be used to format each sub-list, where $\langle n \rangle$ (ignored by default) is the number of elements in the sub-list, $\langle \text{external document} \rangle$ (ignored by default) is the external source and $\langle \text{list} \rangle$ is the list of supplementary locations in $\langle \text{external document} \rangle$.

\bibglssupplementalsep

```
\bibglssupplementalsep
```

The separator between the main location list and the supplementary location list. By default this is just `\bibglsdelimN`. This may be defined before the resources are loaded:

```
\newcommand{\bibglssupplementalsep}{; }
```

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  supplemental-locations={supplDoc},
  src={entries}]
```

or redefined after the resources are loaded:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  supplemental-locations={supplDoc},
  src={entries}]
```

```
\glsrenewcommand{\bibglssupplementalsep}{; }
```

\bibglssupplementalsubsep

```
\bibglssupplementalsubsep
```

The separator between the supplementary location sub-lists. By default this is just `\bibglsdelimN`.

\bibglshrefchar

```
\bibglshrefchar{<hex>}{<char>}
```

Expands to a literal percent character followed by $\langle \text{hex} \rangle$. The second argument is ignored.

\bibglshrefunicode

```
\bibglshrefunicode{<hex>}{<char>}
```

Expands to the second argument. The first argument is ignored.

6.3 Letter Groups

The commands listed in this section are provided for use with the `--group` switch and glossary styles that display the letter group title. If these need their definitions altered, they should be defined before the resource file is loaded if field expansion is on (`--expand-fields`) otherwise they may be redefined afterwards.

The base glossaries package determines group titles through a fairly simplistic rule. Both `makeindex` and `xindy` write the line:

```
\glsgroupheading{<label>}
```

to the associated glossary file at the start of each new letter group. For example, the “A” letter group will be written as:

```
\glsgroupheading{A}
```

This is quite straightforward and the heading title can just be “A”. The “Symbols” group is written as:

```
\glsgroupheading{glsymbols}
```

To allow for easy translation, the base glossaries package has the simple rule:

- if `\<heading>groupname` exists use that;
- otherwise just use `<heading>`.

There’s no `\Agroupname` provided, but `\glsymbolsgroupname` is provided and is supported by the associated language modules, such as `glossaries-french`. (Similarly for the “Numbers” group.)

The glossary styles that provide hyperlinks to the groups (such as `indexhypergroup`) use `<heading>` to form the target name. A problem arises when active characters occur in `<heading>`, which happens with extended characters and `inputenc`.

The `glossaries-extra` package (as from version 1.14) provides:

```
\glsxtrsetgrouptitle{<group label>}{<group title>}
```

to set the title for a group with the given label. The internal workings of `\glsgroupheading` are modified to use a slightly altered rule:

- if a title has been set using `\glsxtrsetgrouptitle{<heading>}{<title>}` for the given `<heading>`, use that;

- if `\langle heading \rangle groupname` exists, use that;
- just use `\langle heading \rangle` for the title.

So if `\glstrsetgrouptitle` hasn't been used, it falls back on the original rule.

The problem is now how to make the indexing application use the desired label in the argument of `\glsgroupheading` instead of selecting the heading based on the first character of each sort value for each top-level entry in that group. This can't be done with `makeindex`, and with `xindy` it requires a custom language module, which isn't a trivial task.

With `bib2gls`, a different approach is used. The `.glstex` file created isn't comparable to the `.gls` file created by `makeindex` or `xindy`. There's nowhere for `bib2gls` to write the `\glsgroupheading` line as it isn't creating the code that typesets the glossary list. Instead it's creating the code that defines the entries. The actual group heading is inserted by `\printunsrtglossary` and it's only able to do this by checking if the entry has a `group` field and comparing it to the previous entry's `group` field.

The behaviour of the group formation implemented by the sort methods may be changed with `group-formation`. With any setting other than `group-formation={default}`, the group label is set to `\bibglsunicodegroup{\langle label \rangle}{\langle character \rangle}{\langle id \rangle}{\langle type \rangle}` and the title is set to `\bibglsunicodetitle{\langle label \rangle}{\langle character \rangle}{\langle id \rangle}{\langle type \rangle}` (see below) otherwise the label and title are determined by the sort method.

The collators used by the locale and letter-based rules save the following information for each entry based on the first significant letter of the `sort` field (if the letter is recognised as alphabetical, according to the rule):

- `\langle title \rangle` The group's title. This is typically title-cased. For example, if the rule recognises the digraph "dz", then the title is "Dz". Exceptions to this are included in the language resource file. If the key `grouptitle.case.\langle lc \rangle` exists, where `\langle lc \rangle` is the lower case version of `\langle title \rangle`, then the value of that key is used instead. For example, the Dutch digraph "ij" should be converted to "IJ", so `bib2gls-en.xml` includes:

```
<entry key="grouptitle.case.ij">IJ</entry>
```

(See the `--group` switch for more details.)

- `\langle letter \rangle` This is the actual letter at the start of the given entry's `sort` field, which may be lower case or may contain diacritics that don't appear in `\langle title \rangle`.
- `\langle id \rangle` A numeric identifier. This may be the collation key or the code point for the given letter, depending on the sort method.
- `\langle type \rangle` The entry's glossary type. If not known, this will be empty. (`bib2gls` won't know if you've modified the associated `\bibglsnew...` command to set the `type`. It can only know the type if it's in the original `.bib` definition or is set using resource options such as `type`.)

The `group` field is then set using:

```
group={\bibglslettergroup{<title>}{<letter>}{<id>}{<type>}}
```

This field needs to expand to a simple label, which `\bibglslettergroup` is designed to do. Note that non-letter groups are dealt with separately (see below).

`\bibglssetlastgrouptitle`

In the last resource (`.glstex`) file, after all the relevant group titles have been set with the commands listed below, there's a final title setting:

```
\bibglssetlastgrouptitle{<cs>}{<specs>}
```

This does nothing by default, but the arguments are set to correspond to the group with the maximum id for that resource file. It's provided as a convenient way of overriding the final group title without the inconvenience of looking up the group label in the `.glstex` file. If you have multiple glossaries or if you want to override a different group, then you need to inspect the `.glstex` file to work out the corresponding label (by finding the `group` assignment for one of the entries in that group).

The `<cs>` argument is the control sequence used in the `group` field to obtain the label from `<specs>`. For example, if the highest `<id>` is 2147418112 from:

```
group={\bibglslettergroup{∅}{∅}{2147418112}{}}
```

then the last group is identified with:

```
\bibglssetlastgrouptitle{\bibglslettergroup}{∅}{∅}{2147418112}{}}
```

In this case `<cs>` is `\bibglslettergroup` and `<specs>` are the arguments for that command. If you want `\bibglssetlastgrouptitle` to change the group title then you need to define it before the resource set. For example:

```
\newcommand*{\bibglssetlastgrouptitle}[2]{%
  \glxtrsetgrouptitle{#1#2}{Foreign Words}}
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
```

If you need to change a particular group title, then it has to be done after the resource set:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]
\glxtrsetgrouptitle
  {\bibglslettergroup{∅}{∅}{2147418112}{}}% label
  {Foreign Words}% title
```

`\bibglssetlettergrouptitle`

For each letter group that's detected, `bib2gls` will write the line:

```
\bibglssetlettergrouptitle{{<title>}{<letter>}{<id>}{<type>}}
```

in the `.glstex` file, which sets the group's title using:

```
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{<group label>}{<group title>}
```

where the `<group label>` part matches the corresponding `group` value.

Note that `\bibglsetlettergrouptitle` only has a single argument, but that argument contains the four arguments needed by `\bibgllettergroup` and `\bibgllettergrouptitle`. These arguments are as described above.

If `\glxtrsetgrouptitle` has been defined (glossaries-extra version 1.14 onwards), then `\bibglsetlettergrouptitle` will be defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsetlettergrouptitle}[1]{%
  \glxtrsetgrouptitle{\bibgllettergroup#1}{\bibgllettergrouptitle#1}}
```

If an earlier version of glossaries-extra is used, then this function can't be supported and the command will be defined to simply ignore its argument. This will fall back on the original method of just using `<title>` as the label.

Since `\bibglsetlettergrouptitle` is used in the `.glstex` file to set the group titles, the associated commands need to be defined before the resource file is loaded if their definitions require modification. After the resource file has been loaded, you can adjust the title of a specific group, but you'll need to check the `.glstex` file for the appropriate arguments. For example, if the `.glstex` file contains:

```
\bibglsetlettergrouptitle{{Æ}{æ}{7274496}{}}
```

but you actually want the group title to appear as “Æ (AE)” instead of just “Æ”, then after the resource file has been loaded you can do:

```
\glxtrsetgrouptitle
{\bibgllettergroup{Æ}{æ}{7274496}{}}% label
{Æ (AE)}% title
```

`\bibgllettergroup`

```
\bibgllettergroup{<title>}{<letter>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used to determine the letter group label. The default definition is `<type><id>`, which ensures that no problematic characters occur in the label since `<type>` can't contain special characters and `<id>` is numeric. The `<type>` is included in case there are multiple glossaries, since the hyperlink name must be unique.

`\bibglsetlettergrouptitle`

```
\bibglsetlettergrouptitle{<title>}{<letter>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used to determine the letter group title. The default definition is `\unexpanded{<title>}`, which guards against any expansion issues that may arise with characters outside the basic Latin set.

For example:

```
@entry{angstrom,
  name={\AA ngstr\om}
  description={a unit of length equal to one hundred-millionth
of a centimetre}
}
```

The `sort` value is “Ångström”. With `sort={en}` the *<title>* part will be A but with `sort={sv}` the *<title>* part will be Å. In both cases the *<letter>* argument will be Å.

Take care if you are using a script that needs encapsulating. For example, with the CJKutf8 package the CJK characters need to be placed within the CJK environment, so any letter group titles that contain CJK characters will need special attention.

For example, suppose the .bib file contains entries in the form:

```
@dualentry{<label>,
  name = {\CJKname{<CJK characters>}},
  description = {<English translation>}
}
```

and the document contains:

```
\usepackage{CJKutf8}
\usepackage[record,style={indexgroup},nomain]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{japanese}{Japanese to English}
\newglossary*{english}{English to Japanese}

\newrobustcmd{\CJKname}[1]{\begin{CJK}{UTF8}{min}#1\end{CJK}}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={testcjk},% bib file
  sort={ja-JP},% locale used to sort primary entries
  dual-sort={en-GB},% locale used to sort secondary entries
  type={japanese},% put the primary entries in the 'japanese' glossary
  dual-type={english},% put the dual entries in the 'english' glossary
  dual-prefix={en.}
]
```

then CJK characters will appear in the *<title>* argument of `\bibglslettergrouptitle` which causes a problem because they need to be encapsulated within the CJK environment. This can be more conveniently done with the user supplied `\CJKname`, but the CJK characters need to be protected from expansion so `\unexpanded` is also needed. The new definition of `\bibglslettergrouptitle` needs to be defined before `\GlsXtrLoadResources`. For example:

```
\newcommand{\bibglslettergrouptitle}[4]{\unexpanded{\CJKname{#1}}}
```

There's a slight problem here in that the English letter group titles also end up encapsulated. An alternative approach is to use the $\langle type \rangle$ part to provide different forms. For example:

```
\newcommand*\englishlettergroup}[1]{#1}
\newcommand*\japaneselettergroup}[1]{\CJKname{#1}}
\newcommand*\bibglslettergrouptitle}[4]{%
  \unexpanded{\csuse{#4lettergroup}{#1}}}
```

\backslash bibglssetothergrouptitle

The label and title for symbol groups are dealt with in a similar way to the letter groups, but in this case the title is set using:

```
\bibglssetothergrouptitle{\langle character \rangle}{\langle id \rangle}{\langle type \rangle}
```

This is defined in an analogous manner:

```
\providecommand*\bibglssetothergrouptitle}[1]{%
  \glstrsetgrouptitle{\bibglsothergroup#1}{\bibglsothergrouptitle#1}}
```

where the group label is obtained using \backslash bibglsothergroup and the group title is obtained from \backslash bibglsothergrouptitle. Note that since non-alphabetic characters don't have upper or lower case versions, there are only three arguments. The other difference between this and the letter group version is that the $\langle id \rangle$ is given in hexadecimal format (corresponding to the character code).

For example, suppose my .bib file contains:

```
@entry{sauthor,
  name={/Author},
  description = {author string}
}
```

If a locale sort is used, the leading slash / will be ignored and this entry will belong to the "A" letter group using the letter commands described above. If, instead, one of the character code sort methods are used, such as `sort={letter-case}`, then this entry will be identified as belonging to a symbol (or "other") group and the title will be set using:

```
\bibglssetothergrouptitle{/}{2F}{}
```

\backslash bibglsothergroup

```
\bibglsothergroup{\langle character \rangle}{\langle id \rangle}{\langle type \rangle}
```

This expands to the label for symbol groups. This just defaults to `glsymbols` (ignoring all arguments), which replicates the label used when `makeindex` or `xindy` generate the glossary files.

\bibglsothergrouptitle

```
\bibglsothergrouptitle{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

This expands to the title for symbol groups. This just expands to `\glssymbolsgroupname` by default.

\bibglissetemptygrouptitle

Used when the sort value degenerates to an empty string. This command sets the label and title.

```
\bibglissetemptygrouptitle{{<type>}}
```

(Note the inner group, as with the other similar `\bibglisset...grouptitle` commands.)

\bibglsemptygroup

```
\bibglsemptygroup{<type>}
```

This expands to the label for empty groups. This defaults to `glssymbols` to make it consistent with non-letter groups (since the sort value likely contained unknown symbol commands).

\bibglsemptygrouptitle

```
\bibglsemptygrouptitle{<type>}
```

This expands to the group title for empty group. This just expands to `\glssymbolsgroupname` by default.

\bibglissetnumbergrouptitle

The numeric sort methods (table 5.5) all create number groups instead of letter or symbol groups. These behave in an analogous way to the above.

```
\bibglissetnumbergrouptitle{{<value>}{<id>}{<type>}}
```

In this case `<value>` is the actual numeric sort value, and `<id>` is a decimal number obtained from converting `<value>` to an integer. This command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglissetnumbergrouptitle}[1]{%
  \glxtrsetgrouptitle{\bibglsetnumbergroup#1}{\bibglsetnumbergrouptitle#1}}
```

\bibglsnumbergroup

The number group label is obtained from:

```
\bibglsnumbergroup{<value>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

This just defaults to glsnumbers.

\bibglsnumbergrouptitle

The number group title is obtained from:

```
\bibglsnumbergrouptitle{<value>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

This just defaults to \glsnumbersgroupname.

\bibglssetdatetimegrouptitle

The date-time sort methods (table 5.6) create date-time groups. These behave in an analogous way to the above.

```
\bibglssetdatetimegrouptitle{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}
```

This command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglssetdatetimegrouptitle}[1]{%
  \glsxtrsetgrouptitle
  {\bibglsdatetimegroup#1}%
  {\bibglsdatetimegrouptitle#1}%
}
```

\bibglsdatetimegroup

```
\bibglsdatetimegroup{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used for date-time group labels with `datetime` sorting (table 5.6). This has ten arguments, which means a little trickery is needed to deal with the tenth argument. The default definition is:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsdatetimegroup}[9]{#1#2#3\@firstofone}
```

This forms the group label from the year `<YYYY>`, month `<MM>`, day `<DD>` and `<type>`.

\biblsdatetimegrouptitle

```
\biblsdatetimegrouptitle{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}
{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used for date-time group titles with `datetime` sorting (table 5.6). The default definition is:

```
\providecommand{\biblsdatetimegrouptitle}[9]{#1-#2-#3\@gobble}
```

This sets the title to the numeric `<YYYY>-<MM>-<DD>` but may be redefined as appropriate.

\biblssetdategrouptitle

The date sort methods (table 5.6) create date groups (the time isn't included). These behave in an analogous way to the above.

```
\biblssetdategrouptitle{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<G>}{<title>}{<group-id>}
{<type>}
```

This command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\biblssetdategrouptitle}[1]{%
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{\biblsdategroup#1}{\biblsdategrouptitle#1}}
```

\biblsdategroup

```
\biblsdategroup{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<G>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used for date group labels with date (no time) sorting (table 5.6). The default definition is:

```
\providecommand{\biblsdategroup}[7]{#1#2#4#7}
```

This forms the group label from the year, month, era and type. In this case, the era is a textual representation not the numeric value used in calculating the sort value.

\biblsdategrouptitle

```
\biblsdategrouptitle{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<G>}{<title>}{<group-id>}
{<type>}
```

This command is used for date group titles with date (no time) sorting (table 5.6). The default definition is:

```
\providecommand{\biblsdategrouptitle}[7]{#1-#2}
```

This just sets the title to the numeric year-month form `<YYYY>-<MM>`.

\bibglsttimegrouptitle

The time sort methods (table 5.6) create time groups (the date isn't included). These behave in an analogous way to the above.

```
\bibglsttimegrouptitle{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}
```

This command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglsttimegrouptitle}[1]{%
  \glxtrsetgrouptitle{\bibglsttimegroup#1}{\bibglsttimegrouptitle#1}}
```

\bibglstimegroup

```
\bibglstimegroup{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used for time group labels with time (no date) sorting (table 5.6). This command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglstimegroup}[7]{#1#2#7}
```

\bibglstimegrouptitle

```
\bibglstimegrouptitle{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used for time group titles with time (no date) sorting (table 5.6). This command is defined as:

```
\providecommand{\bibglstimegrouptitle}[7]{#1}
```

\bibglstsetunicodegrouptitle

```
\bibglstsetunicodegrouptitle{<label>}{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

This command is used to assign the group titles when the group formation is set to any value other than the default. For example, this command will be used with `group-formation={codepoint}`. The label is obtained from `\bibglstunicodegroup` and the title is obtained from `\bibglstunicodegrouptitle`.

\bibglstunicodegroup

```
\bibglstunicodegroup{<label>}{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

The `<label>` depends on the `group-formation` setting:

- `group-formation={codepoint}`: the $\langle label \rangle$ is the Unicode value of $\langle character \rangle$ (converted to lower case and decomposed, if applicable);
- `group-formation={unicode category}`: the $\langle label \rangle$ is the Unicode category of $\langle character \rangle$ (for example, Lu means an upper case letter);
- `group-formation={unicode script}`: the $\langle label \rangle$ is the Unicode script associated with $\langle character \rangle$ (for example, LATIN);
- `group-formation={unicode category and script}`: the $\langle label \rangle$ identifies both the Unicode category and script associated with $\langle character \rangle$ (for example, Lu.LATIN).

(Similarly for `secondary-group-formation` and `dual-group-formation`.) By default this command expands to $\langle type \rangle \langle label \rangle$.

The $\langle character \rangle$ is the first significant character of the sort value. The $\langle id \rangle$ is the hexadecimal code of (possibly decomposed) $\langle character \rangle$. The case of codepoint $\langle id \rangle$ may or may not correspond to the case of $\langle character \rangle$.

For example, with `group-formation={codepoint}`, an unset `type` and a sort value of “Ångström” with “Å” as a significant character distinct from “A” then the `group` field will be assigned using:

```
group={\bibglsunicodegroup{å}{Å}{C5}{}}
```

whereas with `group-formation={unicode category and script}` it will be:

```
group={\bibglsunicodegroup{Lu.LATIN}{Å}{C5}{}}
```

(upper case Latin letter).

If instead “Å” is considered equivalent to “A” according to the collator, then with `group-formation={codepoint}`, the value will be:

```
group={\bibglsunicodegroup{a}{Å}{61}{}}
```

Note that the $\langle id \rangle$ is now 0x61 (the decomposed “A” converted to lower case) not 0xC5.

`\bibglsunicodegrouptitle`

```
\bibglsunicodegrouptitle{<label>}{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}
```

The title for Unicode group formations is simply defined as `\unexpanded{<label>}` so you will need to change it to something more appropriate. For example (before the resource set):

```
\newcommand{\bibglsunicodegrouptitle}[4]{%
  \ifnum"#3>64
  \ifnum"#3 < 91
    A--Z%
  \else
```

```

\ifnum"#3 > 96
  \ifnum"#3 < 123
    A--Z%
  \fi
\fi
\fi
\fi
\fi
}

```

This will make the title “A–Z” if $\langle id \rangle$ is greater than 64 and less than 91 or greater than 96 and less than 123 (and will be empty otherwise).

Note that this setting can create an odd effect if the sorting causes the groups to be split up. For example, if some of the sort values start with extended or non-Latin characters this can break up the groups. First check how the group labels are assigned using:

```
\newcommand{\bibglsunicodetitle}{\bibglsunicodetitle}
```

then adjust the definition of `\bibglsunicodetitle` until the grouping is correct, and then change the definition of `\bibglsunicodetitle` so that the title is correct.

`\bibglshypergroup`

```
\bibglshypergroup{\type}{\group-id}
```

If the `.log` file indicates that `hyperref` has been loaded and the `--group` switch is used, then this command will be used to create the navigation information for glossary styles such as `indexhypergroup`.

6.4 Flattened Entries

These commands relate to the way the `name` field is altered when flattening lonely child entries with the `flatten-lonely` option.

`\bibglsflattenedhomograph`

```
\bibglsflattenedhomograph{\name}{\parent label}
```

The default definition simply does $\langle name \rangle$.

This command is used if the child and parent name’s are identical. For example, suppose the `.bib` file contains:

```
@index{super.glossary, name={glossary}}
```

```
@entry{glossarycol,
```

```
parent={super.glossary},
description={collection of glosses}
}
```

```
@entry{glossarylist,
parent={super.glossary},
description={list of technical words}
}
```

The child entries don't have a `name` field, so the value is assumed to be the same as the parent's `name` field. Here's an example document where both child entries are used:

```
\documentclass{article}

\usepackage[record,subentrycounter,style={treenoname}]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[src={entries}]

\begin{document}
\gls{glossarycol} (collection) vs \gls{glossarylist} (list).

\printunsrtglossary
\end{document}
```

This uses one of the glossary styles designed for homographs and the glossary has the structure:

```
glossary
  1) collection of glosses 1
  2) list of technical words 1
```

If only one child entry is selected, then the result looks a little odd. For example:

```
glossary
  1) collection of glosses 1
```

With the `flatten-lonely` option, the parent is removed and the child is moved up a hierarchical level. With `flatten-lonely={postsort}` this would normally adjust the name so that it appears as $\langle parent\ name \rangle$, $\langle child\ name \rangle$ but in this case it would look a little odd for the name to appear as “glossary, glossary” so instead the name is set to:

```
\bibglsflattenedhomograph{glossary}{super.glossary}
```

(where the first argument is the original name and the second argument is the label of the parent entry).

This means that the name simply appears as “glossary”, even if the `flatten-lonely={postsort}` option is used. Note that if the parent entry is removed, the parent label won't be of much use. You can test for existence using `\ifglsentryexists` in case you want to vary the way the name is displayed according to whether or not the parent is still present.

\bibglsflattenedchildpresort

```
\bibglsflattenedchildpresort{<child name>}{<parent name>}
```

Used by the `flatten-lonely={presort}` option. This defaults to just `<child name>`. If you want to change this, remember that you can let the interpreter know by adding the definition to `@preamble`. For example:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\bibglsflattenedchildpresort}[2]{#1 (#2)}"}
```

\bibglsflattenedchildpostsort

```
\bibglsflattenedchildpostsort{<parent name>}{<child name>}
```

Used by the `flatten-lonely={postsort}` option. This defaults to `<parent name>`, `<child name>`.

Note that the arguments are in the reverse order to those of the previous command. This is done to assist the automated first letter upper-casing. If either command is redefined to alter the ordering, then this can confuse the case-changing mechanism, in which case you may want to consider switching on the expansion of the `name` field using:

```
\glssetexpandfield{name}
```

(before `\GlsXtrLoadResources`).

6.5 Other

\bibgls hyperlink

```
\bibgls hyperlink{<text>}{<label>}
```

Used by the back link options, this just defaults to:

```
\gls hyperlink[<text>]{<label>}
```

\bibglssetwidest

```
\bibglssetwidest{<level>}{<name>}
```

This is used by `set-widest` to set the widest name for the given hierarchical level where the glossary type can't be determined. This is defined as:

```
\providecommand*{\bibglssetwidest}[2]{\glsxtrSetWidest}{#1}{#2}
```

if `\glsxtrSetWidest` has been defined, or:

```
\providecommand*\bibglssetwidest}[2]{\glsupdatewidest[#1]{#2}}
```

if `\glsupdatewidest` is defined, otherwise it will be defined to use `\glssetwidest`:

```
\providecommand*\bibglssetwidest}[2]{\glssetwidest[#1]{#2}}
```

Since this isn't scoped, this will affect other glossaries. In general, if you have more than one glossary it's best to set the `type` using options like `type`.

`\bibglssetwidestfortype`

```
\bibglssetwidestfortype{<type>}{<level>}{<name>}
```

This is used by `set-widest` to set the widest name for the given hierarchical level where the glossary type is known. This is defined as:

```
\providecommand*\bibglssetwidestfortype}[3]{%
  \glsxtrSetWidest{#1}{#2}{#3}%
}
```

if `\glsxtrSetWidest` has been defined, or:

```
\providecommand*\bibglssetwidestfortype}[3]{%
  \apptoglossary preamble[#1]{\glsupdatewidest[#2]{#3}}%
}
```

if `\glsupdatewidest` is defined, otherwise it will be defined to use `\glssetwidest`:

```
\providecommand*\bibglssetwidestfortype}[3]{%
  \apptoglossary preamble[#1]{\glssetwidest[#2]{#3}}%
}
```

Since the glossary preamble is scoped, this won't affect other glossaries.

`\bibglssetwidestfallback`

```
\bibglssetwidestfallback{<glossary list>}
```

This is used by `set-widest` instead of `\bibglssetwidest` when all `name` fields end up as an empty string when interpreted by `bib2gls`. This typically means that all the `name` fields contain unknown commands. This fallback command will use:

```
\glsxtrSetWidestFallback{2}{<glossary list>}
```

if defined otherwise it will use `\glsFindWidestLevelTwo`, which sets the widest name for the top-level and first two sub-levels across all the listed glossaries.

\bibglssetwidestfortypefallback

```
\bibglssetwidestfortypefallback{<type>}
```

This is used by `set-widest` instead of `\bibglssetwidestfortype` when all `name` fields end up as an empty string when interpreted by `bib2gls`. This typically means that all the `name` fields contain unknown commands. This fallback command will append `\bibglssetwidestfallback` to the glossary preamble for the given type.

\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfallback

```
\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfallback{<glossary list>}
```

This is used by `set-widest` instead of `\bibglssetwidest` when all `name` fields end up as an empty string when interpreted by `bib2gls`. This typically means that all the `name` fields contain unknown commands. This fallback command will use:

```
\glxtrSetWidestFallback{0}{<glossary list>}
```

if defined otherwise it will use `\glsFindWidestTopLevelName`, which sets the widest name for the top-level.

\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfortypefallback

```
\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfortypefallback{<type>}
```

This is used by `set-widest` instead of `\bibglssetwidestfortype` when all `name` fields end up as an empty string when interpreted by `bib2gls`. This typically means that all the `name` fields contain unknown commands. This fallback command will append `\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfallback` to the glossary preamble of the given type.

\bibglscontributorlist

```
\bibglscontributorlist{<list>}{<number>}
```

This is used when `bibtex-contributor-fields` is set. The definition depends on whether or not `\DTLformatlist` has been defined:

```
\ifdef\DTLformatlist
{% datatool v2.28+
  \providecommand*\bibglscontributorlist}[2]{\DTLformatlist{#1}}
}
{% datatool v2.27 or earlier
  \providecommand*\bibglscontributorlist}[2]{%
```

```

\def\bibgls@sep{ }%
\@for\bibgls@item:=#1\do{\bibgls@sep\bibgls@item\def\bibgls@sep{, }}%
}
}

```

The second argument allows you to provide definitions like:

```

\newcommand*{\bibglscontributorlist}[2]{%
\ifcase#2
\or
name:
\else
names:
\fi
\DTLformatlist{#1}%
}

```

\bibglscontributor

```
\bibglscontributor{\langle forenames \rangle}{\langle von-part \rangle}{\langle surname \rangle}{\langle suffix \rangle}
```

This is used when `bibtex-contributor-fields` is set. The definition depends on the value of `contributor-order`. Note that if you have multiple resource sets, that option governs the way `bib2gls`'s version of `\bibglscontributor` behaves. The definition is written to the `.glstex` using `\providecommand`, so \LaTeX will only pick up the first definition.

\bibglsprimaryprefixlabel

```
\bibglsprimaryprefixlabel{\langle prefix \rangle}
```

A hook to pick up the primary prefix label (identified with `label-prefix`) if required. This does nothing by default. If required, this command should be defined before the resource set is loaded.

\bibglsdualprefixlabel

```
\bibglsdualprefixlabel{\langle prefix \rangle}
```

A hook to pick up the dual prefix label (identified with `dual-prefix`) if required. This does nothing by default. If required, this command should be defined before the resource set is loaded.

\bibglstertiaryprefixlabel

```
\bibglstertiaryprefixlabel{⟨prefix⟩}
```

A hook to pick up the tertiary prefix label (identified with `tertiary-prefix`) if required. This does nothing by default. If required, this command should be defined before the resource set is loaded.

\bibglsexternalprefixlabel

```
\bibglsexternalprefixlabel{⟨n⟩}{⟨prefix⟩}
```

A hook to pick up the $\langle n \rangle$ th external prefix label (identified with `ext-prefixes`) if required. This does nothing by default and won't be used if the list of external prefixes is empty. If required, this command should be defined before the resource set is loaded.

\bibglshashchar

```
\bibglshashchar
```

Expands to a literal hash character (`#`).

\bibglunderscorechar

```
\bibglunderscorechar
```

Expands to a literal underscore character (`_`).

\bibglsdollarchar

```
\bibglsdollarchar
```

Expands to a literal dollar character (`$`).

\bibglsampersandchar

```
\bibglsampersandchar
```

Expands to a literal ampersand character (`&`).

\bibglscircumchar

```
\bibglscircumchar
```

Expands to a literal circumflex character (^).

\bibglsuppercase

```
\bibglsuppercase{<text>}
```

Converts *<text>* to upper case. This just uses `\MakeTextUppercase` by default.

\bibglslowercase

```
\bibglslowercase{<text>}
```

Converts *<text>* to lower case. This just uses `\MakeTextLowercase` by default.

\bibglstitlecase

```
\bibglstitlecase{<text>}
```

Converts *<text>* to title case. This just uses `\capitalisewords` by default.

\bibglfirstuc

```
\bibglfirstuc{<text>}
```

Converts the first letter of *<text>* to upper case. This just uses `\makefirstuc` by default.

7 Converting Existing .tex to .bib

If you have already been using the `glossaries` or `glossaries-extra` package with a large file containing all your definitions using commands like `\newglossaryentry`, then you can use the supplementary tool `convertgls2bib` to convert the definitions to the `.bib` format required by `bib2gls`. The syntax is:

```
convertgls2bib [options] tex file bib file
```

where *tex file* is the `.tex` file and *bib file* is the `.bib` file. This application is less secure than `bib2gls` as it doesn't use `kpsewhich` to check `openin_any` and `openout_any`. Take care not to accidentally overwrite existing `.bib` files as there's no check to determine if *bib file* already exists.

The *options* are:

- `--texenc` *encoding* The character encoding of the `.tex` file. If omitted, the operating system's default encoding is assumed (or the JVM's).
- `--bibenc` *encoding* The character encoding of the `.bib` file. If omitted, the same encoding as the `.tex` file is assumed.
- `--space-sub` *replacement* The `.bib` format doesn't allow spaces in labels. If your original definitions in your `.tex` file have spaces, use this option to replace spaces in labels. Each space will be substituted with *replacement*. The cross-referencing fields, `see`, `seealso` and `alias`, will also be adjusted, but any references using `\gls` etc will have to be substituted manually (or use a global search and replace in your text editor). If you want to strip the spaces, use an empty string for *replacement*. You'll need to delimit this according to your operating system. For example:

```
convertgls2bib --space-sub ' ' entries.tex entries.bib
```

- `--ignore-sort` Ignore the `sort` field. This is the default since `bib2gls` can work out a more intuitive sort value than either `makeindex` or `xindy`.
- `--no-ignore-sort` Don't ignore the `sort` field.
- `--silent` Suppress all messages except for errors.
- `--verbose` Display messages and warnings (default).
- `--debug` Display debugging messages (stack traces and other information in addition to `--verbose`).

`--help` or `-h` Display help message and quit.

`--version` or `-v` Display version information and quit.

This application recognises the commands listed below. Avoid any overly complicated code within the .tex file. The \TeX parser library isn't a \TeX engine! The .tex file doesn't need to be a complete document, but if you want certain commands recognised from packages that the \TeX parser library supports, you'll need to include `\usepackage` in the .tex file. In all cases below, if $\langle key=value list \rangle$ contains:

```
see={[\seealsoname] \langle label(s) \rangle}
```

this will be substituted with:

```
seealso={\langle label(s) \rangle}
```

For example:

```
\newterm[see={[\seealsoname]goose}]{duck}
```

will be written as:

```
@index{duck,
  seealso = {goose}
}
```

Additionally, if $\langle key=value list \rangle$ contains:

```
type={\glsdefaulttype}
```

then this field will be ignored. (This `type` value is recommended in $\langle key=value list \rangle$ when loading files with `\loadglsentries[\langle type \rangle]{\langle file \rangle}` to allow the optional argument to set the `type`. With `bib2gls` you can use the `type` option instead.)

7.1 `\glsexpandfields`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\glsexpandfields
```

If present, this instructs `convertgls2bib` to expand all fields except for those explicitly identified by `\glssetnoexpandfield`. Remember that there are many commands that aren't recognised by `convertgls2bib` so it may not be possible to correctly expand field values. Conversely, there are some commands that will be expanded by `convertgls2bib` that aren't expandable in \TeX (such as `\MakeUppercase` and `\char`).

7.2 `\glsnoexpandfields`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\glsnoexpandfields
```

If present, this instructs `convertgls2bib` to not expand fields unless explicitly identified by `\glssetexpandfield`.

7.3 `\glssetexpandfield`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\glssetexpandfield{<field>}
```

If present, this instructs `convertgls2bib` to expand the given field, even if `\glsnoexpandfields` has been used.

7.4 `\glssetnoexpandfield`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\glssetnoexpandfield{<field>}
```

If present, this instructs `convertgls2bib` to not expand the given field, even if `\glsexpandfields` has been used. Unlike the default behaviour with the glossaries package, there are no fields switched explicitly switched off by default with `convertgls2bib`.

7.5 `\newglossaryentry`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\newglossaryentry{<label>}{<key=value list>}
```

This is converted to:

```
@entry{<label>,
  <key=value list>
}
```

`\newentry` is recognised as a synonym of `\newglossaryentry`.

7.6 `\provideglossaryentry`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\provideglossaryentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}
```

This is converted to:

```
@entry{⟨label⟩,  
  ⟨key=value list⟩  
}
```

but only if `⟨label⟩` hasn't already been defined.

7.7 `\longnewglossaryentry`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\longnewglossaryentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}{⟨description⟩}
```

This is converted to:

```
@entry{⟨label⟩,  
  ⟨key=value list⟩,  
  description = {⟨description⟩}  
}
```

The starred version provided by the `glossaries-extra` package is also recognised. The unstarred version strips trailing spaces from `⟨description⟩`. (This doesn't add `\nopostdesc`, but `glossaries-extra` defaults to `nopostdot`.)

7.8 `\longprovideglossaryentry`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\longprovideglossaryentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}{⟨description⟩}
```

As above, but only if `⟨label⟩` hasn't already been defined.

7.9 `\newterm`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\newterm[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}
```

(when the `index` option is used). This is converted to:

```
@index{<label>,
  <key=value list>
}
```

if the optional argument is present, otherwise it's just converted to:

```
@index{<label>}
```

If `--space-sub` is used and `<label>` contains one or more spaces, then `name` will be set if not included in `<key=value list>`. For example, if `entries.bib` contains:

```
\newterm{sea lion}
\newterm[seealso={sea lion}]{seal}
```

then:

```
convertgls2bib --space-sub '-' entries.bib entries.tex
```

will write the terms to `entries.tex` as:

```
@index{sea-lion,
  name = {sea lion}
}
```

```
@index{seal,
  seealso = {sea-lion}
}
```

whereas just:

```
convertgls2bib entries.bib entries.tex
```

will write the terms to `entries.tex` as:

```
@index{sea lion}
```

```
@index{seal,
  seealso = {sea lion}
}
```

which will cause a problem when the `.bib` file is parsed by `bib2gls` (and will probably also cause a problem for bibliographic management systems).

7.10 `\newabbreviation`

The glossaries-extra package provides:

```
\newabbreviation[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨short⟩}{⟨long⟩}
```

This is converted to:

```
@abbreviation{⟨label⟩,
  short = {⟨short⟩},
  long = {⟨long⟩},
  ⟨key=value list⟩
}
```

if the optional argument is present, otherwise it's converted to:

```
@abbreviation{⟨label⟩,
  short = {⟨short⟩},
  long = {⟨long⟩}
}
```

7.11 `\newacronym`

The base glossaries package provides:

```
\newacronym[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨short⟩}{⟨long⟩}
```

(which is redefined by glossaries-extra to use `\newabbreviation`).

As above but uses `@acronym` instead.

7.12 `\glsxtrnewsymbol`

The glossaries-extra package provides:

```
\glsxtrnewsymbol[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨symbol⟩}
```

(when the `symbols` option is used). This is converted to:

```
@symbol{⟨label⟩,
  name = {⟨symbol⟩}
}
```

if the optional argument is missing, otherwise it's converted to:

```
@symbol{⟨label⟩,
  name = {⟨symbol⟩},
  ⟨key=value list⟩
}
```

unless $\langle key=value list \rangle$ contains the `name` field, in which case it's converted to:

```
@symbol{\langle label \rangle,
  \langle key=value list \rangle
}
```

`\newsym` is recognised as a synonym for `\glsxtrnewsymbol`.

7.13 `\glsxtrnewnumber`

The glossaries-extra package provides:

```
\glsxtrnewnumber[\langle key=value list \rangle]{\langle label \rangle}
```

(when the `numbers` option is used). This is converted to:

```
@number{\langle label \rangle,
  name = {\langle label \rangle}
}
```

if the optional argument is missing, otherwise it's converted to:

```
@number{\langle label \rangle,
  name = {\langle label \rangle},
  \langle key=value list \rangle
}
```

if `name` isn't listed in $\langle key=value list \rangle$, otherwise it's converted to:

```
@number{\langle label \rangle,
  \langle key=value list \rangle
}
```

`\newnum` is recognised as a synonym for `\glsxtrnewnumber`.

7.14 `\newdualentry`

```
\newdualentry[\langle key=value list \rangle]{\langle label \rangle}{\langle short \rangle}{\langle long \rangle}{\langle description \rangle}
```

This command isn't provided by either glossaries or glossaries-extra but is used as an example in the glossaries user manual [14] and in the sample file `sample-dual.tex` that accompanies the glossaries package. Since this command seems to be used quite a bit (given the number of times it crops up on sites like T_EX on StackExchange), `convertgls2bib` also supports it unless this command is defined using `\newcommand` or `\renewcommand` in the input file. In which case the default definition will be overridden.

If the command definition isn't overridden, then it's converted to:

```
@dualabbreviationentry{<label>,
  short = {<short>},
  long = {<long>},
  description = {<description>},
  <key=value list>
}
```

if `<key=value list>` is supplied, otherwise it's converted to:

```
@dualabbreviationentry{<label>,
  short = {<short>},
  long = {<long>},
  description = {<description>}
}
```

For example, if the original .tex file contains:

```
\newcommand*{\newdualentry}[5] [] {%
  \newglossaryentry{main-#2}{name={#4},%
    text={#3\glsadd{#2}},%
    description={#5},%
    #1
  }%
  \newacronym{#2}{#3\glsadd{main-#2}}{#4}%
}
```

```
\newdualentry{svm}% label
  {SVM}% abbreviation
  {support vector machine}% long form
  {Statistical pattern recognition technique}% description
```

then the .bib file will contain:

```
@entry{main-svm,
  name = {support vector machine},
  description = {Statistical pattern recognition technique},
  text = {SVM\glsadd{svm}}
}
```

```
@acronym{svm,
  short = {SVM\glsadd{main-svm}},
  long = {support vector machine}
}
```

since `\newdualentry` was defined with `\newcommand`. However, if the original file uses `\providecommand` or omits the definition of `\newdualentry`, then the .bib file will contain:

7 Converting Existing .tex to .bib

```
@dualabbreviationentry{svm,  
  short = {SVM},  
  description = {Statistical pattern recognition technique},  
  long = {support vector machine}  
}
```

8 Examples

The example files described here can be found in the `examples` sub-directory. The `.bib` files are listed first and then sample files that use the `.bib` data. Make sure you have the latest versions of `glossaries`, `mfirstuc`, `glossaries-extra` and `bib2gls` if you want to try these out. (The `sample-media.tex` file requires at least `datatool v2.28`.) If you get any undefined control sequence or undefined style errors then you need to update your \TeX distribution. Use the `--group` switch when invoking `bib2gls` for all these examples if you want the glossaries divided into groups. The set of system calls for the document build in the examples below may require an extra \TeX run to ensure the PDF bookmarks are up-to-date when `hyperref` is used.

These files are just examples of how to use `bib2gls`. There are other ways of defining similar entries and sometimes alternatives are suggested. Use the code here as a starting point if you need data like this and adapt it to a format appropriate for your requirements.

`no-interpret-preamble.bib`

The `no-interpret-preamble.bib` file contains command definitions used in some of the `name` fields. Although these commands aren't used explicitly in the document, they need to be defined when the names are displayed in the document (typically in the glossary). These commands are much like the `\sortop` command described on 178 and need to be hidden from `bib2gls`'s interpreter. This file doesn't contain any entry definitions and must be loaded first with `interpret-preamble={false}`. The `interpret-preamble.bib` or `interpret-preamble2.bib` file can then be loaded to provide alternative definitions for `bib2gls`'s interpreter.

The first command is:

```
\sortname{⟨first name(s)⟩}{⟨surname⟩}
```

This is used in the `name` fields for entries containing information about a person. The aim here is for `bib2gls` to sort according to `⟨surname⟩`, `⟨first name(s)⟩` but for the glossary to display `⟨first name(s)⟩ ⟨surname⟩`. For names with a “von” part, there's another command:

```
\sortvonname{⟨first name(s)⟩}{⟨von⟩}{⟨surname⟩}
```

which has a similar purpose. The third command is:

```
\sortart{⟨article⟩}{⟨text⟩}
```

This is the same as `\sortname` but is designed for titles, phrases or sentences that start with an article (such as “a” or “the”). Although it has the same definition as `\sortname` in this file, in the interpreted files the article part is omitted to completely ignore them in the sorting. The fourth command is:

```
\sortmediacreator{\langle first name(s)\rangle}{\langle surname\rangle}
```

which again is functionally the same as `\sortname`.

The names could be specified using \TeX 's syntax instead with `bibtex-contributor-fields` to convert it, but the aim here is to show a variety of ways to use `bib2gls`. For an example of `bibtex-contributor-fields`, see the way the `cast` field in `films.bib` is dealt with.

Although the file only contains ASCII characters, it starts with an encoding line to prevent `bib2gls` from searching the entire file for it. (That's not so much of an issue with a short file, but may cause an unnecessary delay for much longer files.)

The contents of `no-interpret-preamble.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

@preamble{"\providecommand{\sortname}[2]{#1 #2}
\providecommand{\sortvonname}[3]{#1 #2 #3}
\providecommand{\sortart}[2]{#1 #2}
\providecommand{\sortmediacreator}[2]{#1 #2}"}
```

interpret-preamble.bib

This provides definitions of `\sortname`, `\sortvonname`, `\sortart` and `\sortmediacreator` in `@preamble` that can be picked up by the interpreter and used during sorting. Note that in this case `\sortart` is defined to ignore the article to completely ignore it from sorting. If you happen to have “a *⟨something⟩*” and “the *⟨something⟩*” where the *⟨something⟩*s are identical, you may want to append the article to disambiguate them.

The contents of `interpret-preamble.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

@preamble{"\providecommand{\sortname}[2]{#2, #1}
\providecommand{\sortvonname}[3]{#2 #3, #1}
\providecommand{\sortart}[2]{#2}
\providecommand{\sortmediacreator}[2]{#2, #1}"}
```

interpret-preamble2.bib

An alternative to `interpret-preamble.bib` with a different definition of `\sortmediacreator`. This uses `\renewcommand` instead of `\providecommand` so `write-preamble={false}` is required to prevent \TeX from picking up the definitions.

The contents of `interpret-preamble2.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

@preamble{"\providecommand{\sortname}[2]{#2, #1}
\providecommand{\sortvonname}[3]{#2 #3, #1}
\providecommand{\sortart}[2]{#2}
\renewcommand{\sortmediacreator}[2]{\MakeLowercase{#2}}"}

```

constants.bib

The `constants.bib` file contains mathematical constants. These all use a custom entry type `@constant`, which must be aliased otherwise the entries will all be ignored. The entries all have custom fields, which also need to be aliased. For example:

```
entry-type-aliases={constant=entry},
field-aliases={
  constantname=name,
  constantsymbol=symbol,
  definition=description,
  identifier=category,
  value=user1
}

```

This setting means that, for example,

```
@constant{root2,
  constantname={Pythagoras' constant},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\surd2}},
  definition={the square root of 2},
  value={1.41421},
  identifier={constant}
}

```

is treated as though it was defined as:

```
@entry{root2,
  name={Pythagoras' constant},
  symbol={\ensuremath{\surd2}},
  description={the square root of 2},
  user1={1.41421},
  category={constant}
}

```

This use of custom fields and entry types allows more flexibility. For example, I may have another document that uses the same `.bib` file but requires a different definition:

```
@number{root2,
  description={Pythagoras' constant},
  name={\ensuremath{\surd2}}
}
```

which can be obtained with:

```
entry-type-aliases={constant=number},
field-aliases={
  constantname=description,
  constantsymbol=name
}
```

Since the other custom fields haven't be aliased, they're ignored.

The custom fields are: `identifier` (set to `constant` for all the entries), `constantname` (the constant's name), `definition` (a definition of the constant), `value` (the approximate numeric value of the constant), `constantsymbol` (the symbolic representation of the constant) and `alternative` (alternative symbol). There are three entries that don't have the custom `value` field: zero and one (the exact value is in the `constantsymbol` field in both cases) and imaginary (where there's no real number value).

I've provided some commands in the `@preamble` for constants that are represented by Latin and Greek letters. These can be defined in the document before the resource set if different notation is required. The upright Greek commands require the `upgreek` package.

If it's likely that there may be a need to sort according to `definition`, then it would be better to use `\sortart` describe above:

```
@constant{root2,
  constantname={Pythagoras' constant},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\surd2}},
  definition={\sortart{the}{square root of 2}},
  value={1.41421},
  identifier={constant}
}
```

Remember that this would need `no-interpret-preamble.bib` to ensure the command is recognised in the document.

The contents of `constants.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

% Requires upgreek.sty

@preamble{"\providecommand{\constanti}{\mathrm{i}}
\providecommand{\constantj}{\mathrm{j}}
\providecommand{\constante}{\mathrm{e}}
\providecommand{\constantpi}{\uppi}
\providecommand{\constantgamma}{\upgamma}}
```

8 Examples

```
\providecommand{\constantphi}{\upphi}
\providecommand{\constantlambda}{\uplambda}"

@constant{pi,
  constantname={pi},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\constantpi}},
  definition={the ratio of the length of the circumference
    of a circle to its diameter},
  value={3.14159},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{eulerconst,
  constantname={Euler's constant},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\constantgamma}},
  definition={the limit of  $[\sum_{r=1}^n \frac{1}{r} - \ln n]$ 
    as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ },
  value={0.57721},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{e,
  constantname={Euler's number},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\constante}},
  definition={base of natural logarithms},
  value={2.71828},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{root2,
  constantname={Pythagoras' constant},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\surd2}},
  definition={the square root of 2},
  value={1.41421},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{goldenratio,
  constantname={golden ratio},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\constantphi}},
  definition={the ratio  $\frac{1+\surd5}{2}$ },
  value={1.61803},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{aperysconstant,
```

8 Examples

```
constantname={Ap\ 'ery's constant},
constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\zeta(3)}},
definition={a special value of the Riemann zeta function},
value={1.2020569},
identifier={constant}
}

@constant{conwaysconstant,
  constantname={Conway's constant},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\constantlambda}},
  definition={the invariant growth rate of all derived strings},
  value={1.30357},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{zero,
  constantname={zero},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{0}},
  definition={nothing or nil},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{one,
  constantname={one},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{1}},
  definition={single entity, unity},
  identifier={constant}
}

@constant{imaginary,
  constantname={imaginary unit},
  constantsymbol={\ensuremath{\constanti}},
  definition={defined as  $\constanti^2 = -1$ },
  identifier={constant},
  alternative={\ensuremath{\constantj}}
}
```

chemicalformula.bib

The `chemicalformula.bib` file contains chemical formulae. Each entry has a field that uses `\ce` provided by `mhchem` so the document will need to load that package. Since all resource files must be loaded in the preamble, it's possible to ensure that the package is loaded using:

```
@preamble{"\usepackage{mhchem}"}
```

However, it's best just to load it in the document otherwise it won't be available before the

8 Examples

.glstex file has been loaded. Also, glossaries (and therefore glossaries-extra) must be loaded after hyperref, which usually needs to be loaded last so most packages should be loaded before glossaries-extra. Instead, I've just put a comment in the .bib file as a reminder.

All entries are defined using a custom entry type `@chemical`. This must be aliased using `entry-type-aliases` or the entries will be ignored. For example, to make `@chemical` behave like `@symbol`:

```
entry-type-aliases={chemical=symbol}
```

Remember that with the `@symbol` type, if the `sort` field is omitted `bib2gls` will fallback on the label by default. It can be changed to fallback on the `name` field instead using `symbol-sort-fallback={name}`. This will require the use of the interpreter if the name contains a command but `bib2gls` recognises the `mhchem` package and has a limited ability to interpret `\ce`. If `@chemical` is changed to `@entry` instead then the fallback for the `sort` will be the entry's `name`.

All entries only contain custom fields, which will all be ignored by `bib2gls` unless defined or aliased: `identifier`, which is set to `chemical` for all entries, `formula`, which is set to the chemical formula, and `chemicalname`, which is set to the chemical name. This allows the flexibility of determining whether the `name` or `symbol` field should contain the chemical formula on a per-resource basis. For example:

```
field-aliases={formula=name,chemicalname=description}
```

or

```
field-aliases={chemicalname=name,formula=symbol}
```

The contents of `chemicalformula.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

% requires mhchem.sty

@chemical{H2O,
  formula={\ce{H2O}},
  chemicalname={water},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{Al2SO43,
  formula={\ce{Al2(SO4)3}},
  chemicalname={aluminium sulfate},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{CH3CH2OH,
  formula={\ce{CH3CH2OH}},
  chemicalname={ethanol},
```

8 Examples

```
    identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{C6H12O6,
  formula={\ce{C6H12O6}},
  chemicalname={glucose},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{CH2O,
  formula={\ce{CH2O}},
  chemicalname={formaldehyde},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{H3O+,
  formula={\ce{H3O+}},
  chemicalname={hydronium},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{SO42-,
  formula={\ce{SO4^{2-}}},
  chemicalname={sulfate},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{O2,
  formula={\ce{O2}},
  chemicalname={dioxygen},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{O,
  formula={\ce{O}},
  chemicalname={oxygen},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{OF2,
  formula={\ce{OF2}},
  chemicalname={oxygen difluoride},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{O2F2,
```

8 Examples

```
    formula={\ce{O2F2}},
    chemicalname={dioxygen difluoride},
    identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{OH-,
  formula={\ce{OH-}},
  chemicalname={hydroxide ion},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{AlF3,
  formula={\ce{AlF3}},
  chemicalname={aluminium trifluoride},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{Al2Co04,
  formula={\ce{Al2Co04}},
  chemicalname={cobalt blue},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{As4S4,
  formula={\ce{As4S4}},
  chemicalname={tetraarsenic tetrasulfide},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{C5H4NCOOH,
  formula={\ce{C5H4NCOOH}},
  chemicalname={niacin},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{C10H10O4,
  formula={\ce{C10H10O4}},
  chemicalname={ferulic acid},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{C8H10N4O2,
  formula={\ce{C8H10N4O2}},
  chemicalname={caffeine},
  identifier={chemical}
}
```

```

@chemical{SO2,
  formula={\ce{SO2}},
  chemicalname={sulfur dioxide},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{S2O7^2-,
  formula={\ce{S2O7^{2-}}},
  chemicalname={disulfate ion},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{SbBr3,
  formula={\ce{SbBr3}},
  chemicalname={antimony(III) bromide},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{Sc2O3,
  formula={\ce{Sc2O3}},
  chemicalname={scandium oxide},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{Zr3PO4,
  formula={\ce{Zr3(PO4)4}},
  chemicalname={zirconium phosphate},
  identifier={chemical}
}

@chemical{ZnF2,
  formula={\ce{ZnF2}},
  chemicalname={zinc fluoride},
  identifier={chemical}
}

```

bacteria.bib

The `bacteria.bib` file contains bacteria abbreviations. These all use the `@abbreviation` entry type with a `short` and `long` field.

The entries all have a custom field `identifier` set to `bacteria`. This will be ignored by `bib2gls` unless it's defined using `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey` or if it's aliased with `field-aliases`.

The contents of `bacteria.bib` are as follows:

8 Examples

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

@abbreviation{cbotulinum,
  short={C.~botulinum},
  long={Clostridium botulinum},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{pputida,
  short={P.~putida},
  long={Pseudomonas putida},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{cperfringens,
  short={C.~perfringens},
  long={Clostridium perfringens},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{bsubtilis,
  short={B.~subtilis},
  long={Bacillus subtilis},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{ctetani,
  short={C.~tetani},
  long={Clostridium tetani},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{pcomposti,
  short={P.~composti},
  long={Planifilum composti},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{pfimeticola,
  short={P.~fimeticola},
  long={Planifilum fimeticola},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{cburnetii,
  short={C.~burnetii},
```

```

    long={Coxiella burnetii},
    identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{raustralis,
  short={R.~australis},
  long={Rickettsia australis},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

@abbreviation{rrickettsii,
  short={R.~rickettsii},
  long={Rickettsia rickettsii},
  identifier={bacteria}
}

```

baseunits.bib

The `baseunits.bib` file contains base SI units. The entries are all defined using the custom `@unit` entry type. This must be aliased with `entry-type-aliases` otherwise `bib2gls` will ignore all the entries. For example:

```
entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol}
```

will make `bib2gls` treat the entries as though they were defined using `@symbol`. (Remember that `@symbol` entry types use the label as the fallback field for `sort`.)

The entries all have custom fields `unitname`, `unitsymbol` and `measurement`, one of which must be aliased or copied to `name` if `@unit` is aliased to an entry type that requires it. The other custom fields may be aliased or copied to `symbol` and `description` as required. The `unitsymbol` fields all use `\si` provided by the `siunitx` package, so that package must be loaded in the document. This is one of the small number of packages recognised by `bib2gls`, so it's possible to sort according to the symbol if required.

The entries also all have a custom field `identifier` set to `baseunit`. This will be ignored by `bib2gls` unless it's defined using `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey` or if it's aliased with `field-aliases`.

The contents of `baseunits.bib` are as follows:

```

% Encoding: UTF-8

% requires siunix.sty

@unit{ampere,
  unitname={ampere},
  unitsymbol={\si{\ampere}},
  measurement={electric current},
  identifier={baseunit}
}

```

8 Examples

```
}

@unit{kilogram,
  unitname={kilogram},
  unitsymbol={\si{kilogram}},
  measurement={mass},
  identifier={baseunit}
}

@unit{metre,
  unitname={metre},
  unitsymbol={\si{metre}},
  measurement={length},
  identifier={baseunit}
}

@unit{second,
  unitname={second},
  unitsymbol={\si{second}},
  measurement={time},
  identifier={baseunit}
}

@unit{kelvin,
  unitname={kelvin},
  unitsymbol={\si{kelvin}},
  measurement={thermodynamic temperature},
  identifier={baseunit}
}

@unit{mole,
  unitname={mole},
  unitsymbol={\si{mole}},
  measurement={amount of substance},
  identifier={baseunit}
}

@unit{candela,
  unitname={candela},
  unitsymbol={\si{candela}},
  measurement={luminous intensity},
  identifier={baseunit}
}
```

derivedunits.bib

The `derivedunits.bib` file is much like `baseunits.bib` but contains derived units and in this case the custom entry type is `@measurement`, which must be aliased otherwise the entries will all be ignored. The entries all have a custom field `identifier` set to `derivedunit`. This will be ignored by `bib2gls` unless it's defined using `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey` or if it's aliased with `field-aliases`.

The contents of `derivedunits.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

% requires siunitx.sty

@measurement{area,
  unitname={square metre},
  unitsymbol={\si{\metre\squared}},
  measurement={area},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

@measurement{volume,
  unitname={cubic metre},
  unitsymbol={\si{\metre\cubed}},
  measurement={volume},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

@measurement{velocity,
  unitname={metre per second},
  unitsymbol={\si{\metre\per\second}},
  measurement={velocity},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

@measurement{acceleration,
  unitname={metre per second squared},
  unitsymbol={\si{\metre\per\square\second}},
  measurement={acceleration},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

@measurement{density,
  unitname={ampere per square metre},
  unitsymbol={\si{\ampere\per\square\metre}},
  measurement={density},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}
```

```

@measurement{luminance,
  unitname={candela per square metre},
  unitsymbol={\si{\candela\per\square\metre}},
  measurement={luminance},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

@measurement{specificvolume,
  unitname={cubic metre per kilogram},
  unitsymbol={\si{\cubic\metre\per\kilogram}},
  measurement={specific volume},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

@measurement{concentration,
  unitname={mole per cubic metre},
  unitsymbol={\si{\mole\per\cubic\metre}},
  measurement={concentration},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

@measurement{wavenumber,
  unitname={per metre},
  unitsymbol={\si{\per\metre}},
  measurement={wave number},
  identifier={derivedunit}
}

```

people.bib

The `people.bib` file contains details about people. The `name` fields contain custom commands provided in `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble.bib`. Remember that if `no-interpret-preamble.bib` is loaded first, the definitions provided in that file will be the one in use in the document. The `interpret-preamble.bib` file then needs to be loaded to provide the definitions for `bib2gls`'s interpreter.

The information for each person is supplied in an `@entry` type. There are some non-standard fields: `born`, `died` and `othername`. These fields will be ignored unless keys are provided (using `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey`) or the fields are aliased (using `field-aliases`). The `born` and `died` fields have dates that are *almost* in the default `en-GB` locale format with the `JRE` locale provider, but they include a tilde `~` to prevent awkward line breaks. By default `bib2gls`'s interpreter converts `~` to the non-breaking space character `0xA0` which isn't recognised by the date format. This can easily be fixed with the `--break-space` switch which will interpret `~` as a normal breakable space (`0x20`), so with that switch `sort={date}`

or `sort={date-reverse}` can be used on either of those fields. However, the CLDR has a slightly different default format than the JRE for dates with `en-GB`, so it's probably simplest to actually specify the required format.

An alternative approach would be to provide a command that can be modified in the document to adjust the date style. For example, the `born` field could be specified as:

```
born={\formatdate{13}{7}{100}{BC}}
```

The definition provided for the document could then be, for example:

```
\providecommand{\formatdate}[4]{\DTMdisplaydate{#3}{#2}{#1}{-1} #4}
```

(where `\DTMdisplaydate` is provided by the `datetime2` package) and a definition could be provided for `bib2gls`'s interpreter, for example:

```
\providecommand{\formatdate}[4]{#1/#2/#3 #4}
```

This would need the date format set. For example, `date-sort-format={d/M/y G}`.

Some of the entries, such as `caesar`, have a `first` field. In those cases the `first` field is slightly different from the `name` field (for example, "Gaius" is omitted in `caesar`'s `first` field). The other entries don't have a `first` field. They can simply have the `name` copied to `first` with the `replicate-fields` option (so that the full name is shown on first use) or the `first` field can be ignored with `ignore-fields` (so all entries will use the `text` field on first use). The `replicate-override` option can be used to force the `name` field to be copied to the `first` field, even if the `first` field is already set. Alternatively, with `replicate-override={true}` and `replicate-fields={first=name}`, the `first` field be copied to the `name` field. For consistency, the `first` fields use the same custom commands as used in the `name` field.

There's one name with a "von" part. In this case the `name` field is set to:

```
\sortvonname{Manfred}{von}{Richthofen}
```

which will come under the "V" letter group since `\sortvonname` is defined as $\langle von \rangle \langle surname \rangle, \langle first name(s) \rangle$

If you prefer that this name should come under "R" instead, then you need to adjust the definition of `\sortvonname`:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\sortname}[2]{#2, #1}
\providecommand{\sortvonname}[3]{#3, #1 #2}"}
```

An alternative approach would be to format the names using `BIBTEX`'s contributor syntax and use `bibtex-contributor-fields={name}` to convert them.

There are also some synonyms provided with `@index` entry types that have the `alias` field to redirect to the main entry. These don't include a `description` or any of the other fields as that would be redundant. All the information can be found in the main entry.

Except for the aliases, the entries have a custom field `identifier` set to `person`. This will be ignored by `bib2gls` unless it's defined using `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey` or if it's aliased with `field-aliases`.

The contents of `people.bib` are as follows:

8 Examples

% Encoding: UTF-8

```
@entry{caesar,
  name={\sortname{Gaius Julius}{Caesar}},
  first={\sortname{Julius}{Caesar}},
  text={Caesar},
  description={Roman politician and general},
  born={13~July 100 BC},
  died={15~March 44 BC},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{wellesley,
  name={\sortname{Arthur}{Wellesley}},
  text={Wellington},
  description={Anglo-Irish soldier and statesman},
  born={1~May 1769 AD},
  died={14~September 1852 AD},
  othername={1st Duke of Wellington},
  identifier={person}
}

@index{wellington,
  name={Wellington},
  alias={wellesley},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{bonaparte,
  name={\sortname{Napoleon}{Bonaparte}},
  text={Bonaparte},
  description={French military and political leader},
  born={15~July 1769 AD},
  died={5~May 1821 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{alexander,
  name={Alexander III of Macedon},
  text={Alexander},
  description={Ancient Greek king of Macedon},
  born={20~July 356 BC},
  died={10~June 323 BC},
  othername={Alexander the Great},
  identifier={person}
}
```

8 Examples

```
@index{alexanderthegreat,
  name={Alexander the Great},
  alias={alexander},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{vonrichthofen,
  name={\sortvonname{Manfred}{von}{Richthofen}},
  text={von Richthofen},
  description={Prussian ace fighter pilot in the German Air Force
    during World War~I},
  born={2~May 1892 AD},
  died={21~April 1918 AD},
  othername={The Red Baron},
  identifier={person}
}

@index{redbaron,
  name={\sortart{The}{Red Baron}},
  alias={vonrichthofen},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{dickens,
  name={\sortname{Charles}{Dickens}},
  text={Dickens},
  description={English writer and social critic},
  born={7~February 1812 AD},
  died={9~June 1870 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{chandler,
  name={\sortname{Raymond}{Chandler}},
  text={Chandler},
  description={American-British novelist and screenwriter},
  born={23~July 1888 AD},
  died={26~March 1959 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{hammett,
  name={\sortname{Samuel Dashiell}{Hammett}},
  first={\sortname{Dashiell}{Hammett}},
  text={Hammett},
```

8 Examples

```
description={American author, screenwriter and political
activist},
born={27~May 1894 AD},
died={10~January 1961 AD},
identifier={person}
}
```

```
@entry{christie,
name={\sortname{Dame Agatha Mary Clarissa}{Christie}},
first={\sortname{Agatha}{Christie}},
text={Christie},
othername={Lady Mallowan},
description={English crime novelist and playwright},
born={15~September 1890 AD},
died={12~January 1976 AD},
identifier={person}
}
```

```
@entry{landon,
name={\sortname{Christopher Guy}{Landon}},
first={\sortname{Christopher}{Landon}},
text={Landon},
description={British novelist and screenwriter},
born={29~March 1911 AD},
died={26~April 1961 AD},
identifier={person}
}
```

```
@entry{tolkien,
name={\sortname{John Ronald Reuel}{Tolkien}},
first={\sortname{J.R.R.}{Tolkien}},
text={Tolkien},
description={English writer, poet, philologist, and
university professor},
born={3~January 1892 AD},
died={2~September 1973 AD},
identifier={person}
}
```

```
@entry{baum,
name={\sortname{Lyman Frank}{Baum}},
first={\sortname{L.~Frank}{Baum}},
text={Baum},
description={American author},
born={15~May 1856 AD},
died={6~May 1919 AD},
```

8 Examples

```
    identifier={person}
}

@entry{mackenzie,
  name={\sortname{Compton}{Mackenzie}},
  text={Mackenzie},
  description={English-born Scottish writer, cultural
    commentator, raconteur and Scottish nationalist},
  born={17~January 1883 AD},
  died={30~November 1972 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{maclean,
  name={\sortname{Alistair}{MacLean}},
  text={MacLean},
  description={Scottish novelist},
  born={21~April 1922 AD},
  died={2~February 1987 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{dick,
  name={\sortname{Philip K.}{Dick}},
  text={Dick},
  description={American science fiction writer},
  born={16~December 1928 AD},
  died={2~March 1982 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{story,
  name={\sortname{Jack Trevor}{Story}},
  text={Story},
  description={British novelist},
  born={30~March 1917 AD},
  died={5~December 1991 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

@entry{greene,
  name={\sortname{Henry Graham}{Green}},
  first={\sortname{Graham}{Greene}},
  text={Green},
  description={English novelist},
  born={2~October 1904 AD},
```

```
died={3~April 1991 AD},
identifier={person}
}
```

books.bib

The `books.bib` file contains details about books. As above, the entries use custom commands provided in `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble.bib` or `interpret-preamble2.bib`. The entries all have a custom field `identifier` set to `book` and other custom fields `author` and `year`. These will be ignored by `bib2gls` unless they're defined using `\glsaddkey` or `\glsaddstoragekey` or if they're aliased with `field-aliases`.

There are other ways in which this data could be specified. For example, the `description` field could contain a brief summary (or “log line”). The `author` field could use `BBTEX`'s syntax instead with `bibtex-contributor-fields` to convert it. Alternatively, the entries could be defined using standard `BBTEX` entry types that are all aliased to `@bibtexentry`.

The contents of `books.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

@entry{ataleoftwocities,
  name={\sortart{A}{Tale of Two Cities}},
  description={novel by Charles Dickens},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Charles}{Dickens}},
  year={1859}
}

@entry{bleakhouse,
  name={Bleak House},
  description={novel by Charles Dickens},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Charles}{Dickens}},
  year={1852}
}

@entry{thebigsleep,
  name={\sortart{The}{Big Sleep}},
  description={novel by Raymond Chandler},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Raymond}{Chandler}},
  year={1939}
}

@entry{thelonggoodbye,
  name={\sortart{The}{Long Goodbye}},
```

8 Examples

```
description={novel by Raymond Chandler},
identifier={book},
author={\sortmediacreator{Raymond}{Chandler}},
year={1953}
}

@entry{redharvest,
  name={Red Harvest},
  description={novel by Dashiell Hammett},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Dashiell}{Hammett}},
  year={1929}
}

@entry{murderontheorientexpress,
  name={Murder on the Orient Express},
  description={novel by Agatha Christie},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Agatha}{Christie}},
  year={1934}
}

@entry{whydidnttheyaskevans,
  name={Why Didn't They Ask Evans?},
  description={novel by Agatha Christie},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Agatha}{Christie}},
  year={1934}
}

@entry{icecoldinalex,
  name={Ice Cold in Alex},
  description={novel by Christopher Landon},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Christopher}{Landon}},
  year={1957}
}

@entry{thehobbit,
  name={\sortart{The}{Hobbit}},
  description={novel by J.R.R. Tolkien},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{J.R.R.}{Tolkien}},
  year={1937}
}
```

8 Examples

```
@entry{thelordoftherings,
  name={\sortart{The}{Lord of the Rings}},
  description={novel by J.R.R. Tolkien},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{J.R.R.}{Tolkien}},
  year={1954}
}

@entry{thewonderfulwizardefoz,
  name={\sortart{The}{Wonderful Wizard of Oz}},
  description={novel by L. Frank Baum},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{L. Frank}{Baum}},
  year={1900}
}

@entry{whiskygalore,
  name={Whisky Galore},
  description={novel by Compton Mackenzie},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Compton}{Mackenzie}},
  year={1947}
}

@entry{whereeaglesdare,
  name={Where Eagles Dare},
  description={novel by Alistair MacLean},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Alistair}{MacLean}},
  year={1967}
}

@entry{icestationzebra,
  name={Ice Station Zebra},
  description={novel by Alistair MacLean},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Alistair}{MacLean}},
  year={1963}
}

@entry{ubik,
  name={Ubik},
  description={novel by Philip K. Dick},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Philip K.}{Dick}},
  year={1969}
}
```

```

}

@entry{doandroidsdreamofelectricsheep,
  name={Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep?},
  description={novel by Philip K. Dick},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Philip K.}{Dick}},
  year={1968}
}

@entry{thetroublewithharry,
  name={\sortart{The}{Trouble with Harry}},
  description={novel by Jack Trevor Story},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Jack Trevor}{Story}},
  year={1950}
}

@entry{brightonrock,
  name={Brighton Rock},
  description={novel by Graham Greene},
  identifier={book},
  author={\sortmediacreator{Graham}{Greene}},
  year={1938}
}

```

films.bib

The `films.bib` file contains details about films. As above, the entries use custom commands provided in `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble.bib`. The entries all have a custom field `identifier` set to `film` and other custom fields `cast`, `director` and `year`. These will be ignored by `bib2gls` unless they're defined using `\glsaddkey` or `\gls-addstoragekey` or if they're aliased with `field-aliases`.

This example file references entries defined in `books.bib` through the use of the special `ext1.` prefix. To avoid a label conflict `films.bib` prefixes all labels with `film.` rather than relying on `label-prefix`. This ensures that both `books.bib` and `films.bib` can be loaded in the same resource set (otherwise they'd have to be loaded in separate resource sets with different prefixes). Remember that you can use `\glsxtrnewgls`. For example:

```
\glsxtrnewgls{film.}{\film}
```

This means you can do, for example, just `\film{bladerunner}` if you want to reference a film without worrying about the prefix.

As with all the example files, there are other ways in which to specify the data, depending on your requirements. For example, the `director` field could use `BBTeX`'s contributor syntax

(as the `cast` field does). Some of the films actually had more than one director but only one is listed per film in this sample file for simplicity. Similarly, the `cast` field only contains the principle actors rather than the complete list. The book on which the film is based could be contained in a cross-reference field or a custom `basedon` field.

The book “Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep?” referenced at the end of the “Blade Runner” film’s `description` ends with a question mark. (Similarly for “Why Didn’t They Ask Evans?”) If the `description` field is simply set as:

```
description={a film starring Harrison Ford, Rutger Hauer
and Sean Young loosely based on the novel
\gls{ext1.doandroidsdreamofelectricssheep}},
```

then the `postdot` package option will produce an odd result as the inserted full stop immediately follows the question mark. This is an awkward situation. One possibility is to explicitly put the full stop at the end of the `description` field for all the other entries and omit it for the problematic entries, but this interferes with the possibility of a category-dependent post-description hook.

Another option is to put `\nopostdesc` in the problematic entries. For example:

```
description={a film starring Harrison Ford, Rutger Hauer
and Sean Young loosely based on the novel
\gls{ext1.doandroidsdreamofelectricssheep}\nopostdesc},
```

Be careful with this as it will completely suppress the post-description hook. A third possibility is to use `\glsxtrnopostpunc` instead:

```
description={a film starring Harrison Ford, Rutger Hauer
and Sean Young loosely based on the novel
\gls{ext1.doandroidsdreamofelectricssheep}\glsxtrnopostpunc},
```

This doesn’t interfere with the post-description hook but if a hook is provided the post-punctuation may then be required. In both of the above two cases, `strip-trailing-nopost` could be used to remove the suppression commands from the `description` fields if a hook is defined. However this doesn’t deal with hooks that only conditionally append text.

The best solution is with `glossaries-extra v1.23+` which provides `\glsxtrrestorepostpunc` for use in the category post-description hooks that counteracts `\glsxtrnopostpunc`. This can be placed inside a conditional, as used in `sample-media.tex`, and does nothing if `\glsxtrnopostpunc` doesn’t occur in the `description` field. (Note that `\glsxtrrestorepostpunc` can’t be used to counteract `\nopostdesc`, since that completely suppresses the hook.)

The contents of `films.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

@entry{film.thebigsleep,
name={\sortart{The}{Big Sleep}},
description={a film based on the novel
```

8 Examples

```
\gls{ext1.thebigsleep}},
cast={Humphrey Bogart and Lauren Bacall},
identifier={film},
year={1946},
director={\sortmediacreator{Howard}{Hawks}}
}

@entry{film.thelonggoodbye,
  name={\sortart{The}{Long Goodbye}},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.thelonggoodbye}},
  cast={Elliott Gould and Nina van Pallandt},
  identifier={film},
  year={1973},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Robert}{Altman}}
}

@entry{film.murderontheorientexpress,
  name={Murder on the Orient Express},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.murderontheorientexpress}},
  cast={Albert Finney and Lauren Bacall and Ingrid Bergman},
  identifier={film},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Sidney}{Lumet}},
  year={1974}
}

@entry{film.whydidnttheyaskevans,
  name={Why Didn't They Ask Evans?},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.whydidnttheyaskevans}\glsxtrnopostpunc},
  cast={Francesca Annis and John Gielgud and Bernard Miles},
  identifier={film},
  director={\sortmediacreator{John}{Davies}},
  year={1980}
}

@entry{film.icecoldinalex,
  name={Ice Cold in Alex},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.icecoldinalex}},
  cast={John Mills and Anthony Quayle and Sylvia Sims},
  identifier={film},
  year={1958},
  director={\sortmediacreator{J. Lee}{Thompson}}
}
```

8 Examples

```
@entry{film.anunexpectedjourney,
  name={\sortart{The}{Hobbit}:
    \sortart{An}{Unexpected Journey}},
  description={a film based on the novel \gls{ext1.thehobbit}},
  cast={Martin Freeman and Ian McKellen and Richard Armitage},
  identifier={film},
  year={2012},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Peter}{Jackson}}
}

@entry{film.desolationofsmaug,
  name={\sortart{The}{Hobbit}:
    \sortart{The}{Desolation of Smaug}},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.thehobbit}},
  cast={Ian McKellen and Martin Freeman and Richard Armitage},
  identifier={film},
  year={2013},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Peter}{Jackson}}
}

@entry{film.thebattleoffivearmies,
  name={\sortart{The}{Hobbit}:
    \sortart{The}{Battle of Five Armies}},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.thehobbit}},
  cast={Ian McKellen and Martin Freeman and Richard Armitage},
  identifier={film},
  year={2014},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Peter}{Jackson}}
}

@entry{film.thefellowshipofthering,
  name={\sortart{The}{Lord of the Rings}:
    \sortart{The}{Fellowship of the Ring}},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.thelordoftherings}},
  cast={Elijah Wood and Ian McKellen and Orlando Bloom},
  identifier={film},
  year={2001},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Peter}{Jackson}}
}

@entry{film.thetwotowers,
  name={\sortart{The}{Lord of the Rings}:

```

8 Examples

```
\sortart{The}{Two Towers}},
description={a film based on the novel
  \gls{ext1.thelordoftherings}},
cast={Elijah Wood and Ian McKellen and Viggo Mortensen},
identifier={film},
year={2002},
director={\sortmediacreator{Peter}{Jackson}}
}

@entry{film.thereturnoftheking,
  name={\sortart{The}{Lord of the Rings}:
  \sortart{The}{Return of the King}},
  description={a film based on the novel
  \gls{ext1.thelordoftherings}},
  cast={Elijah Wood and Viggo Mortensen and Ian McKellen},
  identifier={film},
  year={2003},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Peter}{Jackson}}
}

@entry{film.thewizardofoz,
  name={\sortart{The}{Wizard of Oz}},
  description={a film based on the novel
  \gls{ext1.thewonderfulwizardofoz}},
  cast={Judy Garland},
  identifier={film},
  year={1939},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Victor}{Fleming}}
}

@entry{film.whiskygalore,
  name={Whisky Galore!},
  description={a film based on the novel
  \gls{ext1.whiskygalore}},
  cast={Basil Radford and Joan Greenwood},
  identifier={film},
  year={1949},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Alexander}{Mackendrick}}
}

@entry{film.whereeeaglesdare,
  name={Where Eagles Dare},
  description={a film based on the novel
  \gls{ext1.whereeeaglesdare}},
  cast={Richard Burton and Clint Eastwood and Mary Ure},
  identifier={film},
```

8 Examples

```
    year={1968},
    director={\sortmediacreator{Brian G.}{Hutton}}
}

@entry{film.icestationzebra,
  name={Ice Station Zebra},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.icestationzebra}},
  cast={Rock Hudson and Ernest Borgnine},
  identifier={film},
  year={1968},
  director={\sortmediacreator{John}{Sturges}}
}

@entry{film.bladerunner,
  name={Blade Runner},
  description={a film loosely based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.doandroidsreamofelectricssheep}\glsxtrnopostpunc},
  cast={Harrison Ford and Rutger Hauer and Sean Young},
  identifier={film},
  year={1982},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Ridley}{Scott}}
}

@entry{film.thetroublewithharry,
  name={\sortart{The}{Trouble with Harry}},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.thetroublewithharry}},
  cast={John Forsythe and Shirley MacLaine},
  identifier={film},
  year={1955},
  director={\sortmediacreator{Alfred}{Hitchcock}}
}

@entry{film.brightonrock,
  name={Brighton Rock},
  description={a film based on the novel
    \gls{ext1.brightonrock}},
  cast={Richard Attenborough and Hermione Baddeley
    and William Hartnell},
  identifier={film},
  year={1947},
  director={\sortmediacreator{John}{Boutling}}
}
```

citations.bib

The citations.bib file is actually a B_BT_EX file, but it can be parsed by bib2gls if the B_BT_EX entry types are converted to @bibtexentry, which can easily be done with:

```
entry-type-aliases={\GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases}
```

The field names will also need to be defined or aliased. For example:

```
field-aliases={title=name}
```

If bib2gls is then run with --cite-as-record any \citation commands found in the .aux file will be treated as ignored records. The @preamble provides a formatting command that's used by both B_BT_EX and bib2gls, so \providecommand is required rather than \newcommand as it will appear in both the .bbl and the .glstex files. (In general it's best to use \providecommand rather than \newcommand in the @preamble but in this case it's essential.) The contents of citations.bib are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8
```

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\titlefmt}[1]{`#1'"}}
```

```
@article{duck2018,
  author = {Dickie Duck and Jos\{'e} Arara and Polly Parrot},
  title = {Avian friendship},
  journal = {Fowl Times},
  year = 2018,
  volume = 7,
  number = 5,
  pages = "1032--5"
}
```

```
@book{duck2016,
  author = {Dickie Duck},
  title = {Feathered stunt doubles: \titlefmt{The Birds} and
other films},
  publisher = {Duck Duck Goose},
  year = 2016
}
```

```
@book{macaw,
  author = {Prof Macaw},
  title = {Annotated notes on the \titlefmt{Duck and Goose}
chronicles},
  publisher = {Duck Duck Goose},
  year = 2012
}
```

```

@book{ing,
  author = {Bor Ing},
  title = {\titlefmt{Duck and Goose}: an allegory for modern
times?},
  publisher = {Duck Duck Goose},
  year = 2010
}

@article{parrot,
  author = {Polly Parrot and Dickie Duck},
  title = {\titlefmt{Duck and Goose} Cheat Sheet for Students},
  journal = {Fowl Times},
  year = 2013,
  volume = 2,
  number = 10,
  pages = "15--23"
}

@book{parrot2012,
  author = {A Parrot},
  title = {My Friend is a Duck},
  publisher = {Duck Duck Goose},
  year = 2012
}

@book{quackalot,
  author = {Sir Quackalot},
  title = {The Adventures of Duck and Goose},
  publisher = {Duck Duck Goose},
  year = 2011
}

```

mathgreek.bib

The `mathgreek.bib` file contains Greek letters for use in maths mode. These are all defined with `@symbol`, which means that by default the `sort` field will be obtained from the label not from the `name` field. However, if you want to sort by the `name` field (for example, with `sort-field={name}`) the \TeX parser library recognises all the mathematical Greek letter commands provided in the \TeX kernel. Additionally it recognises `\omicron` which isn't provided by \LaTeX (the symbol can be reproduced with a lower case Latin "o"). Note that `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` (`glossaries-extra v1.27+`) provides all the missing Greek letters (such as `\omicron`).

The `.bib` file could just use `o`:

```
@symbol{omicron,
```

```

name={\ensuremath{o}},
description={omicron},
identifier={mathgreek}
}

```

but this means that if `bib2gls` sorts according to the `name` field using a letter sort, this entry will come before all the other Greek letters since the character “o” has Unicode value 0x6F whereas, for example, mathematical italic small alpha (α) has Unicode value 0x1D6FC. This means that for sorting purposes it’s better to use `\omicron`:

```

@symbol{omicron,
  name={\ensuremath{\omicron}},
  description={omicron},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

```

but \TeX needs a definition for this, so it’s provided in the `@preamble`:

```

@preamble{"\providecommand{\omicron}{o}"}

```

(With `glossaries-extra` v1.27+, this is no longer needed.) The \TeX parser library and `glossaries-extra-bib2gls` similarly provide the missing upper case Greek letters, and these can be dealt with in the same way.

The contents of `mathgreek.bib` are as follows:

```

% Encoding: UTF-8

@preamble{"\providecommand{\omicron}{o}"}

@symbol{alpha,
  name={\ensuremath{\alpha}},
  description={alpha},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{beta,
  name={\ensuremath{\beta}},
  description={beta},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{gamma,
  name={\ensuremath{\gamma}},
  description={gamma},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{delta,

```

8 Examples

```
name={\ensuremath{\delta}},
description={delta},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{varepsilon,
name={\ensuremath{\varepsilon}},
description={epsilon (variant)},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{zeta,
name={\ensuremath{\zeta}},
description={zeta},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{eta,
name={\ensuremath{\eta}},
description={eta},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{theta,
name={\ensuremath{\theta}},
description={theta},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{iota,
name={\ensuremath{\iota}},
description={iota},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{kappa,
name={\ensuremath{\kappa}},
description={kappa},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{lambda,
name={\ensuremath{\lambda}},
description={lambda},
identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

8 Examples

```
}

@symbol{mu,
  name={\ensuremath{\mu}},
  description={mu},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{nu,
  name={\ensuremath{\nu}},
  description={nu},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{xi,
  name={\ensuremath{\xi}},
  description={xi},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{omicron,
  name={\ensuremath{\omicron}},
  description={omicron},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{pi,
  name={\ensuremath{\pi}},
  description={pi},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{rho,
  name={\ensuremath{\rho}},
  description={rho},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{varsigma,
  name={\ensuremath{\varsigma}},
  description={sigma (variant)},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{sigma,
  name={\ensuremath{\sigma}},
```

```

    description={sigma},
    identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{tau,
  name={\ensuremath{\tau}},
  description={tau},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{upsilon,
  name={\ensuremath{\upsilon}},
  description={upsilon},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{varphi,
  name={\ensuremath{\varphi}},
  description={phi (variant)},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{chi,
  name={\ensuremath{\chi}},
  description={chi},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{psi,
  name={\ensuremath{\psi}},
  description={psi},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{omega,
  name={\ensuremath{\omega}},
  description={omega},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

@symbol{epsilon,
  name={\ensuremath{\epsilon}},
  description={epsilon},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}

```

```
@symbol{vartheta,
  name={\ensuremath{\vartheta}},
  description={theta (variant)},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{varkappa,
  name={\ensuremath{\varkappa}},
  description={kappa (variant)},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{phi,
  name={\ensuremath{\phi}},
  description={phi},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{varrho,
  name={\ensuremath{\varrho}},
  description={rho (variant)},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

```
@symbol{varpi,
  name={\ensuremath{\varpi}},
  description={pi (variant)},
  identifier={mathgreek}
}
```

bigmathsymbols.bib

The `bigmathsymbols.bib` file contains mathematical symbols that have a large version in display mode. As with `mathgreek.bib` the entries are defined using `@symbol`. This example file requires the `stix` package as not all of the commands are provided by the \LaTeX kernel. This file also has a preamble:

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\bigoperatornamefmt}[1]{%
  $\displaystyle#1\textstyle#1$}
\providecommand{\nary}[1]{\$#1$-ary}"}
```

The first command `\bigoperatornamefmt{⟨text⟩}` is used in the `name` field to display both the in-line and display versions of the symbol. The \TeX parser library only has a limited ability to interpret this as not all the symbols have Unicode in-line and large versions. In some cases, such as the integral symbol \int , there is only a small version. (A large version

would require construction from 0x2320, 0x23AE and 0x2321, which is too complicated in this context.) However, the interpreter works well enough to guess at the widest name if `set-widest` is used. There's no advantage in sorting according to the `name` field here, unless a custom rule is provided, as the Unicode symbols are scattered about different blocks. Better approaches are to sort according to document use (`sort={use}`) or to sort according to the `description` field.

The other custom command is `\nary{⟨text⟩}` to provide semantic markup for “ n -ary”. This could be defined without an argument:

```
\providecommand{\nary}{\n$-ary}
```

but providing an argument will allow `\nary{n}` to work with first letter upper-casing in the event that the `description` field has a case-change applied (otherwise it would end up as “ N -ARY”). Of course, it may be that no case-change should be applied, but this example is just for illustrative purposes.

As with the other sample `.bib` files, each entry is given a custom `identifier` field, which by default will be ignored. In this case, `identifier` is either set to `naryoperator` (for n -ary operators) or `integral` for integrals.

The contents of `bigmathsymbols.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

% requires stix.sty

@preamble{"\providecommand{\bigoperatornamefmt}[1]{%
  $\displaystyle#1\textstyle#1$}
\providecommand{\nary}[1]{\n$-ary}"}

@symbol{bigsqcap,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigsqcap}},
  text={\bigsqcap},
  description={\nary{n} square intersection operator},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigsqcup,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigsqcup}},
  text={\bigsqcup},
  description={\nary{n} square union operator},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{sum,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\sum}},
  text={\sum},
  description={\nary{n} summation},
  identifier={naryoperator}
```

```

}

@symbol{prod,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\prod}},
  text={\prod},
  description={\nary{n} product},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{coprod,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\coprod}},
  text={\coprod},
  description={\nary{n} coproduct},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigcap,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigcap}},
  text={\bigcap},
  description={\nary{n} intersection},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigcup,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigcup}},
  text={\bigcup},
  description={\nary{n} union},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigodot,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigodot}},
  text={\bigodot},
  description={\nary{n} circled dot operator},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigoplus,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigoplus}},
  text={\bigoplus},
  description={\nary{n} circled plus operator},
  identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigotimes,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigotimes}},

```

8 Examples

```
text={\bigotimes},
description={\nary{n} circled times operator},
identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{biguplus,
name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\biguplus}},
text={\biguplus},
description={\nary{n} union operator with plus},
identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigvee,
name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigvee}},
text={\bigvee},
description={\nary{n} logical or},
identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{bigwedge,
name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\bigwedge}},
text={\bigwedge},
description={\nary{n} logical and},
identifier={naryoperator}
}

@symbol{int,
name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\int}},
text={\int},
description={integral},
identifier={integral}
}

@symbol{iint,
name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\iint}},
text={\iint},
description={double integral},
identifier={integral}
}

@symbol{iiint,
name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\iiint}},
text={\iiint},
description={triple integral},
identifier={integral}
}
```

```

@symbol{ooint,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\ooint}},
  text={\ooint},
  description={contour integral},
  identifier={integral}
}

@symbol{\ooint,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\ooint}},
  text={\ooint},
  description={surface integral},
  identifier={integral}
}

@symbol{oiint,
  name={\bigoperatornamefmt{\oiint}},
  text={\oiint},
  description={volume integral},
  identifier={integral}
}

```

mathsrelations.bib

The `mathsrelations.bib` file contains mathematical relational symbols. These use the maths shift character `$` in the `name` field and just the symbol in the `text` field. This just illustrates an alternative way of defining symbols. Since `\ensuremath` isn't used, commands like `\gls` must be explicitly placed in maths mode. For example, `$$\gls{leq}$$` rather than simply `\gls{leq}`. The custom `identifier` field is set to `relation`.

The contents of `mathsrelations.bib` are as follows:

```

% Encoding: UTF-8

@symbol{leq,
  name={\leq},
  text={\leq},
  description={less than or equal to},
  identifier={relation}
}

@symbol{less,
  name={<},
  text={<},
  description={less than},
  identifier={relation}
}

```

8 Examples

```
@symbol{ll,
  name={\ll},
  text={\ll},
  description={much less than},
  identifier={relation}
}

@symbol{geq,
  name={\geq},
  text={\geq},
  description={greater than or equal to},
  identifier={relation}
}

@symbol{greater,
  name={>},
  text={>},
  description={greater than},
  identifier={relation}
}

@symbol{gg,
  name={\gg},
  text={\gg},
  description={much greater than},
  identifier={relation}
}

@symbol{equals,
  name={=},
  text={=},
  description={equals},
  identifier={relation}
}

@symbol{neq,
  name={\neq},
  text={\neq},
  description={not equals},
  identifier={relation}
}

@symbol{approx,
  name={\approx},
  text={\approx},
```

```

    description={approximately},
    identifier={relation}
}

```

```

@symbol{in,
  name={\in},
  text={\in},
  description={in},
  identifier={relation}
}

```

```

@symbol{ni,
  name={\ni},
  text={\ni},
  description={not in},
  identifier={relation}
}

```

binaryoperators.bib

The `binaryoperators.bib` file contains mathematical binary operators. The format is much like the above `mathsrelations.bib` file. The custom `identifier` field is set to `binaryoperator`.

The contents of `binaryoperators.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8
```

```

@symbol{plus,
  name={+$},
  text={+},
  description={addition},
  identifier={binaryoperator}
}

```

```

@symbol{minus,
  name={-$},
  text={-},
  description={subtraction},
  identifier={binaryoperator}
}

```

```

@symbol{times,
  name={\times},
  text={\times},
  description={multiplication},
  identifier={binaryoperator}
}

```

```
@symbol{div,
  name={\div},
  text={\div},
  description={division},
  identifier={binaryoperator}
}
```

unaryoperators.bib

The unaryoperators.bib file contains mathematical unary operators. As above, this again uses `@symbol` to define the symbols, but in this case `\ensuremath` is used in the `name` field and there's no `text` field. I've also used `\mathord` to ensure the symbol is treated as a unary (rather than binary) operator, except for the `\forall` entry which is already defined as an ordinary maths symbol.

The contents of unaryoperators.bib are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

@symbol{factorial,
  name={\ensuremath{\mathord{!}}},
  description={factorial},
  identifier={unary}
}

@symbol{unaryplus,
  name={\ensuremath{\mathord{+}}},
  description={plus},
  identifier={unary}
}

@symbol{unaryminus,
  name={\ensuremath{\mathord{-}}},
  description={minus},
  identifier={unary}
}

@symbol{forall,
  name={\ensuremath{\forall}},
  description={for all},
  identifier={unary}
}
```

mathsubjects.bib

The `mathsubjects.bib` file contains entries related to mathematical objects (sets, spaces, vectors and matrices). This provides some custom formatting commands in the preamble:

```
\setfmt{⟨symbol⟩}
```

which is used to format $\langle symbol \rangle$ as a set,

```
\setcontentsfmt{⟨contents⟩}
```

which is used to format the set contents,

```
\setmembershipfmt{⟨variable(s)⟩}{⟨condition⟩}
```

which is used to format the set membership criteria,

```
\setcardfmt{⟨maths⟩}
```

which is used to format the cardinality of a set,

```
\numspacefmt{⟨symbol⟩}
```

which is used to format $\langle symbol \rangle$ as a number space,

```
\transposefmt{⟨maths⟩}
```

which is used to format matrix and vector transposes,

```
\invfmt{⟨maths⟩}
```

which is used to format inverses,

```
\vecfmt{⟨symbol⟩}
```

which is used to format $\langle symbol \rangle$ as a vector, and

```
\mtxfmt{⟨symbol⟩}
```

which is used to format $\langle symbol \rangle$ as a matrix. These commands are intended for use with `\glstrfmt`, but `\setmembershipfmt` causes a problem as it has two arguments and `\glstrfmt` requires the control sequence to have exactly one argument. This means employing a little trick. A command with just one argument is provided:

```
\setmembershiponeargfmt{{⟨variable(s)⟩}{⟨condition⟩}}
```

that requires the actual two arguments to be supplied inside #1. The outer grouping is removed and the two-argument `\setmembershipfmt` command is applied:

```
\providecommand{\setmembershiponeargfmt}[1]{\setmembershipfmt#1}
```

This means that the entry needs to be referenced in the document using:

```
\glstrfmt{setmembership}{\langle variable(s) \rangle}{\langle condition \rangle}
```

The simplest thing to do here is to provide a wrapper command in the document, for example:

```
\newcommand*{\setmembership}[2]{\glstrfmt{setmembership}{\#1}{\#2}}
```

Now this can be used as:

```
\setmembership{\langle variable(s) \rangle}{\langle condition \rangle}
```

There are essentially two types of entry defined in this file: entries that demonstrate the formatting for the objects and entries that represent specific objects. In the first case there's a custom `format` field that's set to the control sequence name of the relevant semantic command. If this field is defined or aliased then it can be used with `\glstrfmt` (as in the example above).

In both cases there's a custom `identifier` field that reflects the type of object: `set` for sets, `numberspace` for number spaces, `matrix` for matrices or vectors.

Be careful with the set cardinality example. Remember that nested links cause problems and the glossaries-extra manual advises against using commands like `\gls` or `\glstrfmt` within link text and that includes within the `\langle text \rangle` argument of `\glstrfmt`. See `sample-maths.tex` for suggested usage.

Some of the `description` fields use `\sortart`, so `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble.bib` are also needed.

The contents of `mathsobjects.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8

% requires amssymb.sty

@preamble{"\providecommand{\setfmt}[1]{\mathcal{\#1}}
\providecommand{\setcontentsfmt}[1]{\{\#1\}}
\providecommand{\setmembershipfmt}[2]{\setcontentsfmt{\#1: \#2}}
\providecommand{\setmembershiponeargfmt}[1]{\setmembershipfmt{\#1}}
\providecommand{\setcardfmt}[1]{\lvert\#1\rvert}
\providecommand{\numspacefmt}[1]{\mathbb{\#1}}
\providecommand{\transposefmt}[1]{\#1^T}
\providecommand{\invfmt}[1]{\#1^{-1}}
\providecommand{\vecfmt}[1]{\boldsymbol{\#1}}
\providecommand{\mtxfmt}[1]{\boldsymbol{\#1}}"}

@symbol{set ,
  name={\ensuremath{\setfmt{S}}},
  description={\sortart{a}{set}},
  format={setfmt},
  identifier={set}
}

@symbol{setcontents ,
```

8 Examples

```
name={\ensuremath{\setcontentsfmt{\ldots}}},
description={set contents},
format={setcontentsfmt},
identifier={set}
}

@symbol{setmembership,
name={\ensuremath{\setmembershipfmt{\vecfmt{x}}{\ldots}}},
description={set membership},
format={setmembershiponeargfmt},
identifier={set}
}

@symbol{setcard,
name={\ensuremath{\setcardfmt{\setfmt{S}}}},
description={\sortart{the}{cardinality of  $\setfmt{S}$ }},
format={setcardfmt},
identifier={set}
}

@symbol{numberspace,
name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{S}}},
description={\sortart{a}{number space}},
format={numspacefmt},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{naturalnumbers,
name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{N}}},
description={\sortart{the}{set of natural numbers}},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{integernumbers,
name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{Z}}},
description={\sortart{the}{set of integers}},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{rationalnumbers,
name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{Q}}},
description={\sortart{the}{set of rational numbers}},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{algebraicnumbers,
```

8 Examples

```

name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{A}}},
description={\sortart{the}{set of algebraic numbers}},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{realnumbers,
name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{R}}},
description={\sortart{the}{set of real numbers}},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{imaginarynumbers,
name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{I}}},
description={\sortart{the}{set of imaginary numbers}},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{complexnumbers,
name={\ensuremath{\numspacefmt{C}}},
description={\sortart{the}{set of complex numbers}},
identifier={numberspace}
}

@symbol{emptyset,
name={\ensuremath{\emptyset}},
description={\sortart{the}{empty set}},
identifier={set}
}

@symbol{universalset,
name={\ensuremath{\setfmt{U}}},
description={\sortart{the}{universal set}},
identifier={set}
}

@symbol{transpose,
name={\ensuremath{\transposefmt{\vecfmt{x}}}},
description={\sortart{the}{transpose of $\vecfmt{x}$}},
format={transposefmt},
identifier={matrix}
}

@symbol{inverse,
name={\ensuremath{\invfmt{\mtxfmt{M}}}},
description={\sortart{the}{inverse of $\mtxfmt{M}$}},
format={invfmt},

```

```

    identifier={matrix}
}

@symbol{vector,
  name={\ensuremath{\vec{f}{v}}},
  description={\sortart{a}{vector}},
  format={vecfmt},
  identifier={matrix}
}

@symbol{matrix,
  name={\ensuremath{M}},
  description={\sortart{a}{matrix}},
  format={mtxfmt},
  identifier={matrix}
}

@symbol{0vec,
  name={\ensuremath{\vec{0}}},
  description={\sortart{the}{vector of 0s}},
  identifier={matrix}
}

@symbol{1vec,
  name={\ensuremath{\vec{1}}},
  description={\sortart{the}{vector of 1s}},
  identifier={matrix}
}

@symbol{identitymatrix,
  name={\ensuremath{I}},
  description={\sortart{the}{identity matrix}},
  identifier={matrix}
}

```

miscsymbols.bib

The `miscsymbols.bib` file contains text symbols provided by the `marvosym` and `ifsym` packages. The `ifsym` package needs to be loaded with the `weather` option to provide the weather commands. Unfortunately both packages define `\Sun` and `\Lightning`, which causes a conflict. See `sample-textsymbols.tex` for a workaround. Alternatively, you can load `ifsym` without the `weather` option and use the internal definition of `ifsym`'s `\Sun` and `\Lightning` commands:

```
@icon{sun,
```

```

    icon={\textweathersymbol{16}},
    description={sunny},
    identifier={weather}
}

```

```

@icon{lightning,
    icon={\textweathersymbol{26}},
    description={thunderstorm},
    identifier={weather}
}

```

This removes the conflict, and `\Sun` and `\Lightning` are as defined by `marvosym`.

This file uses a custom entry type `@icon`, which must be aliased to a recognised entry identifier otherwise the entries will all be ignored. For example:

```
entry-type-aliases={icon=symbol}
```

There are three types of symbols defined: media controls, information and weather. They have the custom `identifier` field set to `mediacontrol`, `information` and `weather`, respectively. There are two other custom fields: `icon` and `icondescription`. These will need to be aliased to `name` and `description`.

Neither of these packages are recognised by `bib2gls`, which means that `set-widest` won't be able to determine the widest name nor is this data suitable for sorting according to the `icon` field (or its alias). Instead, either sort by label (which is the default for `@symbol`) or by the `description`. If you want to use one of the `alttree` styles you can still use `set-widest`, but it will have to use the fallback command. Alternatively, you can omit `set-widest` and explicitly use `\glsFindWidestTopLevelName`.

The contents of `miscsymbols.bib` are as follows:

```

% Encoding: UTF-8

% requires marvosym.sty and ifsym.sty

@icon{forward,
    icon={\Forward},
    icondescription={play},
    identifier={mediacontrol}
}

@icon{forwardtoindex,
    icon={\ForwardToIndex},
    icondescription={next track},
    identifier={mediacontrol}
}

@icon{rewindtoindex,
    icon={\RewindToIndex},

```

8 Examples

```
    icondescription={back to start of track},
    identifier={mediacontrol}
}

@icon{rewind,
    icon={\Rewind},
    icondescription={rewind},
    identifier={mediacontrol}
}

@icon{bicycle,
    icon={\Bicycle},
    icondescription={bicycle route},
    identifier={information}
}

@icon{coffeecup,
    icon={\Coffeecup},
    icondescription={caf'e},
    identifier={information}
}

@icon{info,
    icon={\Info},
    icondescription={information centre},
    identifier={information}
}

@icon{gentsroom,
    icon={\Gentsroom},
    icondescription={Gents},
    identifier={information}
}

@icon{ladiesroom,
    icon={\Ladiesroom},
    icondescription={Ladies},
    identifier={information}
}

@icon{wheelchair,
    icon={\Wheelchair},
    icondescription={wheelchair access provided},
    identifier={information}
}
```

8 Examples

```
@icon{football,  
  icon={\Football},  
  icondescription={football stadium},  
  identifier={information}  
}
```

```
@icon{recycling,  
  icon={\Recycling},  
  icondescription={recycling centre},  
  identifier={information}  
}
```

```
@icon{cloud,  
  icon={\Cloud},  
  icondescription={cloudy},  
  identifier={weather}  
}
```

```
@icon{fog,  
  icon={\Fog},  
  icondescription={foggy},  
  identifier={weather}  
}
```

```
@icon{thinfog,  
  icon={\ThinFog},  
  icondescription={misty},  
  identifier={weather}  
}
```

```
@icon{hail,  
  icon={\Hail},  
  icondescription={hail},  
  identifier={weather}  
}
```

```
@icon{sun,  
  icon={\Sun},  
  icondescription={sunny},  
  identifier={weather}  
}
```

```
@icon{lightning,  
  icon={\Lightning},  
  icondescription={thunderstorm},  
  identifier={weather}
```

```

}

@icon{suncloud,
  icon={\SunCloud},
  icondescription={overcast},
  identifier={weather}
}

@icon{raincloud,
  icon={\RainCloud},
  icondescription={rain},
  identifier={weather}
}

@icon{weakraincloud,
  icon={\WeakRainCloud},
  icondescription={drizzle},
  identifier={weather}
}

@icon{snowcloud,
  icon={\SnowCloud},
  icondescription={snow},
  identifier={weather}
}

```

markuplanguages.bib

The `markuplanguages.bib` file includes a mixture of `@entry` and `@abbreviation` definitions. A custom command is provided in `@preamble` to tag the letters in the `long` field that are used to form the abbreviation. This simply does its argument and is provided in case it's not set up in the document. If you do want to enable tagging using `\GlsXtrEnableInitial-Tagging`, remember that this command must be used before the abbreviations are defined, which means before the resource file is input with `\GlsXtrLoadResources`. Similarly, the abbreviation style must be set before the abbreviations are defined.

For convenience `@string` is also used to define a `.bib` variable, which may be appended to fields using the `.bib` concatenation character `#`. As with the other sample `.bib` files, there's a custom field `identifier` which will be ignored unless defined or aliased.

The empty braces at the start some of the fields are there to protect against first letter uppercasing within `TEX`, where it might cause a problem. (For example, with the `glossname` attribute.)

The contents of `markuplanguages.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8
```

8 Examples

```
@preamble{"\providecommand{\abbrvtag}[1]{#1}"
@string{markuplang="\abbrvtag{m}arkup \abbrvtag{l}anguage"}

@entry{TeX,
  name={\TeX},
  description={a format for describing complex type and page layout
    often used for mathematics, technical, and academic publications},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}

@entry{LaTeX,
  name={\LaTeX},
  description={a format of \glstext{TeX} designed to separate
    content from style},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}

@entry{markdown,
  name={markdown},
  description={a lightweight markup language with plain text
    formatting syntax},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}

@abbreviation{xml,
  short={XML},
  long={e\abbrvtag{x}tensible }#markuplang,
  description={a markup language that defines a set of rules for
    encoding documents},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}

@abbreviation{html,
  short={HTML},
  long={\abbrvtag{h}yper\abbrvtag{t}ext }#markuplang,
  description={the standard markup language for creating web pages},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}

@abbreviation{mathml,
  short={MathML},
  long={\abbrvtag{m\NoCaseChange{ath}}ematical }#markuplang,
  description={markup language for describing mathematical notation},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}
```

```

@abbreviation{xhtml,
  short={XHTML},
  long={e\abbrvtag{x}tensible \abbrvtag{h}yper\abbrvtag{t}ext }
  # markuplang,
  description={{}\glstext{xml} version of \glstext{html}},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}

@abbreviation{svg,
  short={SVG},
  long={\abbrvtag{s}calable \abbrvtag{v}ector \abbrvtag{g}raphics},
  description={{}\glstext{xml}-based vector image format},
  identifier={markuplanguage}
}

```

usergroups.bib

The `usergroups.bib` file requires either $\text{Xe}^{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$ or $\text{Lua}^{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$ as some of the entry labels use non-ASCII characters. This file has a mixture of `@abbreviation` and `@index` entries. It also uses `@string` for convenience and provides a custom command `\dash in` in `@preamble`. Each entry is the name of a $\text{T}^{\text{E}}\text{X}$ user group: the international $\text{T}^{\text{E}}\text{X}$ Users Group (TUG) and all the local groups. Most of them have an abbreviated name, so they're defined with `@abbreviation`. There are a few without an abbreviation, so they're defined with `@index` instead. There's one alias. (The information was obtained from TUG's user groups page [17].)

As with the other examples, there are some custom fields which will be ignored if they aren't defined or aliased: `identifier` (set to `texusergroup`), `language` (a comma-separated list of language tags) and `translation` (provides a translation if the user group name isn't in English).

Not all entries have a `translation` field. If it's omitted, then the user group name is in English, otherwise it's in the first language listed in the `language` field. Most of the language tags are just the ISO 639-1 language code, but a few of them include the ISO 3166-1 region code as well.

The contents of `usergroups.bib` are as follows:

```

% Encoding: UTF-8

% Requires XeLaTeX/LuaLaTeX for non-ASCII labels

@string{tug={\TeX\ Users Group}}

@preamble{"\providecommand{\dash}{\,---\,}" }

@abbreviation{TUG,
  short={TUG},
  long=tug,

```

8 Examples

```
language={en},
identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{bgTeX,
short={bgTeX},
long={Bulgarian \LaTeX\ Users Group},
language={bg},
identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{latex-br,
short={latex-br},
long={Grupo de Usuários},
language={pt-BR},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={Brazilian }#tug
}

@abbreviation{CTeX,
short={CTeX},
long={Chinese \TeX\ Society},
identifier={texusergroup},
language={zh}
}

@abbreviation{CSTUG,
short={CSTUG},
long={Československé sdružení uživatelů TeXu, z.~s.},
language={cs},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={Czech Republic }#tug
}

@abbreviation{DANTE,
short={DANTE e.V.},
long={Deutschsprachige Anwendervereinigung \TeX\ e.V.},
language={de},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={German Speaking }#tug
}

@abbreviation{DKTUG,
short={DK-TUG},
long={Danish }#tug,
language={da},
```

```

    identifier={texusergroup}
}

@index{EUG,
  name={Estonian User Group},
  language={et},
  identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{CervanTeX,
  short={CervanTeX},
  long={Grupo de Usuarios de \TeX\ Hispanohablantes},
  language={es},
  identifier={texusergroup},
  translation={Spanish Speaking }#tug
}

@abbreviation{TirantloTeX,
  short={Tirant lo \TeX},
  long={Catalan }#tug,
  language={ca},
  identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{GUTenberg,
  short={GUTenberg},
  long={Groupe francophone des utilisateurs de \TeX},
  language={fr},
  identifier={texusergroup},
  translation={French Speaking }#tug
}

@abbreviation{UKTUG,
  short={UK-TUG},
  long={UK }#tug,
  language={en-GB},
  identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{εφτ,
  short={εφτ},
  long={Σύλλογος Ελλήνων Φίλων του \TeX},
  language={el},
  identifier={texusergroup},
  translation={Greek \TeX\ Friends}
}

```

8 Examples

```
@abbreviation{MaTeX,
  short={MaTeX},
  long={Magyar \TeX\ Egyesület},
  language={hu},
  identifier={texusergroup},
  translation={Hungarian }#tug
}

@abbreviation{ITALIC,
  short={ITALIC},
  long={Irish \TeX\ and \LaTeX\ In-print Community},
  language={en-IE,en-GB},
  identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{ÍsTeX,
  short={ÍsTeX},
  long={Vefur íslenskra \TeX\ notenda},
  language={is},
  identifier={texusergroup},
  translation={Icelandic }#tug
}

@abbreviation{GuIT,
  short={GuIT},
  long={Gruppo Utilizzatori Italiani di \TeX},
  language={it},
  identifier={texusergroup},
  translation={Italian }#tug
}

@abbreviation{KTS,
  short={KTS},
  identifier={texusergroup},
  long={Korean \TeX\ Society},
  language={ko}
}

@index{KTUG,
  alias={KTS},
  identifier={texusergroup}
}

@index{LTVG,
  name={Lietuvos \TeX'o Vartotojų Grupė},
```

8 Examples

```
language={lt},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={Lithuanian }#tug
}

@index{mxTeX,
name={\TeX\ México},
language={es-MX},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={Mexican }#tug
}

@abbreviation{NTG,
short={NTG},
long={Nederlandstalige \TeX\ Gebruikersgroep},
language={nl},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={Netherlands }#tug
}

@index{NTUG,
name={Nordic \TeX\ Users Group},
language={da,et,fi,fo,is,nb,nn,sv},
identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{GUST,
short={GUST},
long={Polska Grupa Użytkowników Systemu \TeX},
language={pl},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={Polish }#tug
}

@abbreviation{GUTpt,
short={GUTpt},
long={Grupo de Utilizadores de \TeX},
language={pt},
identifier={texusergroup},
translation={Portuguese }#tug
}

@abbreviation{VietTUG,
short={VietTUG},
long={Vietnamese }#tug,
language={vi},
```

```

    identifier={texusergroup}
}

@abbreviation{LUGSA,
  short={LUGSA},
  long={\LaTeX\ User Group\dash South Africa},
  language={en-ZA},
  identifier={texusergroup}
}

```

animals.bib

The `animals.bib` file contains entries defined using `@entry`. As with the above example `.bib` files, there's a custom `identifier` field that will be ignored unless defined or aliased.

The contents of `animals.bib` are as follows:

```

% Encoding: UTF-8

@entry{duck,
  name={duck},
  description={a waterbird with webbed feet},
  identifier={animal}
}

@entry{parrot,
  name={parrot},
  description={mainly tropical bird with bright plumage},
  identifier={animal}
}

@entry{goose,
  name={goose},
  plural={geese},
  description={a large waterbird with a long neck, short legs,
    webbed feet and a short broad bill},
  identifier={animal}
}

@entry{swan,
  name={swan},
  description={a large waterbird with a long flexible neck,
    short legs, webbed feet and a broad bill},
  identifier={animal}
}

@entry{chicken,

```

8 Examples

```
    name={chicken},
    description={a domestic fowl},
    identifier={animal}
}

@entry{aardvark,
    name={aardvark},
    description={nocturnal African burrowing mammal},
    identifier={animal}
}

@entry{zebra,
    name={zebra},
    description={wild African horse with black-and-white stripes},
    identifier={animal}
}

@entry{armadillo,
    name={armadillo},
    description={nocturnal insectivore with large claws},
    identifier={animal}
}

@entry{zander,
    name={zander},
    description={large freshwater perch},
    identifier={animal}
}

@entry{hedgehog,
    name={hedgehog},
    description={small nocturnal mammal with a spiny coat and
        short legs},
    identifier={animal}
}

@entry{seal,
    name={seal},
    description={sea-dwelling fish-eating mammal with flippers},
    identifier={animal}
}

@entry{sealion,
    name={sea lion},
    description={a large type of \gls{seal}},
    identifier={animal}
}
```

}

minerals.bib

The `minerals.bib` file contains entries defined using `@entry`. As with the above example `.bib` files, there's a custom `identifier` field that will be ignored unless defined or aliased.

The contents of `minerals.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8
```

```
@entry{quartz,
  name={quartz},
  description={hard mineral consisting of silica},
  identifier={mineral}
}
```

```
@entry{corundum,
  name={corundum},
  description={crystalline form of aluminium oxide},
  identifier={mineral}
}
```

```
@entry{beryl,
  name={beryl},
  description={composed of beryllium aluminium cyclosilicate},
  identifier={mineral}
}
```

```
@entry{amethyst,
  name={amethyst},
  description={purple variety of \gls{quartz}},
  identifier={mineral}
}
```

```
@entry{chalcedony,
  name={chalcedony},
  description={cryptocrystalline variety of \gls{quartz}},
  identifier={mineral}
}
```

```
@entry{citrine,
  name={citrine},
  description={yellow variety of \gls{quartz}},
  identifier={mineral}
}
```

8 Examples

```
@entry{aquamarine,
  name={aquamarine},
  description={light blue variety of \gls{beryl}},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{aragonite,
  name={aragonite},
  description={a crystal form of calcium carbonate},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{calcite,
  name={calcite},
  description={a crystal form of calcium carbonate},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{vaterite,
  name={vaterite},
  description={a crystal form of calcium carbonate},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{bakerite,
  name={bakerite},
  description={a borosilicate mineral},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{bilinite,
  name={bilinite},
  description={an iron sulfate mineral},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{biotite,
  name={biotite},
  description={a common phyllosilicate mineral},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{cobaltite,
  name={cobaltite},
  description={a sulfide mineral composed of cobalt, arsenic and
  sulfur},
```

```

    identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{cyanotrichite,
  name={cyanotrichite},
  description={a hydrous copper aluminium sulfate mineral},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@index{lettsomite,
  alias={cyanotrichite},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{diamond,
  name={diamond},
  description={a metastable allotrope of carbon},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{dolomite,
  name={dolomite},
  description={an anhydrous carbonate mineral},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{quetzalcoatlite,
  name={quetzalcoatlite},
  description={a rare tellurium oxysalt mineral},
  identifier={mineral}
}

@entry{vulcanite,
  name={vulcanite},
  description={a rare copper telluride mineral},
  identifier={mineral}
}

```

vegetables.bib

The `vegetables.bib` file contains entries defined using `@entry` and an entry defined with `@index` with just the `alias` field. As with the above example `.bib` files, there's a custom `identifier` field that will be ignored unless defined or aliased.

The contents of `vegetables.bib` are as follows:

```
% Encoding: UTF-8
```

8 Examples

```
@entry{cabbage,
  name={cabbage},
  description={vegetable with thick green or purple leaves},
  identifier={vegetable}
}

@entry{brussels-sprout,
  name={Brussels sprout},
  description={small leafy green vegetable buds},
  identifier={vegetable}
}

@entry{artichoke,
  name={artichoke},
  description={a variety of thistle cultivated as food},
  identifier={vegetable}
}

@entry{cauliflower,
  name={cauliflower},
  description={type of cabbage with edible white flower head},
  identifier={vegetable}
}

@entry{spinach,
  name={spinach},
  description={green, leafy vegetable},
  identifier={vegetable}
}

@entry{marrow,
  name={marrow},
  description={long white-fleshed gourd with green skin},
  identifier={vegetable}
}

@entry{courgette,
  name={courgette},
  description={immature fruit of a vegetable \gls{marrow}},
  identifier={vegetable}
}

@index{zucchini,
  name={zucchini},
  alias={courgette},
```

```

    identifier={vegetable}
}

```

terms.bib

The `terms.bib` file contains entries defined using `@index`. Unlike the above sample `.bib` files, there are no custom fields here.

The contents of `terms.bib` are as follows:

```

% Encoding: UTF-8

@index{mineral}
@index{vegetable}
@index{animal}
@index{film}
@index{book}
@index{bacteria,
    text={bacterium},
    plural={bacteria}
}
@index{chemical,
    name={chemical formula},
    plural={chemical formulae}
}
@index{baseunit,
    name={base SI unit}
}
@index{derivedunit,
    name={derived SI unit}
}
@index{person,
    plural={people}
}
@index{markuplanguage,
    name={markup language}
}

@index{mediacontrol,
    name={media control}
}

@index{information}

@index{weather}

@index{measurement}

```

sample-constants.tex

This example uses the `constants.bib` file. The aim here is to just have a list of all the constants defined in the `.bib` file. (There are no references in the document.) This means I need to use:

```
selection={all}
```

in order to select all entries. I also need to alias the custom `@constant` entry type otherwise all the entries will be ignored. I decided to make `@constant` behave like `@number` for semantic reasons:

```
entry-type-aliases={constant=number}
```

The custom fields also need aliasing:

```
field-aliases={
  identifier=category,
  constantsymbol=name,
  constantname=description,
  value=user1,
  definition=user2,
  alternative=user3,
}
```

I decided to use the `altlist` style, so I've instructed `bib2gls` to determine the widest name:

```
set-widest
```

It's always a good idea to specify the glossary type when using `set-widest`, although in this example there's only one glossary so it doesn't make much difference.

```
type={main}
```

I decided to order the constants according to their (approximate) numerical value. I've aliased the custom `value` field to `user1`, so I can sort by that field using a numerical comparison:

```
sort-field={user1},
sort={double}
```

There are three entries without the `user1` field (as the custom `value` field is missing in the `.bib` file): zero, one and imaginary. In the case of zero and one the exact value can be obtained from the `name` field. Since I've change the default `sort-field`, I can't use `symbol-sort-fallback`. Instead I need to use:

```
missing-sort-fallback={name}
```

What happens with the imaginary entry? It has no real representation. The transcript (`.gls`) file shows the message:

Warning: Can't parse sort value 'i' for: imaginary

With the numerical sort methods, if the field can't be parsed the value defaults to 0. This means that both zero and imaginary have 0 as the sort value, so the `identical-sort-action` is implemented. The default setting means that `bib2gls` will fallback on comparing the entry labels, so imaginary comes before zero.

Since I'm just using the `almtree` style, I only need `glossary-tree`. I can improve efficiency in the document build by preventing the other glossary style packages from being loaded using the `nostyles` package option. This also prevents `glossary-tree` from being loaded, but I can both load it and patch the styles with `glossaries-extra-stylemods` through the option `stylemods={tree}`. Since the default list style is no longer available, I need to set a new default with `style={almtree}`. I also want to automatically insert a full stop after the description, which can be done with `postdot`. Don't forget that the `record` option is always needed when using `bib2gls`. This means that the `glossaries-extra` package needs to be loaded as follows:

```
\usepackage[record,nostyles,postdot,stylemods={tree},style={almtree}]
{glossaries-extra}
```

I've assigned the custom `constantname` field to the `description` field and the custom `constantsymbol` field to the `name` field. This means that by default the glossary list will just show the symbolic representation and the constant's name. I'd like to append the value and definition after the description. With the base `glossaries` package this would require defining a new glossary style but with `glossaries-extra` it can easily be achieved through the post-description hook.

I've aliased the custom `identifier` field to `category`, which means that all the entries will have the `category` set to `constant`. The post-description hook is obtained from `\glstrpostdesc<category>`, so I need to define the command `\glstrpostdescconstant`. A simple definition is:

```
\newcommand{\glstrpostdescconstant}{%
 \space (approximately \glscurrententrylabel)}%
 : \glscurrententrylabel}%
}
```

This is fine if all entries have the `user1` and `user2` fields set. A more generic approach tests for the existence of these fields. This can either be done with `\ifglshasfield`:

```
\newcommand{\glstrpostdescconstant}{%
 \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
 { (approximately \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
 {}%
 \ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
 {: \glscurrentfieldvalue}%
 {}%
}
```

or with `\glstrifhasfield`:

```
\newcommand{\glstrpostdescconstant}%
  \glstrifhasfield{useri}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  { (approximately \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  {}%
  \glstrifhasfield{userii}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {: \glscurrentfieldvalue}%
  {}%
```

(Note the need to use the internal field label `useri` and `userii` with `\glstrifhasfield`.)

A modification can be made to also show the alternative representation (obtained from the custom `alternative` field which has been aliased to `user3`):

```
\newcommand{\glstrpostdescconstant}%
  \glstrifhasfield{useriii}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  { (also denoted \glscurrentfieldvalue
    \glstrifhasfield{useri}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
    {, approximately \glscurrentfieldvalue}%
    )}%
  }%
  {%
    \glstrifhasfield{useri}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
    { (approximately \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
    }%
  }%
  \glstrifhasfield{userii}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {: \glscurrentfieldvalue}%
  {}%
```

If you have at least `glossaries-extra v1.31`, it's better to use:

```
\glsdefpostdesc{constant}
```

instead of:

```
\newcommand{\glstrpostdescconstant}
```

as it can guard against accidental misspelling of the `glstrpostdesc` part of the command name.

The complete code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-constants
bib2gls sample-constants
pdflatex sample-constants
```

The complete document is shown in figure 8.1.

```

\documentclass [12pt,a4paper]{article}

\usepackage [T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage{upgreek}

\usepackage [record,% use bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
postdot,% add dot after descriptions
% load glossary-tree.sty and patch styles:
stylemods={tree},
style=almtree]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={constants},% data in constants.bib
  % make @constant behave like @number
  entry-type-aliases={constant=number},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    constantsymbol=name,
    constantname=description,
    value=user1,
    definition=user2,
    alternative=user3
  },
  type=main,
  set-widest,
  sort-field=user1,
  missing-sort-fallback=name,
  sort=double,
  selection=all
]

\newcommand{\glxtrpostdesconstant}{%
  \glxtrifhasfield{useriii}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  { (also denoted \glscurrentfieldvalue
    \glxtrifhasfield{useri}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
    {, approximately \glscurrentfieldvalue}%
    {}%
  )%
}%
  {%
  \glxtrifhasfield{useri}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  { (approximately \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  {}%
}%
}
```

```

\glstrifhasfield{userii}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
{: \glscurrentfieldvalue}%
{}%
}

\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossary [title={Constants}]
\end{document}

```

sample-chemical.tex

This example just uses the `chemicalformula.bib` file. The aim here is to have a list of chemical formulae referenced in the document but not have a number list. I could use the `nonumberlist` package option to suppress the number list display, but it's more efficient to instruct `bib2gls` to not save the number list with:

```
save-locations={false}
```

All entries are defined in `chemicalformula.bib` using a custom entry type `@chemical` which needs to be aliased in order for the entries to be recognised:

```
entry-type-aliases={chemical=symbol}
```

Additionally, the entries only have custom fields, so these also need to be aliased. In this case I want the formula in the `name` field and the chemical name in the `description` field:

```
field-aliases={formula=name,chemicalname=description}
```

The `@symbol` entry type falls back on the label for the `sort` value by default, but I've decided to fallback on the `name` field for sorting:

```
symbol-sort-fallback={name}
```

An alternative approach would simply be to alias `@chemical` to `@entry` instead.

Since the `name` field contains chemical formulae rather than words, it makes more sense to use one of the letter sort methods rather than a locale collator. In this case the names contain mixtures of letters and numbers, so one of the letter-number sort methods (listed in table 5.4) would be appropriate.

I want to use the `altnumbergroup` style (provided by `glossary-tree`). Since I don't require the other style packages, I've used `nostyles` to suppress the automatic loading and `stylemods={tree}` to both load `glossary-tree` and patch it. The `altnumbergroup` style needs to know the widest name, so I've use `set-widest` for convenience. The default behaviour of the tree styles is to format the name in bold. This is done through the command `\glstreenamfmt` which is defined as:

```
\newcommand*{\glstreenamfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}
```

Constants

- i imaginary unit (also denoted j): defined as $i^2 = -1$.
- 0 zero: nothing or nil.
- γ Euler's constant (approximately 0.57721): the limit of

$$\sum_{r=1}^n \frac{1}{r} - \ln n$$

as $n \rightarrow \infty$.

- 1 one: single entity, unity.
- $\zeta(3)$ Apéry's constant (approximately 1.2020569): a special value of the Riemann zeta function.
- λ Conway's constant (approximately 1.30357): the invariant growth rate of all derived strings.
- $\sqrt{2}$ Pythagoras' constant (approximately 1.41421): the square root of 2.
- ϕ golden ratio (approximately 1.61803): the ratio $\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}$.
- e Euler's number (approximately 2.71828): base of natural logarithms.
- π pi (approximately 3.14159): the ratio of the length of the circumference of a circle to its diameter.

Figure 8.1: sample-constants.pdf

8 Examples

The group headings use `\glstreegroupheaderfmt` which defaults to `\glstreenamefmt`. Since I want to keep bold headings, I need to redefine this as well:

```
\renewcommand*{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{#1}
\renewcommand*{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}
```

(For a more compact layout, you could use `mcolalmtreegroup` instead.)

The complete code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-chemical
bib2gls --group sample-chemical
pdflatex sample-chemical
```

The complete document is shown in figure 8.2.

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[version=4]{mhchem}
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
stylemods={tree},% load glossary-tree and patch styles
style=almtreegroup]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
src={chemicalformula},% definitions in chemicalformula.bib
entry-type-aliases={chemical=symbol},
field-aliases={formula=name,chemicalname=description},
symbol-sort-fallback=name,% use name field as fallback for sort
sort=letternumber-case,% case-sensitive letter-number sort
set-widest,% needed for almtree styles
save-locations=false% don't create location lists
]

\renewcommand*{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{#1}
\renewcommand*{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}

\begin{document}
\section{Sample}

Reference Entries: \gls{Al2S043}, \gls{H20}, \gls{C6H1206},
\gls{CH3CH20H}, \gls{CH20}, \gls{0F2}, \gls{02F2}, \gls{S042-},
\gls{H30+}, \gls{0H-}, \gls{02}, \gls{AlF3}, \gls{0},
\gls{Al2Co04}, \gls{As4S4}, \gls{C10H1004}, \gls{C5H4NCO0H},
\gls{C8H10N402}, \gls{S02}, \gls{S2072-}, \gls{SbBr3},
\gls{Sc203}, \gls{Zr3P044}, \gls{ZnF2}.

\printunsrtglossary
\end{document}
```

8 Examples

1 Sample

Reference Entries: $\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$, H_2O , $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$, $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$, CH_2O , OF_2 , O_2F_2 , SO_4^{2-} , H_3O^+ , OH^- , O_2 , AlF_3 , O , Al_2CoO_4 , As_4S_4 , $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$, $\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{NCOOH}$, $\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\text{N}_4\text{O}_2$, SO_2 , $\text{S}_2\text{O}_7^{2-}$, SbBr_3 , Sc_2O_3 , $\text{Zr}_3(\text{PO}_4)_4$, ZnF_2 .

Glossary

A

AlF_3	aluminium trifluoride
$\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3$	aluminium sulfate
Al_2CoO_4	cobalt blue
As_4S_4	tetraarsenic tetrasulfide

C

CH_2O	formaldehyde
$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$	ethanol
$\text{C}_5\text{H}_4\text{NCOOH}$	niacin
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$	glucose
$\text{C}_8\text{H}_{10}\text{N}_4\text{O}_2$	caffeine
$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_4$	ferulic acid

H

H_2O	water
H_3O^+	hydronium

O

O	oxygen
OF_2	oxygen difluoride
OH^-	hydroxide ion
O_2	dioxygen
O_2F_2	dioxygen difluoride

S

SO_2	sulfur dioxide
SO_4^{2-}	sulfate
$\text{S}_2\text{O}_7^{2-}$	disulfate ion
SbBr_3	antimony(III) bromide
Sc_2O_3	scandium oxide

Z

ZnF_2	zinc fluoride
$\text{Zr}_3(\text{PO}_4)_4$	zirconium phosphate

Figure 8.2: sample-chemical.pdf

sample-bacteria.tex

This example just uses the `bacteria.bib` file. The aim here is to have a simple list of the bacteria referenced in the document. Bacteria names are often shown in the long form on first use (without the short form) and then the short form on subsequent use. This can easily be done with the long-only-short-only style. Bacteria are usually typeset in italic. It's best to create a semantic command for this:

```
\newcommand{\bacteriafont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
```

There are two methods to apply this to the bacteria entries. The first is to redefine the formatting commands used by the long-only-short-only style:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsabbrvonlyfont}[1]{\bacteriafont{#1}}
\renewcommand*{\glslongonlyfont}[1]{\bacteriafont{#1}}
```

This is fine if I don't intend to use this style for other types of abbreviations. However, I may decide to extend the document at a later date to include other abbreviations that need long-only-short-only but shouldn't be emphasized. This can be done through the use of category attributes. The font used for the `name` in the glossary is governed by the `glossnamefont` attribute, the font used for the `description` in the glossary is governed by the `glossdescfont` attribute and the font used by commands like `\gls` in the document is governed by the `textformat` attribute (glossaries-extra v1.21+). So if I set the `category` to `bacteria` then I can do:

```
\setabbreviationstyle[bacteria]{long-only-short-only}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{textformat}{bacteriafont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossnamefont}{bacteriafont}
```

and (if the `description` field is displayed in the glossary):

```
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossdescfont}{bacteriafont}
```

(Note that the attribute value is the control sequence name without the initial backslash.)

I'd like to use the `bookindex` style, which is provided by the `glossary-bookindex` package.¹ This isn't loaded automatically, but it can be loaded through the `stylemods` package option:

```
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default style packages
stylemods={bookindex},% load glossary-bookindex.sty and patch styles
style={bookindex}]{glossaries-extra}
```

I've used the `nostyles` package option to suppress loading the default style packages, since I'm not using them. If you inspect the `.log` file, you may notice that `glossary-tree` is still loaded. This is because it's required by `glossary-bookindex` as the `bookindex` style is based on the `index` style provided by `glossary-tree`.

¹`glossary-bookindex` is distributed with `glossaries-extra` v1.21+.

The bookindex style doesn't show the `description` field (which means I don't need the `glossdescfont` attribute) and, since the long-only-short-only style sets the `name` to the short form by default, only the short form will show in the glossary. I'd rather it was just the long form. This could simply be done using `replicate-fields` to copy the `long` field to the `name` field:

```
replicate-fields={long=name}
```

Again, I want to consider the possibility of adding other types of abbreviations and this might not be appropriate for them (for example, I might want some abbreviations with the long form followed by the short form in parentheses). Another approach is to redefine `\glsxtrbookindexname` which is used by the bookindex style to display the name. This takes the entry's label as the argument. The default definition is:

```
\newcommand*\glsxtrbookindexname}[1]{\glossentryname{#1}}
```

This can be changed to test for the entry's category:

```
\renewcommand*\glsxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glsifcategory{#1}{bacteria}
  {\glossentrynameother{#1}{long}}%
  {\glossentryname{#1}}%
}
```

Note that I've used `\glossentrynameother` here rather than `\glsentrylong`. This ensures that it follows the same formatting as `\glossentryname` (so it will use `\glsnamefont` or the `glossnamefont` attribute, the `glossname` attribute, and the post-name hook, if set). In this case it picks up the `glossnamefont` attribute, which is used instead of `\glsnamefont`.

If the `sort` field is missing for abbreviation styles, the fallback value is the `short` field (not the `name` field). In this case it would be better to fallback on the `long` field instead, which can be done with the `abbreviation-sort-fallback` option:

```
abbreviation-sort-fallback={long}
```

If I do add other types of abbreviations, they will all be sorted according to the `long` form, but at least this way I can have some `<long>` (`<short>`) names as well.

The complete code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-bacteria
bib2gls --group sample-bacteria
pdflatex sample-bacteria
```

This simple example only references entries on the first page so all entries just have 1 in the number list. The complete document is shown in figure 8.3.

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}
```

```
\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
```

8 Examples

```
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
% load glossary-bookindex.sty and patch styles:
stylemods={bookindex},
style=bookindex]{glossaries-extra}

% abbreviation style must be set before \GlsXtrLoadResources
\setabbreviationstyle[bacteria]{long-only-short-only}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
src=bacteria,% data in bacteria.bib
category=bacteria,
abbreviation-sort-fallback=long
]

\newcommand{\bacteriafont}[1]{\emph{#1}}

\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{textformat}{bacteriafont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossnamefont}{bacteriafont}

\renewcommand*{\glsxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
\glsifcategory{#1}{bacteria}
{\glossentrynameother{#1}{long}}%
{\glossentryname{#1}}%
}

\begin{document}
\section{First Use}

\gls{cbotulinum}, \gls{pputida}, \gls{cperfringens},
\gls{bsubtilis}, \gls{ctetani}, \gls{pcomposti},
\gls{pfimeticola}, \gls{cburnetii}, \gls{raustralis},
\gls{rrickettsii}.

\section{Next Use}

\gls{cbotulinum}, \gls{pputida}, \gls{cperfringens},
\gls{bsubtilis}, \gls{ctetani}, \gls{pcomposti},
\gls{pfimeticola}, \gls{cburnetii}, \gls{raustralis},
\gls{rrickettsii}.

\printunsrtglossary[title={Bacteria Index}]
\end{document}
```

1 First Use

Clostridium botulinum, *Pseudomonas putida*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Clostridium tetani*, *Planifilum composti*, *Planifilum fimeticola*, *Coxiella burnetii*, *Rickettsia australis*, *Rickettsia rickettsii*.

2 Next Use

C. botulinum, *P. putida*, *C. perfringens*, *B. subtilis*, *C. tetani*, *P. composti*, *P. fimeticola*, *C. burnetii*, *R. australis*, *R. rickettsii*.

Bacteria Index

B	P
<i>Bacillus subtilis</i> , 1	<i>Planifilum composti</i> , 1
	<i>Planifilum fimeticola</i> , 1
	<i>Pseudomonas putida</i> , 1
C	R
<i>Clostridium botulinum</i> , 1	<i>Rickettsia australis</i> , 1
<i>Clostridium perfringens</i> , 1	<i>Rickettsia rickettsii</i> , 1
<i>Clostridium tetani</i> , 1	
<i>Coxiella burnetii</i> , 1	

Figure 8.3: sample-bacteria.pdf

sample-units1.tex

This example uses the `baseunits.bib` and `derivedunits.bib` files. The aim here is to have a glossary in two blocks: base units and derived units. This can be achieved by first loading `baseunits.bib` with `group` set to the desired group title (“Base Units” in this case) and then load `derivedunits.bib` with the `group` set to the desired title (“Derived Units” in this case). Remember that the `group` field needs to be used as a label. If the group title contains any problematic characters or commands, then it’s better to use labels:

```
group={baseunits}
```

for the first resource set and

```
group={derivedunits}
```

for the second, and then set the group titles:

```
\glstrsetgrouptitle{baseunits}{Base Units}
\glstrsetgrouptitle{derivedunits}{Derived Units}
```

I’ve used this method to make it easier to adapt to other languages that may need extended characters in the group titles.

The `baseunits.bib` file use a custom entry type `@unit`, which must be aliased otherwise `bib2gls` will ignore the entries. I decided to use `@symbol` for semantic reasons:

```
entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol}
```

Similarly for the custom `@measurement` entry type in `derivedunits.bib`:

```
entry-type-aliases={measurement=symbol}
```

Remember that `@symbol` uses the label as the default sort fallback, so I’ve changed it to use `name` instead:

```
symbol-sort-fallback={name}
```

An alternative approach would be to alias `@unit` and `@measurement` to `@entry` instead.

Since there’s no `type` set, all entries end up in the main glossary, but since there are two resource commands the glossary ends up with sorted blocks.

The document doesn’t include any commands like `\gls`, so I’ve use `selection={all}` to select all entries in the `.bib` files. There won’t be any number lists since there are no records. I need a glossary style that shows the `symbol` field so I’ve used `mcolindexgroup`. Again I’ve suppressed the automatic loading of the default styles with `nostyles` and used `stylemods={mcols}` to load `glossary-mcols` and patch the styles. Note that although I’ve used `nostyles`, the `glossary-tree` style is loaded as it’s required by `glossary-mcols`.

As with the previous example, the custom fields need to be aliased:

```
field-aliases={
  unitname=name,
  unitsymbol=symbol,
  measurement=description
}
```

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-units1
bib2gls --group sample-units1
pdflatex sample-units1
```

The complete document is shown in figure 8.4.

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{report}

\usepackage{siunitx}
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
stylemods={mcols},% load glossary-mcols.sty and patch
style=mcolindexgroup]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={baseunits},
  % make @unit act like @symbol:
  entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=name,
    unitsymbol=symbol,
    measurement=description
  },
  symbol-sort-fallback=name,
  selection={all},
  group={baseunits}
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={derivedunits},
  % make @measurement act like @symbol:
  entry-type-aliases={measurement=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=name,
    unitsymbol=symbol,
    measurement=description
  },
  symbol-sort-fallback=name,
  selection={all},
  group={derivedunits}
```

```

]

\glxtrsetgrouptitle{baseunits}{Base Units}
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{derivedunits}{Derived Units}

\begin{document}

\printunsrtglossaries

\end{document}

```

sample-units2.tex

This example is provided for comparison with `sample-units1.tex`. Instead of having a single glossary with sorted blocks this example has two glossaries:

```

\newglossary*{baseunits}{Base Units}
\newglossary*{derivedunits}{Derived Units}

```

I've used the `section` package option to use `\section*` for the glossary titles. This overrides the default `\chapter*` which is used with book or report type of classes. I've also used the `nomain` option to suppress the creation of the main glossary as I want to define my own glossary types instead.

As before the custom entry types need to be aliased:

```
entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol}
```

for the first resource set and

```
entry-type-aliases={measurement=symbol}
```

for the second. Similarly for the custom entry fields:

```
field-aliases={
  unitname=name,
  unitsymbol=symbol,
  measurement=description
}
```

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```

pdflatex sample-units2
bib2gls --group sample-units2
pdflatex sample-units2

```

The complete document is shown in figure 8.5.

Glossary

Base Units

ampere (A) electric current
candela (cd) luminous intensity
kelvin (K) thermodynamic temperature
kilogram (kg) mass
metre (m) length
mole (mol) amount of substance
second (s) time

Derived Units

ampere per square metre (A m^{-2})
 density

candela per square metre (cd m^{-2})
 luminance

cubic metre (m^3) volume

cubic metre per kilogram
 ($\text{m}^3 \text{kg}^{-1}$) specific volume

metre per second (m s^{-1}) velocity

metre per second squared (m s^{-2})
 acceleration

mole per cubic metre (mol m^{-3})
 concentration

per metre (m^{-1}) wave number

square metre (m^2) area

Figure 8.4: sample-units1.pdf

8 Examples

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{report}

\usepackage{siunitx}
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
  nomain,% don't define 'main' glossary
  section,% use \section* for glossary headings
  nostyles,% don't load default styles
  stylemods={mcols},% load glossary-mcols.sty and patch
  style=mcolindex]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{baseunits}{Base Units}
\newglossary*{derivedunits}{Derived Units}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={baseunits},
  type=baseunits,
  % make @unit act like @symbol:
  entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=name,
    unitsymbol=symbol,
    measurement=description
  },
  symbol-sort-fallback=name,
  selection={all}
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={derivedunits},
  type=derivedunits,
  % make @measurement act like @symbol:
  entry-type-aliases={measurement=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=name,
    unitsymbol=symbol,
    measurement=description
  },
  symbol-sort-fallback=name,
  selection={all}
]

\begin{document}
\chapter*{Glossaries}

\printunsrtglossary[type=baseunits,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary[type=derivedunits,style=indexgroup]
```

```
\end{document}
```

sample-units3.tex

This is another example that uses the `baseunits.bib` and `derivedunits.bib` files. As before the custom fields need to be aliased:

```
field-aliases={
  unitname=name,
  unitsymbol=symbol,
  measurement=description
}
```

This time I want two glossaries containing all the units (base and derived) where the first glossary is ordered by name and the second is ordered by symbol. This can be done with a single resource command that instructs `bib2gls` to make the custom `@unit` and `@measurement` entry types behave like `@dualsymbol`:

```
entry-type-aliases={
  unit=dualsymbol,
  measurement=dualsymbol
}
```

This causes the `name` and `symbol` fields to be swapped in the dual list. Remember that the fallback for the `sort` field is the label for the symbol entry types so I need `symbol-sort-fallback={name}` to fallback on `name` field instead. (Alternative, I could just sort by the `name` field instead using `sort-field={name}`.)

The primary entries can still be sorted according to the default locale collator, but the dual entries need a sort method that's better suited to symbols. Fortunately, `bib2gls` has some (very limited) support for `siunitx` and is able to interpret the `\si` commands in the sample `.bib` files. Since SI units are a mix of letters and numbers I've used one of the letter-number methods listed in table 5.4.

I've decided to define a custom style for the first glossary. Since it's based on the `long3col-booktabs` style I need to load `glossary-longbooktabs`, which can conveniently be done with the `stylemods` option. This uses `longtable` (provided by `longtable`, which is automatically loaded) which means an extra `TEX` call is required in the build process to ensure the column widths are correct. Again I'm using `nostyles` to suppress the automatic loading of the default styles, however `glossary-tree` will be loaded as it's listed in the value of `stylemods` and `glossary-long` will be loaded as it's required by `glossary-longbooktabs`. I can't use my custom style in the `style` package option as it hasn't been defined at that point. The default list style is now unavailable since `nostyles` has prevented it from being defined, so I've used `style={almtree}` to ensure there's a valid default style.

Since my custom style is based on one of the long styles, I need to set the length register `\glsdescwidth` to adjust the width of the description column:

Glossaries

Base Units

ampere (A) electric current	kilogram (kg) mass
candela (cd) luminous intensity	metre (m) length
kelvin (K) thermodynamic temperature	mole (mol) amount of substance
	second (s) time

Derived Units

A

ampere per square metre (A m^{-2}) density

C

candela per square metre (cd m^{-2}) luminance
cubic metre (m^3) volume
cubic metre per kilogram ($\text{m}^3 \text{kg}^{-1}$) specific volume

M

metre per second (m s^{-1}) velocity
metre per second squared (m s^{-2}) acceleration
mole per cubic metre (mol m^{-3}) concentration

P

per metre (m^{-1}) wave number

S

square metre (m^2) area

Figure 8.5: sample-units2.pdf

8 Examples

```
\setlength{\glsdescwidth}{.4\hsize}
```

The `long3col-booktabs` style sets up a three column longtable so I just need to adjust the table header (to rename the column headers) and the way each row is formatted:

```
\newglossarystyle{units}% style name
{% base it on long3col-booktabs
  \setglossarystyle{long3col-booktabs}%
  \renewcommand*{\glossaryheader}{%
    \toprule
    \bfseries Name &
    \bfseries Measurement &
    \bfseries Symbol
    \tabularnewline\midrule\endhead
    \bottomrule\endfoot}%
% main entries:
  \renewcommand{\glossentry}[2]{%
    \glsentryitem{##1}\glstarget{##1}{\glossentryname{##1}} &
    \glossentrydesc{##1}\glspostdescription &
    \glossentrysymbol{##1}\tabularnewline
  }%
}
```

There are no sub-entries in this document so I haven't bothered to redefine `\subglossentry`. (The tabular styles aren't appropriate for hierarchical glossaries.) This puts the symbol into the third column (rather than the location list, which is ignored).

I also need to make sure I've defined a glossary for the dual entries:

```
\newglossary*{units}{Units of Measurement (by SI unit)}
```

and specify the glossary types for the primary and dual entries:

```
type={main},
dual-type={units}
```

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-units3
bib2gls --group sample-units3
pdflatex sample-units3
pdflatex sample-units3
```

The two pages of the document are shown in figure 8.6.

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}

\usepackage{siunitx}
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
```

8 Examples

```
nostyles,% don't load default styles
% load glossary-tree.sty and glossary-longbooktabs.sty and patch:
stylemods={tree,longbooktabs},
style=almtree]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{units}{Units of Measurement (by SI unit)}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  % data in baseunits.bib and derivedunits.bib:
  src={baseunits,derivedunits},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=name,
    unitsymbol=symbol,
    measurement=description
  },
  symbol-sort-fallback={name},
  selection=all,% select all entries
  % make @measurement and @unit act like @dualsymbol:
  entry-type-aliases={
    measurement=dualsymbol,
    unit=dualsymbol,
  },
  set-widest,% needed for almtree style
  dual-sort={letternumber-upperlower},
  type=main,% put primary entries in 'main' glossary
  dual-type={units}% put dual entries in 'units' glossary
]

\setlength{\glsdescwidth}{.4\hsize}

% define custom glossary style
\newglossarystyle{units}% style name
{% base it on long3col-booktabs
  \setglossarystyle{long3col-booktabs}%
  \renewcommand*{\glossaryheader}{%
    \toprule
    \bfseries Name &
    \bfseries Measurement &
    \bfseries Symbol
    \tabularnewline\midrule\endhead
    \bottomrule\endfoot}%
% main entries:
  \renewcommand{\glossentry}[2]{%
    \glsentryitem{##1}\glstarget{##1}{\glossentryname{##1}} &
    \glossentrydesc{##1}\glspostdescription &
    \glossentrysymbol{##1}\tabularnewline
```

8 Examples

```

} %
}

\begin{document}

\printunsrtglossary[title={SI Units of Measurement},
style={units}]

\printunsrtglossary[type=units]

\end{document}

```

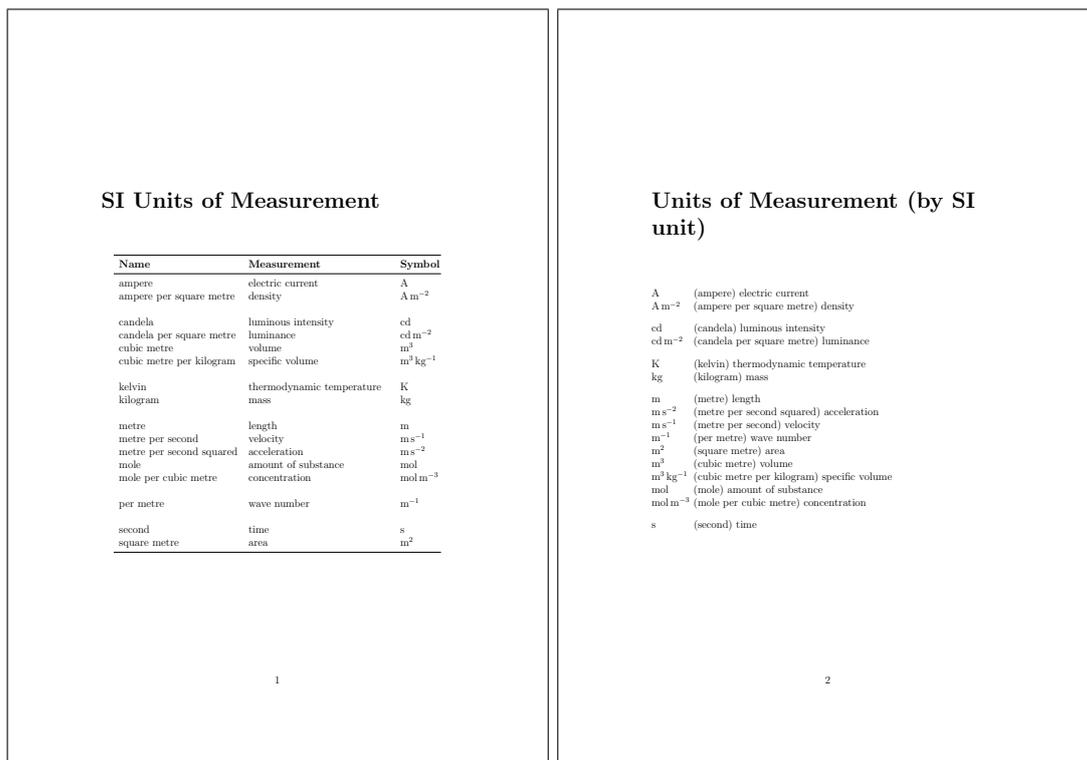


Figure 8.6: sample-units3.pdf

sample-media.tex

This example uses the sample files `books.bib`, `films.bib`, `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble.bib`. The aim is to produce a combined list of books and films in a single glossary. The films are based on some of the books so some of the entries have the same name. The default setting for identical sort values is `identical-sort-action={id}`, which means that the ordering for the duplicate names is based on the entry labels. This can

lead to the odd effect of sometimes having the film listed first (`film.thebigsleep` comes before `thebigsleep`) and sometimes having the book listed first (`brightonrock` comes before `film.brightonrock`).

One possible solution would be to also assign prefixes for the book labels, but `label-prefix` is applied to all primary entries for the given resource set and can't be applied selectively, so this would require editing the `books.bib` file.

A more consistent approach would be to fallback on the category. This means that the `category` field needs to be set. There are two simple ways to achieve this: use `category={same as base}` (which sets the `category` to `books` for entries in `books.bib` and to `films` for entries in `films.bib`) or alias the custom `identifier` field to `category`. I've chosen the latter method and also provided aliases for the custom `year` and `cast` fields:

```
field-aliases={identifier=category,year=user1,cast=user2},
identical-sort-action={category}
```

This ensures that books always come before films with the same title. An oddity is the film “Whisky Galore!” which is one character different from the book “Whisky Galore” but the default locale collator ignores punctuation so the two titles are considered identical by the collator (but not by `sort-suffix={non-unique}`). If a letter comparison was used instead, they would no longer be considered identical, but in this case the film would still be placed after the book since the film title is longer.

Since I've set the `category` I can provide semantic formatting commands (as for `sample-bacteria.tex`):

```
\newcommand*{\bookfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\newcommand*{\filmfont}[1]{\textsf{\em #1}}
\glssetcategoryattribute{book}{textformat}{bookfont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{book}{glossnamefont}{bookfont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{film}{textformat}{filmfont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{film}{glossnamefont}{filmfont}
```

I've given films a slightly different format to make them easier to distinguish from books of the same name.

Both `books.bib` and `films.bib` had the custom `year` field, indicating the year of first publication or release, which I've assigned to the `user1` field. I can define post-name hooks for each category to append the year in brackets after the name is displayed in the glossary:

```
\newcommand*{\glxtrpostnamebook}{%
\ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
{\space(published \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
}%
}

\newcommand*{\glxtrpostnamefilm}{%
\ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
{\space(released \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
}
```

```
{}%
}
```

As with the post-description hook, if you have at least glossaries-extra v1.31, it's better to use:

```
\glsdefpostname{<category>}
```

instead of:

```
\newcommand{\glsxtrpostname<category>}
```

as it can guard against accidental misspelling of the `glsxtrpostname` part of the command name.

I've assigned the `cast` field to the `user2` field, and since this field uses `BIBTEX`'s contributor markup I need to convert this to a form that's easier to customize:

```
bibtex-contributor-fields={user2}
```

I'm not sorting by this field and it would look better in the document to list the forenames before the surname so I've also done:

```
contributor-order={forenames}
```

Since I have at least version 2.28 of `datatool-base` installed, the list will be formatted using `\DTLformatlist`. If I want an Oxford comma, I need to redefine `\DTLlistformatoxford` in the document:

```
\renewcommand*{\DTLlistformatoxford}{,}
```

If I want to change “&” to “and” I also need to redefine `\DTLandname`:

```
\renewcommand*{\DTLandname}{and}
```

If `\DTLformatlist` isn't defined (`datatool-base` v2.27 or earlier), the cast list will look a little odd as it uses a comma separator between all elements of this list, including the final pair (so there's no final & or “and”).

I've provided a post-description hook `\glsxtrpostdesc<category>` to append the cast list:

```
\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostdescfilm}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {%
    \glsxtrrestorepostpunc % requires glossaries-extra v1.23+
    \_featuring \glscurrentfieldvalue
  }%
}%
}
```

This uses `\glxtrrestorepostpunc` to restore the post-description punctuation if it was suppressed with `\glxtrnopostpunc`. This means that if I decide not to include the `user2` field then the post-description punctuation will be revert back to being suppressed for entries containing `\glxtrnopostpunc` in the `description` field.

I haven't referenced any of the entries in the main body of the document, so I've used `selection={all}` to select all entries. This means that there are no number lists on the first document build (`LaTeX+bib2gls+LaTeX`) but the next build would show locations for the books that have been referenced by the film entries. Since this looks a bit odd, I've added `save-locations={false}` to prevent `bib2gls` from saving the locations.

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-media
bib2gls --group sample-media
pdflatex sample-media
```

The four pages of the document are shown in figure 8.7.

```
\documentclass [11pt , a4paper] {report}

\usepackage [T1] {fontenc}
\usepackage [colorlinks] {hyperref}
\usepackage [record , % using bib2gls
nostyles , % don't load default styles
postdot , % append a dot after descriptions
stylemods={list} , % load glossary-list.sty and fix styles
style=altlistgroup] {glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src=no-interpret-preamble ,
  interpret-preamble=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={interpret-preamble , books , films} ,
  field-aliases={identifier=category , year=user1 , cast=user2} ,
  bibtex-contributor-fields={user2} ,
  contributor-order={forenames} ,
  identical-sort-action={category} ,
  save-locations=false ,
  selection=all
]

% requires datatool-base.sty v2.28+
\renewcommand*{\DTLlistformatoxford}{ , }
\renewcommand*{\DTLandname}{and}

\newcommand*{\bookfont} [1] {\emph{#1}}
```

8 Examples

```
\newcommand*\filmfont}[1]{\textsf{\em #1}}

\glsssetcategoryattribute{book}{textformat}{bookfont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{book}{glossnamefont}{bookfont}

\glsssetcategoryattribute{film}{textformat}{filmfont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{film}{glossnamefont}{filmfont}

\newcommand*\glsxtrpostnamebook}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {\space(published \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  }%
}

\newcommand*\glsxtrpostnamefilm}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {\space (released \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  }%
}

\newcommand*\glsxtrpostdescfilm}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {%
    \glsxtrrestorepostpunc % requires glossaries-extra v1.23+
    \ featuring \glscurrentfieldvalue
  }%
  }%
}

\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

sample-people.tex

This example uses the files `people.bib`, `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble.bib`. The aim here is to have a list of people ordered alphabetically by surname with a brief description, the same list ordered by date of birth and an index of all the people without their details but with a number list indicating where that person was mentioned in the document. The first two lists shouldn't include aliases but the index should. Not all the entries defined in `people.bib` are included in the document. Those that aren't either explicitly referenced or aliased are filtered by the `selection` criteria.

Since this is just an example document all the `\gls` commands only occur on page 1, which means that each number list is just "1". A real document would have the references scattered about. The aliases haven't actually been referenced anywhere in the document.

8 Examples

1	2
3	4

Glossary

B

***The Big Sleep* (published 1939)**
novel by Raymond Chandler.

***The Big Sleep* (released 1946)**
a film based on the novel *The Big Sleep* featuring Humphrey Bogart and Lauren Bacall.

***Blade Runner* (released 1982)**
a film loosely based on the novel *Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep?* featuring Harrison Ford, Rutger Hauer, and Sean Young.

***Bleak House* (published 1852)**
novel by Charles Dickens.

***Brighton Rock* (published 1938)**
novel by Graham Greene.

***Brighton Rock* (released 1947)**
a film based on the novel *Brighton Rock* featuring Richard Attenborough, Hermione Baddeley, and William Hartnell.

D

***Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep?* (published 1968)**
novel by Philip K. Dick.

H

***The Hobbit* (published 1937)**
novel by J.R.R. Tolkien.

***The Hobbit: The Battle of Five Armies* (released 2014)**
a film based on the novel *The Hobbit* featuring Ian McKellen, Martin Freeman, and Richard Armitage.

***The Hobbit: The Desolation of Smaug* (released 2013)**
a film based on the novel *The Hobbit* featuring Ian McKellen, Martin Freeman, and Richard Armitage.

***The Hobbit: An Unexpected Journey* (released 2012)**
a film based on the novel *The Hobbit* featuring Martin Freeman, Ian McKellen, and Richard Armitage.

I

***Ice Cold in Alex* (published 1957)**
novel by Christopher Landon.

***Ice Cold in Alex* (released 1958)**
a film based on the novel *Ice Cold in Alex* featuring John Mills, Anthony Quayle, and Sylvia Sims.

***Ice Station Zebra* (published 1963)**
novel by Alistair MacLean.

***Ice Station Zebra* (released 1968)**
a film based on the novel *Ice Station Zebra* featuring Rock Hudson and Ernest Borgnine.

L

***The Long Goodbye* (published 1953)**
novel by Raymond Chandler.

***The Long Goodbye* (released 1973)**
a film based on the novel *The Long Goodbye* featuring Elliott Gould and Nina van Pallandt.

***The Lord of the Rings* (published 1954)**
novel by J.R.R. Tolkien.

***The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring* (released 2001)**
a film based on the novel *The Lord of the Rings* featuring Elijah Wood, Ian McKellen, and Orlando Bloom.

***The Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King* (released 2003)**
a film based on the novel *The Lord of the Rings* featuring Elijah Wood, Viggo Mortensen, and Ian McKellen.

***The Lord of the Rings: The Two Towers* (released 2002)**
a film based on the novel *The Lord of the Rings* featuring Elijah Wood, Ian McKellen, and Viggo Mortensen.

M

***Murder on the Orient Express* (published 1934)**
novel by Agatha Christie.

***Murder on the Orient Express* (released 1974)**
a film based on the novel *Murder on the Orient Express* featuring Albert Finney, Lauren Bacall, and Ingrid Bergman.

R

***Red Harvest* (published 1929)**
novel by Dashiell Hammett.

T

***A Tale of Two Cities* (published 1859)**
novel by Charles Dickens.

***The Trouble with Harry* (published 1950)**
novel by Jack Trevor Story.

***The Trouble with Harry* (released 1955)**
a film based on the novel *The Trouble with Harry* featuring John Forsythe and Shirley MacLaine.

U

***Ubik* (published 1969)**
novel by Philip K. Dick.

W

***Where Eagles Dare* (published 1967)**
novel by Alistair MacLean.

***Where Eagles Dare* (released 1968)**
a film based on the novel *Where Eagles Dare* featuring Richard Burton, Clint Eastwood, and Mary Ure.

***Whisky Galore* (published 1947)**
novel by Compton Mackenzie.

***Whisky Galore!* (released 1949)**
a film based on the novel *Whisky Galore* featuring Basil Radford and Joan Greenwood.

***Why Didn't They Ask Evans?* (published 1934)**
novel by Agatha Christie.

***Why Didn't They Ask Evans?* (released 1980)**
a film based on the novel *Why Didn't They Ask Evans?* featuring Francesca Annis, John Gielgud, and Bernard Miles.

***The Wizard of Oz* (released 1939)**
a film based on the novel *The Wonderful Wizard of Oz* featuring Judy Garland.

***The Wonderful Wizard of Oz* (published 1900)**
novel by L. Frank Baum.

Figure 8.7: sample-media.pdf

The `born`, `died` and `othername` fields will be ignored by default since they don't correspond to recognised keys, so the keys either need to be defined or the fields need to be mapped to existing keys. In this case I've decided to map them to the `user1`, `user2` and `user3` fields using `field-aliases`:

```
field-aliases={born=user1,died=user2,othername=user3}
```

Although the aliases haven't been referenced in the document, I've taken into account the possibility that they might later be added. To prevent them from showing in the first two lists I've filtered them out. This is easy to do since the aliases are all defined using `@index` whereas the remaining (non-aliased) entries are defined using `@entry` so `match` can be used to only select entries defined with `@entry`:

```
match={entrytype=entry}
```

I'd like the first use of `\gls` to display the full name, except for the entry that has the `first` field set. The remaining entries only have `text` set to a shortened version of the name so they need to have the `name` field copied to the `first` field using `replicate-fields`:

```
replicate-fields={name={first}}
```

I'd like the first use to show the other name in parentheses where provided. The simplest way to achieve this is by defining the post-link hook `\glsxtrpostlink<category>`. If the `category` field isn't specified it will default to `general` (for entries defined with `@entry`), so I could just define `\glsxtrpostlinkgeneral` but to allow for the possibility of extending the document to incorporate other types of entries I decided to set the `category` to `people` through the use of the `category` option:

```
category={people}
```

This means that I now need to define a command called `\glsxtrpostlinkpeople` that will be used after instances of `\gls` etc where the entry has the `category` set to `people`. This first tests if that was the first use of the entry with `\glsxtrifwasfirstuse` and then tests if the `user3` field is set. If so, it does a space followed by that field's value in parentheses. The entry's label can be obtained from `\glslabel`:

```
\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostlinkpeople}{%
  \glsxtrifwasfirstuse
  {%
    \ifglshasfield{user3}{\glslabel}%
    {\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  }%
}%
}
```

I'd also like to do something similar after the name when the entry is displayed in the glossary. This means defining the post-name hook `\glsxtrpostname<category>`, in this case `\glsxtrpostnamepeople`. The entry's label is referenced with `\glscurrententrylabel`:

```
\newcommand*{\glstrpostnamepeople}{%
\ifglshasfield{user3}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
{\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
{}}%
}
```

(A different command is used since `\gls` may occur in the description, which would interfere with the current entry label if they shared the same command to reference the label.)

The post-description hook can be used to append the birth and death dates. Although all the entries that have been selected from `people.bib` have a `died` field, I've added a check for the corresponding `user3` field in case new references are added for people who are still alive:

```
\newcommand*{\glstrpostdescpeople}{%
\ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}
{% born
\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue\,--\,%
\ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}
{% died
\glscurrentfieldvalue
}%
{}}%
)%
}%
{}}%
}
```

The first list is quite straight-forward and can be created with:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
src={people},
match={entrytype=entry},
category={people},
replicate-fields={name={first}},
field-aliases={born=user1,died=user2,othername=user3}
]
```

I have used the `sort` option and there's no document language, so `bib2gls` will sort according to my locale. The custom commands `\sortname` and `\sortvonname` ensure that the entries are all sorted alphabetically according to the surnames.

The second list can easily be created by adding the `secondary` option:

```
secondary={date:user1:bybirth}
```

This sorts according to the `user1` field (which was originally the `birth` field). Note that different locales have different default date formats. There may also be a difference in the

default date format depending on the Java locale provider. For example, if you switch from using the JRE to using the CLDR you may find a change in the default format. In case the format provided in the `.bib` file isn't recognised, the required format can be set with:

```
secondary-date-sort-format={d MMM YYYY G}
```

I've changed the date group headings by redefining `\bibglsdategroup` and `\bibglsdategrouptitle`, which means that the grouping in the `bybirth` glossary will be in the form `<year> <era>`:

```
\newcommand{\bibglsdategroup}[7]{#1#4#7}
\newcommand{\bibglsdategrouptitle}[7]{\number#1 #4}
```

I've also defined the `bybirth` glossary and supplied a title:

```
\newglossary*{bybirth}{People (Ordered by Birth)}
```

The first two glossaries have entries with fairly long names (especially those with the post-name hook), so the best style is the `altlistgroup`. The `glossaries-extra-stylemods` package patches this style to discourage page breaks occurring after group headings, so I've also used the `stylemods` option to automatically load that package. I'd like to use the `bookindex` style for the index, which is provided by `glossary-bookindex`, so I need:

```
stylemods={list,bookindex}
```

This ensures that `glossary-list` and `glossary-bookindex` are loaded and patches the list styles.

The first two glossaries would look better with a terminating full stop, so I've used the `postdot` package option. (The `bookindex` style doesn't use the `description` field and therefore doesn't use the post-description hook.) The index glossary type can be defined with the `index` package option. I've set the default style to `altlistgroup` but this can locally be changed to `bookindex` when I display the index. The `record` option is needed to use `bib2gls`, so the `glossaries-extra` package is loaded with:

```
\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
  index,% create index glossary
  postdot,% dot after descriptions
% load glossary-list.sty and glossary-bookindex.sty and patch:
  stylemods={list,bookindex},
  style={altlistgroup}]{glossaries-extra}
```

The index needs to include all the entries that have already been defined but also needs to include the aliased entries. This means that existing entries simply need their label copied to the index glossary but the other entries need to be defined so this requires setting the `action` option:

```
action={define or copy}
```

I would also like to have groups in the index (which the `bookindex` style supports) so I need to specify a field in which to save the group information using `copy-action-group-field`:

```
copy-action-group-field={indexgroup}
```

I need to remember to redefine `\glstrgroupfield` to this value before displaying the index:

```
\renewcommand{\glstrgroupfield}{indexgroup}
```

The aliased entries won't be selected by default since they haven't been used in the document, so I need to change the selection criteria with `selection`:

```
selection={recorded and deps and see}
```

In the index, I'd like the surnames first. This can be done by redefining the custom commands used in the `name` fields. There's a slight complication here. These commands aren't defined on the first \TeX run as their definitions are written to the `.glstex` file by `bib2gls`, so I can't use `\renewcommand` (although I could use `\glsrenewcommand`). Instead I've provided some custom commands:

```
\newcommand*\swaptwo[2]{#2, #1}
\newcommand*\swapthree[3]{#2 #3, #1}
```

Now I just need to make an assignment using `\let`:

```
\let\sortname\swaptwo
\let\sortart\swaptwo
\let\sortvonname\swapthree
```

This doesn't perform any check to determine if the commands are already defined so there won't be a problem on the first run.

The first two glossaries shouldn't have number lists:

```
\printunsrtglossary[title={People (Alphabetical)},nonumberlist]
\printunsrtglossary[type={bybirth},target={false},nonumberlist]
```

I'd like to use `hyperref` but I have to switch off the `hypertargets` for the second glossary otherwise I'll end up with duplicate targets. This is done with `target={false}`. All references using `\gls` etc will link to the first glossary.

I could also do this for the index but the cross-references in the aliased entries will link to the first glossary rather than the relevant entry in the index. The simplest way to fix this is to redefine `\glolinkprefix` to provide a different target:

```
\renewcommand*\glolinkprefix{idx:}
```

These redefinitions need to be done before the index. I've decided to use the starred `\printunsrtglossary*` to localise these changes, although that's not needed for this document since the index comes right at the end:

8 Examples

```
\printunsrtglossary*
[type={index},style={bookindex}]
{%
  \let\sortname\swaptwo
  \let\sortart\swaptwo
  \let\sortvonname\swapthree
  \renewcommand{\glstrgroupfield}{indexgroup}%
  \renewcommand*{\glolinkprefix}{idx:}%
}
```

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-people
bib2gls --group --break-space sample-people
pdflatex sample-people
```

The four pages of the document are shown in figure 8.8.

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{report}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
index,% create index glossary
postdot,% dot after descriptions
% load glossary-list.sty and glossary-bookindex.sty and patch:
stylemods={list,bookindex},
style=altlistgroup]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{bybirth}{People (Ordered by Birth)}

\newcommand{\bibglsdategroup}[7]{#1#4#7}
\newcommand{\bibglsdategroupptitle}[7]{\number#1\ #4}

\newcommand*{\swaptwo}[2]{#2, #1}
\newcommand*{\swapthree}[3]{#2 #3, #1}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src=no-interpret-preamble,
  interpret-preamble=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={interpret-preamble,people},
  match={entrytype=entry},
  category={people},
  replicate-fields={name={first}},
  field-aliases={born=user1,died=user2,othername=user3},
```

8 Examples

```
secondary={date:user1:bybirth},
secondary-date-sort-format={d MMM YYYY G}
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={people},
  type=index,
  category=people,
  action={define or copy},
  copy-action-group-field={indexgroup},
  selection={recorded and deps and see}
]

\newcommand*\glstxtrpostlinkpeople{%
  \glstxtrifwasfirstuse
  {%
    \ifglshasfield{user3}{\glslabel}%
    {\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
    }%
  }%
  {}%
}

\newcommand*\glstxtrpostnamepeople{%
  \ifglshasfield{user3}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  {}%
}

\newcommand*\glstxtrpostdescpeople{%
  \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}
  {% born
    \space(\glscurrentfieldvalue\,--\,%
      \ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}
      {% died
        \glscurrentfieldvalue
      }%
    }%
  )%
  }%
  {}%
}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Sample}
\section{First Use}
```

```

\gls{caesar}, \gls{wellesley}, \gls{bonaparte},
\gls{vonrichthofen} and \gls{alexander}.

\section{Next Use}

\gls{caesar}, \gls{wellesley}, \gls{bonaparte},
\gls{vonrichthofen} and \gls{alexander}.

\printunsrtglossary[title={People (Alphabetical)},nonumberlist]

\printunsrtglossary[type=bybirth,target=false,nonumberlist]

\printunsrtglossary*
[type=index,style=bookindex]
{%
  \let\sortname\swaptwo
  \let\sortart\swaptwo
  \let\sortvonname\swapthree
  \renewcommand{\glstrgroupfield}{indexgroup}%
  \renewcommand*{\gllinkprefix}{idx:}%
}
\end{document}

```

sample-authors.tex

This example uses the files `people.bib`, `books.bib`, `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble2.bib`. The aim is to reference the books in `books.bib` and have them listed by author. This means finding a way of assigning each book entry a `parent` field that contains the label identifying the relevant author in `people.bib`.

To recap, each author is defined in `people.bib` in the form:

```

@entry{dickens,
  name={\sortname{Charles}{Dickens}},
  text={Dickens},
  description={English writer and social critic},
  born={7~February 1812 AD},
  died={9~June 1870 AD},
  identifier={person}
}

```

and each book is defined in `books.bib` in the form:

```

@entry{bleakhouse,
  name={Bleak House},

```

8 Examples

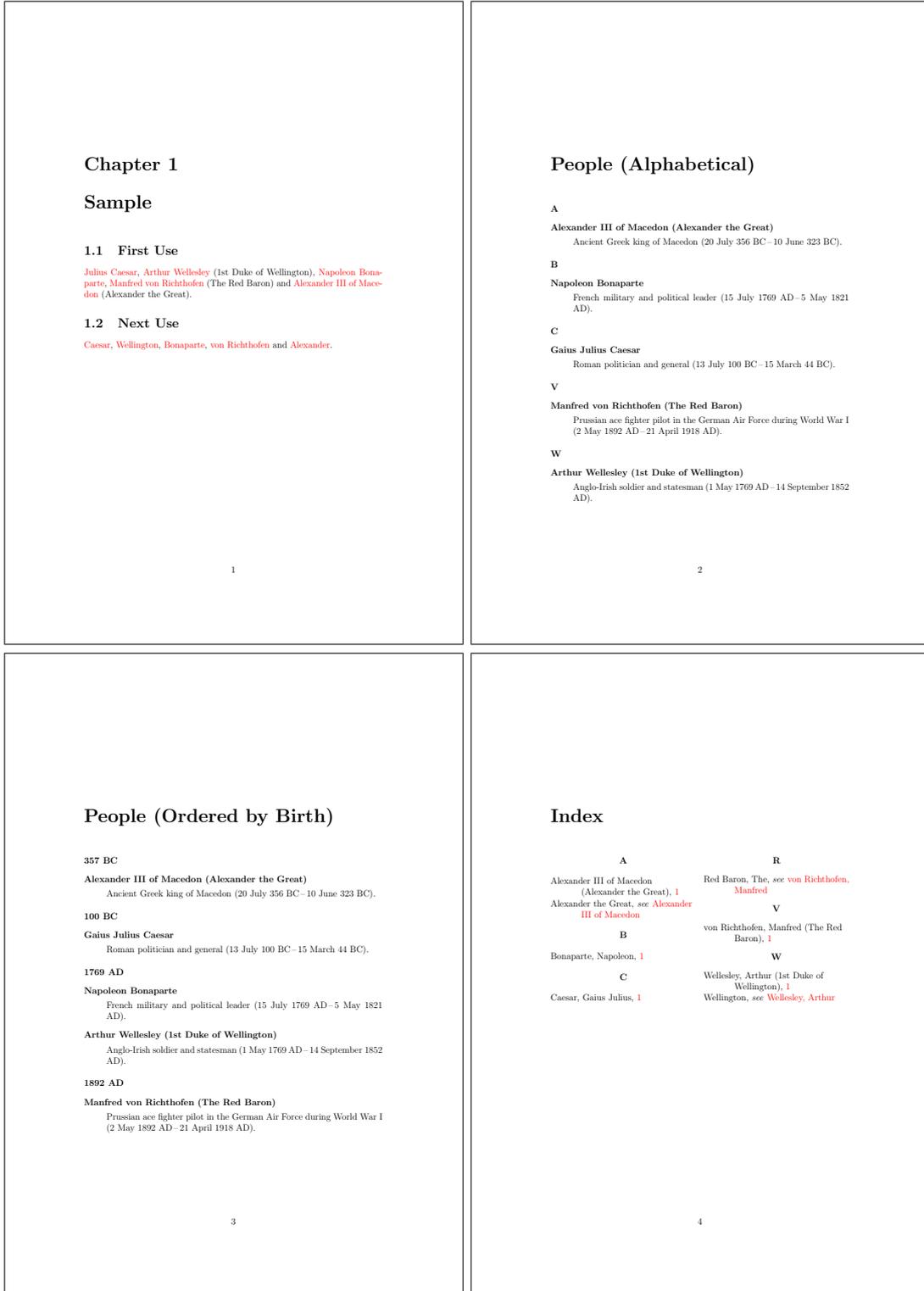


Figure 8.8: sample-people.pdf

```

description={novel by Charles Dickens},
identifier={book},
author={\sortmediacreator{Charles}{Dickens}},
year={1852}
}

```

There's a field here (the custom `author` field) that contains the author's name, and this can be aliased to the `parent` field with `field-aliases`:

```
field-aliases={author=parent}
```

but the author's label in the `people.bib` file is just the lower case surname.

Remember from chapter 2 that the interpreter will be used on the `parent` field if the value contains `\` or `{` or `}` and `interpret-label-fields={true}`. This means that with this field alias and the interpreter on, `bib2gls` will attempt to interpret the field contents. So all that's needed is to ensure that `bib2gls` is given a definition of `\sortmediacreator` that ignores the first argument and converts the second argument to lower case. This definition is available in `interpret-preamble2.bib` but, since this file uses `\renewcommand` rather than `\providecommand`, `write-preamble={false}` is required to prevent L^AT_EX from picking up this definition.

As with the `sample-people.tex` example, I need to copy the `name` field to the `first` field if that field is missing using `replicate-fields`:

```
replicate-fields={name={first}}
```

and I also want to provide a semantic command to format the book title, so the field aliases also need to convert the custom `identifier` field to `category`:

```
field-aliases={identifier=category,author=parent}
```

so that the document can set the `textformat` and `glosnamefont` attributes:

```

\newcommand*{\bookfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glssetcategoryattribute{book}{textformat}{bookfont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{book}{glosnamefont}{bookfont}

```

As with `sample-media.tex`, the terminating question mark at the end of some of the `name` fields can cause an awkward situation if `\gls` is used at the end of a sentence. This can be dealt with by getting `bib2gls` to make a note of the fields that end with sentence-terminating punctuation through the use of the `check-end-punctuation` option. In this example, the `name`, `text` and `first` fields are the same for all the books, so it's sufficient just to check the `name` field:

```
check-end-punctuation={name}
```

With `glossaries-extra` v1.23+ it's easy to hook into the post-link hook to check if `nameendpunc` exists:

8 Examples

```
\renewcommand*{\glstrifcustomdiscardperiod}[2]{%
  \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{nameendpunc}{\glslabel}{#2}{#1}%
}
```

This will now cause the full stops following:

```
\gls{whydidnttheyaskevans}.
```

and

```
\gls{doandroidsdreamofelectricsheep}.
```

to be discarded.

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-authors
bib2gls --group sample-authors
pdflatex sample-authors
```

The resulting document is shown in figure 8.9.

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
stylemods={bookindex},% load glossary-bookindex and patch styles
style=bookindex]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src=no-interpret-preamble,
  interpret-preamble=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={interpret-preamble2,people,books},
  write-preamble=false,
  interpret-label-fields,
  field-aliases={identifier=category,author=parent},
  check-end-punctuation={name},
  replicate-fields={name={first}}
]

\newcommand*{\bookfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{book}{textformat}{bookfont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{book}{glossnamefont}{bookfont}

% requires glossaries-extra v1.23
\renewcommand*{\glstrifcustomdiscardperiod}[2]{%
```

```

\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{nameendpunc}{\glslabel}{#2}{#1}%
}

\begin{document}
\section{Sample}

\gls{ataleoftwocities}. \gls{bleakhouse}. \gls{thebigsleep}.
\gls{thelonggoodbye}. \gls{redharvest}.
\gls{murderontheorientexpress}. \gls{whydidnttheyaskevans}.
\gls{icecoldinalex}. \gls{thehobbit}. \gls{thelordoftherings}.
\gls{thewonderfulwizardofoz}. \gls{whiskygalore}.
\gls{wherееaglesdare}. \gls{icestationzebra}. \gls{ubik}.
\gls{doandroidsdreamofelectricsheep}. \gls{thetroublewithharry}.
\gls{brightonrock}.

\printunsrtglossary[title={Author and Book List}]

\end{document}

```

sample-citations.tex

This example uses the `BIBTEX` file `citations.bib` to create a document that has both a bibliography created by `BIBTEX` and glossaries created by `bib2gls` listing the authors and the titles. There are no glossary reference commands, such as `\gls`, but `bib2gls` can be run with `--cite-as-record` to treat the `\citation` commands (written to the `.aux` file by `\cite`) as ignored records. Since `\cite` doesn't record the page number, there are no associated locations.

The main glossary isn't required, so I've used `nomain` to suppress its creation. I want to use both the `altlist` and `indexgroup` styles but none of the other styles, so I've used `nostyles` to prevent the automatic loading of the default style packages and `stylemods` to load the `glossary-tree` and `glossary-list` packages and patch the styles. A full stop is automatically placed after the descriptions with `postdot`.

```

\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
nomain,% don't define main glossary
postdot,% full stop after descriptions
nostyles,% don't load default styles
% load glossary-tree and glossary-list and patch styles:
stylemods={tree,list}
]{glossaries-extra}

```

Next I need to create the glossaries for the list of authors and list of titles:

```

\newglossary*{contributors}{Authors}
\newglossary*{titles}{Titles}

```

1 Sample

A Tale of Two Cities. Bleak House. The Big Sleep. The Long Goodbye. Red Harvest. Murder on the Orient Express. Why Didn't They Ask Evans? Ice Cold in Alex. The Hobbit. The Lord of the Rings. The Wonderful Wizard of Oz. Whisky Galore. Where Eagles Dare. Ice Station Zebra. Ubik. Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep? The Trouble with Harry. Brighton Rock.

Author and Book List

B	H
Lyman Frank Baum <i>The Wonderful Wizard of Oz, 1</i>	Samuel Dashiell Hammett <i>Red Harvest, 1</i>
C	L
Raymond Chandler <i>The Big Sleep, 1</i> <i>The Long Goodbye, 1</i>	Christopher Guy Landon <i>Ice Cold in Alex, 1</i>
Dame Agatha Mary Clarissa Christie <i>Murder on the Orient Express, 1</i> <i>Why Didn't They Ask Evans?, 1</i>	M
D	Compton Mackenzie <i>Whisky Galore, 1</i>
Philip K. Dick <i>Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep?, 1</i> <i>Ubik, 1</i>	Alistair MacLean <i>Ice Station Zebra, 1</i> <i>Where Eagles Dare, 1</i>
Charles Dickens <i>Bleak House, 1</i> <i>A Tale of Two Cities, 1</i>	S
G	Jack Trevor Story <i>The Trouble with Harry, 1</i>
Henry Graham Green <i>Brighton Rock, 1</i>	T
	John Ronald Reuel Tolkien <i>The Hobbit, 1</i> <i>The Lord of the Rings, 1</i>

Figure 8.9: sample-authors.pdf

The simplest way of assigning the authors to the contributors glossary and the titles to the titles glossary is to use:

```
type={contributors}
```

in the resource set and provide a modified version of `\bibglsnewbibtexentry` that assigns `type` after the options:

```
\newcommand{\bibglsnewbibtexentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2,type={titles}}{#4}%
}
```

The standard \TeX entry types need aliasing to `@bibtexentry`:

```
entry-type-aliases={\GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases}
```

and the `title` field is aliased to `name`:

```
field-aliases={title=name}
```

(The other fields aren't required for the glossary lists.) The `category` is set to the original entry type:

```
category={same as original entry}
```

So, for example, an entry that's provided in the `.bib` file with `@article` has the `category` field set to `article`. (Compare this with `category={same as entry}` which would set the `category` to `bibtexentry`.) The spawned entries are all defined using `@contributor` and aren't aliased so both the entry type and the original entry type are `contributor`.

In order to list the titles according to category, I've use this as the sort field:

```
sort-field={category}
```

and setting the sort suffix to the `name` field sub-sorts the `@bibtexentry` types according to the title (which was aliased to the `name`) and the `@contributor` types according to the author:

```
sort-suffix={name}
```

Next the groups identified by the labels `article` and `book` are assigned titles.

```
\glsxtrsetgrouptitle{article}{Articles}
\glsxtrsetgrouptitle{book}{Books}
```

The `group` field is actually set to the associated letter by the default `sort` method. The desired labels are stored in the `category` field. Since the entries are sorted by category, then they are naturally in those sub-blocks, which means that the group titles can be set by locally redefining `\glsxtrgroupfield` to `category`:

```
\printunsrtglossary*[type={titles},style={indexgroup}]
{%
  \renewcommand{\glxtrgroupfield}{category}%
  \renewcommand{\glstreenamefmt}[1]{\emph{#1}}%
  \renewcommand{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}%
}
```

There's no `description` field set for these entries, but the post-description hook can still be used to append information. In this case, I've appended a cross-reference to the bibliography. Since the bibliography entry and the glossary term both have the same label, the citation can easily be obtained with `\cite{\glscurrententrylabel}`:

```
\newcommand{\glxtrpostdescarticle}{\cite{\glscurrententrylabel}}
\newcommand{\glxtrpostdescbook}{\cite{\glscurrententrylabel}}
```

Note that this needs to be done for each `BIBTEX` entry type, but in this case the `.bib` file only contains `@article` and `@book` entries. (Similarly for the group titles above.)

The list of contributors can simply be displayed with:

```
\printunsrtglossary[type={contributors},style={altlist}]
```

This will only list the names as there's no description, but again the post-description hook can be used, in this case for the contributor category. The hook iterates over the internal list provided by the `bibtexentry` field. This allows the titles to be listed as well:

```
\newcommand{\glxtrpostdesccontributor}{%
  \glxtrifhasfield{bibtexentry}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {%
    \glxtrfieldforlistloop
    {\glscurrententrylabel}{bibtexentry}%
    {\contributorhandler}%
  }%
  {\par No titles.}%
}
```

The handler macro displays the name of the associated `@bibtexentry` term and the citation:

```
\newcommand{\contributorhandler}[1]{\par\glsentryname{#1} \cite{#1}}
```

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-citations
bib2gls --group --cite-as-record sample-citations
bibtex sample-citations
pdflatex sample-citations
pdflatex sample-citations
```

The resulting document is shown in figure 8.10.

8 Examples

```
\documentclass[12pt,a4paper]{article}

\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
nomain,% don't define main glossary
postdot,% full stop after descriptions
nostyles,% don't load default styles
% load glossary-tree and glossary-list and patch styles:
stylemods={tree,list}
]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{contributors}{Authors}
\newglossary*{titles}{Titles}

\newcommand{\bibglsnewbibtexentry}[4]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{name={#3},#2,type={titles}}{#4}%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={citations},% data in citations.bib
  entry-type-aliases={\GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases},
  field-aliases={
    title=name
  },
  type={contributors},
  category={same as original entry},
  sort-field={category},
  sort-suffix={name}
]

\glstrsetgrouptitle{article}{Articles}
\glstrsetgrouptitle{book}{Books}

\newcommand{\contributorhandler}[1]{\par\glstentryname{#1} \cite{#1}}

\newcommand{\glstrpostdesccontributor}{%
  \glstrifhasfield{bibtexentry}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {%
    \glstrfieldforlistloop
    {\glscurrententrylabel}{bibtexentry}%
    {\contributorhandler}%
  }%
  {\par No titles.}%
}

\newcommand{\glstrpostdescarticle}{\cite{\glscurrententrylabel}}
\newcommand{\glstrpostdescbook}{\cite{\glscurrententrylabel}}
```

8 Examples

```

\begin{document}
This is a sample document with some citations~\cite{macaw,parrot}
and some more citations~\cite{duck2018,duck2016} and don't
forget~\cite{ing,parrot2012} and lastly~\cite{quackalot}.

\printunsrtglossary[type=contributors,style=altlist]
\printunsrtglossary*[type=titles,style=indexgroup]
{%
  \renewcommand{\glxstrgroupfield}{category}%
  \renewcommand{\glstreenamfmt}[1]{\emph{#1}}%
  \renewcommand{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}%
}

\bibliographystyle{unsrt}
\bibliography{citations}

\end{document}

```

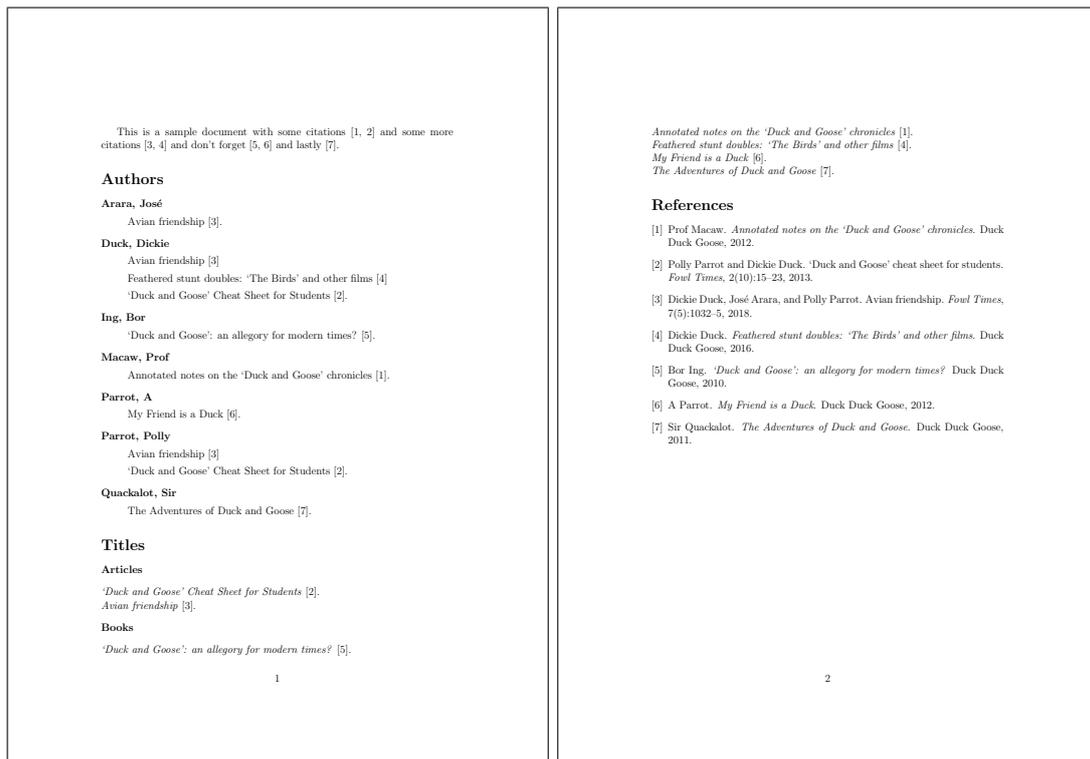


Figure 8.10: sample-citations.pdf

sample-msymbols.tex

This example uses `bigmathsymbols.bib`, `mathsrelations.bib`, `binaryoperators.bib`, `unaryoperators.bib` and `mathgreek.bib`. The `stix` package is required for some of the commands used in `bigmathsymbols.bib`, so that must be loaded in the document.

I'm using the `mcolalttree` style for this document, which means that the `glossary-mcols` package is required and the styles need patching, which can be done with the `stylemods` package option:

```
\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
postdot,% append a dot after descriptions
stylemods={mcols},% load glossary-mcols.sty and patch
style={mcolalttree}]{glossaries-extra}
```

I'm not using a group-based style which suggests that I don't need the `--group` switch. However, although I don't want group titles, I still want a slight gap between logical groups, which means that I still need this switch. If I added the `nogroupskip` package option, then I can omit `--group`.

I'm not referencing any of the entries in the document as I'm just generating a complete list of all the defined symbols. This means I need to tell `bib2gls` to select all entries and don't bother saving the `location` field:

```
save-locations={false},
selection={all}
```

Since I'm using a style that's based on `alttree` I need to find the widest `name`, which can be done with `set-widest`.

I've used `field-aliases` to convert the custom `identifier` field to `category`, which means I can also sort by that field:

```
sort-field={category},
field-aliases={identifier=category}
```

Since this will cause identical sort values, I need to provide a fallback. Here I've decided to fallback on the `description` field:

```
identical-sort-action={description}
```

This means that entries will be ordered by `category` and then `description`, which naturally creates blocks of symbol types in the glossary.

Remember that I want a small vertical gap between each logical block. These need the `group` field which, with the default locale sort, is obtained from the first letter of the sort value. In this case the sort value is obtained from the `category` field, and as each category happens to start with a different letter, this means I get the desired effect. However, in the event that I add more entries with a new category that happens to start with the same letter as an existing category, it's better to provide a more future-proof method, so I've set the `group` field to fetch its value from the `category` field:

```
replicate-fields={category=group}
```

(Since the `field-aliases` option is always performed before `replicate-fields`, the `category` field will already have been set and is available for replicating.) This means that the `group` label is the same as the `category` label rather than just the first letter. (For a quick check, change the glossary style to `mcolalmtreegroup` to display the group titles.)

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-msymbols
bib2gls --group sample-msymbols
pdflatex sample-msymbols
```

The resulting document is shown in figure 8.11.

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage{stix}

\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
postdot,% append a dot after descriptions
stylemods={mcols},% load glossary-mcols.sty and patch
style=mcolalmtree]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={bigmathsymbols,mathgreek,
  mathsrelations,binaryoperators,unaryoperators},
  sort-field={category},
  identical-sort-action={description},
  field-aliases={identifier=category},
  replicate-fields={category=group},
  set-widest,
  save-locations=false,
  selection=all
]

\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}
```

sample-maths.tex

This example uses `bigmathsymbols.bib` and `mathsubjects.bib`. It has a fairly similar preamble to `sample-msymbols.tex`, but `no-interpret-preamble.bib` and `interpret-preamble.bib` are now needed to provide the `\sortart` command:

8 Examples

Glossary	
<p> $+$ addition. \div division. \times multiplication. $-$ subtraction. \oint \oint contour integral. \iint \iint double integral. \int \int integral. \oiint \oiint surface integral. \iiint \iiint triple integral. \iiint \iiint volume integral. α alpha. β beta. χ chi. δ delta. ϵ epsilon. ε epsilon (variant). η eta. γ gamma. i iota. κ kappa. κ kappa (variant). λ lambda. μ mu. ν nu. ω omega. o omicron. ϕ phi. φ phi (variant). π pi. ϖ pi (variant). ψ psi. ρ rho. ϱ rho (variant). σ sigma. </p>	<p> ζ sigma (variant). τ tau. θ theta. ϑ theta (variant). υ upsilon. ξ xi. ζ zeta. \odot \odot n-ary circled dot operator. \oplus \oplus n-ary circled plus operator. \otimes \otimes n-ary circled times operator. \amalg \amalg n-ary coproduct. \cap \cap n-ary intersection. \wedge \wedge n-ary logical and. \vee \vee n-ary logical or. \prod \prod n-ary product. \sqcap \sqcap n-ary square intersection operator. \sqcup \sqcup n-ary square union operator. \sum \sum n-ary summation. \cup \cup n-ary union. \cup \cup n-ary union operator with plus. \approx approximately. $=$ equals. $>$ greater than. \geq greater than or equal to. \in in. $<$ less than. \leq less than or equal to. \gg much greater than. \ll much less than. \neq not equals. \ni not in. $!$ factorial. \forall for all. $-$ minus. $+$ plus. </p>

Figure 8.11: sample-msymbols.pdf

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={no-interpret-preamble},
  interpret-preamble={false}
]
```

There's also an extra custom field to alias:

```
field-aliases={identifier=category,format=user1}
```

I've aliased `format` to `user1` since `\glsxtrfmt` defaults to that field. If I decided to use a different field I also need to remember to redefine `\GlsXtrFmtField` to match.

In this document I only want to select entries that have been indexed, so I've omitted the `selection` option I used in the `sample-msymbols.tex` example, however I still don't want any number lists so I still have `save-locations={false}`.

I want `\glsxtrfmt` to index the term (which it doesn't by default) so that means I need to redefine `\GlsXtrFmtDefaultOptions` to prevent it from using `noindex`:

```
\renewcommand{\GlsXtrFmtDefaultOptions}{}
```

I've provided some convenient wrapper commands that use `\glsxtrfmt*` or the non-linking `\glsxtrentryfmt` that are in the form:

```
\newcommand{\set}[2][\glsxtrfmt*]{#1}{set}{#2}}
\newcommand{\nlset}[1]{\glsxtrentryfmt{set}{#1}}
```

The use of the starred form allows:

```
\[\set{A} = \gls{bigcup}_{i=1}^n \set{B}_{i} \]
```

which produces:

$$A = \bigcup_{i=1}^n B_i$$

Note the difference if the optional arguments aren't used:

```
\[\set{A} = \gls{bigcup}_{i=1}^n \set{B}_i \]
```

This produces:

$$A = \bigcup_{i=1}^n B_i$$

Be careful with the set cardinality example. You might be tempted to nest `\set` within the argument of `\setcard` but this results in nested hyperlinks. These are unpredictable and there's no consistent handling of them between different PDF viewers. It can also be confusing to the reader. If $|\mathcal{B}_1 \cup \mathcal{B}_2|$ shows up as what appears to be a single hyperlink, where would the reader expect the target? This is the reason for providing the non-linking commands like `\nlset` and `\nlsetcard`.

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

8 Examples

```
pdflatex sample-maths
bib2gls --group sample-maths
pdflatex sample-maths
```

The resulting document is shown in figure 8.12.

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage{amssymb}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
postdot,% append a dot after descriptions
stylemods={mcols},% load glossary-mcols.sty and patch
style=mcolalttree]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={no-interpret-preamble},
  interpret-preamble=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={interpret-preamble,bigmathsymbols,mathsobjects},
  sort-field={category},
  identical-sort-action={description},
  field-aliases={identifier=category,format=user1},
  replicate-fields={category=group},
  set-widest,
  save-locations=false
]

\renewcommand{\GlsXtrFmtDefaultOptions}{}

% requires glossaries-extra.sty v1.23+
\newcommand{\set}[2][\]{\glstrfmt*{#1}{set}{#2}}
\newcommand{\nlset}[1]{\glstrentryfmt{set}{#1}}
\newcommand*{\setcontents}[2][\]{\glstrfmt*{#1}{setcontents}{#2}}
\newcommand*{\setmembership}[2]{\glstrfmt*{setmembership}{{#1}{#2}}}
\newcommand*{\setcard}[2][\]{\glstrfmt*{#1}{setcard}{#2}}
\newcommand*{\nlsetcard}[1]{\glstrentryfmt{setcard}{#1}}
\newcommand*{\transpose}[2][\]{\glstrfmt*{#1}{transpose}{#2}}
\newcommand*{\nltranspose}[1]{\glstrentryfmt{transpose}{#1}}
\newcommand*{\inv}[2][\]{\glstrfmt*{#1}{inverse}{#2}}
\newcommand*{\nlinv}[1]{\glstrentryfmt{inverse}{#1}}
\newcommand*{\Vtr}[2][\]{\glstrfmt*{#1}{vector}{#2}}
\newcommand*{\nlVtr}[1]{\glstrentryfmt{vector}{#1}}
```

8 Examples

```

\newcommand*\Mtx[2][\glsxtrfmt[#1]{matrix}{#2}]
\newcommand*\nlMtx[1]{\glsxtrentryfmt{matrix}{#1}}

\begin{document}
\section{Sets}
The universal set ( $\gls{universalset}$ ) contains everything.
The empty set ( $\gls{emptyset}$ ) contains nothing.
Some assignments:
\[
\set{B}_1 = \setcontents{1, 3, 5, 7}, \quad
\set{B}_2 = \setcontents{2, 4, 6, 8}, \quad
\set{B}_3 = \setcontents{9, 10}
\]
Define:
\[
\set{A} = \gls{bigcup}_{i=1}^3 \set{B}_i
= \setcontents{1, \ldots, 10}
\]
The cardinality of a set  $\gls{set}$  is denoted  $\gls{setcard}$ 
and is the number of elements in the set.
\[
\setcard{\nlset{B}_1} = 4, \quad
\setcard{\nlset{B}_2} = 4, \quad
\setcard{\nlset{B}_3} = 2, \quad
\setcard{\nlset{B}_1 \cup \nlset{B}_2} = 8, \quad
\nlsetcard{\gls{emptyset}} = 0
\]

\section{Spaces}
A number space (denoted  $\gls{numberspace}$ ) is characterised
by a set of entities with a set of axioms. For example:
\begin{align*}
\gls{naturalnumbers}
&= \setmembership{x}{x \text{ is positive integer}} \\
\gls{integernumbers}
&= \setmembership{x}{x \text{ is an integer}} \\
\gls{realnumbers}
&= \setmembership{x}{x \text{ is a real number}}
\end{align*}

\section{Vectors and Matrices}

A matrix (denoted  $\gls{matrix}$ ) is a rectangular array of values.
A vector (denoted  $\gls{vector}$ ) is a column or row of values (that
is a one-dimensional matrix).
\[
\gls{identitymatrix} \Vtr{x} = \Vtr{x}, \quad
\Mtx{A} \inv{\nlMtx{A}} = \gls{identitymatrix}, \quad
\]

```

```

\inv{\nlVtr{x}}\gls{1vec} = \gls{sum}[_i] x_i
\]

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

sample-textsymbols.tex

This example uses `miscsymbols.bib`. This requires both `marvosym` and (with the `weather` option) `ifsym`. Unfortunately both define the commands `\Sun` and `\Lightning`, so these commands need to be undefined after the first package is loaded and before the second. Since I want the definitions provide by `ifsym` I have to first load `marvosym`, then undefine the conflicting commands and then load `ifsym`:

```

\usepackage{etoolbox}
\usepackage{marvosym}
\undef\Sun
\undef\Lightning
\usepackage[weather]{ifsym}

```

The `etoolbox` package is also loaded as it provides `\undef`. (An alternative is to modify the `miscsymbols.bib` file so that it uses `ifsym`'s more generic `\textweathersymbol` command and omit the `weather` option when loading the package, but the method used here demonstrates how to deal with such conflicts.)

The custom entry type `@icon` must be aliased for the entries to be recognised:

```
entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol}
```

Since none of the entries have a `name` or `description` field, the custom fields `icon` and `icondescription` need to be aliased to them. The document uses the `almtreegroup` style where the groups are obtained from the `category`, which again I obtain from the custom `identifier` field using:

```

field-aliases={
  identifier=category,
  icon=name,
  icondescription=description},
replicate-fields={category=group}

```

The `group` field is just a label and an appropriate title needs to be supplied for each group label:

```

\glxtrsetgrouptitle{information}{Information}
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{mediacontrol}{Media Controls}
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{weather}{Weather Symbols}

```

8 Examples

1 Sets

The universal set (\mathcal{U}) contains everything. The empty set (\emptyset) contains nothing. Some assignments:

$$\mathcal{B}_1 = \{1, 3, 5, 7\}, \quad \mathcal{B}_2 = \{2, 4, 6, 8\}, \quad \mathcal{B}_3 = \{9, 10\}$$

Define:

$$\mathcal{A} = \bigcup_{i=1}^3 \mathcal{B}_i = \{1, \dots, 10\}$$

The cardinality of a set \mathcal{S} is denoted $|\mathcal{S}|$ and is the number of elements in the set.

$$|\mathcal{B}_1| = 4, \quad |\mathcal{B}_2| = 4, \quad |\mathcal{B}_3| = 2, \quad |\mathcal{B}_1 \cup \mathcal{B}_2| = 8, \quad |\emptyset| = 0$$

2 Spaces

A number space (denoted \mathbb{S}) is characterised by a set of entities with a set of axioms. For example:

$$\mathbb{N} = \{x : x \text{ is positive integer}\}$$

$$\mathbb{Z} = \{x : x \text{ is an integer}\}$$

$$\mathbb{R} = \{x : x \text{ is a real number}\}$$

3 Vectors and Matrices

A matrix (denoted \mathbf{M}) is a rectangular array of values. A vector (denoted \mathbf{v}) is a column or row of values (that is a one-dimensional matrix).

$$\mathbf{I}\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}, \quad \mathbf{A}\mathbf{A}^{-1} = \mathbf{I}, \quad \mathbf{x}^{-1}\mathbf{1} = \sum_i x_i$$

Glossary

\mathbf{I}	the identity matrix.	\mathbb{Z}	the set of integers.
\mathbf{M}^{-1}	the inverse of \mathbf{M} .	\mathbb{N}	the set of natural numbers.
\mathbf{M}	a matrix.	\mathbb{R}	the set of real numbers.
\mathbf{v}	a vector.		
$\mathbf{1}$	the vector of 1s.	$ \mathcal{S} $	the cardinality of \mathcal{S} .
$\sum \Sigma$	n -ary summation.	\emptyset	the empty set.
$\bigcup \cup$	n -ary union.	\mathcal{S}	a set.
\mathbb{S}	a number space.	$\{\dots\}$	set contents.
		$\{\mathbf{x} : \dots\}$	set membership.
		\mathcal{U}	the universal set.

Figure 8.12: sample-maths.pdf

This also requires sorting first by `category` and then fallback on another field. The most appropriate here is the `description` field, but instead of using `identical-sort-action`, I'm using `sort-suffix`, which works better with the default locale sort when the fallback field consists of words or phrases.

```
sort-field={category},
sort-suffix={description},
sort-suffix-marker={|}
```

Since I'm using one of the `almtree` styles, I need to set the widest name:

```
set-widest
```

In this case, `bib2gls` won't be able to determine the widest name since it doesn't recognise any of the commands, so it will have to use the fallback command, which will use one of the commands provided by the `glossaries-extra-stylemods` package.

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-textsymbols
bib2gls --group sample-textsymbols
pdflatex sample-textsymbols
```

The resulting document is shown in figure 8.13.

```
\documentclass[a4paper]{article}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}

\usepackage{etoolbox}
\usepackage{marvosym}

% package conflict, need to undefine conflicting commands
\undef\Sun
\undef\Lightning

\usepackage[weather]{ifsym}

\usepackage[record,% using bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
postdot,% append a dot after descriptions
stylemods={tree},% load glossary-mcols.sty and patch
style=almtreegroup]{glossaries-extra}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={miscsymbols},
% make @icon behave like @symbol:
  entry-type-aliases={icon=symbol},
  field-aliases={
```

```

    identifier=category,
    icon=name,
    icondescription=description
  },
  replicate-fields={category=group},
  sort-field={category},
  sort-suffix={description},
  sort-suffix-marker={|},
  set-widest,
  selection=all
]

\glxtrsetgrouptitle{information}{Information}
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{mediacontrol}{Media Controls}
\glxtrsetgrouptitle{weather}{Weather Symbols}

\begin{document}
\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

sample-markuplanguages.tex

This example uses `markuplanguages.bib`. Since the file includes abbreviations, any commands that must be used before abbreviations are defined need to go before `\GlsXtrLoadResources`. This includes the abbreviation style, which I've set to `long-short-desc`:

```
\setabbreviationstyle[markuplanguage]{long-short-desc}
```

This style sets the `name` field using `\glxtrlongshortdescname`, which defaults to the long form followed by the short form in parentheses. I decided to switch this round so that the short form is shown first, which conveniently matches the default `abbreviation-sort-fallback`.

```

\renewcommand*{\glxtrlongshortdescname}{%
  \protect\glsabbrvfont{\the\glsshorttok}\space
  \glxtrparen{\glslongfont{\the\glslongtok}}%
}

```

(The long form is still shown before the short form on the first use of `\gls` in the document. The switch in the above code only affects how the term is displayed in the glossary.)

This redefinition must be done before the abbreviations are defined as it's expanded when the `name` field is set. (Note the need to protect commands that shouldn't be expanded.) If I decide not to change the `name` format in this way, I would then need to use `abbreviation-sort-fallback={long}`.

I also decided to make use of the custom command `\abbrvtag` that marks up the letters in the `long` field used to obtain the abbreviation. As with the abbreviation style, this must be done before the abbreviations are defined:

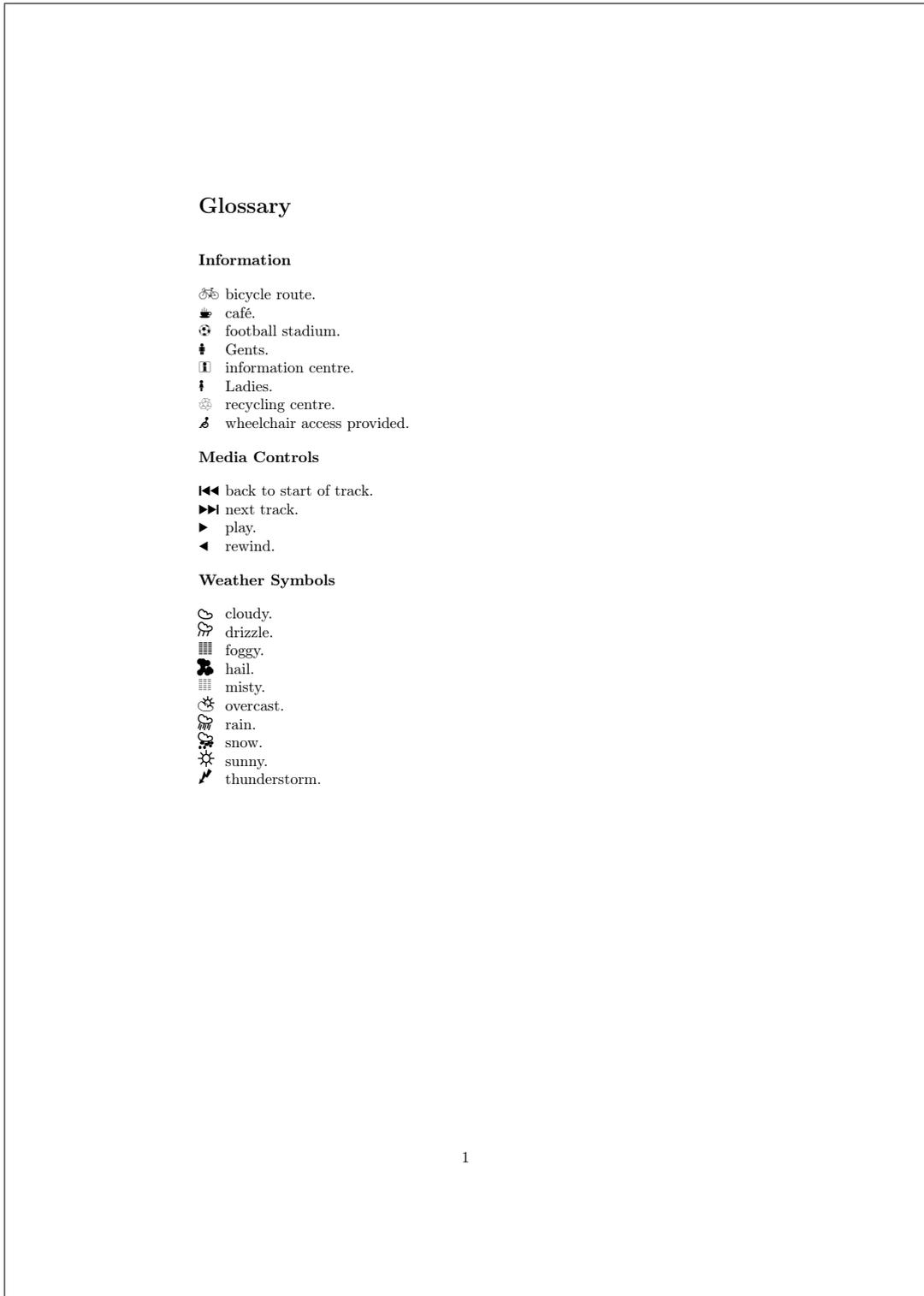


Figure 8.13: sample-textsymbols.pdf

```
\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging{markuplanguage}{\abbrvtag}
```

If you accidentally place it after `\GlsXtrLoadResources`, you'll encounter an error on the second \LaTeX run (but not the first). This is because `\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging` requires that the supplied command (`\abbrvtag` in this case) be undefined. On the first \LaTeX it's undefined, but on the second it picks up the `@preamble` definition, which is now in the resource file.

The tagging format is governed by `\glsxtrtagfont` which underlines its argument by default. I've redefined it to also convert the letter to upper case:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsxtrtagfont}[1]{\underline{\MakeTextUppercase{#1}}}
```

Note that in the `mathml` case, the first tag consists of more than one letter:

```
long={\abbrvtag{m\NoCaseChange{ath}}emathical }#markuplang
```

Here `\NoCaseChange` prevents `\MakeTextUppercase` from applying the case change.

The default `selection` criteria includes entries that have been indexed and any cross-references. Some of the `description` fields include `\glsxtrshort`, which `bib2gls` picks up and the referenced entry is included in the dependency list. However, I don't want any indexing performed by commands occurring in the glossary. This can be dealt with in one of two ways: either switch the format to `glsignore` or suppress the indexing by changing the default options with `\GlsXtrSetDefaultGlsOpts`. In this case I decided to turn the records into ignored records:

```
\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat{glsignore}
```

This means that some of the entries won't have location lists, so I've defined a post-description hook that inserts a full stop after the `description` if there's no location otherwise it inserts a comma:

```
\newcommand{\glsxtrpostdescmarkuplanguage}{%
  \glsxtrifhasfield{location}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {,}%
  {.}%
}
```

I've used `loc-suffix` to append a full stop after the location lists. This doesn't affect the entries that haven't been indexed.

I decided to convert the first letter of the `name` field to upper case. Since the `name` is implicitly set for abbreviations based on the style, I've decided to implement this through the `glossname` attribute rather than using `name-case-change`:

```
\glssetcategoryattribute{markuplanguage}{glossname}{firstuc}
```

If this line causes an error when the glossary is displayed that goes away if it's commented out, make sure you have at least version 2.06 of `mfirstuc`. For most of the entries, this doesn't make a difference as they already start with a capital. It's only the `markdown` entry that's actually affected.

The description case change is dealt with by `bib2gls` instead:

8 Examples

```
description-case-change={firstuc}
```

This works better than the `glossdesc` attribute as `bib2gls` can convert commands like `\glstext` into `\Glstext` which `\makefirstuc` can't do. (Although in this particular example, there's no difference as both instances of `\glstext` already produce upper case text.)

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-markuplanguages
bib2gls --group sample-markuplanguages
pdflatex sample-markuplanguages
```

The resulting document is shown in figure 8.14.

```
\documentclass[fontsize=12pt]{scrartcl}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}

\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
% load glossary-tree.sty and patch styles:
stylemods={tree},
style=treegroup]{glossaries-extra}

% abbreviation style must be set before \GlsXtrLoadResources
\setabbreviationstyle[markuplanguage]{long-short-desc}

\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging{markuplanguage}{\abbrvtag}

\renewcommand*{\glstxtrlongshortdescname}{%
\protect\protect\glssabbrvfont{\the\glssshorttok}\space
\glstxtrparen{\glslongfont{\the\glslongtok}}}%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
src=markuplanguages,% data in markuplanguages.bib
loc-suffix,
category=markuplanguage,
description-case-change=firstuc
]

\newcommand{\glstxtrpostdescmarkuplanguage}{%
\glstxtrifhasfield{location}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
{,}%
{.}%
}

\glsssetcategoryattribute{markuplanguage}{glossname}{firstuc}
```

```

\renewcommand*{\glxtrtagfont}[1]{\underline{\MakeTextUppercase{#1}}}

\begin{document}

\section{First Use}

\gls{LaTeX}, \gls{markdown}, \gls{xhtml}, \gls{mathml}, \gls{svg}.

\section{Next Use}

\gls{LaTeX}, \gls{markdown}, \gls{xhtml}, \gls{mathml}, \gls{svg}.

\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat{glsignore}
\printunsrtglossary
\end{document}

```

sample-usergroups.tex

This example uses `usergroups.bib`. This requires Xe_{La}TeX or Lua_{La}TeX as the `.bib` file includes non-ASCII labels. The entries include fields in different languages, the main one being English. If an entry has a non-English `name` or `long` field, it also includes the custom field `translation` that provides an (approximate) translation. If this field is present, the language is given by the first element of the custom `language` field.

In this case, I'm providing keys for the custom `language` and `translation` fields, and, for a bit of variety from the other examples, I'm ignoring the custom `identifier` field. The custom keys are provided with `\glsaddstoragekey`:

```

\glsaddstoragekey{language}{}{\glsentrylanguage}
\glsaddstoragekey{translation}{}{\glsentrytranslation}

```

The `.bib` file includes abbreviations. Remember that the abbreviation style must be set before the resource file is loaded:

```

\setabbreviationstyle[tug]{long-short-user}

```

For this example, I'm explicitly setting the `category` field to `tug`:

```

category={tug}

```

Some of the fields end with a full stop. This isn't a problem with the `long` field as the first use follows the long form with the short form in parentheses, but it will be a problem on subsequent use if the `short` field ends with a full stop. This means I need to check for end-of-sentence punctuation for the `short` field. It's also a good idea to do this for the `name` field for the non-abbreviations.

```

check-end-punctuation={name,short}

```

1 First Use

\LaTeX , markdown, extensible hypertext markup language (XHTML), mathematical markup language (MathML), scalable vector graphics (SVG).

2 Next Use

\LaTeX , markdown, XHTML, MathML, SVG.

Glossary

H

HTML (HyperText Markup Language) The standard markup language for creating web pages.

L

\LaTeX A format of \TeX designed to separate content from style, 1.

M

Markdown A lightweight markup language with plain text formatting syntax, 1.

MathML (Mathematical Markup Language) Markup language for describing mathematical notation, 1.

S

SVG (Scalable Vector Graphics) XML-based vector image format, 1.

T

\TeX A format for describing complex type and page layout often used for mathematics, technical, and academic publications.

X

XHTML (eXtensible HyperText Markup Language) XML version of HTML, 1.

XML (eXtensible Markup Language) A markup language that defines a set of rules for encoding documents.

Figure 8.14: sample-markuplanguages.pdf

It's now possible to discard a full stop that follows `\gls`:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsxtrifcustomdiscardperiod}[2]{%
\ifglshasshort{\glslabel}%
{%
\glsxtrifwasfirstuse{}}%
{%
\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{shortendpunc}{\glslabel}{#2}{#1}%
}%
}%
{%
\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{nameendpunc}{\glslabel}{#2}{#1}%
}%
}
```

This first tests if the entry that's just been referenced has a `short` field. If it has, then the next test is to check if that was the first use for that entry. If it was, nothing is done. If it wasn't, then `\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef` is used to determine if `shortendpunc` has been set. If it has been set then the period discard function is performed. If the entry doesn't have a `short` field, then the `nameendpunc` field needs checking instead.

Since the document requires $X_{\text{L}}\text{TeX}$ or LuaTeX and has some non-ASCII characters, it needs `fontspec` and an appropriate font. In this case I've chosen "Linux Libertine O". If you don't have it installed, you'll need to change it.

```
\usepackage{fontspec}
\setmainfont{Linux Libertine O}
```

Since it's a multilingual document I also need `polyglossia` with the main language set to `english`:

```
\usepackage{polyglossia}
\setmainlanguage[variant=uk]{english}
```

Now comes the difficult bit. The document needs to determine what other languages need to be loaded. The `tracklang` package provides a convenient interface when dealing with language tags. This is automatically loaded by `glossaries` but I've loaded it here explicitly as a reminder:

```
\usepackage{tracklang}
```

Once the resource file has been loaded, I need to iterate over all the defined entries and check if the `translation` field has been set. If it has, then the first language tag in the `language` field will supply the language, but this needs to be converted from the IETF language tag to a language name recognised by `polyglossia`.

Iterating over all entries can be done with `\forlentries` but remember that no entries will be defined before `bib2gls` has been run, so this does nothing on the first TeX run.

```

\forlentries{\thislabel}{%
  \glxtrifhasfield{translation}{\thislabel}%
  {%
    % requires glossaries-extra v1.24
    \glxtrforcsvfield{\thislabel}{language}{\addfirstlang}%
  }%
  {}%
}

```

Within the outer (`\forlentries`) loop, there's a check for the `translation` field using `\glxtrifhasfield`. If it's present, then the first element of the `language` field is required. The simplest way to get this is to use `\glxtrforcsvfield` which iterates over all elements of the given field (`language` in this case) and break out of the loop (with `\glxtrendfor`) once the language has been found.

The handler function (`\addfirstlang`) is defined so that it adds the given language tag as a tracked language using `\TrackLocale`. This command sets `\TrackLangLastTrackedDialect` to the associated (`tracklang`) dialect label for convenience. This dialect label can then be converted to the root language label using `\TrackedLanguageFromDialect`. If this language is supported by polyglossia, then there should be a file called `gloss-⟨language⟩.ldf`.

Some of the entries use the same language, so it's necessary to check if the language has already been defined before loading it. There's also a problem in that the language file should not be loaded in a scoped context, but both `\glxtrforcsvfield` and the unstarred `\glxtrifhasfield` add implicit grouping. To solve both problems, an internal `etoolbox` list is defined:

```

\newcommand{\langlist}{}%

```

and `\xifinlist` is used to first check if the language label is already in the list before adding it. Since this part of the code is scoped, the global `\listxadd` is used to add the language label to the list.

Next the `useri` field is set to `text⟨language⟩` which is the name of the control sequence used with polyglossia to switch language for a short block of text. This means that `\glxtr-entryfmt{⟨text⟩}` can be used to format `⟨text⟩` in the relevant language. Finally, `\glxtrendfor` is used to break out of the loop.

```

\newcommand*{\addfirstlang}[1]{%
  \TrackLocale{#1}%
  \edef\thislanguage{%
    \TrackedLanguageFromDialect\TrackLangLastTrackedDialect}%
  \IfFileExists{gloss-\thislanguage.ldf}%
  {%
    \xifinlist{\thislanguage}{\langlist}{}%
    {\listxadd{\langlist}{\thislanguage}}%
    \xGlsXtrSetField{\thislabel}{useri}{text\thislanguage}%
  }%
}

```

```

    \glstrendfor
  }%
  {}%
}

```

Once the `\forglstentries` loop has found the appropriate languages, it's now necessary to iterate over the internal list `\langlist` and set the language:

```
\forlistloop{\setotherlanguage}{\langlist}
```

The long-short-user style now needs to be adjusted to ensure that it picks up the appropriate language change. By default this style checks the `useri` field, so this needs to be changed to `translation` by redefining `\glxtruserfield`:

```
\renewcommand*{\glxtruserfield}{translation}
```

The command that governs the format of the parenthetical material (`\glxtruserparen`) also needs adjusting. I've changed the space before the parenthesis to `_` because some of the long fields end with a full stop and this corrects the spacing. The `translation` field is in English, so this needs to be encapsulated with `\textenglish` in case the surrounding text is in a different language.

```

\renewcommand*{\glxtruserparen}[2]{%
  \_
  \glxtrparen{#1%
  \ifglshasfield{\glxtruserfield}{#2}{,
  \textenglish{\glscurrentfieldvalue}}{}}%
}

```

Next I've defined a convenient command for use in the `textformat` attributes for the custom `tug` category:

```

\newcommand*{\tugtextformat}[1]{%
  \glxtrentryfmt{\glslabel}{#1}%
}

```

This uses `\glxtrentryfmt` to encapsulate the given text in the appropriate language command (if provided). When this is set as the `textformat` attribute, it will be used instead of `\glstextformat`, which means that the entry label can be referenced with `\glslabel`.

There's a similar command for use in the `glossnamefont` attribute. This is used in the glossary, so the label is referenced with `\glscurrententrylabel`:

```

\newcommand*{\tugnameformat}[1]{%
  \glxtrentryfmt{\glscurrententrylabel}{#1}%
}

```

The attributes can now be set to the relevant control sequence name:

8 Examples

```
\glssetcategoryattribute{tug}{textformat}{tugtextformat}  
\glssetcategoryattribute{tug}{glosnamefont}{tugnameformat}
```

The document uses the bookindex style, which is set in the package options:

```
\usepackage[record,  
nostyles,  
stylemods={bookindex},  
style={bookindex}  
{glossaries-extra}
```

The bookindex style ignores the `description` field, so I've provided a post-name hook to append it in parentheses (with the translation, if provided):

```
\newcommand{\glxtrpostnametug}{%  
  \ifglshasdesc{\glscurrententrylabel}%  
  {\_\(\glossentrydesc{\glscurrententrylabel}%  
    \glxtrifhasfield{translation}{\glscurrententrylabel}%  
    {, \textenglish{\glscurrentfieldvalue}}%  
    }%  
  )}%  
  {%  
    \glxtrifhasfield{translation}{\glscurrententrylabel}%  
    {\_\(\textenglish{\glscurrentfieldvalue})}%  
    }%  
  }%  
}
```

Remember that this hook is included within the `name` font (provided by the `glosnamefont` attribute in this case) so `\textenglish` is again used to switch the language to English for the translation.

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
xelatex sample-usergroups  
bib2gls --group sample-usergroups  
xelatex sample-usergroups  
xelatex sample-usergroups
```

The two pages of the document are shown in figure 8.15. Since the entries have all been referenced on page 1, the location lists are all simply "1".

```
\documentclass{scrreprt}  
  
\usepackage{fontspec}  
\setmainfont{Linux Libertine O}  
  
\usepackage{polyglossia}
```

8 Examples

```
\setmainlanguage[variant=uk]{english}
\usepackage{tracklang}
\usepackage{etoolbox}

\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
nostyles,% don't load default styles
stylemods={bookindex},
style={bookindex}
]{glossaries-extra}

\glsaddstoragekey{language}{}{\glsentrylanguage}
\glsaddstoragekey{translation}{}{\glsentrytranslation}

\setabbreviationstyle[tug]{long-short-user}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={usergroups}, % data in usergroups.bib
  check-end-punctuation={name,short},
  category=tug
]

\renewcommand*{\glsxtrifcustomdiscardperiod}[2]{%
\ifglshasshort{\glslabel}%
{%
  \glsxtrifwasfirstuse{}%
  {%
    \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{shortendpunc}{\glslabel}{#2}{#1}%
  }%
}%
{%
  \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{nameendpunc}{\glslabel}{#2}{#1}%
}%
}

\newcommand{\langlist}{}%

\newcommand*{\addfirstlang}[1]{%
  \TrackLocale{#1}%
  \edef\thislanguage{%
    \TrackedLanguageFromDialect\TrackLangLastTrackedDialect}%
  \IfFileExists{gloss-\thislanguage.ldf}%
  {%
    \xifinlist{\thislanguage}{\langlist}{}%
    {\listxadd{\langlist}{\thislanguage}}%
    \xGlsXtrSetField{\thislabel}{useri}{text\thislanguage}%
    \glsxtrendfor
```

8 Examples

```
}%
{}%
}

\forlgsentries{\thislabel}{%
  \glxtrifhasfield{translation}{\thislabel}%
  {%
    % requires glossaries-extra v1.24
    \glxtrforcsvfield{\thislabel}{language}{\addfirstlang}%
  }%
  {}%
}

\forlistloop{\setotherlanguage}{\langlist}

\renewcommand*{\glxtruserfield}{translation}

\renewcommand*{\glxtruserparen}[2]{%
  \
  \glxtrparen{#1%
  \ifglshasfield{\glxtruserfield}{#2}{,
  \textenglish{\glscurrentfieldvalue}}{}}%
}

\newcommand*{\tugtextformat}[1]{%
  \glxtrentryfmt{\glslabel}{#1}%
}

\newcommand*{\tugnameformat}[1]{%
  \glxtrentryfmt{\glscurrententrylabel}{#1}%
}

\glsssetcategoryattribute{tug}{textformat}{tugtextformat}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{tug}{glossnamefont}{tugnameformat}

\newcommand{\glxtrpostnametug}{%
  \ifglshasdesc{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {\ (\glossentrydesc{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  \glxtrifhasfield{translation}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {, \textenglish{\glscurrentfieldvalue}}}%
  {}%
  )}%
  {%
  \glxtrifhasfield{translation}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {\ (\textenglish{\glscurrentfieldvalue}}}%
  {}%
}
```

```

} %
}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Sample}
\section{First Use}
\gls{TUG}. \gls{bgTeX}. \gls{latex-br}. \gls{CTeX}.
\gls{CSTUG}. \gls{DANTE}. \gls{DKTUG}. \gls{EUG}.
\gls{CervanTeX}. \gls{TirantloTeX}. \gls{GUTenberg}.
\gls{UKTUG}. \gls{εφτ}. \gls{MaTeX}. \gls{ITALIC}.
\gls{ÍsTeX}. \gls{GuIT}. \gls{KTS}. \gls{LTVG}.
\gls{mxTeX}. \gls{NTG}. \gls{NTUG}. \gls{GUST}. \gls{GUTpt}.
\gls{VietTUG}. \gls{LUGSA}.

\section{Next Use}

\gls{TUG}. \gls{bgTeX}. \gls{latex-br}. \gls{CTeX}.
\gls{CSTUG}. \gls{DANTE}. \gls{DKTUG}. \gls{EUG}.
\gls{CervanTeX}. \gls{TirantloTeX}. \gls{GUTenberg}.
\gls{UKTUG}. \gls{εφτ}. \gls{MaTeX}. \gls{ITALIC}.
\gls{ÍsTeX}. \gls{GuIT}. \gls{KTS}. \gls{LTVG}.
\gls{mxTeX}. \gls{NTG}. \gls{NTUG}. \gls{GUST}. \gls{GUTpt}.
\gls{VietTUG}. \gls{LUGSA}.

\printunsrtglossaries
\end{document}

```

sample-multi1.tex

This example uses `bacteria.bib`, `markuplanguages.bib`, `vegetables.bib`, `minerals.bib`, `animals.bib`, `chemicalformula.bib`, `baseunits.bib` and `derivedunits.bib`. Since there's one or more UTF-8 character, the document requires UTF-8 support:

```

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}

```

The aim of this example document is to have a separate glossary (without number lists) for each type of data (bacteria, markup languages, vegetables, minerals, animals, chemical formula, base units and derived units) and also an index listing all referenced entries with number lists as well as aliased entries that haven't explicitly been used but the cross-reference term as been indexed. This requires:

```

selection={recorded and deps and see}

```

to ensure the aliased entries are selected.

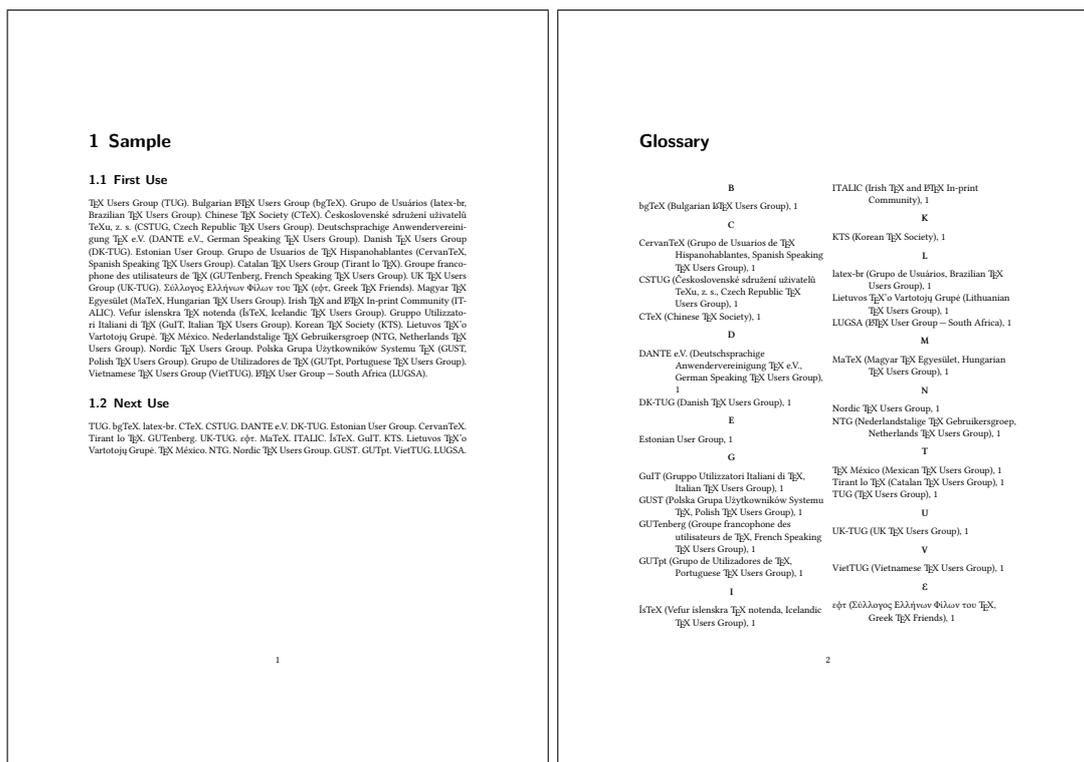


Figure 8.15: sample-usergroups.pdf

Since I don't need the default main glossary (I'm providing my own custom glossaries) I've used the `nomain` option to suppress its automatic creation, but I do want the index glossary so I've used the `index` package option. As with the other TeX examples, I've used `nostyles` to suppress the creation of the default styles and used `stylemods` to load the particular style packages that I need and use `glossaries-extra-stylemods` to patch them. The index needs to be in an unnumbered chapter, which is the default for book-like styles, but I want the other glossaries in unnumbered sections so I've used the `section` option. I just need to remember to switch this before displaying the index:

```
\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
section,% use \section* for glossary headings
postdot,% insert dot after descriptions in glossaries
nomain,% don't create 'main' glossary
index,% create 'index' glossary
nostyles,% don't load default styles
% load and patch required style packages:
stylemods={list,mcols,tree,bookindex}
]{glossaries-extra}
```

The remaining glossaries need defining:

```
\newglossary*{bacteria}{Bacteria}
```

```

\newglossary*{markuplanguage}{Markup Languages}
\newglossary*{vegetable}{Vegetables}
\newglossary*{mineral}{Minerals}
\newglossary*{animal}{Animals}
\newglossary*{chemical}{Chemical Formula}
\newglossary*{baseunit}{SI Units}
\newglossary*{derivedunit}{Derived Units}

```

As with `sample-bacteria.tex` and `sample-markuplanguages.tex` I need to set the abbreviation styles before the abbreviations are defined:

```

\setabbreviationstyle[bacteria]{long-only-short-only}
\setabbreviationstyle[markuplanguage]{long-short-desc}

```

Unlike the `sample-markuplanguages.tex` example, I'm not interested in tagging the initials in this case, but I still want to change the way the `name` field is set with the `long-short-desc` abbreviation style:

```

\renewcommand*{\glxtrlongshortdescname}{%
  \protect\glssabbrvfont{\the\glsshorttok}\space
  \glxtrparen{\glslongfont{\the\glslongtok}}%
}

```

Remember that this also needs to be set before the abbreviations are defined. The `textformat` and `glossnamefont` attributes may be set after definition:

```

\newcommand{\bacteriafont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glsssetcategoryattribute[bacteria]{textformat}{bacteriafont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute[bacteria]{glossnamefont}{bacteriafont}

```

The description font also needs to be set since this will contain the long form:

```

\glsssetcategoryattribute[bacteria]{glossdescfont}{bacteriafont}

```

The `markuplanguage` glossary contains descriptions and some long names, so it's better suited to the `atlist` style, in which case the descriptions would look better if they started with a capital letter:

```

\glsssetcategoryattribute[markuplanguage]{glossdesc}{firstuc}

```

Remember that the `atlist` style uses the description environment, which is governed by the document class (and may be modified by list-related packages). In this case, one of the KOMA-Script classes is used, so the list items are typeset in sans-serif.

There are various ways of dealing with the duplicated data in the index, such as using the `secondary` option or having a separate resource set with a copy `action`. In this case, I've decided to use a dual entry system. Since the entries aren't defined using any dual types, I've used `entry-type-aliases` to make `bib2gls` treat them as though they were, and I also need to alias the custom `@chemical`, `@unit` and `@measurement` entry types:

8 Examples

```
entry-type-aliases={
  abbreviation=dualindexabbreviation,
  entry=dualindexentry,
  symbol=dualindexsymbol,
  unit=dualindexsymbol,
  measurement=dualindexsymbol,
  chemical=dualindexsymbol
}
```

Note that I haven't aliased the `@index` types as I only want these in the index and not replicated in a separate glossary.

The primary entries for the `@dualindexabbreviation` type ignore the short form. It would be useful to store it. This could be done by copying the `short` field with `replicate-fields`. For example, `replicate-fields={short=symbol}`. However, this will cause the `symbol` field to be set for both the primary and dual entries, which will cause an unwanted duplication if the dual entries are displayed using a glossary style that shows the `symbol` field. Another field (such as `user1`) could be used instead or `\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation` could be defined before `\GlsXtrLoadResources`:

```
\newcommand{\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation}[7]{%
  \longnewglossaryentry*{#1}{%
    name={\protect\bibglsuselongfont{#4}{\glscategory{#2}}},%
    symbol={\protect\bibglsuseabbrvfont{#5}{\glscategory{#2}}},%
    category={index},#3}{%
  }
```

However, this will affect all `@dualindexabbreviation` entry types, but it's not necessary for the bacteria abbreviations. Instead it's simpler to just keep a record of the dual label so that the short form can be obtained from the dual entry:

```
dual-field
```

By default, the `@dualindexabbreviation` entry type falls back on the `short` field if the `name` is omitted. In this case I want it to fall back on the `long` field instead.

```
abbreviation-name-fallback={long}
```

Remember that the sort fallback for abbreviations is still `short` (but can be changed with `abbreviation-sort-fallback`), but I've changed the sort fallback for symbols:

```
symbol-sort-fallback={name}
```

I also need to alias the custom fields (especially for those in the `chemicalformula.bib`, `baseunits.bib` and `derivedunits.bib` files):

```
field-aliases={
  identifier=category,
```

8 Examples

```
formula=symbol,  
chemicalname=name,  
unitname=name,  
unitsymbol=symbol,  
measurement=description  
}
```

There's a slight problem here. This ensures that the entries defined in `chemicalformula.bib` have a `name` and `symbol` field, which are swapped round for the dual (according to the default `dual-indexsymbol-map`) but these entries don't have a `description` field. Since I'd like to use the `mcolalmtreegroup` style, this will end up with the odd appearance of the formula (stored in the `name` field for the dual) followed by the chemical name (stored in the `symbol` field for the dual) in parenthesis. This is the default `<name> (<symbol>) <description>` format for the style. I've fixed this by locally redefining `\glxtralttreeSymbolDescLocation` for just that glossary:

```
\printunsrtglossary*[type={chemical},style={mcolalmtreegroup}]  
{%  
  \renewcommand\glxtralttreeSymbolDescLocation[2]{%  
    \glossentrysymbol{#1}\glspostdescription\glxtrAltTreePar  
  }%  
  \renewcommand*\glstreenamefmt}[1]{#1}%  
  \renewcommand*\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}%  
}
```

I've also redefined `\glstreenamefmt` to prevent the names appearing in bold, which means I also need to redefine `\glstreegroupheaderfmt` to keep the headers bold.

All the `@dualindex<type>` entry types provide a primary entry that behaves like `@index`. The secondary behaves like `@<type>`. This means that the primaries are conveniently gathered together with all the unaliased `@index` entries, so the primary entry type needs to be set to `index`:

```
type={index}
```

The dual entry type depends on the entry's category. Since I've defined my custom glossaries with a label that matches the custom `identifier` field, I can both alias this custom field to the `category` field and also set `dual-type` so that it matches the category:

```
field-aliases={identifier=category},  
dual-type={same as category}
```

The primary entries (in the index glossary) need to be sorted alphabetically, and since the document is in English I'm sorting according to that language (identified by the language code `en`), but I also want to make sure that all the primary entries are sorted by the `name` field to avoid discrepancies in the fallback value for the `sort` field:

```
sort={en},  
sort-field={name}
```

8 Examples

With `abbreviation-name-fallback={long}` now set, this means that *Coxiella burnetii* comes after *Clostridium tetani* in the index. I haven't changed the sort field for the dual entries, so in that case the `abbreviation-sort-fallback` and `symbol-sort-fallback` settings will be used with the duals. This means that *C. burnetii* is between *C. botulinum* and *C. perfringens* rather than after *C. tetani*.

I'd like to sort the dual entries according to a letter-number rule (as for the above `sample-chemical.tex` and `sample-units3.tex` examples) but this would order "bilinite" after "biotite" in the minerals glossary, so instead I'm also using the English sort rule for the duals, but with the numbers padded:

```
dual-sort={en},
dual-sort-number-pad={2},
```

This method doesn't work as well as the method used in `sample-chemical.tex` as it doesn't separate the capitals, digits and lower case characters in the way that can be achieved with the letter-number methods. An improvement can be made by changing the break-points. I could use `dual-break-at={upper-upper}` but this would put "seal" before "sea lion" in the animal glossary, so instead I've used:

```
dual-break-at={upper-upper-word}
```

This now puts "sea lion" before "seal". Unfortunately the word break points will cause a break at the markers used to indicate positive and negative numbers that are inserted with `dual-sort-number-pad`, so these need to be changed to something that won't cause them to be discarded:

```
dual-sort-pad-minus={0},
dual-sort-pad-plus={1}
```

The document loads `hyperref` which means that all the `\gls` references will create hyperlinks. Since the primaries are in the index, the default prefixes mean that, for example, `\gls{svg}` links to the "scalable vector graphics" item in the index rather than to the abbreviation "SVG" in the `markuplanguage` glossary. There are two alternatives: change `\gls{svg}` to `\gls{dual.svg}` or change the default prefixes, which is the more convenient approach and is the one used here:

```
label-prefix={idx.},
dual-prefix={}
```

Now `\gls{svg}` refers to the dual abbreviation "SVG" and `\gls{idx.svg}` refers to the primary entry "scalable vector graphics". Unfortunately this means that the records created with `\gls{svg}` now refer to the dual abbreviation and will end up being displayed in the glossary instead of the index. This can be fixed with:

```
combine-dual-locations={primary}
```

Which transfers the dual entry locations to the corresponding primary.

The other problem is the cross-references in the `description` fields. Since the labels don't start with "dual." `bib2gls` will assume they refer to the primary entries, which means that "idx." (the value of `label-prefix`) will be inserted. This means that they'll link to the index rather than the glossary entry. It also means that the cross-references where the dual is an abbreviation won't behave like an abbreviation as the reference is to the primary (non-abbreviation) entry. This can be fixed by setting `cs-label-prefix` to the same value as `dual-prefix`:

```
cs-label-prefix={}
```

The index is displayed using the `bookindex` style. This doesn't show the description or symbol by default, but it would be useful to include the symbol in parentheses after the name. This can be done by redefining `\glsxtrbookindexname`:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glossentryname{#1}%
  \ifglshassymbol{#1}{\space(\glossentrysymbol{#1})}{}%
}
```

However the chemical formulae look a little odd in parentheses (especially those that contain parenthetical parts) but this can be fixed by adding a category check:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glossentryname{#1}%
  \ifglshassymbol{#1}%
  {%
    \glsifcategory{#1}{chemical}%
    {, \glossentrysymbol{#1}}%
    {\space(\glossentrysymbol{#1})}%
  }%
  {}%
}
```

Unfortunately `\glossentrysymbol` doesn't pick up the `glossnamefont` attribute, so if the short form of the abbreviations is saved in the `symbol` field, using one of the methods discussed above, then the custom `\bacteriafont` won't be applied. A simple solution is to use `\glossentrynameother` instead:

```
\renewcommand*{\glsxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glossentryname{#1}%
  \ifglshassymbol{#1}%
  {%
    \glsifcategory{#1}{chemical}%
    {, \glossentrysymbol{#1}}%
    {\space(\glossentrynameother{#1}{symbol})}%
  }%
}
```

8 Examples

```
}%  
{}%  
}
```

However, since I decided not to store the short form in the `symbol` field and just saved the dual entry label instead, I need to lookup the short form from the dual entry:

```
\renewcommand*{\glxtrbookindexname}[1]{%  
  \glossentryname{#1}%  
  \ifglshassymbol{#1}%  
  {%  
    \glusifcategory{#1}{chemical}%  

```

Not all of the markup languages are abbreviations so this uses `\glxtrifhasfield` to check if the `short` field is set. The dual entry's label is easily obtained because `dual-field` has provided the `dual` internal field and set it to the corresponding label.

It's sometimes useful for the index to include a reference to the term's definition. This can be done by making use of `\glsextrapostnamehook`, which can be redefined before the glossaries to automatically record each entry:

```
\renewcommand{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{\glsadd[format={hyperbf}]{#1}}
```

This needs to be redefined to ignore its argument before the index, to avoid the redundant index record:

```
\renewcommand{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{}
```

Remember that if any records are added within a glossary, an extra \LaTeX and `bib2gls` call are required to ensure that the location list is correct, so the document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-multi1  
bib2gls --group sample-multi1  
pdflatex sample-multi1  
bib2gls --group sample-multi1  
pdflatex sample-multi1
```

8 Examples

The complete document code is listed below. The resulting document is shown in figure 8.16 and figure 8.17.

```
\documentclass{scrreprt}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[version=4]{mhchem}
\usepackage{siunitx}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}

\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
  section,% use \section* for glossary headings
  postdot,% insert dot after descriptions in glossaries
  nomain,% don't create 'main' glossary
  index,% create 'index' glossary
  nostyles,% don't load default styles
  % load and patch required style packages:
  stylemods={list,mcols,tree,bookindex}
]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{bacteria}{Bacteria}
\newglossary*{markuplanguage}{Markup Languages}
\newglossary*{vegetable}{Vegetables}
\newglossary*{mineral}{Minerals}
\newglossary*{animal}{Animals}
\newglossary*{chemical}{Chemical Formula}
\newglossary*{baseunit}{SI Units}
\newglossary*{derivedunit}{Derived Units}

% abbreviation styles must be set before \GlsXtrLoadResources:
\setabbreviationstyle[bacteria]{long-only-short-only}
\setabbreviationstyle[markuplanguage]{long-short-desc}

% style-dependent name format must be set
% before \GlsXtrLoadResources:
\renewcommand*{\glsxtrlongshortdescname}{%
  \protect\glsabbrvfont{\the\glsshorttok}\space
  \glsxtrparen{\glslongfont{\the\glslongtok}}%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={bacteria,markuplanguages,vegetables,minerals,
    animals,chemicalformula,baseunits,derivedunits},
  selection={recorded and deps and see},
  set-widest,
  type=index,
```

8 Examples

```

label-prefix={idx.},
dual-prefix={},
cs-label-prefix={},
combine-dual-locations={primary},
dual-field,
sort={en},
sort-field={name},
dual-type={same as category},
dual-sort={en},
dual-sort-number-pad={2},
dual-sort-pad-plus={1},
dual-sort-pad-minus={0},
dual-break-at=upper-upper-word,
entry-type-aliases={
  abbreviation=dualindexabbreviation,
  entry=dualindexentry,
  symbol=dualindexsymbol,
  unit=dualindexsymbol,
  measurement=dualindexsymbol,
  chemical=dualindexsymbol
},
abbreviation-name-fallback={long},
symbol-sort-fallback={name},
field-aliases={
  identifier=category,
  formula=symbol,
  chemicalname=name,
  unitname=name,
  unitsymbol=symbol,
  measurement=description
},
]

\newcommand{\bacteriafont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{textformat}{bacteriafont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossnamefont}{bacteriafont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossdescfont}{bacteriafont}

\glssetcategoryattribute{markuplanguage}{glossdesc}{firstuc}

\renewcommand*{\glstrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glossentryname{#1}%
  \ifglshassymbol{#1}%
  {%
    \glsifcategory{#1}{chemical}%
    {, \glossentrysymbol{#1}}%
  }
}

```

8 Examples

```
{\space(\glossentrynameother{#1}{symbol})}%
}%
{%
\glsifcategory{#1}{markuplanguage}%
{%
\glsxtrifhasfield{short}{\glsxtrusefield{#1}{dual}}%
{\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
{}%
}%
{}%
}%
}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Sample}
\section{Bacteria}
\subsection{First Use}
\gls{cbotulinum}, \gls{pputida}, \gls{cperfringens},
\gls{bsubtilis}, \gls{ctetani}, \gls{pcomposti},
\gls{pfimeticola}, \gls{cburnetii}, \gls{raustralis},
\gls{rrickettsii}.

\subsection{Next Use}
\gls{cbotulinum}, \gls{pputida}, \gls{cperfringens},
\gls{bsubtilis}, \gls{ctetani}, \gls{pcomposti},
\gls{pfimeticola}, \gls{cburnetii}, \gls{raustralis},
\gls{rrickettsii}.

\section{Markup Languages}
\subsection{First Use}
\gls{LaTeX}, \gls{markdown}, \gls{xhtml}, \gls{mathml}, \gls{svg}.

\subsection{Next Use}
\gls{LaTeX}, \gls{markdown}, \gls{xhtml}, \gls{mathml}, \gls{svg}.

\section{Vegetables}
\gls{cabbage}, \gls{brussels-sprout}, \gls{artichoke},
\gls{cauliflower}, \gls{courgette}, \gls{spinach}.

\section{Minerals}
\Gls{beryl}, \gls{amethyst}, \gls{chalcedony}, \gls{aquamarine},
\gls{aragonite}, \gls{calcite}, \gls{bilinite},
\gls{cyanotrichite}, \gls{biotite}, \gls{dolomite},
\gls{quetzalcoatlite}, \gls{vulcanite}.

\section{Animals}
```

8 Examples

```
\Gls{duck}, \Gls{parrot}, \Gls{hedgehog}, \Gls{sealion}.

\section{Chemicals}
\Gls{Al2SO43}, \Gls{H2O}, \Gls{C6H12O6},
\Gls{CH3CH2OH}, \Gls{CH2O}, \Gls{OF2}, \Gls{O2F2}, \Gls{SO42-},
\Gls{H3O+}, \Gls{OH-}, \Gls{O2}, \Gls{AlF3}, \Gls{O},
\Gls{Al2CoO4}, \Gls{As4S4}, \Gls{C10H10O4}, \Gls{C5H4NCOOH},
\Gls{C8H10N4O2}, \Gls{SO2}, \Gls{S2O72-}, \Gls{SbBr3},
\Gls{Sc2O3}, \Gls{Zr3PO44}, \Gls{ZnF2}.

\section{SI Units}
Base: \Gls{ampere}, \Gls{kilogram}, \Gls{metre}, \Gls{second},
\Gls{kelvin}, \Gls{mole}, \Gls{candela}.
Derived: \Gls{area}, \Gls{volume}, \Gls{velocity},
\Gls{acceleration}, \Gls{density}, \Gls{luminance},
\Gls{specificvolume}, \Gls{concentration}, \Gls{wavenumber}.

\chapter*{Glossaries}
\renewcommand{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{\Glsadd[format=hyperbf]{#1}}
\printunsrtglossary[type=bacteria,style=mcoltree]
\printunsrtglossary[type=markuplanguage,style=altlist]
\printunsrtglossary[type=vegetable,style=tree,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary[type=mineral,style=treegroup]
\printunsrtglossary[type=animal,style=tree]
\printunsrtglossary*[type=chemical,style=mcolalttreegroup]
{%
  \renewcommand\glsextralttreeSymbolDescLocation[2]{%
    \glossentrysymbol{#1}\glspostdescription\glsextrAltTreePar
  }%
  \renewcommand*\glstreenamfmt}[1]{#1}%
  \renewcommand*\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}%
}
\printunsrtglossary[type=baseunit,style=almtree]
\printunsrtglossary[type=derivedunit,style=almtree]

\renewcommand{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{ }
\setupglossaries{section=chapter}
\printunsrtglossary[type=index,style=bookindex]
\end{document}}
```

sample-multi2.tex

This example is an alternative approach to `sample-multi1.tex`. Instead of using dual entry types to define entries that appear in both a glossary and the index, this example makes use of `record-label-prefix` to reselect the recorded entries for the index. This is more

8 Examples

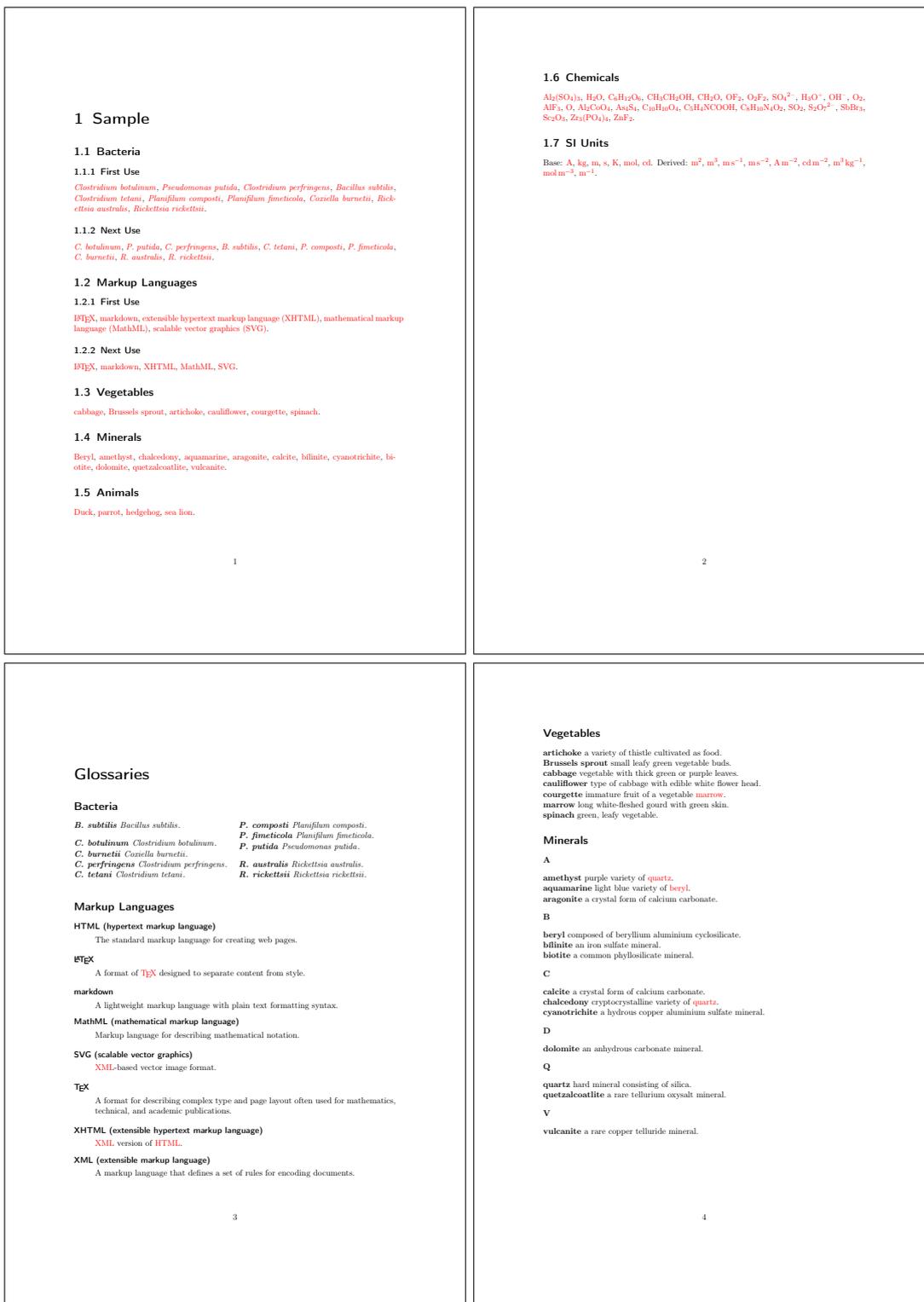


Figure 8.16: sample-multi1.pdf (pages 1 to 4)

8 Examples

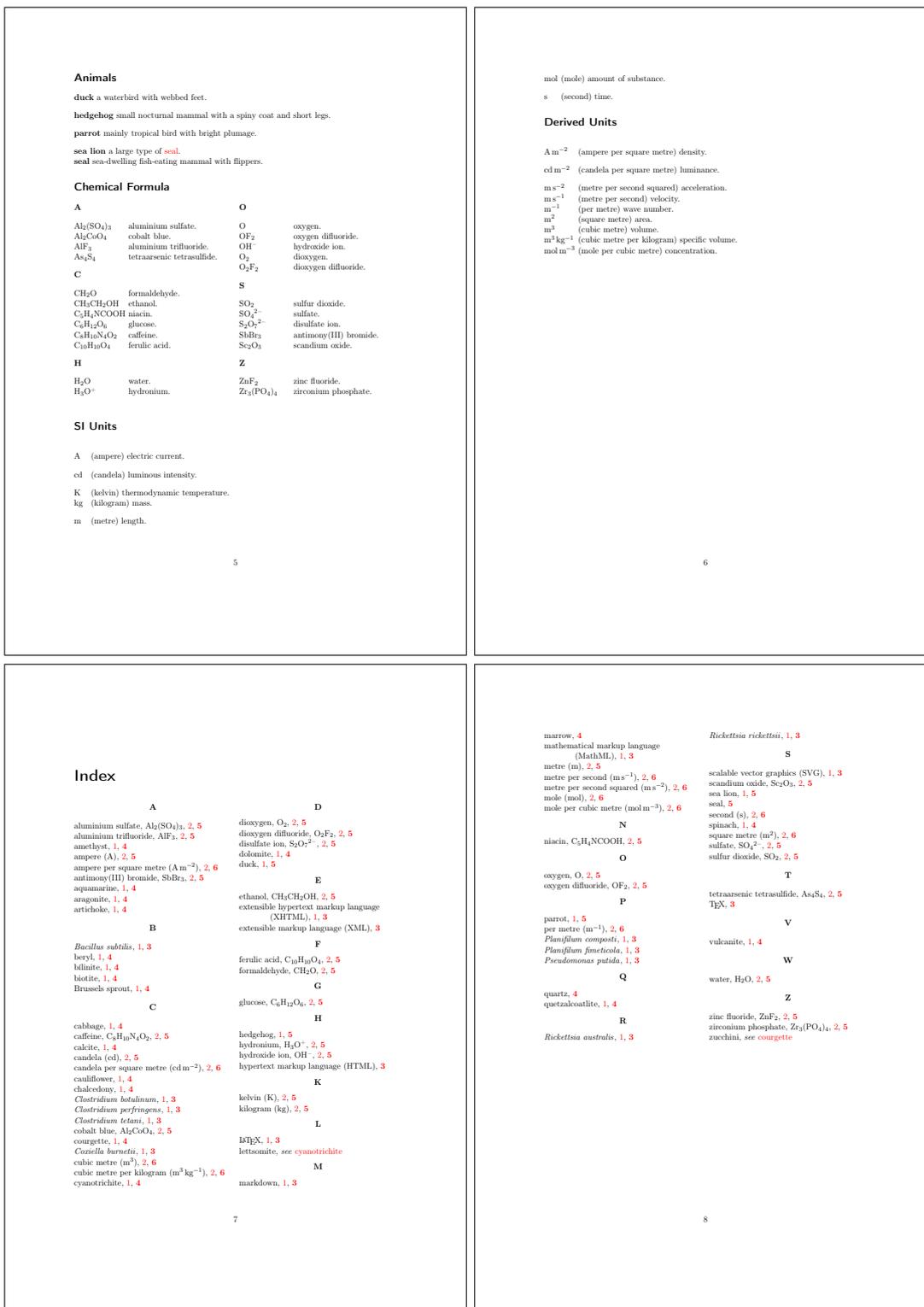


Figure 8.17: sample-multi1.pdf (pages 5 to 8)

complicated but it allows the entries that have natural word ordering to use a locale sort method while the entries that are symbolic can use one of the letter-number sort methods.

This document uses some additional .bib files to the previous example, so it has extra glossaries, which all need to be defined:

```
\newglossary*{bacteria}{Bacteria}
\newglossary*{markuplanguage}{Markup Languages}
\newglossary*{vegetable}{Vegetables}
\newglossary*{mineral}{Minerals}
\newglossary*{animal}{Animals}
\newglossary*{chemical}{Chemical Formula}
\newglossary*{baseunit}{SI Units}
\newglossary*{measurement}{Measurements}
\newglossary*{film}{Films}
\newglossary*{book}{Books}
\newglossary*{person}{People}
\newglossary*{mediacontrol}{Media Control Symbols}
\newglossary*{information}{Information Symbols}
\newglossary*{weather}{Weather Symbols}
```

Note that this is a total of 15 glossaries (including the index). With the basic `\makeglossaries` method, this would require 16 write registers (including the write register used to create the indexing style file), and a total of $15 \times 3 + 1 = 46$ associated files. (This doesn't include the standard .aux file and the .out file created by hyperref.) With `bib2gls`, no additional write registers are required and the number of associated `bib2gls` files is equal to the number of resource commands plus the transcript file (in this example, $9 + 1 = 10$).

Since this document requires `people.bib`, `books.bib` and `films.bib` it also requires the files that supply the definitions of the custom commands (`no-interpret-preamble.bib` and either `interpret-preamble.bib` or `interpret-preamble2.bib`) to ensure the custom commands are provided both for the document and for `bib2gls`'s interpreter.

The first resource set to be loaded simply reads `no-interpret-preamble.bib` with the preamble interpreter switched off:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={no-interpret-preamble},
  interpret-preamble={false}
]
```

This ensures that \LaTeX can pick up the provided commands and prevents them from being added to the interpreter.

The `people.bib` file is the next to be loaded with `interpret-preamble.bib`. This is loaded separately from the other resources as this needs the `name` field to be copied to `first` (if not already set), as in the `sample-people.tex` file. By having a separate resource set, this setting doesn't affect the other entries. I've also converted the date fields so that I can customise the format in the document.

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={interpret-preamble,people},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    born=user1,
    died=user2,
    othername=user3
  },
  replicate-fields={name={first}},
  type={person},
  save-locations={false}
  date-fields={user1,user2},
  date-field-format={d MMM y G}
]
```

As with the `sample-people.tex` document, I need to use the `--break-space` switch to convert the `~` to a normal breakable space so that it matches the given format. I've loaded the `datetime2` package:²

```
\usepackage[en-GB]{datetime2}
```

so that I can use `\DTMdisplaydate` to adjust the formatting:

```
\newcommand*{\bibglsdate}[7]{\DTMdisplaydate{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}}
```

This needs to go before the resource set is loaded. Note that the `en-GB` option identifies the document locale as `en-GB` (since there are no language packages loaded).

Note that unlike `sample-people.tex` which had `category={people}`, this document obtains the `category` field from the custom `identifier` field, which in this case has the value `person`. This means that the category hooks from `sample-people.tex` need to be renamed to reflect the different category label:

```
\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostlinkperson}{%
  \glsxtrifwasfirstuse
  {%
    \ifglsfield{user3}{\glslabel}%
    {\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  }%
}%
{\}%

\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostnameperson}{%
  \ifglsfield{user3}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
```

²The `en-GB` option to `datetime2` also requires that `datetime2-english` must be installed.

```

  {}%
}

\newcommand*\glstrpostdescperson{%
  \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}
  {% born
    \space(\glscurrentfieldvalue\,--\,%
      \ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}
      {% died
        \glscurrentfieldvalue
      }%
    }%
  }%
)%
}%
{}%
}

```

The other .bib files that require locale sorting can now be loaded, but remember that the abbreviation style settings must be set first since this resource set includes abbreviations:

```

\setabbreviationstyle[bacteria]{long-only-short-only}
\setabbreviationstyle[markuplanguage]{long-short-desc}

\renewcommand*\glstrlongshortdescname{%
  \protect\glssabrvfont{\the\glsshorttok}\space
  (TeX Users Group)}

```

Now the resource set can be loaded:

```

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={bacteria,markuplanguages,vegetables,
    minerals,animals,books,films},
  field-aliases={identifier=category},
  type={same as category},
  save-locations={false}
]

```

The semantic markup command and attributes are as for `sample-multi1.tex`:

```

\newcommand{\bacteriafont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{textformat}{bacteriafont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossnamefont}{bacteriafont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossdescfont}{bacteriafont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{markuplanguage}{glossdesc}{firstuc}

```

Similarly for the books:

8 Examples

```
\newcommand{\bookfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{book}{textformat}{bookfont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{book}{glossnamefont}{bookfont}
```

(as for `sample-media.tex`) and for films:

```
\newcommand{\filmfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{film}{textformat}{filmfont}
\glsssetcategoryattribute{film}{glossnamefont}{filmfont}
```

Next come the chemical formulae:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={chemicalformula},
  entry-type-aliases={chemical=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    formula=name,
    chemicalname=description
  },
  type={chemical},
  set-widest,
  sort={letternumber-case},
  symbol-sort-fallback={name},
  save-locations={false}
]
```

and the SI units, which are now combined into a single glossary:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources[
  src={baseunits,derivedunits},
  entry-type-aliases={measurement=symbol,unit=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=description,
    unitsymbol=symbol,
    measurement=name
  },
  category={measurement},
  type={measurement},
  set-widest,
  symbol-sort-fallback={name},
  save-locations={false}
]
```

Here the `name` field is obtained from the custom `measurement` field. Since this contains a word, the default locale sort is appropriate. I've locally redefined `\glssxtralttreeSymbol-DescLocation` to place the symbol in parentheses after the description:

8 Examples

```
\printunsrtglossary*[type={measurement},style={almtree},nogroupskip]
{%
  \renewcommand{\glxtralmtreeSymbolDescLocation}[2]{%
    \glossentrydesc{#1}%
    \ifglshassymbol{#1}{\space(\glossentrysymbol{#1})}{}%
    \glspostdescription
    \glxtrAltTreePar
  }%
}
```

The base units are replicated in the `baseunit` glossary, this time with the `name` field obtained from the custom `unitsymbol` field. This means that I need to find a way to prevent duplicate labels. The simplest method is to use `duplicate-label-suffix`:

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={baseunits},
  entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=description,
    unitsymbol=name
  },
  category={measurement},
  type={baseunit},
  duplicate-label-suffix={.copy},
  symbol-sort-fallback={name},
  save-locations={false}
]
```

I can't use `set-widest` here as it won't pick up the modified label and will instead use the label from the original entry. Instead I've used `\glFindWidestTopLevelName` to find it:

```
\printunsrtglossary*[type={baseunit},style={almtree},nogroupskip]
{%
  \glFindWidestTopLevelName [baseunit]%
}
```

The text symbols from `miscsymbols.bib` are all loaded in a single resource set, where the `type` field can be obtained from the `category`, which in turns is obtained from the custom `identifier` field. Since `bib2gls` doesn't recognise any of the symbol commands, I'm sorting according to the `description` field. (Even if `bib2gls` could determine a Unicode value for each of the symbols, sorting by the description makes more sense in this case.)

```
\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={miscsymbols},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
```

```

    icon=name,
    icondescription=description
},
entry-type-aliases={icon=symbol},
type={same as category},
sort-field={description},
save-locations={false},
set-widest
]

```

Finally, all recorded and cross-referenced terms are needed for the index. This includes entries that have already been defined in the earlier resource sets (so a guard against duplicates is necessary) but it also includes entries from the `terms.bib` file that haven't yet been dealt with. I'd like the index to start with a symbol group containing the icons from `miscsymbols.bib`. This needs to be dealt with separately from the rest of the index to keep them together in a single group:

```

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={miscsymbols},
  selection={recorded no deps},
  duplicate-label-suffix={.copy},
  entry-type-aliases={icon=index},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    icondescription=symbol,
    icon=name
  },
  type={index},
  sort-field={symbol},
  group={glssymbols}
]

```

Since I know that there are no parents or cross-references in this set of entries I've used `selection={recorded no deps}` to skip the dependency checks. In this resource set, the `name` field has the symbol command (obtained from the custom `icon` field), and the `symbol` field has the symbol description (obtained from the custom `icondescription` field), which is used as the sort field. I've set the `group` label to `glssymbols`, which keeps all these entries in a single group and the title will be obtained from `\glssymbolsgroupname`.

Before loading the final resource set `\glsxtrlongshortdescname` needs to be changed so that the abbreviations using the long-short-desc style (that is, the abbreviations with the `category` set to `markuplanguage`) have the `name` field set to $\langle long \rangle (\langle short \rangle)$:

```

\renewcommand*{\glsxtrlongshortdescname}{%
  \protect\glslongfont{\the\glslongtok}\space
  \glsxtrparen{\glsabbrvfont{\the\glsshorttok}}%
}

```

8 Examples

The long-only-short-only style has a similar command, but it was only introduced to glossaries-extra version 1.25:

```
\renewcommand*{\glstxtronlyname}%  
  \protect\glsabbrvonlyfont{\the\glslongtok}%
```

The abbreviations all need to be sorted according to the long form:

```
abbreviation-sort-fallback={long}
```

The custom entry types and fields again need to be aliased

```
entry-type-aliases={  
  chemical=index,  
  measurement=entry,  
  unit=dualentry,  
  icon=index  
},  
field-aliases={  
  identifier=category,  
  formula=symbol,  
  chemicalname=name,  
  unitname=description,  
  unitsymbol=symbol,  
  measurement=name,  
  icon=symbol,  
  icondescription=name  
}
```

The chemical formulae and icons are now defined using `@index` with the `name` field set to a word form (chemical name and icon description). This means they're appropriate for alphabetical sorting. (Both `@entry` and `@symbol` require the `description` field, which is why I've aliased `@chemical` and `@icon` to `@index` here.) The custom `@measurement` entry type has a `description` field (obtained from `unitname`), so that's aliased to `@entry` as again the `name` field is suitable for alphabetical sorting.

I've aliased `@unit` to `@dualentry` rather than `@symbol` as I want both the unit name and the measurement in the index and I've combined their location lists:

```
combine-dual-locations={both}
```

Both primary and dual entries need to go in the index glossary:

```
type={index},  
dual-type={index}
```

All `.bib` files used in the previous resource sets are needed as well as the `terms.bib` file:

8 Examples

```
src={terms,bacteria,markuplanguages,vegetables,minerals,
  animals,chemicalformula,baseunits,derivedunits,people,
  films,books,miscsymbols}
```

but this time I also want to select entries that haven't been recorded but have a cross-reference to a recorded entry:

```
selection[recorded and deps and see]
```

Again it's necessary to provide a way to avoid duplicate entry labels, which can be done with

```
duplicate-label-suffix={.copy},
```

as above. However, this will cause the cross-references (from the `alias` fields) to link to the glossary rather than the index. This may or may not confuse the reader. For consistency, it may be more suitable to have the cross-reference in the index link to the aliased entry in the index rather than in the glossary. I've therefore instead used:

```
label-prefix={idx.},
record-label-prefix={idx.},
```

This means that the entries defined in `terms.bib` need to be referenced with this prefix.

All instances of `\gls` will link to the original entry, so all entries except for those in the `terms.bib` file will link to the relevant glossary. Those in the `terms.bib` file will link to the index. It's possible to disable the hyperlinks for those entries, but the reader may find it useful to jump to the index to look up other locations for that entry in the document.

To deal with the identical book and film titles, I'm again using the `category` to resolve identical sort values:

```
identical-sort-action={category}
```

For the people who have a `first` field, I've decided that this would be more appropriate for the index as it's more compact than the `name`, so here I've done the reverse to earlier and copied the `first` field (if supplied) into the `name` field, but since the `name` field is already provided the override setting needs to be on:

```
replicate-override,
replicate-fields={first=name}
```

As with `sample-people.tex` I've provided some custom commands to make it easier to locally redefine `\sortname` and `\sortvonname`:

```
\newcommand*{\swaptwo}[2]{#2, #1}
\newcommand*{\swapthree}[3]{#2 #3, #1}
```

I've redefined `\glsxtrbookindexname` in a similar manner to `sample-multi1.tex` but it has some modifications:

```

\renewcommand*{\glxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
  \glossentryname{#1}%
  \ifglshassymbol{#1}%
  {%
    \glsifcategory{#1}{chemical}%
    {, \glossentrysymbol{#1}}%
    {\space(\glossentrynameother{#1}{symbol})}%
  }%
  {%
    \glsifcategory{#1}{film}%
    {\_ (film)}%
    {}%
  }%
}

```

This appends “(film)” to film names. I’ve chosen this method rather than using the post-name hook as I only want this in the index and not in the list of films.

For some of the entries that are referenced in the document, I’ve appended information in parentheses:

```
\gls{A12S043} (\glsdesc{A12S043})
```

This is all right for odd instances, but if this always needs to be done on first use, then it’s better to use the post-link hook, which is what I’ve done for the icons for comparison:

```

\newcommand*{\glxtrpostlinkmediacontrol}{%
  \glxtrpostlinkAddDescOnFirstUse
}

```

```

\newcommand*{\glxtrpostlinkinformation}{%
  \glxtrpostlinkAddDescOnFirstUse
}

```

```

\newcommand*{\glxtrpostlinkweather}{%
  \glxtrpostlinkAddDescOnFirstUse
}

```

I’ve also provided some custom commands to make it easier to reference entries without worrying about the prefixes:

```

\newcommand{\unit}{\glssymbol}
\newcommand{\measurement}{\gls}
\glxtrnewgls{film.}{\film}

```

As with `sample-multi1.tex`, it would be useful to include the page where the entries are defined in their corresponding lists. Again this can be done by redefining the general purpose non-category post-name hook `\glsextrapostnamehook`:

8 Examples

```
\newcommand*{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{%
  \glsadd[format={hyperbf}]{#1}%
}
```

This needs resetting before the index, since it's redundant to record an entry in the index. This will require an extra `bib2gls+ \LaTeX` system call as this code can't be performed until the glossaries have been created.

The complete document code is listed below. The document build is:

```
pdflatex sample-multi2
bib2gls --group --break-space sample-multi2
pdflatex sample-multi2
bib2gls --group --break-space sample-multi2
pdflatex sample-multi2
```

The resulting document is shown in figure 8.18, figure 8.19 and figure 8.20.

```
\documentclass{scrreprt}

\usepackage[T1]{fontenc}
\usepackage[utf8]{inputenc}
\usepackage[version=4]{mhchem}
\usepackage{siunitx}
\usepackage{etoolbox}
\usepackage{marvosym}
% package conflict, need to undefine conflicting commands
\undef\Sun
\undef\Lightning
\usepackage[weather]{ifsym}

\usepackage[en-GB]{datetime2}
\usepackage[colorlinks]{hyperref}

\usepackage[record,% use bib2gls
section,% use \section* for glossary headings
postdot,% insert dot after descriptions in glossaries
nomain,% don't create 'main' glossary
index,% create 'index' glossary
nostyles,% don't load default styles
% load and patch required style packages:
stylemods={list,mcols,tree,bookindex}
]{glossaries-extra}

\newglossary*{bacteria}{Bacteria}
\newglossary*{markuplanguage}{Markup Languages}
\newglossary*{vegetable}{Vegetables}
\newglossary*{mineral}{Minerals}
```

8 Examples

```
\newglossary*{animal}{Animals}
\newglossary*{chemical}{Chemical Formula}
\newglossary*{baseunit}{SI Units}
\newglossary*{measurement}{Measurements}
\newglossary*{film}{Films}
\newglossary*{book}{Books}
\newglossary*{person}{People}
\newglossary*{mediacontrol}{Media Control Symbols}
\newglossary*{information}{Information Symbols}
\newglossary*{weather}{Weather Symbols}

\newcommand*{\bibglsdate}[7]{\DTMdisplaydate{#1}{#2}{#3}{#4}}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={no-interpret-preamble},
  interpret-preamble=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={interpret-preamble,people},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    born=user1,
    died=user2,
    othername=user3
  },
  replicate-fields={name={first}},
  type=person,
  save-locations=false,
  date-fields={user1,user2},
  date-field-format={d MMM y G}
]

% Abbreviation styles must be set before the resource set
% that defines the abbreviations:
\setabbreviationstyle[bacteria]{long-only-short-only}
\setabbreviationstyle[markuplanguage]{long-short-desc}

% And also the style-dependent name format:
\renewcommand*{\glstxtrlongshortdescname}{%
  \protect\glssabrvfont{\the\glsshorttok}\space
  \glstxtrparen{\glslongfont{\the\glslongtok}}%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={bacteria,markuplanguages,vegetables,
```

8 Examples

```
    minerals, animals, books, films},
field-aliases={
  identifier=category,
  year=user1,
  cast=user2
},
type={same as category},
bibtex-contributor-fields={user2},
contributor-order={forenames},
save-locations=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={chemicalformula},
  entry-type-aliases={chemical=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    formula=name,
    chemicalname=description,
  },
  type={chemical},
  set-widest,
  sort={letternumber-case},
  symbol-sort-fallback={name},
  save-locations=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={baseunits, derivedunits},
  entry-type-aliases={measurement=symbol, unit=symbol},
  field-aliases={
    unitname=description,
    unitsymbol=symbol,
    measurement=name
  },
  category={measurement},
  type={measurement},
  set-widest,
  symbol-sort-fallback={name},
  save-locations=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={baseunits},
  entry-type-aliases={unit=symbol},
  field-aliases={
```

8 Examples

```
    unitname=description,
    unitsymbol=name
},
category={measurement},
type={baseunit},
duplicate-label-suffix={.copy},
symbol-sort-fallback={name},
save-locations=false
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={miscsymbols},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    icon=name,
    icondescription=description
  },
  entry-type-aliases={icon=symbol},
  type={same as category},
  sort-field={description},
  save-locations=false,
  set-widest
]

\renewcommand*{\glxtrlongshortdescname}{%
  \protect\protect\glslongfont{\the\glslongtok}\space
  \glxtrparen{\glsabbrvfont{\the\glsshorttok}}%
}

% requires glossaries-extra v1.25:
\renewcommand*{\glxtronlyname}{%
  \protect\glsabbrvonlyfont{\the\glslongtok}%
}

\GlsXtrLoadResources [
  src={miscsymbols},
  selection={recorded no deps},
  duplicate-label-suffix={.copy},
  entry-type-aliases={icon=index},
  field-aliases={
    identifier=category,
    icondescription=symbol,
    icon=name
  },
  type=index,
  sort-field={symbol},
```

8 Examples

```
group={glssymbols}
]

\GlsXtrLoadResources[
src={terms,bacteria,markuplanguages,vegetables,minerals,
animals,chemicalformula,baseunits,derivedunits,people,
films,books,miscsymbols},
selection={recorded and deps and see},
field-aliases={
identifier=category,
formula=symbol,
chemicalname=name,
unitname=description,
unitsymbol=symbol,
measurement=name,
icon=symbol,
icondescription=name
},
entry-type-aliases={
chemical=index,
measurement=entry,
unit=dualentry,
icon=index
},
label-prefix={idx.},
record-label-prefix={idx.},
type=index,
dual-type=index,
combine-dual-locations=both,
abbreviation-sort-fallback={long},
replicate-override,
replicate-fields={first=name},
identical-sort-action={category}
]

\newcommand*\swaptwo}[2]{#2, #1}
\newcommand*\swapthree}[3]{#2 #3, #1}

\newcommand{\bacteriafont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{textformat}{bacteriafont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossnamefont}{bacteriafont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{bacteria}{glossdescfont}{bacteriafont}

\newcommand{\bookfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glssetcategoryattribute{book}{textformat}{bookfont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{book}{glossnamefont}{bookfont}
```

8 Examples

```
\newcommand{\filmfont}[1]{\emph{#1}}
\glssetcategoryattribute{film}{textformat}{filmfont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{film}{glossnamefont}{filmfont}
\glssetcategoryattribute{film}{glossdesc}{firstuc}

\glssetcategoryattribute{markuplanguage}{glossdesc}{firstuc}

\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostlinkmediacontrol}{%
  \glsxtrpostlinkAddDescOnFirstUse
}

\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostlinkinformation}{%
  \glsxtrpostlinkAddDescOnFirstUse
}

\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostlinkweather}{%
  \glsxtrpostlinkAddDescOnFirstUse
}

\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostlinkperson}{%
  \glsxtrifwasfirstuse
  {%
    \ifglshasfield{user3}{\glslabel}%
    {\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
    {}%
  }%
  {}%
}

\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostnameperson}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user3}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
  {\space(\glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
  {}%
}

\newcommand*{\glsxtrpostdescperson}{%
  \ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}
  {% born
    \space(\glscurrentfieldvalue\,--\,%
      \ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}
      {% died
        \glscurrentfieldvalue
      }%
    }%
  )%
}
```

8 Examples

```
}%
{}%
}

\newcommand*{\glxtrpostdescfilm}{%
\ifglshasfield{user1}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
{%
\glxtrrestorepostpunc % requires glossaries-extra v1.23+
\ (released \glscurrentfieldvalue)}%
}%
\ifglshasfield{user2}{\glscurrententrylabel}%
{%
\glxtrrestorepostpunc
\ featuring \glscurrentfieldvalue
}%
}%
}

\renewcommand*{\glxtrbookindexname}[1]{%
\glossentryname{#1}%
\ifglshassymbol{#1}%
{%
\glcifcategory{#1}{chemical}%
{, \glossentrysymbol{#1}}%
{\space(\glossentrynameother{#1}{symbol})}%
}%
{%
\glcifcategory{#1}{film}%
{\ (film)}%
}%
}%
}

% requires glossaries-extra v1.25+:
\renewcommand*{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{%
\glsadd[format=hyperbf]{#1}%
}

\newcommand{\unit}{\glssymbol}
\newcommand{\measurement}{\gls}
\glxtrnewgls{film.}{\film}
\glxtrnewglslike{idx.}{\idx}{\idxpl}{\Idx}{\Idxpl}

\begin{document}
\chapter{Sample}
\section{Bacteria}
```

8 Examples

This section is about `\idxpl{bacteria}`.

`\subsection{First Use}`

`\gls{cbotulinum}`, `\gls{pputida}`, `\gls{cperfringens}`,
`\gls{bsubtilis}`, `\gls{ctetani}`, `\gls{pcomposti}`,
`\gls{pfimeticola}`, `\gls{cburnetii}`, `\gls{raustralis}`,
`\gls{rrickettsii}`.

`\subsection{Next Use}`

`\gls{cbotulinum}`, `\gls{pputida}`, `\gls{cperfringens}`,
`\gls{bsubtilis}`, `\gls{ctetani}`, `\gls{pcomposti}`,
`\gls{pfimeticola}`, `\gls{cburnetii}`, `\gls{raustralis}`,
`\gls{rrickettsii}`.

`\section{Markup Languages}`

This section is about `\idxpl{markuplanguage}`.

`\subsection{First Use}`

`\gls{LaTeX}`, `\gls{markdown}`, `\gls{xhtml}`, `\gls{mathml}`, `\gls{svg}`.

`\subsection{Next Use}`

`\gls{LaTeX}`, `\gls{markdown}`, `\gls{xhtml}`, `\gls{mathml}`, `\gls{svg}`.

`\section{Vegetables}`

This section is about `\idxpl{vegetable}`.

`\Gls{cabbage}`, `\gls{brussels-sprout}`, `\gls{artichoke}`,
`\gls{cauliflower}`, `\gls{courgette}`, `\gls{spinach}`.

`\section{Minerals}`

This section is about `\idxpl{mineral}`.

`\Gls{beryl}`, `\gls{amethyst}`, `\gls{chalcedony}`, `\gls{aquamarine}`,
`\gls{aragonite}`, `\gls{calcite}`, `\gls{bilinite}`,
`\gls{cyanotrichite}`, `\gls{biotite}`, `\gls{dolomite}`,
`\gls{quetzalcoatlite}`, `\gls{vulcanite}`.

`\section{Animals}`

This section is about `\idxpl{animal}`.

`\Gls{duck}`, `\gls{parrot}`, `\gls{hedgehog}`, `\gls{sealion}`,
`\gls{zander}`, `\gls{aardvark}`, `\gls{zebra}`, `\gls{swan}`,
`\gls{armadillo}`.

`\section{Chemicals}`

This section is about `\idxpl{chemical}`.

`\gls{Al2S043}` (`\glsdesc{Al2S043}`), `\gls{H20}` (`\glsdesc{H20}`),
`\gls{C6H1206}` (`\glsdesc{C6H1206}`), `\gls{CH3CH20H}`
(`\glsdesc{CH3CH20H}`), `\gls{CH20}` (`\glsdesc{CH20}`), `\gls{0F2}`
(`\glsdesc{0F2}`), `\gls{02F2}` (`\glsdesc{02F2}`), `\gls{S042-}`
(`\glsdesc{S042-}`), `\gls{H30+}` (`\glsdesc{H30+}`), `\gls{0H-}`

8 Examples

```
(\glsdesc{OH-}), \gls{O2} (\glsdesc{O2}), \gls{AlF3}
(\glsdesc{AlF3}), \gls{O} (\glsdesc{O}), \gls{Al2CoO4}
(\glsdesc{Al2CoO4}), \gls{As4S4} (\glsdesc{As4S4}),
\gls{C10H10O4} (\glsdesc{C10H10O4}), \gls{C5H4NCOOH}
(\glsdesc{C5H4NCOOH}), \gls{C8H10N4O2} (\gls{C8H10N4O2}),
\gls{SO2} (\glsdesc{SO2}), \gls{S2O72-} (\gls{S2O72-}),
\gls{SbBr3} (\glsdesc{SbBr3}), \gls{Sc2O3} (\glsdesc{Sc2O3}),
\gls{Zr3PO44} (\glsdesc{Zr3PO44}), \gls{ZnF2} (\glsdesc{ZnF2}).
```

```
\section{SI Units}
```

```
\Idxpl{baseunit}: \unit{ampere} (measures \measurement{ampere}),
\unit{kilogram} (measures \measurement{kilogram}), \unit{metre},
\unit{second}, \unit{kelvin}, \unit{mole}, \unit{candela}.
```

```
\Idxpl{derivedunit}: \unit{area}, \unit{volume},
\unit{velocity},
\unit{acceleration}, \unit{density}, \unit{luminance},
\unit{specificvolume}, \unit{concentration}, \unit{wavenumber}.
```

```
\section{Books and Films}
```

```
\Idxpl{book}: \gls{ataleoftwocities} (by \gls{dickens}),
\gls{thebigsleep} (by \gls{chandler}, \idx{film} adaptation:
\film{thebigsleep}), \gls{icecoldinalex} (by
\gls{landon}, \idx{film} adaptation: \film{icecoldinalex}),
\gls{whydidnttheyaskevans} (by \gls{christie},
\idx{film} adaptation: \film{whydidnttheyaskevans}),
\gls{doandroidsdreamofelectricsheep} (by \gls{dick},
inspired the \idx{film} \film{bladerunner}).
```

```
\Idxpl{film}: \film{anunexpectedjourney}, \film{desolationofsmaug}
and \film{thebattleoffivearmies} (adapted from the
\idx{book} \gls{thehobbit} by \gls{tolkien}),
\film{thefellowshipofthering}, \film{thetwotowers}
and \film{thereturnoftheking} (adapted from the
\idx{book} \gls{thelordoftherings} also by \gls{tolkien}).
```

```
\section{Miscellaneous Symbols}
```

```
\subsection{First Use}
```

```
\Idxpl{mediacontrol}: \gls{forward}, \gls{forwardtoindex},
\gls{rewindtoindex}, \gls{rewind}.
```

```
\Idx{information}: \gls{bicycle}, \gls{coffeecup}, \gls{info},
\gls{gentsroom}, \gls{ladiesroom}, \gls{wheelchair}, \gls{football},
\gls{recycling}.
```

8 Examples

```
\Idx{weather}: \gls{cloud}, \gls{fog}, \gls{hail}, \gls{sun},
\gls{lightning}.

\subsection{Next Use}

\Idxpl{mediacontrol}: \gls{forward}, \gls{forwardtoindex},
\gls{rewindtoindex}, \gls{rewind}.

\Idx{information}: \gls{bicycle}, \gls{coffeecup}, \gls{info},
\gls{gentsroom}, \gls{ladiesroom}, \gls{wheelchair}, \gls{football}.

\Idx{weather}: \gls{cloud}, \gls{fog}, \gls{hail}, \gls{sun},
\gls{lightning}.

\section{Measurements}

\Idxpl{measurement}:
\measurement{ampere}, \measurement{area}, \measurement{metre}.

\chapter{Glossaries}
\printunsrtglossary[type=bacteria,style=mcoltree]
\printunsrtglossary[type=markuplanguage,style=altlist]
\printunsrtglossary[type=vegetable,style=tree,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary[type=mineral,style=treegroup]
\printunsrtglossary[type=animal,style=tree]
\printunsrtglossary[type=person,style=tree,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary[type=book,style=tree,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary[type=film,style=tree,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary*[type=chemical,style=mcolalmtreegroup]
{%
  \renewcommand*{\glstreenamfmt}[1]{#1}%
  \renewcommand*{\glstreegroupheaderfmt}[1]{\textbf{#1}}%
}
\printunsrtglossary*[type=measurement,style=almtree,nogroupskip]
{%
  \renewcommand{\glsxtralttreeSymbolDescLocation}[2]{%
    \glossentrydesc{#1}%
    \ifglshassymbol{#1}{\space(\glossentrysymbol{#1})}{}%
    \glspostdescription
    \glsxtrAltTreePar
  }%
}

\printunsrtglossary*[type=baseunit,style=almtree,nogroupskip]
{%
```

8 Examples

```
\glsFindWidestTopLevelName[baseunit]%
}
\printunsrtglossary[type=information,style=almtree,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary[type=mediacontrol,style=almtree,nogroupskip]
\printunsrtglossary[type=weather,style=almtree,nogroupskip]

\printunsrtglossary*[type=index,style=bookindex]
{%
  \setupglossaries{section=chapter}%
  \let\sortname\swaptwo
  \let\sortvonname\swapthree
  \renewcommand*{\glsextrapostnamehook}[1]{}%
}
\end{document}}
```


8 Examples

<p>Vegetables</p> <p>artichoke a variety of thistle cultivated as food.</p> <p>Brussels sprout small leafy green vegetable buds.</p> <p>cabbage vegetable with thick green or purple leaves.</p> <p>cauliflower type of cabbage with edible white flower head.</p> <p>courgette immature fruit of a vegetable narrow.</p> <p>marrow long white-fleshed gourd with green skin.</p> <p>spinach green, leafy vegetable.</p> <p>Minerals</p> <p>A</p> <p>amethyst purple variety of quartz.</p> <p>aquamarine light blue variety of beryl.</p> <p>aragonite a crystal form of calcium carbonate.</p> <p>B</p> <p>beryl composed of beryllium aluminium cyclosilicate.</p> <p>bfilnite an iron sulfate mineral.</p> <p>biotite a common phyllosilicate mineral.</p> <p>C</p> <p>calcite a crystal form of calcium carbonate.</p> <p>chalcodony cryptocrystalline variety of quartz.</p> <p>cyanotrichite a hydrous copper aluminium sulfate mineral.</p> <p>D</p> <p>dolomite an anhydrous carbonate mineral.</p> <p>Q</p> <p>quartz hard mineral consisting of silica.</p> <p>quetzalcoatlite a rare tellurium oxyarsite mineral.</p> <p>V</p> <p>vulcanite a rare copper telluride mineral.</p> <p>5</p>	<p>Animals</p> <p>aardvark nocturnal African burrowing mammal.</p> <p>armadillo nocturnal insectivore with large claws.</p> <p>duck a waterbird with webbed feet.</p> <p>hedgehog small nocturnal mammal with a spiny coat and short legs.</p> <p>parrot mainly tropical bird with bright plumage.</p> <p>sea lion a large type of seal.</p> <p>seal sea-dwelling fish-eating mammal with flippers.</p> <p>swan a large waterbird with a long flexible neck, short legs, webbed feet and a broad bill.</p> <p>zander large freshwater perch.</p> <p>zebra wild African horse with black-and-white stripes.</p> <p>People</p> <p>Raymond Chandler American-British novelist and screenwriter (23rd July 1888 – 26th March 1959).</p> <p>Dame Agatha Mary Clarissa Christie (Lady Mallowan) English crime novelist and playwright (15th September 1890 – 12th January 1976).</p> <p>Philip K. Dick American science fiction writer (16th December 1928 – 2nd March 1982).</p> <p>Charles Dickens English writer and social critic (7th February 1812 – 9th June 1870).</p> <p>Christopher Guy London British novelist and screenwriter (29th March 1911 – 26th April 1961).</p> <p>John Ronald Reuel Tolkien English writer, poet, philologist, and university professor (3rd January 1892 – 2nd September 1973).</p> <p>Books</p> <p>The Big Sleep novel by Raymond Chandler.</p> <p>Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep? novel by Philip K. Dick.</p> <p>The Hobbit novel by J.R.R. Tolkien.</p> <p>Ice Cold in Alex novel by Christopher London.</p> <p>The Lord of the Rings novel by J.R.R. Tolkien.</p> <p>A Tale of Two Cities novel by Charles Dickens.</p> <p>Why Didn't They Ask Evans? novel by Agatha Christie.</p> <p>6</p>																																																																																												
<p>Films</p> <p>The Big Sleep A film based on the novel The Big Sleep (released 1946) featuring Humphrey Bogart & Lauren Bacall.</p> <p>Blade Runner A film loosely based on the novel Do Androids Dream of Electric Sheep? (released 1982) featuring Harrison Ford, Rutger Hauer & Sean Young.</p> <p>The Hobbit: The Battle of Five Armies A film based on the novel The Hobbit (released 2014) featuring Ian McKellen, Martin Freeman & Richard Armitage.</p> <p>The Hobbit: The Desolation of Smaug A film based on the novel The Hobbit (released 2013) featuring Ian McKellen, Martin Freeman & Richard Armitage.</p> <p>The Hobbit: An Unexpected Journey A film based on the novel The Hobbit (released 2012) featuring Martin Freeman, Ian McKellen & Richard Armitage.</p> <p>Ice Cold in Alex A film based on the novel Ice Cold in Alex (released 1958) featuring John Mills, Anthony Quayle & Sylvia Sims.</p> <p>The Lord of the Rings: The Fellowship of the Ring A film based on the novel The Lord of the Rings (released 2001) featuring Elijah Wood, Ian McKellen & Orlando Bloom.</p> <p>The Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King A film based on the novel The Lord of the Rings (released 2003) featuring Elijah Wood, Viggo Mortensen & Ian McKellen.</p> <p>The Lord of the Rings: The Two Towers A film based on the novel The Lord of the Rings (released 2002) featuring Elijah Wood, Ian McKellen & Viggo Mortensen.</p> <p>Why Didn't They Ask Evans? A film based on the novel Why Didn't They Ask Evans? (released 1980) featuring Francesca Annis, John Gielgud & Bernard Miles.</p> <p>Chemical Formula</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>A</td> <td></td> <td>O</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>AlF₃</td> <td>aluminium trifluoride.</td> <td>O</td> <td>oxygen.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Al₂(SO₄)₃</td> <td>aluminium sulfate.</td> <td>OF₂</td> <td>oxygen difluoride.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Al₂CoO₄</td> <td>cobalt blue.</td> <td>OH⁻</td> <td>hydroxide ion.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>As₂S₄</td> <td>tetraarsenic tetrasulfide.</td> <td>O₂</td> <td>dioxygen.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td> <td></td> <td>O₂F₂</td> <td>dioxygen difluoride.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CH₂O</td> <td>formaldehyde.</td> <td>S</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>CH₃CH₂OH</td> <td>ethanol.</td> <td>SO₂</td> <td>sulfur dioxide.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C₅H₇NCOOH</td> <td>niacin.</td> <td>SO₄²⁻</td> <td>sulfate.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C₆H₁₂O₆</td> <td>glucose.</td> <td>S₂O₇²⁻</td> <td>disulfate ion.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C₈H₁₀N₄O₂</td> <td>caffeine.</td> <td>SbBr₃</td> <td>antimony(III) bromide.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C₁₀H₁₀O₄</td> <td>ferulic acid.</td> <td>Sc₂O₃</td> <td>scandium oxide.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>H</td> <td></td> <td>Z</td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td>H₂O</td> <td>water.</td> <td>ZnF₂</td> <td>zinc fluoride.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>H₃O⁺</td> <td>hydronium.</td> <td>Zr₃(PO₄)₄</td> <td>zirconium phosphate.</td> </tr> </table> <p>7</p>	A		O		AlF ₃	aluminium trifluoride.	O	oxygen.	Al ₂ (SO ₄) ₃	aluminium sulfate.	OF ₂	oxygen difluoride.	Al ₂ CoO ₄	cobalt blue.	OH ⁻	hydroxide ion.	As ₂ S ₄	tetraarsenic tetrasulfide.	O ₂	dioxygen.	C		O ₂ F ₂	dioxygen difluoride.	CH ₂ O	formaldehyde.	S		CH ₃ CH ₂ OH	ethanol.	SO ₂	sulfur dioxide.	C ₅ H ₇ NCOOH	niacin.	SO ₄ ²⁻	sulfate.	C ₆ H ₁₂ O ₆	glucose.	S ₂ O ₇ ²⁻	disulfate ion.	C ₈ H ₁₀ N ₄ O ₂	caffeine.	SbBr ₃	antimony(III) bromide.	C ₁₀ H ₁₀ O ₄	ferulic acid.	Sc ₂ O ₃	scandium oxide.	H		Z		H ₂ O	water.	ZnF ₂	zinc fluoride.	H ₃ O ⁺	hydronium.	Zr ₃ (PO ₄) ₄	zirconium phosphate.	<p>Measurements</p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td>acceleration</td> <td>metre per second squared (m s⁻²).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>amount of substance</td> <td>mole (mol).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>area</td> <td>square metre (m²).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>concentration</td> <td>mole per cubic metre (mol m⁻³).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>density</td> <td>ampere per square metre (A m⁻²).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>electric current</td> <td>ampere (A).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>length</td> <td>metre (m).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>luminance</td> <td>candela per square metre (cd m⁻²).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>luminous intensity</td> <td>candela (cd).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>mass</td> <td>kilogram (kg).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>specific volume</td> <td>cubic metre per kilogram (m³ kg⁻¹).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>thermodynamic temperature</td> <td>kelvin (K).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>time</td> <td>second (s).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>velocity</td> <td>metre per second (m s⁻¹).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>volume</td> <td>cubic metre (m³).</td> </tr> <tr> <td>wave number</td> <td>per metre (m⁻¹).</td> </tr> </table> <p>SI Units</p> <p>A ampere. cd candela. K kelvin. kg kilogram. m metre. mol mole. s second.</p> <p>Information Symbols</p> <p>ⓘ bicycle route. ☐ café. ⚽ football stadium. † Gents. ♀ information centre. † Ladies. ♻ recycling centre. ♿ wheelchair access provided.</p> <p>8</p>	acceleration	metre per second squared (m s ⁻²).	amount of substance	mole (mol).	area	square metre (m ²).	concentration	mole per cubic metre (mol m ⁻³).	density	ampere per square metre (A m ⁻²).	electric current	ampere (A).	length	metre (m).	luminance	candela per square metre (cd m ⁻²).	luminous intensity	candela (cd).	mass	kilogram (kg).	specific volume	cubic metre per kilogram (m ³ kg ⁻¹).	thermodynamic temperature	kelvin (K).	time	second (s).	velocity	metre per second (m s ⁻¹).	volume	cubic metre (m ³).	wave number	per metre (m ⁻¹).
A		O																																																																																											
AlF ₃	aluminium trifluoride.	O	oxygen.																																																																																										
Al ₂ (SO ₄) ₃	aluminium sulfate.	OF ₂	oxygen difluoride.																																																																																										
Al ₂ CoO ₄	cobalt blue.	OH ⁻	hydroxide ion.																																																																																										
As ₂ S ₄	tetraarsenic tetrasulfide.	O ₂	dioxygen.																																																																																										
C		O ₂ F ₂	dioxygen difluoride.																																																																																										
CH ₂ O	formaldehyde.	S																																																																																											
CH ₃ CH ₂ OH	ethanol.	SO ₂	sulfur dioxide.																																																																																										
C ₅ H ₇ NCOOH	niacin.	SO ₄ ²⁻	sulfate.																																																																																										
C ₆ H ₁₂ O ₆	glucose.	S ₂ O ₇ ²⁻	disulfate ion.																																																																																										
C ₈ H ₁₀ N ₄ O ₂	caffeine.	SbBr ₃	antimony(III) bromide.																																																																																										
C ₁₀ H ₁₀ O ₄	ferulic acid.	Sc ₂ O ₃	scandium oxide.																																																																																										
H		Z																																																																																											
H ₂ O	water.	ZnF ₂	zinc fluoride.																																																																																										
H ₃ O ⁺	hydronium.	Zr ₃ (PO ₄) ₄	zirconium phosphate.																																																																																										
acceleration	metre per second squared (m s ⁻²).																																																																																												
amount of substance	mole (mol).																																																																																												
area	square metre (m ²).																																																																																												
concentration	mole per cubic metre (mol m ⁻³).																																																																																												
density	ampere per square metre (A m ⁻²).																																																																																												
electric current	ampere (A).																																																																																												
length	metre (m).																																																																																												
luminance	candela per square metre (cd m ⁻²).																																																																																												
luminous intensity	candela (cd).																																																																																												
mass	kilogram (kg).																																																																																												
specific volume	cubic metre per kilogram (m ³ kg ⁻¹).																																																																																												
thermodynamic temperature	kelvin (K).																																																																																												
time	second (s).																																																																																												
velocity	metre per second (m s ⁻¹).																																																																																												
volume	cubic metre (m ³).																																																																																												
wave number	per metre (m ⁻¹).																																																																																												

Figure 8.19: sample-multi2.pdf (pages 5 to 8)

8 Examples

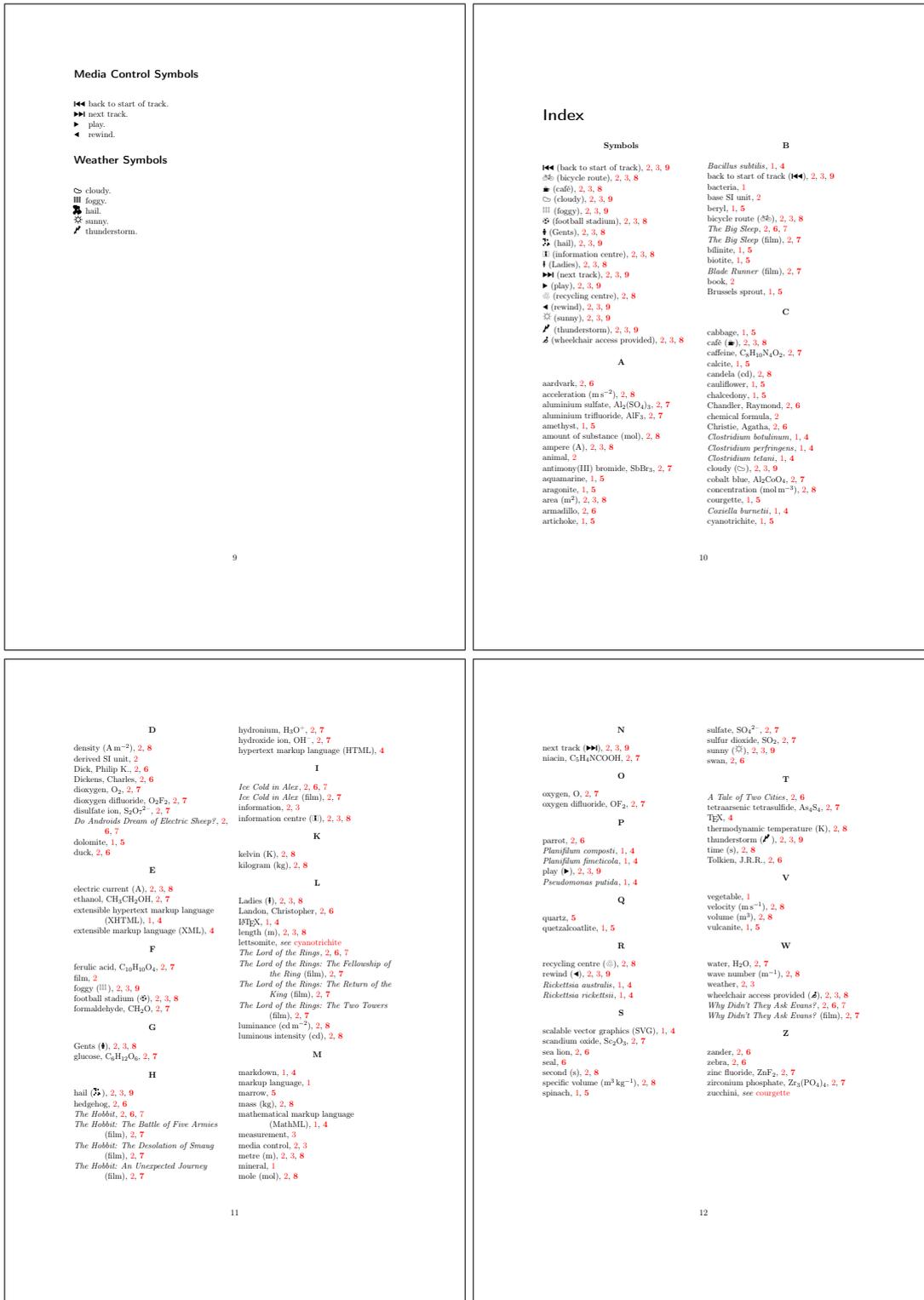


Figure 8.20: sample-multi2.pdf (pages 9 and 12)

Package Option Summary

Most options are in the form $\langle option \rangle = \langle value \rangle$ and may have a default if $\langle value \rangle$ is omitted, but some options don't have values and should not have one assigned. For boolean options, if the value is omitted `true` is assumed. †Indicates a value that's only provided by `glossaries-extra` and not by the base `glossaries` package.

A

`abbreviations`

Creates the abbreviations glossary.

† Provided by `glossaries-extra`.

`accsupp`

Load the `glossaries-accsupp` package to provide accessibility support.

† Provided by `glossaries` and modified by `glossaries-extra`.

`automake=\langle boolean \rangle`

If true, tries to use TeX's shell escape to automatically run the required indexing application (may not be permitted by TeX's security settings).

† Provided by `glossaries`.

C

`counter=\langle value \rangle`

Sets the default location counter to $\langle value \rangle$ (which must be the name of a counter). May be overridden on an individual basis using the `counter` option in commands like `\gls` and `\glsadd`.

† Provided by `glossaries`.

E

`entrycounter=\langle boolean \rangle`

If true, creates the `glossaryentry` counter and each main (level 0) glossary entry will

be numbered (which can be referenced with `\glsrefentry` or `\glsxtrpageref`).

† Provided by `glossaries`.

I

`index`

Defines the index glossary and `\newterm`.

† Provided by `glossaries`.

`indexcounter`

Creates the `wrglossary` counter, which is incremented every time an entry is indexed with that counter, and sets that as the default location counter.

† Provided by `glossaries-extra`.

N

`nogroupskip=\langle boolean \rangle`

If true, suppresses the visual separation between letter groups in glossary styles that support this option.

† Provided by `glossaries`.

`nomain`

Suppresses the creation of the default main glossary. If used an alternative glossary must be created.

† Provided by `glossaries`.

`nonumberlist`

Suppresses the location lists from being displayed in the glossary lists (the package option isn't boolean, but the option

of the same name for `\printglossary`, `\printunsrtglossary` and `\printnoidxglossary` is boolean); with `bib2gls` you can use `save-locations={false}` instead.

☞ Provided by `glossaries`.

`nopostdot`= \langle *boolean* \rangle

If true, suppresses the automatic post-description punctuation. With `glossaries-extra` you can also use `postpunc={none}` instead of `nopostdot={true}` and `postdot` or `postpunc={dot}` instead of `nopostdot={false}`.

☞ Provided by `glossaries` and modified by `glossaries-extra`.

`nostyles`

Prevents all the default styles from being loaded. If this option is used a style must be defined in the document or a package providing a style needs to be loaded (either through `stylemods` or with `\usepackage`).

☞ Provided by `glossaries`.

`numberedsection`= \langle *value* \rangle

Determines whether to use numbered or unnumbered section units, and whether or not to automatically add `\label`; the value may be one of: `false` (default, no numbering and no label), `nolabel` (numbered but no label), `autolabel` (numbered with automatic label), `nameref` (unnumbered but labelled). If no value is given `nolabel` is assumed.

☞ Provided by `glossaries`.

`numbers`

Defines the numbers glossary; with `glossaries-extra` additionally defines `\gls-xtrnewnumber`.

☞ Provided by `glossaries` and modified by `glossaries-extra`.

P

`postdot`

Equivalent to `postpunc={dot}`.

☞ Provided by `glossaries-extra`.

`postpunc`= \langle *value* \rangle

Controls the automatic post-description punctuation; the value may be one of: `none` (not required, the `description` or glossary style already supplies the terminating punctuation), `comma` (use a comma), `dot` (use a full stop with the space factor adjusted), \langle *punctuation* \rangle (use \langle *punctuation* \rangle).

☞ Provided by `glossaries-extra`.

R

`record`= \langle *value* \rangle

Unless the value is `off`, this option sets up `glossaries-extra` for use with `bib2gls`: `only` (assumed if no \langle *value* \rangle supplied) indexing is performed by `bib2gls`; `nameref` (`glossaries-extra` v1.37+) like `only` but includes extra information in the records; `alsoindex` (hybrid method) `bib2gls` is used to provide the entry definitions but `makeindex` or `xindy` is used for the indexing.

☞ Provided by `glossaries-extra`.

S

`section`= \langle *value* \rangle

Indicates the sectional unit to use for the glossary heading (the value should be the name of the section command without the leading backslash, for example `section={subsection}`). If no value is supplied then `section={section}` is assumed. If this option is omitted, then the default is either `section={chapter}` or `section={section}`, depending on whether or not `\chapter` has been defined. The starred or unstarred version is determined by `numberedsection`.

☞ Provided by `glossaries`.

`shortcuts`= \langle *value* \rangle

Sets up short cut commands; the value may be one of `false` (default), `true` (assumed if no value supplied, implements `shortcuts={ac}`, `shortcuts={abbreviations}` and

`shortcuts={other}`), `acronyms`[†] (equivalent to base `shortcuts={true}`, synonym `acro`), `ac`[†] (provides `\ac` shortcuts that use `glossaries-extra`'s new abbreviation commands), `abbreviations`[†] (provides `\ab` shortcuts), `other`[†] (provides other shortcut commands), `all`[†] (synonym for `shortcuts={true}`) and `none`[†] (synonym for `shortcuts={false}`).

☞ Provided by `glossaries` and modified by `glossaries-extra`.

`sort`=*<value>*

Indicates how to assign the `sort` key if not explicitly set, the value may be one of: `none` (don't automatically assign the `sort` field), `standard` (obtain the `sort` value from the `name` field), `def` (assign the `sort` field to a numerical value that represents the order of definition), `user` (assign the `sort` field to a numerical value that represents the order of first use).

☞ Provided by `glossaries`. Not relevant with `bib2gls`, use the `sort` resource option instead.

`style`=*<name>*

Sets the default glossary style to *<name>*.

☞ Provided by `glossaries`.

`stylemods`=*<value>*

Load the `glossaries-extra-stylemods` package with the supplied options (which should be a list of suffix parts identifying glossary style packages `glossary-<suffix>`); there are two keyword values: `default` (equivalent to omitting *<value>*) and `all`, which loads all

predefined styles.

☞ Provided by `glossaries-extra`.

`subentrycounter`=*<boolean>*

If true, creates the `glossarysubentry` counter and each level 1 glossary entry will be numbered (which can be referenced with `\glsrefentry` or `\glsxtrpageref`); this option and associated counter are independent of `entrycounter` and `glossaryentry`.

☞ Provided by `glossaries`.

`symbols`

Defines the `symbols` glossary; with `glossaries-extra` additionally defines `\glsxtrnewsymbol`.

☞ Provided by `glossaries` and modified by `glossaries-extra`.

U

`undefaction`=*<value>*

Indicates what to do if an undefined entry is referenced: `warn` (generate a warning and show ?? in the text, default with `record`), `error` (generate an error).

☞ Provided by `glossaries-extra`.

X

`xindy`=*<settings>*

Write the indexing information using `xindy`'s format where the optional *<settings>* may supply the language and code page and whether or not to define the default number group.

☞ Provided by `glossaries`. Not relevant with `bib2gls`.

Command Summary

<code>\"⟨character⟩</code>	kernel command
Puts an umlaut accent over <i>⟨character⟩</i> .	
<code>\#</code>	kernel command
Produces the hash symbol #.	
<code>\%</code>	kernel command
Produces the percent symbol %.	
<code>\&</code>	kernel command
Produces the ampersand symbol &.	
<code>\'⟨character⟩</code>	kernel command
Puts an acute accent over <i>⟨character⟩</i> .	
<code>\,</code>	kernel command
Thin space.	
<code>\@</code>	kernel command
Adjusts the space factor to indicate the following punctuation character marks the end of the sentence.	
<code>\@currentHref</code>	hyperref
Used to store the current anchor for the next instance of <code>\label</code> .	
<code>\@currentlabelname</code>	hyperref
Used to store the current title information for the next instance of <code>\label</code> .	
<code>\@firstofone{⟨code⟩}</code>	kernel command
Does <i>⟨code⟩</i> .	
<code>\@for⟨cs⟩:=⟨list⟩\do{⟨code⟩}</code>	kernel command
Iterates over each item in the comma-separated <i>⟨list⟩</i> , and on each iteration sets <i>⟨cs⟩</i> to the current element and performs <i>⟨code⟩</i> .	
<code>\@gls@hypergroup{⟨type⟩}{⟨group id⟩}</code>	glossary-hypernav
Command written to the <code>.aux</code> file that identifies that the given group was used in the glossary on the previous run.	
<code>\@gobble{⟨code⟩}</code>	kernel command
Does nothing (the argument is discarded).	
<code>\@istfilename{⟨filename⟩}</code>	glossaries
Identifies the style file in the <code>.aux</code> file for the benefit of external tools like <code>makeglossaries</code> and <code>makeglossaries-lite</code> .	

Command Summary

$\hat{\langle character \rangle}$ Puts a circumflex accent over $\langle character \rangle$.	kernel command
$_$ Produces the underscore symbol $_$.	kernel command
$\{$ Produces the open brace symbol $\{$.	kernel command
$\}$ Produces the close brace symbol $\}$.	kernel command
$_$ Produces an inter-word space.	kernel command
A	
\AA Produces the upper case A-ring character \AA .	kernel command
\aa Produces the lower case a-ring character \aa .	kernel command
$\ab[\langle options \rangle][\langle label \rangle][\langle insert \rangle]$ Equivalent to \gls .	<code>glossaries-extra</code> <code>shortcuts={abbreviations}</code>
\abbrvpluralsuffix The style sensitive suffix used to construct the default plural for the short form of abbreviations.	<code>glossaries-extra</code>
$\ac[\langle options \rangle][\langle label \rangle][\langle insert \rangle]$ Equivalent to \gls .	<code>glossaries-extra</code> <code>shortcuts</code> package option
\acronymtype Expands to the default acronym glossary type when using \newacronym .	<code>glossaries</code>
\acrpluralsuffix The suffix used to construct the default plural for the short form of acronyms.	<code>glossaries</code>
\AE Produces the upper case \AE -ligature.	kernel command
\ae Produces the lower case \ae -ligature.	kernel command
$\alph{\langle counter \rangle}$ Displays the given counter as an alphabetic character from “a” to “z”.	kernel command
α Greek letter alpha α .	kernel command (maths mode)
\approx Approximate symbol \approx .	kernel command (maths mode)

Command Summary

<code>\appto{<cs>}{<code>}</code>	etoolbox
Appends <code><code></code> to the definition of the control sequence <code><cs></code> .	
<code>\apptoglossarypreamble[<type>]{<code>}</code>	glossaries-extra
Appends <code><code></code> to the preamble for the given glossary.	
<code>\AtEndDocument{<code>}</code>	kernel command
Perform <code><code></code> at the end of the document.	
<code>\autoref{<id>}</code>	hyperref
Cross-reference with textual tag inferred from the associated counter.	

B

<code>\backmatter</code>	book-like classes
Switches to back matter.	
<code>\bfseries</code>	kernel command
Switch to bold (until end of current scope).	
<code>\bibglsaliassep</code>	
Separator between <code>alias</code> cross-reference and location list.	
<code>\bibglsampersandchar</code>	
Expands to a literal ampersand character.	
<code>\bibglscircumchar</code>	
Expands to a literal circumflex character.	
<code>\bibglscontributor{<forenames>}{<von-part>}{<surname>}{<suffix>}</code>	
Used to markup a contributor's name that was converted from BibTeX's contributor syntax.	
<code>\bibglscontributorlist{<list>}{<number>}</code>	
Used to markup a list of names from a field that was converted from BibTeX's contributor syntax.	
<code>\bibglsdate{<year>}{<month>}{<day-of-month>}{<day-of-week>}{<day-of-year>}{<era>}{<original>}</code>	
Used to markup a date converted from a field value.	
<code>\bibglsdategroup{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<G>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}</code>	
Expands to the date group label.	
<code>\bibglsdategrouptitle{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<G>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}</code>	
Expands to the date group title.	
<code>\bibglsdatetime{<year>}{<month>}{<day-of-month>}{<day-of-week>}{<day-of-year>}{<era>}{<hour>}{<minute>}{<second>}{<millisec>}{<dst>}{<zone>}{<original>}</code>	
Used to markup a date-time instance converted from a field value.	

Command Summary

- `\bibglmdatetimegroup{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the date-time group label.
- `\bibglmdatetimegrouptitle{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the date-time group title.
- `\bibglsdelimN`
Delimit individual locations (except last).
- `\bibglsdollarchar`
Expands to a literal dollar character.
- `\bibglsdualprefixlabel{<prefix>}`
Hook provided to pick up the dual prefix, if required.
- `\bibglsemptygroup{<type>}`
Expands to the empty group label.
- `\bibglsemptygrouptitle{<type>}`
Expands to the empty group title.
- `\bibglsexternalprefixlabel{<n>}{<prefix>}`
Hook provided to pick up the *<n>*th external prefix, if required.
- `\bibglstfirstuc{<text>}`
Converts the first letter of *<text>* to upper case.
- `\bibglstflattenedchildpostsort{<parent name>}{<child name>}`
Expands to the post-sort flattened child entry's new name.
- `\bibglstflattenedchildpresort{<child name>}{<parent name>}`
Expands to the pre-sort flattened child entry's new name.
- `\bibglstflattenedhomograph{<name>}{<parent label>}`
Expands to the flattened entry's new name.
- `\bibglsthashchar`
Expands to a literal hash character.
- `\bibglsthrefchar{<hex>}{<char>}`
Expands to a literal percent character followed by *<hex>*.
- `\bibglsthrefunicode{<hex>}{<char>}`
Expands to *<char>* by default.
- `\bibglsthypergroup{<type>}{<group-id>}`
Creates group navigation information.
- `\bibglsthyperlink{<text>}{<label>}`
Displays *<text>* with a hyperlink to the entry given by *<label>*, if supported.
- `\bibglstinterloper{<location>}`
Interloper location format.

Command Summary

- `\bibglslastDelimN`
Delimit last location.
- `\bibglslettergroup{<title>}{<letter>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the letter group label.
- `\bibglslettergrouptitle{<title>}{<letter>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the letter group title.
- `\bibglslocationgroup{<n>}{<counter>}{<list>}`
Location group encapsulator.
- `\bibglslocationgroupsep`
Location group separator.
- `\bibglslocprefix{<n>}`
Location list prefix.
- `\bibgsllocsuffix{<n>}`
Location list suffix.
- `\bibgslslowercase{<text>}`
Converts `<text>` to lower case.
- `\bibglsnewabbreviation{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}`
Defines terms provided with `@abbreviation`.
- `\bibglsnewacronym{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}`
Defines terms provided with `@acronym`.
- `\bibglsnewbibtextentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@bibtextentry`.
- `\bibglsnewcontributor{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@contributor`.
- `\bibglsnewdualabbreviation{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}`
Defines terms provided with `@dualabbreviation`.
- `\bibglsnewdualabbreviationentry{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines primary terms provided with `@dualabbreviationentry`.
- `\bibglsnewdualabbreviationentrysecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines secondary terms provided with `@dualabbreviationentry`.
- `\bibglsnewdualacronym{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}`
Defines terms provided with `@dualacronym`.
- `\bibglsnewdualentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@dualentry`.
- `\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviation{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines primary terms provided with (deprecated) `@dualentryabbreviation`.

Command Summary

- `\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviationsecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines secondary terms provided with (deprecated) `@dualentryabbreviation`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviation{<label>}{<dual-label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines primary terms provided with `@dualindexabbreviation`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviationsecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines secondary terms provided with `@dualindexabbreviation`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines primary terms provided with `@dualindexentry`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexentrysecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines secondary terms provided with `@dualindexentry`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexnumber{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<symbol>}{<description>}`
Defines primary terms provided with `@dualindexnumber`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexnumbersecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines secondary terms provided with `@dualindexnumber`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexsymbol{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<symbol>}{<description>}`
Defines primary terms provided with `@dualindexsymbol`.
- `\bibglsnewdualindexsymbolsecondary{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines secondary terms provided with `@dualindexsymbol`.
- `\bibglsnewdualnumber{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@dualnumber`.
- `\bibglsnewdualsymbol{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@dualsymbol`.
- `\bibglsnewentry{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@entry`.
- `\bibglsnewindex{<label>}{<options>}`
Defines terms provided with `@index`.
- `\bibglsnewindexplural{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}`
Defines terms provided with `@index`.
- `\bibglsnewnumber{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@number`.
- `\bibglsnewsymbol{<label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<description>}`
Defines terms provided with `@symbol`.
- `\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbreviationentry{<label>}{<dual-label>}{<options>}{<name>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines primary terms provided with `@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry`.

Command Summary

`\bibglstertiaryindexabbreviationentrysecondary{<label>}{<tertiary-label>}`
`{<options>}{<tertiary-opts>}{<primary-name>}{<short>}{<long>}{<description>}`
Defines secondary and tertiary terms provided with
`@tertiaryindexabbreviationentry`.

`\bibglsternumbergroup{<value>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the number group label.

`\bibglsternumbergrouptitle{<value>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the number group title.

`\bibglsternothergroup{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the non-letter group label.

`\bibglsternothergrouptitle{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the non-letter group title.

`\bibglsternspagename`
Name used for single page.

`\bibglsternpagesname`
Name used for multiple pages.

`\bibglsternpassim`
Passim range suffix.

`\bibglsternpassimname`
Name used by passim range suffix.

`\bibglsternpostlocprefix`
Location list post prefix.

`\bibglsternprimary{<n>}{<locations>}`
Location list encapsulator used in the `primarylocations` field.

`\bibglsternprimaryprefixlabel{<prefix>}`
Hook provided to pick up the primary prefix, if required.

`\bibglsternrange{<start>\delimR <end>}`
Explicit range format.

`\bibglsternseealsosep`
Separator between `seealso` cross-references and location list.

`\bibglsternseesep`
Separator between `see` cross-references and location list.

`\bibglsternsetdategrouptitle{{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<G>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}}`
Sets the date (no time) group title.

`\bibglsternsetdatetimegrouptitle{{<YYYY>}{<MM>}{<DD>}{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}`
`{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}}`
Sets the date-time group title.

Command Summary

- `\bibglsetemptygrouptitle{<type>}`
Sets the empty group title.
- `\bibglsetlastgrouptitle{<cs>}{<specs>}`
Sets the last group title.
- `\bibglsetlettergrouptitle{<title>}{<letter>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Sets the letter group title.
- `\bibglsetnumbergrouptitle{<value>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Sets the number group title.
- `\bibglsetothergrouptitle{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Sets the non-letter group title.
- `\bibglsettimegrouptitle{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}`
Sets the time (no date) group title.
- `\bibglsetunicodegrouptitle{<label>}{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Sets the Unicode script, category or character code title.
- `\bibglsetwidest{<level>}{<name>}`
Sets the widest name.
- `\bibglsetwidestfallback{<glossary list>}`
Fallback used instead of `\bibglsetwidest` in the event that `bib2gls` can't determine the widest name, where `<glossary list>` is a comma-separated list of glossary labels.
- `\bibglsetwidestfortype{<type>}{<level>}{<name>}`
Sets the widest name for the given glossary type.
- `\bibglsetwidestfortypefallback{<type>}`
Fallback used instead of `\bibglsetwidestfortype` in the event that `bib2gls` can't determine the widest name.
- `\bibglsetwidesttoplevelfallback{<glossary list>}`
Fallback used instead of `\bibglsetwidest` in the event that `bib2gls` can't determine the widest name where there are only top level entries, where `<glossary list>` is a comma-separated list of glossary labels.
- `\bibglsetwidesttoplevelfortypefallback{<type>}`
Fallback used instead of `\bibglsetwidestfortype` in the event that `bib2gls` can't determine the widest name where there are only top-level entries.
- `\bibglssupplemental{<n>}{<list>}`
Supplemental list encapsulator.
- `\bibglssupplementalsep`
Separator between main and supplementary locations.
- `\bibglssupplementalsublist{<n>}{<external document>}{<list>}`
Supplemental sub-list encapsulator.

Command Summary

- `\bibglssupplementalsubsep`
Separator between supplementary sub-lists.
- `\bibglstertiaryprefixlabel{<prefix>}`
Hook provided to pick up the tertiary prefix, if required.
- `\bibglstime{<hour>}{<minute>}{<second>}{<millisec>}{<dst>}{<zone>}{<original>}`
Used to markup a time converted from a field value.
- `\bibglstimegroup{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the time group label.
- `\bibglstimegrouptitle{<hh>}{<mm>}{<ss>}{<zone>}{<title>}{<group-id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the time group title.
- `\bibglstitlecase{<text>}`
Converts <text> to title case.
- `\bibglunderscorechar`
Expands to a literal underscore character.
- `\bibglunicodegroup{<label>}{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the Unicode script or category label or character code.
- `\bibglunicodetitle{<label>}{<character>}{<id>}{<type>}`
Expands to the Unicode script or category label or character code.
- `\bibglsuppercase{<text>}`
Converts <text> to upper case.
- `\bibgluseabbrvfont{<text>}{<category>}`
Ensures that the given text is formatted according to the given category's short format.
- `\bibglusealias{<label>}`
Display cross-reference list for given entry.
- `\bibgluselongfont{<text>}{<category>}`
Ensures that the given text is formatted according to the given category's long format.
- `\bibglusesee{<label>}`
Display cross-reference list for given entry.
- `\bibgluseseealso{<label>}`
Display cross-reference list for given entry.
- `\bibliography{<file list>}` kernel command
Display bibliography created by BibTeX.
- `\bigoperatornamefmt{<text>}`
Example command.
- `\boldsymbol{<symbol>}` amsmath
Renders given maths symbol in bold if supported by the current font.

Command Summary

`\bottomrule` booktabs
Horizontal rule for the bottom of a tabular-like environment.

C

`\c{character}` kernel command
Puts a cedilla accent over *character*.

`\capitalisewords{text}` mfirstuc v1.06+
Converts the first letter of each word to upper case using `\makefirstuc`.

`\caption[list title]{title}` kernel command
Caption title.

`\ce{formula}` mhchem
Displays the chemical formula.

`\chapter[toc title]{title}` book or report classes
Chapter heading.

`\chapter*{title}` book or report classes
Unnumbered chapter heading.

`\char $\langle number \rangle$` T_EX primitive
Accesses the character identified by $\langle number \rangle$ (use `\char" hex` if the number is hexadecimal).

`\citation{label}` kernel command
Written to the .aux file on each occurrence of `\cite`.

`\cite{label}` kernel command
Cross-reference a bibliographic citation.

`\cjkgname{CJK characters}`
Example command.

`\color[model]{spec}` color
Switches the current font colour.

`\csuse{cs-name}` etoolbox
Uses the control sequence whose name is given by *cs-name* or does nothing if the command isn't defined.

D

`\DeclareOptions{name}{code}` kernel command
Declares an option with the given *name*.

`\DeclareOptions*{code}` kernel command
Indicates what to do with unknown options.

`\def{cs}{syntax}{definition}` T_EX primitive
Defines the control sequence *cs*, without checking if the command already exists.

Command Summary

<code>\delimN</code>	glossaries
Used to delimited individual locations.	
<code>\delimR</code>	glossaries
Used as a separator between the start and end locations of a range.	
<code>\detokenize{⟨general text⟩}</code>	ϵ -TeX primitive
Expands the argument to a list of character tokens.	
<code>\dGls[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Intended for documents with a mixture of single and dual entries, this is like <code>\Gls</code> but tries to determine the label prefix from the label prefix list.	
<code>\dglS[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Intended for documents with a mixture of single and dual entries, this is like <code>\glS</code> but tries to determine the label prefix from the label prefix list.	
<code>\dglSdisp[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Like <code>\glSdisp</code> but tries the prefixes identified with commands like <code>\glSxtraddlabelprefix</code> .	
<code>\dglSlink[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Like <code>\glSlink</code> but tries the prefixes identified with commands like <code>\glSxtraddlabelprefix</code> .	
<code>\dGlspl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Intended for documents with a mixture of single and dual entries, this is like <code>\Glspl</code> but tries to determine the label prefix from the label prefix list.	
<code>\dglSpl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Intended for documents with a mixture of single and dual entries, this is like <code>\glSpl</code> but tries to determine the label prefix from the label prefix list.	
<code>\DH</code>	kernel command
Produces the upper case eth Đ.	
<code>\dh</code>	kernel command
Produces the lower case eth đ.	
<code>\displaystyle</code>	kernel command (maths mode)
Switch to display maths style.	
<code>\DJ</code>	kernel command
Produces the upper case d-stroke Đ.	
<code>\dj</code>	kernel command
Produces the lower case d-stroke đ.	
<code>\DTLlandname</code>	datatool-base
Used in the definition of <code>\DTLlistformatlastsep</code> .	
<code>\DTLformatlist{⟨list⟩}</code>	datatool-base
Formats a comma-separated list.	

Command Summary

<code>\DTLlistformatlastsep</code>	datatool-base
Used by <code>\DTLformatlist</code> to separate the last two items in the list.	
<code>\DTLlistformatoxford</code>	datatool-base
Insert before <code>\DTLlistformatlastsep</code> if the list has three or more items.	
<code>\DTMdisplaydate{<year>}{<month>}{<day>}{<dow>}</code>	datetime2
Formats the given date where all arguments are numeric.	

E

<code>\edef{<cs>}{<syntax>}{<definition>}</code>	TeX primitive
Defines the control sequence <code><cs></code> to the full expansion of <code><definition></code> , without checking if the command already exists.	
<code>\eglsupdatewidest[<level>]{<text>}</code>	glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.23+
As <code>\glsupdatewidest</code> but expands <code><text></code> .	
<code>\em</code>	kernel command
Switch to emphasized font (until end of current scope).	
<code>\emph{<text>}</code>	kernel command
Emphasizes the given text (italic or slanted if the surrounding font is upright, otherwise upright font is used).	
<code>\endfoot</code>	longtable
Ends the footer section.	
<code>\endhead</code>	longtable
Ends the header section.	
<code>\ensuremath{<maths>}</code>	kernel command
Ensures the argument is in math mode. As a general rule this should only be used if you know for certain that the argument just contains mathematical markup and doesn't cause a change in mode.	

F

<code>\forall</code>	kernel command
For all symbol (\forall).	
<code>\forlentries[<glossary-list>]{<cs>}{<body>}</code>	glossaries
Iterates over all entries defined in the listed glossaries and perform <code><body></code> where you can use the control sequence <code><cs></code> to reference the current label.	
<code>\forlistloop{<handler cs>}{<list cs>}</code>	etoolbox
Iterates over the internal list given by the command <code><list cs></code> and performs <code><handler cs></code> { <code><element></code> } for each element.	
<code>\frontmatter</code>	book-like classes
Switches to front matter.	

G

<code>\glolinkprefix</code>	glossaries
Target name prefix used in entry hyperlinks.	
<code>\glossaryheader</code>	glossaries
Implemented at the start of a glossary (modified by glossary styles).	
<code>\glossarypreamble</code>	glossaries-extra
The preamble for all glossaries except those that have the preamble explicitly set with <code>\apptoglossarypreamble</code> .	
<code>\glossentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨location list⟩}</code>	glossaries v3.08a+
Used in the glossary to display a top-level entry.	
<code>\glossentrydesc{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Used by glossary styles to display the description.	
<code>\glossentryname{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Used by glossary styles to display the name.	
<code>\glossentrynameother{⟨label⟩}{⟨field⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.22+
Acts like <code>\glossentryname</code> (obeys <code>glosname</code> and <code>glosnamefont</code> or <code>\glsnamefont</code> and the post-name hook) but uses the given <code>⟨field⟩</code> instead of the <code>name</code> field.	
<code>\glossentrysymbol{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Used by glossary styles to display the symbol.	
<code>\GLS[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
As <code>\gls</code> but converts the link text to upper case.	
<code>\Gls[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
As <code>\gls</code> but converts the first letter of the link text to upper case.	
<code>\gls[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
On first use displays the first use text (the value of the <code>first</code> field for general entries) and on subsequent use displays the subsequent use text (the value of the <code>text</code> field for general entries) where the text is optionally hyperlinked to the relevant place in the glossary. This command has 4 forms:	
<code>\glsabbrvfont{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra
Generic abbreviation font command for the short form.	
<code>\glsabbrvonlyfont{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.17+
Used with “only” abbreviation styles to format the short form.	
<code>\glsadd[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Indexes the entry without displaying any text. This command has 4 forms:	
<code>\glsaddall[⟨options⟩]</code>	glossaries
Iterates over all entries defined for all glossaries (or for the sub-list provided in the options) and performs <code>\glsadd</code> for each entry.	

Command Summary

- `\glsaddallunused[<list>]` glossaries
Iterates over all entries defined for all glossaries (or for the sub-list provided in the options) and performs `\glsadd` for each entry that hasn't been used with the `format` set to `glsignore`.
- `\glsaddkey{<key>}{<default value>}{<no link cs>}{<no link ucfirst cs>}{<link cs>}{<link ucfirst cs>}{<link allcaps cs>}` glossaries
Adds a new key for use in `\newglossaryentry` and associated commands to access it.
- `\glsaddstoragekey{<key>}{<default value>}{<no link cs>}` glossaries
Adds a new key for internal use that can be set in `\newglossaryentry`.
- `\glsbackslash` glossaries
Expands to a literal backslash `\` character.
- `\glsapturedgroup` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.31+
Expands to `\string$`.
- `\glscategory{<label>}` glossaries-extra
Expands to the value of the `category` field for the entry identified by *<label>* or nothing if the entry hasn't been defined.
- `\glscurrententrylabel` glossaries
Only for use in the glossary, such as in the style or in the post-name or post-description hooks, this expands to the label of the current entry.
- `\glscurrentfieldvalue` glossaries
Only for use in the *<true>* part of `\ifglshasfield` or `\glsextrifhasfield`, this expands to the field value.
- `\glsdefaulttype` glossaries
The default glossary type.
- `\glsdefpostdesc{<category>}{<definition>}` glossaries-extra v1.31+
Define the post-description hook `\glsextrpostdesc<category>` for the given category.
- `\glsdefpostlink{<category>}{<definition>}` glossaries-extra v1.31+
Define the post-link hook `\glsextrpostlink<category>` for the given category.
- `\glsdefpostname{<category>}{<definition>}` glossaries-extra v1.31+
Define the post-name hook `\glsextrpostname<category>` for the given category.
- `\glsdesc[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]` glossaries
Links to the entry's location in the glossary with the link text obtained from the `description` field without altering the first use flag.
- `\glsdescwidth` glossary-long and glossary-super
Length register used by the tabular styles to specify the width of the description column.
- `\glsdisp[<options>]{<label>}{<text>}` glossaries
Links to the entry's location in the glossary with the given link text and marks the entry as having been used.

Command Summary

<code>\Glsentrydesc{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>description</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\Glsentryfirst{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>first</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryfirst{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>first</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentryfirstplural{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>firstplural</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryfirstplural{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>firstplural</code> field.	
<code>\glsentryitem{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries v3.0+
Increments and displays the <code>glossaryentry</code> counter, if appropriate.	
<code>\Glsentrylong{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>long</code> field without any formatting or indexing but with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentrylong{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>long</code> field without any formatting or indexing.	
<code>\Glsentrylongpl{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>longplural</code> field without any formatting or indexing but with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentrylongpl{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>longplural</code> field without any formatting or indexing.	
<code>\Glsentryname{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>name</code> field with the first character converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryname{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>name</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentryplural{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>plural</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryplural{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>plural</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentryshort{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>short</code> field without any formatting or indexing but with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryshort{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>short</code> field without any formatting or indexing.	
<code>\Glsentryshortpl{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>shortplural</code> field without any formatting or indexing but with the first letter converted to upper case.	

Command Summary

<code>\glsentryshortpl{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>shortplural</code> field without any formatting or indexing.	
<code>\Glsentrysymbol{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>symbol</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentrysymbol{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>symbol</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentrysymbolplural{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>symbolplural</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentrysymbolplural{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>symbolplural</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentrytext{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>text</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentrytext{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>text</code> field.	
<code>\glsentrytitlecase{<entry label>}{<field label>}</code>	glossaries v4.22+
Fetches the given field and applies <code>\capitalisewords</code> to it.	
<code>\Glsentryuseri{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>user1</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryuseri{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>user1</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentryuserii{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>user2</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryuserii{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>user2</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentryuseriii{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>user3</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryuseriii{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>user3</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentryuseriv{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>user4</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryuseriv{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>user4</code> field.	
<code>\Glsentryuserv{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>user5</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryuserv{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>user5</code> field.	

Command Summary

<code>\Glsentryuservi{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Displays the value of the <code>user6</code> field with the first letter converted to upper case.	
<code>\glsentryuservi{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Expands to the value of the <code>user6</code> field.	
<code>\glsexpandfields</code>	glossaries
Switches on field expansion.	
<code>\glsextrapostnamehook{<label>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.25+
Additional category-independent code for the post-name hook.	
<code>\glsfieldfetch{<label>}{<field>}{<cs>}</code>	glossaries
Fetches the value of the given field for the given label and stores it in the command <code><cs></code> .	
<code>\glsFindWidestLevelTwo[<glossary list>]</code>	glossaries-extra-stylemods
Finds the widest name in the given glossaries for the top level and first two sub-levels.	
<code>\glsFindWidestTopLevelName[<glossary list>]</code>	glossaries-extra-stylemods
CamelCase synonym for <code>\glsfindwidesttoplevelname</code> .	
<code>\glsfindwidesttoplevelname[<glossary list>]</code>	glossary-tree
Finds the widest top-level name in the given glossaries.	
<code>\glsgroupheading{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Formats the heading for the group identified by the given label.	
<code>\glshex</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+ (moved to <code>glossaries-extra-bib2gls</code> in v1.27)
Expands to <code>\string\u</code> .	
<code>\gls hyperlink[<link text>]{<label>}</code>	glossaries
Creates a hyperlink to the entry information in the glossary.	
<code>\gls hypernumber{<text>}</code>	glossaries
A location format that has a hyperlink (if enabled).	
<code>\gls ifcategory{<label>}{<category>}{<>true>}{<>false>}</code>	glossaries-extra
Does <code><>true></code> if the <code>category</code> field for the entry given by <code><label></code> is <code><category></code> .	
<code>\gls ignore{<text>}</code>	glossaries
Does nothing but when used as a location format <code>bib2gls</code> recognises it as an ignored record.	
<code>\gls label</code>	glossaries
Only for use in the post-link hooks, this expands to the label of the entry that was last referenced.	
<code>\gls link[<options>]{<label>}{<text>}</code>	glossaries
Links to the entry's location in the glossary with the given link text without altering the first use flag.	
<code>\gls longextraSetWidest{<text>}</code>	glossary-longextra v1.37+
Used with the styles provided by the <code>glossary-longextra</code> package to set the widest entry name.	

Command Summary

<code>\glslongextraUpdateWidest{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossary-longextra v1.37+
As <code>\glslongextraSetWidest</code> but only sets if <code>⟨text⟩</code> is wider than the current value.	
<code>\glslongfont{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.04+
Generic abbreviation font command for the long form.	
<code>\glslongonlyfont{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.17+
Used with “only” abbreviation styles to format the long form.	
<code>\glslongtok</code>	glossaries
Token register used in the construction of acronyms or abbreviations to allow the style hooks to access the long form.	
<code>\glslonguserfont{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.04+
Used with “user” abbreviation styles to format the long form.	
<code>\glsnamefont{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
Used by <code>\glossentryname</code> to format the name.	
<code>\glsnavhypertarget[⟨type⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossary-hypernav
Creates a hyper target for the group given by <code>⟨label⟩</code> for the given glossary type and displays the text.	
<code>\glsnoexpandfields</code>	glossaries
Switches off field expansion.	
<code>\glsnoidxdisplayloc{⟨prefix⟩}{⟨counter⟩}{⟨format⟩}{⟨location⟩}</code>	glossaries v4.04+
Used to display a regular location in the <code>location</code> field.	
<code>\glsnoidxloclist{⟨location list cs⟩}</code>	glossaries
Iterates over the given internal location list using the <code>\glsnoidxloclisthandler</code> handler.	
<code>\glsnoidxloclisthandler{⟨location⟩}</code>	glossaries
The handler used by the internal list loop function used in <code>\glsnoidxloclist</code> .	
<code>\glsnumberformat{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
Default location format, uses <code>\glsnumber</code> if hyperlinks enabled otherwise just does <code>⟨text⟩</code> .	
<code>\glsnumbersgroupname</code>	glossaries
The name used for the numbers group.	
<code>\Glspl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
As <code>\Gls</code> but shows the plural form.	
<code>\glspl[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
As <code>\gls</code> but shows the plural form.	
<code>\glspluralsuffix</code>	glossaries
The suffix used to construct the default plural.	

Command Summary

- `\glspostdescription` glossaries and modified by glossaries-extra
A hook added after the description in some glossary styles (all if the `glossaries-extra-stylemods` package is loaded to patch them). This hook is used to reflect the `nopostdot` package option for glossaries and the `postpunc` option for glossaries-extra.
- `\glsps{<label>}` glossaries-extra v1.07+
Shortcut for `\glsxtrp{short}{<label>}`.
- `\glsrefentry{<label>}` glossaries v3.0+
When used with `entrycounter` or `subentrycounter` may be used to cross-reference the entry's number in the glossary list with `\ref`.
- `\glsrenewcommand{<cs>}[<n>][<def>]{<code>}` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Behaves like `\renewcommand` but only generates a warning rather than an error if the command isn't already defined.
- `\glssee[<tag>]{<label>}{<xr label list>}` glossaries
Indexes a "see" cross-reference.
- `\glsseeformat{<tag>}{<labels>}{<location (ignored)>}` glossaries
Formats the entries identified in the comma separated list of labels as a set of cross-references, where each item in the list is encapsulated with `\glsseeitem` and each element is separated with `\glsseesep` or `\glsseelastsep`.
- `\glsseeitem{<label>}` glossaries
Formats an element of the cross-reference list. The default behaviour is to create a hyperlink (if enabled) to the referenced entry with the link text given by `\glsseeitemformat{<label>}`.
- `\glsseeitemformat{<label>}` glossaries v3.0+
Formats an element of the cross-reference list. With the base glossaries package this just does `\glsentrytext{<label>}`. With glossaries-extra this uses either `\glsentryshort` or `\glsentryname` depending on whether or not the `short` field has been set.
- `\glsseelastsep` glossaries
The separator used between the penultimate and ultimate entries of a cross-reference list.
- `\glsseesep` glossaries
The separator used between all but the last entries of a cross-reference list.
- `\glssetcategoryattribute{<category>}{<attribute>}{<value>}` glossaries-extra
Sets the value of the attribute for the given category.
- `\glssetexpandfield{<field>}` glossaries
Switches on field expansion for the given field.
- `\glssetnoexpandfield{<field>}` glossaries
Switches off field expansion for the given field.
- `\glssetwidest[<level>]{<text>}` glossary-tree
Used with the `almtree` style to set the widest entry name for the given level.

Command Summary

<code>\glsshorttok</code>	glossaries
Token register used in the construction of acronyms or abbreviations to allow the style hooks to access the short form.	
<code>\glssymbol[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
Links to the entry's location in the glossary with the link text obtained from the <code>symbol</code> field without altering the first use flag.	
<code>\glssymbolsgroupname</code>	glossaries
The name used for the symbols group.	
<code>\glstarget{⟨label⟩}{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries v1.18+
Creates a hypertarget for the entry given by <code>⟨label⟩</code> (the target for commands like <code>\gls</code>) and displays <code>⟨text⟩</code> .	
<code>\Glstext[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
As <code>\glstext</code> but converts the first letter to upper case.	
<code>\glstext[⟨options⟩]{⟨label⟩}[⟨insert⟩]</code>	glossaries
Links to the entry's location in the glossary with the link text obtained from the <code>text</code> field without altering the first use flag.	
<code>\glstextformat{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
Used by commands like <code>\gls</code> to format the link text.	
<code>\glstildechar</code>	glossaries
Expands to a literal tilde <code>~</code> character.	
<code>\glstreedefaultnamefmt{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.31+
Used as the default format for <code>\glstreenamefmt</code> , <code>\glstreegroupheaderfmt</code> and <code>\glstreenavigationfmt</code> .	
<code>\glstreegroupheaderfmt{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossary-tree v4.22+ and glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.31+
Used with the tree styles to format the group headings.	
<code>\glstreenamefmt{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossary-tree v4.08+ and glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.31+
Used with the tree styles to format the entry's name.	
<code>\glstreenavigationfmt{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossary-tree v4.22+ and glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.31+
Used with the tree styles to format the navigation elements.	
<code>\glstriggerrecordformat{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+
Does nothing but when used as a location format <code>bib2gls</code> recognises it as an ignored record indexed by commands like <code>\rgls</code> .	
<code>\glsupdatewidest[⟨level⟩]{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.23+
As <code>\glssetwidest</code> but only sets if <code>⟨text⟩</code> is wider than the current value.	
<code>\glsuseabbrvfont{⟨text⟩}{⟨category⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+
Applies the formatting command used for the short form for the abbreviation style associated with the given category.	

Command Summary

- `\glsuselongfont{<text>}{<category>}` glossaries-extra v1.21+
Applies the formatting command used for the long form for the abbreviation style associated with the given category.
- `\glsuserdescription{<description>}{<label>}` glossaries-extra v1.30+
Used with “user” abbreviation styles to encapsulate the description. Just does `\glslonguserfont{<description>}` by default.
- `\glsxtr@record{<label>}{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}` glossaries-extra v1.08+
This command is written to the `.aux` file each time an entry is indexed to provide `bib2gls` with the record information.
- `\glsxtr@record@nameref{<label>}{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}{<title>}{<href>}{<hcounter>}` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Used instead of `\glsxtr@record` when the `record={nameref}` option is used.
- `\glsxtr@resource{<options>}{<filename>}` glossaries-extra v1.08+
This internal command is written to the `.aux` file by `\glsxtrresourcefile` to provide `bib2gls` with the resource information.
- `\glsxtr@wrglossarylocation{<n>}{<page>}` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.29+
This command simply expands to `<n>`, the value of the `wrglossary` counter for the given page.
- `\glsxtrabbrvpluralsuffix` glossaries-extra
The default suffix used to construct the plural for the short form of abbreviations.
- `\glsxtrabbrvtype` glossaries-extra
Expands to the default glossary type when using `\newabbreviation`.
- `\glsxtraddlabelprefix{<prefix>}` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Appends `<prefix>` to the prefix label list.
- `\glsxtrAltTreePar` glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.05+
Used by the `alttree` styles to indicate a paragraph break that retains the hanging indent.
- `\glsxtralttreeSymbolDescLocation{<label>}{<location list>}` glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.05+
Used by the `alttree` styles to format the symbol, description and location.
- `\GlsXtrAutoAddOnFormat[<label>]{<format list>}{<glsadd options>}` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Makes commands like `\gls` and `\glslink` (but not `\glsadd`) automatically insert `\glsadd[<glsadd options>]{<label>}` if the format (supplied in the optional argument of the invoking `\gls`, `\glslink` etc) matches any in the given comma-separated elements of `<format list>`. The format isn’t automatically applied to the `\glsadd` options.
- `\glsxtrautoindexassignsort{<cs>}{<label>}` glossaries-extra v1.16+
Assigns the sort value for `\index` when using auto-indexing.
- `\glsxtrautoindexentry{<label>}` glossaries-extra v1.16+
Used for the actual value in `\index` when using auto-indexing.
- `\GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.29+
Expands to the set of common entry aliases for `@bibtexentry`.

Command Summary

<code>\glxtrbookindexname{<label>}</code>	glossary-bookindex
Used with the bookindex style to format the entry's name.	
<code>\glxtrbookindexprelocation{<label>}</code>	glossary-bookindex
Used with the bookindex style before the location list.	
<code>\glxtrclearlabelprefixes{<prefix>}</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Clears the prefix label list.	
<code>\glxtrcombiningsdiacriticrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for combining diacritic characters.	
<code>\glxtrcontrolrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for control characters usually placed at the start of a rule in the “ignored characters” section (although there typically won't be any control codes in sort fields).	
<code>\glxtrcopytoglossary{<label>}{<type>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Copies the entry given by <code><label></code> to the glossary given by <code><type></code> .	
<code>\glxtrdigitrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for digits from the basic Latin set (0, ..., 9) as well as their subscript and superscript variants.	
<code>\glxtrdisplaylocnameref{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<location>}{<title>}{<href>}{<hcounter>}{<file>}</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Used to display a nameref location in the <code>location</code> field.	
<code>\glxtrdisplaysupplloc{<prefix>}{<counter>}{<format>}{<src>}{<location>}</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.36+
Used to display an external location in the supplementary list.	
<code>\GlsXtrDualBackLink{<text>}{<label>}</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.30+
Creates a hyperlink to the dual entry whose label is obtained from the field given by <code>\GlsXtrDualField</code> .	
<code>\GlsXtrDualField</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.30+
The field used to store the dual label. This defaults to <code>dual</code> but will need to be redefined if a different value is given by <code>dual-field</code> .	
<code>\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging{<category list>}{<cs>}</code>	glossaries-extra
Defines the control sequence <code><cs></code> to be used with abbreviation tagging with the given categories.	
<code>\glxtrenablerecordcount</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+
Redefines <code>\gls</code> etc to their <code>\rgls</code> counterpart.	
<code>\glxtrendfor</code>	glossaries-extra v1.24+
May be used within the handler macro of <code>\glxtrforcsvfield</code> to prematurely break the loop.	
<code>\glxtrentryfmt{<label>}{<text>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Alternative to <code>\glxtrfmt</code> for use in section headings.	

Command Summary

<code>\glxtrfielddolistloop{<label>}{<field>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Iterates over the items the given field, which contains an etoolbox internal list.	
<code>\glxtrfieldforlistloop{<label>}{<field>}{<handler>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.29+
Iterates over the items the given field, which contains an etoolbox internal list, using the given handler.	
<code>\glxtrfieldifinlist{<label>}{<field>}{<item>}{<true>}{<false>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Tests if the given item is in the given field that contains an etoolbox internal list.	
<code>\glxtrfieldlistadd{<label>}{<field>}{<item>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Adds the given item to the given field that contains an etoolbox internal list.	
<code>\glxtrfieldxifinlist{<label>}{<field>}{<item>}{<true>}{<false>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Tests if the expansion of the given item is in the given field that contains an etoolbox internal list.	
<code>\glxtrfmt[<options>]{<label>}{<text>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Formats the given text according to the formatting command identified by the value of the field obtained from <code>\GlsXtrFmtField</code> .	
<code>\glxtrfmt*[<options>]{<label>}{<text>}[<insert>]</code>	glossaries-extra v1.23+
Like <code>\glxtrfmt</code> but inserts extra material into the link text but outside of the formatting command.	
<code>\GlsXtrFmtDefaultOptions</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
The default options used by <code>\glxtrfmt</code> .	
<code>\GlsXtrFmtField</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Expands to the internal label of the field used to store the control sequence name for use with <code>\glxtrfmt</code> .	
<code>\glxtrforcsvfield{<label>}{<field>}{<handler>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.24+
Iterates over the comma-separated list in the given <code><field></code> for the entry identified by <code><label></code> and performs <code><handler>{<element>}</code> on each element of the list, where <code><handler></code> is a control sequence which takes a single argument.	
<code>\glxtrfractionrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for vulgar fraction characters.	
<code>\glxtrGeneralLatinIIIrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (as <code>\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules</code> but includes Đ/đ between D/d and E/e and ß treated as “sz”).	
<code>\glxtrGeneralLatinIIrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (as <code>\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules</code> but includes Đ/đ between D/d and E/e and ß treated as “ss”).	
<code>\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (basic Latin set plus subscript and superscript Latin characters).	

Command Summary

- `\glxtrGeneralLatinIVrules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (as `\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules` but includes Ð/ð between D/d and E/e and Æ/æ treated as AE/ae, Œ/œ treated as OE/oe, Þ/þ treated as TH/th and ß treated as “ss”).
- `\glxtrGeneralLatinVIIrules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (as `\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules` but includes Æ/æ treated as A/a, Œ/œ treated as OE/oe, Þ/þ treated as TH/th, ß treated as “ss”, Ð/ð treated as D/d, Ø/ø treated as O/o and Ł/ł treated as L/l).
- `\glxtrGeneralLatinVIIrules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (as `\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules` but includes Æ/æ between A/a and B/b, Ð/ð between D/d and E/e, Ɔ/ç (insular G) as G/g, Œ/œ between O/o and P/p, f (long S) equivalent to S/s, Þ/þ between T/t and U/u and ƿ/ƿ (wynn) as W/w).
- `\glxtrGeneralLatinVIrules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (as `\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules` but includes Ð/ð between D/d and E/e and Þ/þ treated as TH/th and ß treated as “sz”).
- `\glxtrGeneralLatinVrules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Latin characters (as `\glxtrGeneralLatinIrules` but includes Ð/ð between D/d and E/e and Þ/þ treated as TH/th and ß treated as “ss”).
- `\glxtrgeneralpuncrules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for general punctuation characters.
- `\glxtrgroupfield` glossaries-extra v1.21+
Expands to the field label used to store the entry group labels.
- `\GLSXRhiername{⟨label⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Displays the hierarchical name for the entry identified by *⟨label⟩* with each level separated by `\glxtrhiernamesep` where each name is converted to upper case.
- `\GLSxtrhiername{⟨label⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Displays the hierarchical name for the entry identified by *⟨label⟩* with each level separated by `\glxtrhiernamesep` where the top-most name is converted to upper case.
- `\GlsXtrhiername{⟨label⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Displays the hierarchical name for the entry identified by *⟨label⟩* with each level separated by `\glxtrhiernamesep` where each name has the first letter converted to upper case.
- `\Glsxtrhiername{⟨label⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Displays the hierarchical name for the entry identified by *⟨label⟩* with each level separated by `\glxtrhiernamesep` where the top-most name has the first letter converted to upper case.
- `\glxtrhiername{⟨label⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Displays the hierarchical name for the entry identified by *⟨label⟩* with each level separated by `\glxtrhiernamesep`.

Command Summary

- `\glxtrhiernamesep` glossaries-extra v1.37+
Separator between hierarchical levels displayed with `\glxtrhiername` (and case-changing variants). This defaults to “▷” with the `glossaries-extra` package, but the `bib2gls` interpreter has a different definition to assist sorting.
- `\glxtrhyphenrules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for hyphen characters.
- `\glxtrifcustomdiscardperiod{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.23+
Should expand to `⟨true⟩` if the post-link hook should check for a following full stop (in addition to attribute checks) otherwise should expand to `⟨false⟩`.
- `\GlsXtrIfFieldEqNum{⟨field⟩}{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨number⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.31+
Tests if the given field value expands to the given integer `⟨number⟩`. If the field is undefined or empty, the value is assumed to be 0. If the field is set, it must expand to an integer value. The value can be referenced in `⟨true⟩` or `⟨false⟩` with `\glscurrentfieldvalue`.
- `\GlsXtrIfFieldNonZero{⟨field⟩}{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.31+
Tests if the given field value expands to a non-zero integer. If the field is undefined or empty, the value is assumed to be 0. If the field is set, it must expand to an integer value. The value can be referenced in `⟨true⟩` or `⟨false⟩` with `\glscurrentfieldvalue`.
- `\GlsXtrIfFieldUndef{⟨field label⟩}{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.23+
Tests if the given field isn’t defined for the given entry, which may also not exist.
- `\glxtrifhasfield{⟨field label⟩}{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.19+
Tests if the given entry has the given *internal* field set (defined and not empty) without testing if the entry exists and adds implicit scoping to `⟨true⟩` and `⟨false⟩`.
- `\glxtrifhasfield*{⟨field label⟩}{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.19+
Tests if the given entry has the given field set (defined and not empty) without testing if the entry exists and without introducing an implicit scope.
- `\GlsXtrIfHasNonZeroChildCount{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.31+
For use with the `save-child-count` resource option, this uses `\GlsXtrIfFieldNonZero` to test if the `childcount` field has a non-zero value. The value can be referenced in `⟨true⟩` or `⟨false⟩` with `\glscurrentfieldvalue`.
- `\glxtrifwasfirstuse{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}` glossaries-extra
Only for use in the post-link hooks this tests if the entry just referenced was used for the first time.
- `\GlsXtrIndexCounterLink{⟨text⟩}{⟨label⟩}` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.29+
Creates a hyperlink to the `wrglossary` location obtained from the `indexcounter` field.
- `\glxtrindexseealso{⟨label⟩}{⟨xr list⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.16+
Indexes a “see also” cross-reference.
- `\glxtrLatinAA` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Å/å.

Command Summary

<code>\glxtrLatinOslash</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for Ø/ø.	
<code>\GlsXtrLoadResources[<i><options></i>]</code>	glossaries-extra v1.11+
A shortcut command that uses <code>\glxtrresourcefile</code> .	
<code>\GlsXtrLocationField</code>	glossaries-extra v1.37+
Expands to the internal name of the field storing the location list, defaulting to <code>location</code> .	
<code>\glxtrlocationhyperlink{<i><counter></i>}{<i><prefix></i>}{<i><location></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.14+
Used to create the location hyperlink, this tests if an internal or external link is required depending on the definition of <code>\glxtrsupplocationurl</code> .	
<code>\glxtrlongshortdescname</code>	glossaries-extra v1.17+
Governs the way the <code>name</code> field is set by the long-short-desc abbreviation styles.	
<code>\glxtrMathItalicGreekIrules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for math-Greek characters (includes upright digamma between epsilon and zeta).	
<code>\glxtrmultisupplocation{<i><location></i>}{<i><src></i>}{<i><format></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.36+
Used by <code>\glxtrdisplaysupploc</code> to format the external location.	
<code>\glxtrnewgls[<i><options></i>]{<i><prefix></i>}{<i><cs></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+
Defines the command <code><cs></code> to behave like <code>\gls</code> with the given label prefix.	
<code>\glxtrnewglslike[<i><options></i>]{<i><prefix></i>}{<i><gls-like cs></i>}{<i><glspl-like cs></i>}{<i><Gls-like cs></i>}{<i><Glspl-like cs></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+
Defines commands to behave like <code>\gls</code> , <code>\glspl</code> , <code>\Gls</code> and <code>\Glspl</code> with the given label prefix.	
<code>\glxtrnewnumber[<i><key=value list></i>]{<i><label></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra numbers
Defines a new number.	
<code>\glxtrnewsymbol[<i><key=value list></i>]{<i><label></i>}{<i><symbol></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra symbols
Defines a new symbol.	
<code>\glxtrnonprintablerules</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for non-printable characters.	
<code>\glxtrnopostpunc</code>	glossaries-extra v1.22+
Suppresses the post-description punctuation without suppressing the post-description hook.	
<code>\glxtronlyname</code>	glossaries-extra v1.25+
Governs the way the <code>name</code> field is set by the long-only-short-only abbreviation styles.	
<code>\glxtrp{<i><field></i>}{<i><label></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.07+
Displays the given field for the entry given by label.	
<code>\glxtrpageref{<i><label></i>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.11
When used with entrycounter or subentrycounter may be used to cross-reference the entry's number in the glossary list with <code>\pageref</code> .	

Command Summary

- `\glstrparen{text}` glossaries-extra v1.17+
Used to markup parenthetical material.
- `\glstrpostdescabbreviation` glossaries-extra
Hook used after the description is displayed in the glossary for entries that have the `category` set to `abbreviation`.
- `\glstrpostdesc<category>`
Hook used after the description is displayed in the glossary for entries that have the `category` set to `<category>`. Common category hooks such as `\glstrpostdescgeneral` are provided by `glossaries-extra`, custom categories need the hook defined.
- `\glstrpostdescgeneral` glossaries-extra
Hook used after the description is displayed in the glossary for entries that have the `category` set to `general`.
- `\glstrpostdescsymbol` glossaries-extra
Hook used after the description is displayed in the glossary for entries that have the `category` set to `symbol`.
- `\glstrpostlinkAddDescOnFirstUse` glossaries-extra
Only for use in the post-link hooks, this appends a space and the value of the `description` field in parentheses if the entry that was just referenced was used for the first time.
- `\glstrpostlink<category>`
Hook used after commands like `\gls` for entries that have the `category` set to `<category>`. If required, this hook can be defined with `\glsdefpostlink`.
- `\glstrpostname<category>`
Hook used by `\glossentryname` for entries that have the `category` set to `<category>`. If required, this hook can be defined with `\glsdefpostname`.
- `\glstrprelocation` glossary-bookindex v1.21+ and glossaries-extra-stylemods v1.21+
Used before the location list in the `bookindex` style and the styles patched by `glossaries-extra-stylemods`.
- `\glstrprependlabelprefix{<prefix>}` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Prepends `<prefix>` to the prefix label list.
- `\GlsXtrProvideBibTeXFields` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.29+
Defines the standard `BIBTEX` fields using `\glsaddstoragekey`.
- `\glstrprovidecommand{<cs>}[<n>][<def>]{<code>}` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Behaves like `\providecommand` in the document but like `\renewcommand` in `bib2gls`.
- `\glstrprovidestoragekey{<key>}{<default value>}{<no link cs>}` glossaries-extra v1.12+
Adds a new key, if not already defined, for use in `\newglossaryentry` and an associated command to access it where (unlike `\glsaddstoragekey`) the `<no link cs>` part may be empty if unrequired.

Command Summary

- `\glxtrresourcefile` $\langle options \rangle$ $\{\langle filename \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra v1.08+
Input the `.glstex` file created by `bib2gls` and write resource instructions to the `.aux` file.
- `\glxtrresourceinit` glossaries-extra v1.21+
Provides code that locally redefines commands during the protected write operation performed by `\glxtrresourcefile`.
- `\glxtrrestorepostpunc` glossaries-extra v1.23+
Used within post-description category hooks, this restores the post-description punctuation if it's been suppressed with `\glxtrnopostpunc`.
- `\glxtrscsuffix` glossaries-extra
The suffix used to construct the plural for the short form of abbreviations with one of the small-cap (sc) styles.
- `\glxtrseelist` $\{\langle xr label list \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra v1.16+
Formats the list of cross-reference labels, without the initial “see” tag.
- `\glxtrsetaliasnoindex` glossaries-extra v1.12+
Hooks into the alias `noindex` setting.
- `\GlsXtrSetDefaultGlsOpts` $\{\langle options \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra
Set the default options for commands like `\gls`.
- `\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat` $\{\langle format \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra v1.19+
Set the default format to use if the `format` key isn't set.
- `\GlsXtrSetField` $\{\langle entry label \rangle\}\{\langle field label \rangle\}\{\langle value \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra v1.12+
Assigns the given $\langle value \rangle$ to the field identified by $\langle field label \rangle$ for the entry identified by $\langle entry label \rangle$.
- `\glxtrsetgrouptitle` $\{\langle group label \rangle\}\{\langle group title \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra v1.14+
Globally sets the title for the group identified by the given label.
- `\GlsXtrSetRecordCountAttribute` $\{\langle category list \rangle\}\{\langle value \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra v1.21+
Sets the recordcount attribute to $\langle value \rangle$ for the given categories.
- `\glxtrSetWidest` $\{\langle type \rangle\}\{\langle level \rangle\}\{\langle text \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Used by `\bibglssetwidest` to set the widest entry name for the given level for the `alttree` style and the styles provided by `glossary-longextra`.
- `\glxtrSetWidestFallback` $\{\langle max depth \rangle\}\{\langle list \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.37+
Used by `\bibglssetwidesttoplevelfallback` and `\bibglssetwidestfallback` to set the widest entry name for the `alttree` style and the styles provided by `glossary-longextra` using the commands provided by `glossaries-extra-stylemods`.
- `\glxtrshort` $\{\langle options \rangle\}\{\langle label \rangle\}$ glossaries-extra
Links to the entry's location in the glossary with the link text obtained from the `short` field (using the appropriate abbreviation style) without altering the first use flag.
- `\glxtrspacerules` glossaries-extra-bib2gls v1.27+
Collation sub-rule for space characters.

Command Summary

<code>\glxtrsupphypernumber{⟨location⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.14+
Uses <code>\glshypernumber</code> to create a hyperlink to the given location (if hyperlinks are supported) but first checks the <code>externallocation</code> attribute to determine if an external link is required.	
<code>\glxtrsupplocationurl</code>	glossaries-extra v1.14+
Set by <code>\glxtrsupphypernumber</code> and <code>\glxtrmultisupplocation</code> to the URL of the supplemental document for use by <code>\glshypernumber</code> .	
<code>\glxtrtagfont{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra
Font used by tagging command defined by <code>\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging</code> .	
<code>\GLSxtrusefield{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨field label⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.37+
As <code>\glxtrusefield</code> but converts the value to upper case.	
<code>\Glsxtrusefield{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨field label⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Like <code>\glxtrusefield</code> but converts the first letter to upper case.	
<code>\glxtrusefield{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨field label⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Expands to the value of the given field for the given entry.	
<code>\glxtruserfield</code>	glossaries-extra v1.04+
Used by the parenthetical abbreviation styles, this expands to the label of the field used to store the parenthetical material.	
<code>\glxtruserparen{⟨text⟩}{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.04+
Used by the long-short-user and short-long-user abbreviation styles to format the parenthetical material where <code>⟨text⟩</code> is the default parenthetical text and <code>⟨label⟩</code> is the entry's label. This checks the field given by <code>\glxtruserfield</code> and, if set, the <code>⟨text⟩</code> is followed by a comma and the user value.	
<code>\glxtrusesee{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.06+
Applies <code>\glssseeformat</code> to the entry's <code>see</code> field if not empty.	
<code>\glxtruseseealso{⟨label⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.16+
Applies <code>\glssseeformat</code> to the entry's <code>seealso</code> field if not empty.	
<code>\glxtruseseealsoformat{⟨xr list⟩}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.16+
Used to format the entries whose labels are given in <code>⟨xr list⟩</code> as a list of "see also" cross-references.	

H

<code>\hyperbf{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
A location format that uses the bold font that also has a hyperlink (if enabled).	
<code>\hyperemph{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
A location format that uses <code>\emph</code> to set the font and also has a hyperlink (if enabled).	
<code>\hyperit{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
A location format that uses the italic font that also has a hyperlink (if enabled).	

Command Summary

<code>\hyperlink{⟨target name⟩}{⟨text⟩}</code>	hyperref
Create a hyperlink to <code>⟨target name⟩</code> with the given <code>⟨text⟩</code> .	
<code>\hyperref</code>	hyperref
This command has 2 forms:	
<code>\hyperref{⟨URL⟩}{⟨category⟩}{⟨name⟩}{⟨text⟩}</code>	
Create a hyperlink to an external location with the anchor formed from <code>⟨category⟩.⟨name⟩</code> and the displayed <code>⟨text⟩</code> .	
<code>\hyperref[⟨label⟩]{⟨text⟩}</code>	
Create an internal hyperlink with the displayed <code>⟨text⟩</code> to the same place that <code>\ref{⟨label⟩}</code> would be linked. Note that the <code>⟨label⟩</code> argument isn't optional. The square bracket notation disambiguates from the syntax for the external form of <code>\hyperref</code> .	
<code>\hyperrm{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
A location format that uses the serif (Roman) font that also has a hyperlink (if enabled).	
<code>\hypersf{⟨text⟩}</code>	glossaries
A location format that uses the sans-serif font that also has a hyperlink (if enabled).	
I	
<code>\ifcase⟨number⟩</code>	T _E X primitive
Case conditional.	
<code>\ifcsdef{⟨cs-name⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	etoolbox
Tests if the control sequence given by <code>⟨cs-name⟩</code> is defined.	
<code>\ifdef{⟨cs⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	etoolbox
Tests if the control sequence <code>⟨cs⟩</code> is defined.	
<code>\IfFileExists{⟨file⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	kernel command
If the given <code>⟨file⟩</code> exists does <code>⟨true⟩</code> otherwise does <code>⟨false⟩</code> .	
<code>\ifglshentryexists{⟨label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	glossaries
Tests if the entry given by <code>⟨label⟩</code> exists.	
<code>\ifglshasdesc{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	glossaries
Tests if the given entry, which must be defined, has the <code>description</code> field set.	
<code>\ifglshasfield{⟨field label⟩}{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	glossaries
Tests if the given entry, which must be defined, has the given field set to a non-empty value.	
<code>\ifglshasshort{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	glossaries
Tests if the given entry, which must be defined, has the <code>short</code> field set.	
<code>\ifglshassuppressedesc{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	glossaries
Tests if the given entry, which must be defined, has the <code>description</code> field set to <code>\nopostdesc</code> .	

Command Summary

<code>\ifglshassymbol{⟨entry label⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	glossaries
Tests if the given entry, which must be defined, has the <code>symbol</code> field set to value that's not empty and not <code>\relax</code> .	
<code>\ifnum⟨number1⟩⟨comparison⟩⟨number2⟩</code>	TeX primitive
Integer conditional.	
<code>\ifstrempty{⟨string⟩}{⟨true⟩}{⟨false⟩}</code>	etoolbox
Tests if <code>⟨string⟩</code> is empty.	
<code>\immediate⟨file operation⟩</code>	TeX primitive
Perform the file operation immediately instead of the usual delay.	
<code>\index{⟨text⟩}</code>	kernel command
Indexes the given term by writing the relevant information to an associated file that can then be processed by <code>makeindex</code> or <code>xindy</code> .	
<code>\input{⟨file⟩}</code>	kernel command
Input the given file.	
<code>\invfmt{⟨maths⟩}</code>	
Example command.	

J

<code>\jobname</code>	primitive
The current job name, which is usually the name of the main <code>.tex</code> file without the extension.	

L

<code>\L</code>	kernel command
Produces the upper case L-slash character <code>Ł</code> .	
<code>\l</code>	kernel command
Produces the lower case l-slash character <code>ł</code> .	
<code>\label{⟨id⟩}</code>	kernel command
Creates a label that can be referenced with <code>\ref</code> or <code>\pageref</code> .	
<code>\let⟨token1⟩⟨token2⟩</code>	TeX primitive
Assigns <code>⟨token1⟩</code> to <code>⟨token2⟩</code> .	
<code>\listxadd{⟨list cs⟩}{⟨element⟩}</code>	etoolbox
Globally adds (expanded) <code>⟨element⟩</code> to the list stored in the control sequence <code>⟨list cs⟩</code> .	
<code>\loadglsentries[⟨type⟩]{⟨file⟩}</code>	glossaries
Locally redefines <code>\glsdefaulttype</code> to <code>⟨type⟩</code> and inputs <code>⟨file⟩</code> .	
<code>\longnewglossaryentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}{⟨description⟩}</code>	glossaries
Defines a new glossary entry and appends <code>\leavemode\unskip\nopostdesc</code> at the end of <code>⟨description⟩</code> .	

Command Summary

`\longnewglossaryentry*`{*label*}{*key=value list*}{*description*} glossaries-extra v1.12+
Defines a new glossary entry without appending any extra code to the end of *description*.

`\longprovideglossaryentry`{*label*}{*key=value list*}{*description*} glossaries
Defines a new glossary entry if one doesn't already exist with the given label.

M

`\mainmatter` book-like classes
Switches to main matter.

`\makefirstuc`{*text*} mfirstuc
Converts the first letter of *text* to upper case.

`\makeglossaries` glossaries
Opens associated glossary files to be processed by `makeindex` or `xindy`.

`\MakeLowercase`{*text*} kernel command
Converts *text* to lower case.

`\makenoidxglossaries` glossaries v4.04+
Indicates that \TeX should be used to sort and collate the glossary information instead of using an external application; this command should not be used with `bib2gls`.

`\MakeTextLowercase`{*text*} textcase
Converts *text* to lower case.

`\MakeTextUppercase`{*text*} textcase
Converts *text* to upper case.

`\MakeUppercase`{*text*} kernel command
Converts *text* to upper case.

`\mathcal`{*character*} kernel command (maths mode)
Renders the given (upper case) maths character in a calligraphic font.

`\mathord`{*maths*} \TeX primitive
Assigns the character or sub-formula in the argument to class 0, ordinary.

`\MFUnocap`{*word*} mfirstuc v1.09+
Identifies *word* as one that should not have its case-changed by `\capitalisewords` unless it occurs at the start.

`\midrule` booktabs
Horizontal rule for divider between header and main content of a tabular-like environment.

`\mtxfmt`{*symbol*}
Example command.

Command Summary

N

- `\nary{⟨text⟩}`
Example command.
- `\newabbreviation[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨short⟩}{⟨long⟩}` glossaries-extra
Defines a new abbreviation.
- `\newacronym[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨short⟩}{⟨long⟩}` glossaries
Defines a new abbreviation. The glossaries-extra package redefines this to use `\newabbreviation` with the `category` set to `acronym`.
- `\newcommand{⟨cs⟩}[⟨n⟩][⟨def⟩]{⟨code⟩}` kernel command
Defines a new command.
- `\newdualentry[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}{⟨short⟩}{⟨long⟩}{⟨description⟩}`
Example given in glossaries user manual.
- `\newentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}` glossaries-extra's shortcuts
Equivalent to `\newglossaryentry`.
- `\newglossary[⟨log⟩]{⟨type⟩}{⟨gls⟩}{⟨glo⟩}{⟨title⟩}` glossaries
Defines a new glossary identified by `⟨type⟩` with the given title and associated file extensions used by `makeindex` or `xindy`.
- `\newglossary*{⟨type⟩}{⟨title⟩}` glossaries
Defines a new glossary identified by `⟨type⟩` with the given title.
- `\newglossaryentry{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}` glossaries
Defines a new glossary entry.
- `\newglossarystyle{⟨name⟩}{⟨definition⟩}` glossaries
Defines a new glossary style called `⟨name⟩`.
- `\newignoredglossary{⟨type⟩}` glossaries v4.08+
Defines a new ignored glossary (with hyperlinks suppressed) identified by `⟨type⟩` that's not included in the list used by commands, such as `\printunsrtglossaries`, that iterate over defined glossaries.
- `\newignoredglossary*{⟨type⟩}` glossaries-extra v1.11+
Defines a new ignored glossary (without suppressing hyperlinks) identified by `⟨type⟩` that's not included in the list used by commands, such as `\printunsrtglossaries`, that iterate over defined glossaries.
- `\newnum{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}` glossaries-extra [shortcuts](#)
Equivalent to `\glstrnewnumber`.
- `\newrobustcmd{⟨cs⟩}[⟨n⟩][⟨def⟩]{⟨code⟩}` etoolbox
Behaves like `\newcommand` but the newly defined command will be robust.
- `\newsym{⟨label⟩}{⟨key=value list⟩}{⟨symbol⟩}` glossaries-extra [shortcuts](#)
Equivalent to `\glstrnewsymbol`.

Command Summary

<code>\newterm[⟨key=value list⟩]{⟨label⟩}</code>	the glossaries's <code>index</code> package option
Defines a new glossary entry where the <code>description</code> field defaults to empty.	
<code>\NG</code>	kernel command
Produces the upper case eng Ŋ.	
<code>\ng</code>	kernel command
Produces the lower case eng ƚ.	
<code>\NoCaseChange{⟨text⟩}</code>	textcase
Prevents <code>\MakeTextUppercase</code> and <code>\MakeTextLowercase</code> from converting <code>⟨text⟩</code> .	
<code>\nopostdesc</code>	glossaries
Suppresses the post-description hook.	
<code>\number⟨value⟩</code>	TeX primitive
Expands the given numerical <code>⟨value⟩</code> to a base 10 integer number stripping any leading zeros (use <code>\char"⟨hex⟩</code> if the value is hexadecimal).	
<code>\numspacefmt{⟨symbol⟩}</code>	
Example command.	

O

<code>\O</code>	kernel command
Produces the upper case O-slash character Ø.	
<code>\o</code>	kernel command
Produces the lower case o-slash character ø.	
<code>\OE</code>	kernel command
Produces the upper case Œ-ligature.	
<code>\oe</code>	kernel command
Produces the lower case œ-ligature.	
<code>\omicron</code>	glossaries-extra-bib2gls
Greek letter omicron <i>o</i> .	

P

<code>\PackageError{⟨name⟩}{⟨code⟩}{⟨help⟩}</code>	kernel command
Generates an error message for the package identified by <code>⟨name⟩</code> .	
<code>\pagelistname</code>	glossaries
Language-sensitive name used for the location list header for some glossary styles.	
<code>\pageref{⟨id⟩}</code>	kernel command
Cross-reference the page where <code>\label{⟨id⟩}</code> occurred.	
<code>\par</code>	kernel command
Paragraph break.	

Command Summary

<code>\parenswap{<text1>}{<text2>}</code>	
Example command.	
<code>\pi</code>	kernel command (maths mode)
Greek letter pi π .	
<code>\printglossaries</code>	glossaries
Iterates over all non-ignored defined glossaries and performs <code>\printglossary</code> for each one.	
<code>\printglossary[<options>]</code>	glossaries
Inputs file created by <code>makeindex</code> or <code>xindy</code> .	
<code>\printnoidxglossary[<options>]</code>	glossaries v4.04+
Uses \TeX to sort, collate and list the glossary.	
<code>\printunsortedglossaries</code>	glossaries-extra v1.08+
Iterates over all non-ignored defined glossaries and performs <code>\printunsortedglossary</code> for each one.	
<code>\printunsortedglossary[<options>]</code>	glossaries-extra v1.08+
Display the glossary by iterating over all entries associated with that glossary in the order in which they were defined. This command has 6 forms:	
<code>\printunsortedglossary*[<options>]{<code>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
As <code>\printunsortedglossary</code> but performs <code><code></code> first (scoped to localise any assignments within <code><code></code>).	
<code>\ProcessOptions</code>	kernel command
Processes supplied options.	
<code>\protect<token></code>	kernel command
Protects <code><token></code> from expansion.	
<code>\providecommand{<cs>}[<n>][<def>]{<code>}</code>	kernel command
Defines a command if it's not already defined.	
<code>\provideglossaryentry{<label>}{<key=value list>}</code>	glossaries
Defines a new glossary entry if one doesn't already exist with the given label.	
<code>\provideignoredglossary{<type>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
As <code>\newignoredglossary</code> but does nothing if a glossary identified by <code><type></code> already exists.	
<code>\provideignoredglossary*{<type>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
As <code>\provideignoredglossary</code> but doesn't suppress hyperlinks.	
<code>\ProvidesPackage{<name>}[<version>]</code>	kernel command
Identifies a package.	

R

<code>\ref{<id>}</code>	kernel command
Cross-reference the location where <code>\label{<id>}</code> occurred.	

Command Summary

<code>\refstepcounter{<counter name>}</code>	kernel command
Increments the given counter in a manner compatible with the <code>\label</code> cross-referencing mechanism.	
<code>\renewcommand{<cs>}[<n>][<def>]{<code>}</code>	kernel command
Redefines an existing command.	
<code>\RequirePackage[<options>]{<name>}[<min version>]</code>	kernel command
Loads the package identified by <code><name></code> from within another package.	
<code>\rgls[<options>]{<label>}[<insert>]</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+
Like <code>\gls</code> but checks for the record count trigger setting.	
<code>\rglsformat{<label>}[<insert>]</code>	glossaries-extra v1.21+
Used by <code>\rgls</code> if the record count switch is triggered.	

S

<code>\section[<toc title>]{<title>}</code>	most classes that have a concept of document sections
Section heading.	
<code>\section*{<title>}</code>	most classes that have a concept of document sections
Unnumbered section heading.	
<code>\seealsoname</code>	glossaries-extra or language packages
Language sensitive “see also” text.	
<code>\selectlanguage{<language name>}</code>	babel and polyglossia
Switch to the rules of the given language.	
<code>\setabbreviationstyle[<category>]{<style-name>}</code>	glossaries-extra
Sets the abbreviation style to <code><style-name></code> for the given <code><category></code> , must be used before the abbreviation is defined.	
<code>\setcardfmt{<maths>}</code>	
Example command.	
<code>\setcontentsfmt{<contents>}</code>	
Example command.	
<code>\setentrycounter[<prefix>]{<counter>}</code>	glossaries
Sets up the entry’s associated counter and prefix required by <code>\glsnumber</code> .	
<code>\setfmt{<symbol>}</code>	
Example command.	
<code>\setglossarystyle{<name>}</code>	glossaries
Sets the glossary style identified by <code><name></code> .	
<code>\setmainlanguage[<options>]{<language name>}</code>	polyglossia
Load the main document language.	
<code>\setmembershipfmt{<variable(s)>}{<condition>}</code>	
Example command.	

Command Summary

<code>\setmembershiponeargfmt</code>	<code>{\langle variable(s)\rangle}{\langle condition\rangle}</code>	
Example command.		
<code>\setotherlanguage</code>	<code>[\langle options\rangle]{\langle language name\rangle}</code>	polyglossia
Load a secondary document language.		
<code>\si</code>	<code>{\langle unit\rangle}</code>	siunitx
Displays the unit with intelligent formatting.		
<code>\sortart</code>	<code>{\langle article\rangle}{\langle text\rangle}</code>	
Example command.		
<code>\sortmediacreator</code>	<code>{\langle first name(s)\rangle}{\langle surname\rangle}</code>	
Example command.		
<code>\sortname</code>	<code>{\langle first name(s)\rangle}{\langle surname\rangle}</code>	
Example command.		
<code>\sorttop</code>	<code>{\langle text1\rangle}{\langle text2\rangle}</code>	
Example command.		
<code>\sortvonname</code>	<code>{\langle first name(s)\rangle}{\langle von\rangle}{\langle surname\rangle}</code>	
Example command.		
<code>\space</code>		kernel command
Produces a space.		
<code>\SS</code>		kernel command
Produces the upper case eszett ß.		
<code>\ss</code>		kernel command
Produces the lower case eszett ß.		
<code>\string</code>	<code>\langle token\rangle</code>	TeX primitive
If <code>\langle token\rangle</code> is a control sequence it expands to the escape character followed by the control sequence name.		
<code>\strong</code>	<code>{\langle text\rangle}</code>	
Example command.		
<code>\subglossentry</code>	<code>{\langle level\rangle}{\langle label\rangle}{\langle location list\rangle}</code>	glossaries v3.08a+
Used in the glossary to display a sub-entry.		
<code>\surd</code>		kernel command (maths mode)
Surd symbol $\sqrt{\quad}$.		

T

<code>\tabularnewline</code>		kernel command
Tabular version of <code>\\</code> (avoids conflict with forced line breaks in paragraph column formats).		
<code>\textbf</code>	<code>{\langle text\rangle}</code>	kernel command
Displays the given text in bold.		

Command Summary

<code>\textcolor[<i>model</i>]{<i>spec</i>}{<i>text</i>}</code>	color
Typesets <i>text</i> in the given colour.	
<code>\text[<i>language</i>][<i>options</i>]{<i>text</i>}</code>	polyglossia
Typeset <i>text</i> according to <i>language</i> .	
<code>\textsc{<i>text</i>}</code>	kernel command
Applies small-caps font to <i>text</i> .	
<code>\textsf{<i>text</i>}</code>	kernel command
Displays the given text in sans-serif.	
<code>\textstyle</code>	kernel command (maths mode)
Switch to in-line maths style (vertically compact).	
<code>\textsubscript{<i>text</i>}</code>	kernel command as from 2015/01/01
Displays <i>text</i> as a subscript.	
<code><i>text</i></code>	kernel command
Displays <i>text</i> as a superscript.	
<code>\texttt{<i>text</i>}</code>	kernel command
Displays the given text in monospaced font.	
<code>\textweathersymbol{<i>number</i>}</code>	ifsym
Displays weather symbol identified by <i>number</i> .	
<code>\TH</code>	kernel command
Produces the upper case thorn Þ.	
<code>\th</code>	kernel command
Produces the lower case thorn þ.	
<code>\the<register></code>	T _E X primitive
Expands <i>register</i> to the current value of the register.	
<code>\theHentrycounter</code>	glossaries
When indexing, this is set to the <code>\theH<counter></code> command corresponding to the current indexing counter (or, if undefined, <code>\the<counter></code>).	
<code>\toprule</code>	booktabs
Horizontal rule for the top of a tabular-like environment.	
<code>\TrackedLanguageFromDialect{<dialect>}</code>	tracklang
Expands to the root language associated with the given (tracklang) dialect label.	
<code>\TrackLangLastTrackedDialect</code>	tracklang
Set by commands like <code>\TrackLocale</code> .	
<code>\TrackLocale{<language tag>}</code>	tracklang v1.3+
Tracks the given language tag.	
<code>\transposefmt{<maths>}</code>	
Example command.	

Command Summary

U

<code>\u{<i>character</i>}</code>	kernel command
Puts a breve accent over <i>character</i> .	
<code>\undef{<i>cs</i>}</code>	etoolbox
Undefines the control sequence <i>cs</i> .	
<code>\underline{<i>text</i>}</code>	kernel command
Underlines the given text.	
<code>\unexpanded{<i>general text</i>}</code>	ϵ -TeX primitive
Expands to the argument.	
<code>\usepackage[<i>options</i>]{<i>name</i>}[<i>min version</i>]</code>	kernel command
Loads the package identified by <i>name</i> .	

V

<code>\vec{<i>character</i>}</code>	kernel command (maths mode)
Puts right arrow accent over <i>character</i> .	
<code>\vecfmt{<i>symbol</i>}</code>	
Example command.	

W

<code>\write18{<i>system call</i>}</code>	kernel command
Perform shell escape if permitted.	

X

<code>\xGlsXtrSetField{<i>entry label</i>}{<i>field label</i>}{<i>value</i>}</code>	glossaries-extra v1.12+
Globally assigns the (protected) full expansion of the given <i>value</i> to the field identified by <i>field label</i> for the entry identified by <i>entry label</i> .	
<code>\xifinlist{<i>element</i>}{<i>list cs</i>}{<i>true</i>}{<i>false</i>}</code>	etoolbox
Tests if the expansion of <i>element</i> is in the list stored in the control sequence <i>list cs</i> .	
<code>\xmakefirstuc{<i>text</i>}</code>	mfirstuc v1.01+
Applies <code>\makefirstuc</code> with one level expansion of the first token of <i>text</i> .	

Bibliography

- [1] David Carlisle. The textcase package, 2004. <https://ctan.org/pkg/textcase>.
- [2] Oracle. Java API: CollationKey class, 2017. <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/api/java/text/CollationKey.html>.
- [3] Oracle. Java API: Collator class, 2017. <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/api/java/text/Collator.html>.
- [4] Oracle. Java API: DecimalFormat class, 2017. <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/api/java/text/DecimalFormat.html>.
- [5] Oracle. Java API: Pattern class, 2017. <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/api/java/util/regex/Pattern.html>.
- [6] Oracle. Java API: RuleBasedCollator class, 2017. <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/api/java/text/RuleBasedCollator.html>.
- [7] Oracle. Java API: SimpleDateFormat class, 2017. <http://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/api/java/text/SimpleDateFormat.html>.
- [8] Oracle. Adoption of unicode cldr data and the java.locale.providers system property, 2018. <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/guides/intl/enhancements.8.html#cldr>.
- [9] Oracle. The java_tool_options environment variable, 2018. <https://docs.oracle.com/javase/8/docs/technotes/guides/troubleshoot/envvars002.html>.
- [10] Nicola Talbot. texparserlib: Java code for parsing (La)TeX files, 2017. <https://github.com/nlct/texparser>.
- [11] Nicola Talbot. The mfirstuc package, 2017. <https://ctan.org/pkg/mfirstuc>.
- [12] Nicola Talbot. Incorporating makeglossaries or makeglossaries-lite or bib2gls into the document build, 2018. <https://www.dickimaw-books.com/latex/buildglossaries>.
- [13] Nicola Talbot. The glossaries-extra package, 2018. <https://ctan.org/pkg/glossaries-extra>.
- [14] Nicola Talbot. The glossaries package, 2018. <https://ctan.org/pkg/glossaries>.

Bibliography

- [15] Nicola L. C. Talbot. *ETEX for Administrative Work*, volume 3 of *Dickimaw ETEX Series*, chapter 2.7.5. Dickimaw Books, Norfolk, UK, 2015. <http://www.dickimaw-books.com/latex/admin/html/foreachtips.shtml>.
- [16] Is there a program for managing glossary tags?, 2016. <https://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/342544>.
- [17] T_EX Users Group. T_EX user groups around the world, 2017. <http://tug.org/usergroups.html>.

Index

Symbols	
" (delimiter)	37, 44
" (hexadecimal identifier)	195, 453, 477
# (literal)	207, 208, 264
# (parameter)	193, 203
# (string concatenation)	44, 326
\$ (literal)	264, 457
\$ (maths shift)	14, 28, 45, 112, 140, 144, 314
% (comment)	14, 85, 193, 371
% (literal)	207, 208
& (alignment)	193
& (literal)	207, 208, 264
' (apostrophe)	<i>see</i> apostrophe (')
((start range)	153, 241
) (end range)	153, 154, 241
* (regular expression, zero or more)	95
. (end of sentence)	<i>see</i> full stop (.)
. (regular expression, match any)	95
@ (bib entry identifier)	37
\"	20, 113, 444
\#	193, 203, 207, 208, 444
\%	193, 207, 208, 444
\&	193, 207, 208, 444
\'	203, 444
\,	368, 444
\.	95, 114
\@	168, 243, 444
\@currentHref	24, 444
\@currentlabelname	24, 444
\@firstofone	254, 444
\@for	263, 444
\@gls@hypergroup	32
\@gobble	255, 444
\@istfilename	11, 444
\\	480
\^	52, 445
_	193, 207, 208, 445
\{	193, 207, 208, 445
\}	193, 207, 208, 445
_	149, 400, 445
\ (escape)	14, 45, 112, 140, 200, 201, 375
\ (literal)	193, 457
^ (literal)	265
^ (superscript)	14, 26
_ (literal)	207, 208, 264
_ (subscript)	14, 26, 193
{ (begin group)	14, 45, 112, 140, 193, 375
{ (literal)	207, 208
} (end group)	14, 45, 112, 140, 193, 375
} (literal)	207, 208
~ (literal)	193
~ (non-breakable space)	14, 23, 112, 140, 149, 240, 289, 419
A	
\AA	20, 113, 144, 445
\aa	144, 445
\ab	445
abbreviation styles	
long-em-short-em	54
long-noshort-desc	53
long-only-short-only	348, 349, 424, 469
long-postshort-user-desc	76
long-short	147
long-short-desc	74, 76, 392, 406, 423, 469
long-short-sc	53, 147, 151
long-short-sm	53
long-short-user	74, 400, 472
long-short-user-desc	76
short-long	126

Index

short-long-user	472	\bibglscircumchar	15, 265
\abbrvpluralsuffix	151, 445	\bibglskontributor	15, 139, 140, 263
<i>see also</i> \glxtrabbrvpluralsuffix		\bibglskontributorlist	15, 138, 262
\ac	29, 445	\bibglsgdate	15, 140
\acronymtype	232, 237, 445	\bibglsgdategroup	255, 369
\acrpluralsuffix	151, 445	\bibglsgdategrouptitle	255, 369
\AE	144, 148, 445	\bibglsgdatetime	15, 140
\ae	144, 148, 445	\bibglsgdatetimegroup	254
\alph	164, 445	\bibglsgdatetimegrouptitle	255
\alpha	194, 445	\bibglsgdelimN	240
animals.bib	333, 404	<i>see also</i> \bibglsglastDelimN	
apostrophe (')	151	\bibglsgdollarchar	15, 264
applications		\bibglsgdualprefixlabel	263
arara	11	\bibglsgemptygroup	253
bibtex	1	\bibglsgemptygrouptitle	253
convertgls2bib	16, 266–268, 272	\bibglsgexternalprefixlabel	264
kpsewhich	10, 13, 22, 91, 266	\bibglsgfirstuc	15, 142, 265
makeglossaries	1, 11, 444, 483	\bibglsgflattenedchildpostsort	260
makeglossaries-lite	11, 444, 483	\bibglsgflattenedchildpresort	105, 260
makeindex	9, 10, 22, 182, 196, 200, 442, 474, 475, 478	\bibglsgflattenedhomograph	105, 258
xindy	4, 22, 39, 156, 182, 196, 200, 442, 443, 474, 475, 478	\bibglsghashchar	15, 264
\approx	193, 445	\bibglsghrefchar	176, 246
\appto	203, 446	\bibglsghrefunicode	176, 247
\apptoglossarypreamble	203, 446	\bibglsghypergroup	258
ASCII	203	\bibglsghyperlink	15, 225, 226, 260
\AtEndDocument	1, 446	\bibglsgsinterloper	241
attributes	<i>see</i> category attributes	\bibglsglastDelimN	240
\autoref	144, 446	<i>see also</i> \bibglsgdelimN	
<i>see also</i> \label		\bibglsgslettergroup	249, 250
B		\bibglsgslettergrouptitle	250, 251
\backmatter	154, 446	\bibglsgslocationgroup	244
bacteria.bib	284, 348, 404	\bibglsgslocationgroupsep	245
baseunits.bib	286, 288, 352, 357, 404, 407	\bibglsgslocprefix	166–168, 242, 243
\bfseries	359, 446	\bibglsgslocsuffix	243
bib2gls-en.xml	11, 131, 241, 243, 248	\bibglsgslowercase	15, 142, 265
bib2gls.bat	12	\bibglsgsnewabbreviation	231, 232
bib2gls.jar	12, 20	\bibglsgsnewacronym	232
bib2gls.sh	12	\bibglsgsnewbibtexentry	79, 238, 379
\bibglsgsaliassep	239	\bibglsgsnewcontributor	79, 238
\bibglsgsampersandchar	15, 264	\bibglsgsnewdualabbreviation	237
		\bibglsgsnewdualabbreviationentry	235
		\bibglsgsnewdualabbreviationentrysec-	
		ondary	235
		\bibglsgsnewdualacronym	237

Index

<p><code>\bibglsnewdualentry</code> 124, 223, 232</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviation</code> 235</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualentryabbreviationsec-</code> <code>ondary</code> 236</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexabbrevia-</code> <code>tion</code> 234, 407</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexabbreviationsec-</code> <code>ondary</code> 234</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexentry</code> 232</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexentry-</code> <code>secondary</code> 232</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexnumber</code> 233</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexnumber-</code> <code>secondary</code> 233</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexsymbol</code> 233</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualindexsymbol-</code> <code>secondary</code> 233</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualnumber</code> 236</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewdualsymbol</code> 236</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewentry</code> 223, 229</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewindex</code> 231</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewindexplural</code> 231</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewnumber</code> 230</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewsymbol</code> 230</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbrevia-</code> <code>tionentry</code> 237</p> <p><code>\bibglsnewtertiaryindexabbrevia-</code> <code>tionentrysecondary</code> 238</p> <p><code>\bibglsnumbergroup</code> 254</p> <p><code>\bibglsnumbergrouptitle</code> 254</p> <p><code>\bibglsothergroup</code> 252</p> <p><code>\bibglsothergrouptitle</code> 253</p> <p><code>\bibglspagename</code> 167, 243</p> <p><code>\bibglspagesname</code> 167, 243</p> <p><code>\bibglspassim</code> 240</p> <p><code>\bibglspassimname</code> 241</p> <p><code>\bibglspostlocprefix</code> 168, 242</p> <p><code>\bibglspany</code> 244</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyprimaryprefixlabel</code> 263</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyrange</code> 241</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyseesalso</code> 239</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyseesep</code> 239</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetdategrouptitle</code> 255</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetdatetimegrouptitle</code> 254</p>	<p><code>\bibglspanysetemptygrouptitle</code> 253</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetlastgrouptitle</code> 249</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetlettergrouptitle</code> 249, 250</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetnumbergrouptitle</code> 253</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetothergrouptitle</code> 252</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysettimegrouptitle</code> 256</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetunicodegrouptitle</code> 256</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetwidest</code> 87, 260–262</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetwidestfallback</code> 87, 261, 262</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetwidestfortype</code> 87, 261, 262</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetwidestfortype-</code> <code>fallback</code> 87, 262</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetwidesttooplevel-</code> <code>fallback</code> 87, 262</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysetwidesttooplevelfortype-</code> <code>fallback</code> 87, 262</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysupplemental</code> 176, 245</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysupplementalsep</code> 246</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysupplementalsublist</code> 176, 246</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysupplementalsubsep</code> 176, 246</p> <p><code>\bibglspanystertiaryprefixlabel</code> 264</p> <p><code>\bibglspanystime</code> 15, 140</p> <p><code>\bibglspanystimegroup</code> 256</p> <p><code>\bibglspanystimegrouptitle</code> 256</p> <p><code>\bibglspanystitlecase</code> 15, 142, 265</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysunderscorechar</code> 15, 264</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyunicodegroup</code> 209, 210, 248, 256, 258</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyunicodegrouptitle</code> 248, 256–258</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysupercase</code> 15, 142, 265</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyseabbrvfont</code> 66, 234</p> <p><code>\bibglspanysealias</code> 166, 240</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyuselongfont</code> 66, 234, 238</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyusesee</code> 166, 239</p> <p><code>\bibglspanyuseseealso</code> 166, 240</p> <p><code>\bibliography</code> 81, 452</p> <p><code>bigmathsymbols.bib</code> 310, 383, 384</p> <p><code>\bigoperatornamefmt</code> 310</p> <p><code>binaryoperators.bib</code> 316, 383</p> <p><code>\boldsymbol</code> 18, 452</p> <p><code>books.bib</code> 106, 131, 295, 298, 361, 362, 373, 418</p> <p><code>\bottomrule</code> 359, 453</p>
---	--

- C**
- \c 52, 453
 - \capitalisewords .. 141, 144, 145, 265, 453, 459, 475
 - \caption 25, 453
 - case-change 141–145, 149
 - see also* upper case,
 - lower case,
 - title case
 - & sentence case
 - category attributes 348
 - apospplural 151
 - externallocation 174–176, 472
 - glossdesc 141, 395
 - glossdescfont 348, 349
 - glossname 17, 141, 326, 349, 394, 456
 - glossnamefont 348, 349, 375, 400, 401, 406, 410, 456
 - noshortplural 151
 - recordcount 35, 36, 471
 - targetname 108, 110
 - targeturl 108, 110
 - textformat 348, 375, 400, 406
 - \ce 280, 453
 - \chapter 453
 - chapter counter 160, 161
 - \chapter* 354, 453
 - \char 14, 15, 195, 267, 453
 - chemicalformula.bib 280, 344, 404, 407, 408
 - \citation 23, 24, 79, 304, 377, 453
 - citations.bib 304, 377
 - \cite 81, 377, 380, 453
 - CJK 251
 - CJK environment 251
 - \cjkgname 251, 453
 - CLDR (Unicode Common Locale Data Repository) 20, 189, 290, 369
 - \color 84, 453
 - command line options
 - break-space 23, 140, 289, 419
 - cite-as-record 23, 79, 304, 377
 - custom-packages 15, 27, 143, 179, 195, 199
 - debug 10, 16, 21, 138, 155, 197
 - dir 22, 23, 91
 - expand-fields 34, 35, 247
 - force-cross-resource-refs .. 8, 25
 - group ... 3, 19, 20, 30, 91, 123, 129, 247, 248, 258, 275, 383
 - help 21
 - ignore-packages 26, 27
 - interpret 14, 23
 - list-known-packages 15, 26
 - locale 10, 22
 - log-file 10, 22
 - map-format 29, 156, 170
 - merge-nameref-on 4, 24, 25, 153, 155, 176
 - merge-wrglossary-records .. 24, 171
 - mfirstuc-math-protection 7, 17, 28
 - mfirstuc-protection ... 7, 17, 27, 28
 - nested-link-check 7, 28, 29
 - no-break-space 23
 - no-cite-as-record 24
 - no-debug 16, 21
 - no-expand-fields 34
 - no-force-cross-resource-refs 25
 - no-group 33, 210
 - no-interpret 8, 14, 23
 - no-merge-wrglossary-records .. 24
 - no-mfirstuc-math-protection .. 28
 - no-mfirstuc-protection 28
 - no-nested-link-check 29
 - no-record-count 36
 - no-record-count-unit 36
 - no-support-unicode-script ... 26
 - no-trim-fields 35
 - no-verbose 21
 - packages 26, 27, 143
 - record-count 35, 36
 - record-count-unit 36
 - shortcuts 29
 - silent 22
 - support-unicode-script 25
 - tex-encoding 34, 85

Index

--trim-fields 35
 --verbose 19, 21, 138, 190, 199
 --version 21
 constants.bib 277, 340
 convertgls2bib.jar 12
 convertgls2bib.sh 12
 cross-resource reference 8, 25, 37, 83, 112,
 117, 118
 \csuse 175, 453
 custom group 31
 \dj 144, 454
 \DTLlandname 363, 454
 see also \DTLformatlist
 \DTLformatlist 138, 262, 363, 454, 455
 \DTLlistformatlastsep 454, 455
 see also \DTLformatlist
 \DTLlistformatoxford 363, 455
 see also \DTLformatlist
 \DTMdisplaydate 290, 419, 455
 dual 55

D

date-time group 31, 254, 255
 date group 31, 255
 \DeclareOptions 27, 453
 \DeclareOptions* 27, 453
 \def 263, 453
 \delimN 155, 240, 454
 \delimR 162, 454
 derivedunits.bib 288, 352, 357, 404, 407
 description environment 406
 \detokenize 92, 454
 \dGls 65, 69, 454
 see also \glxtraddlabelprefix
 & \glxtrprependlabelprefix
 \dgl 65, 69, 454
 see also \glxtraddlabelprefix
 & \glxtrprependlabelprefix
 \dglstdisp 145, 454
 see also \dglstdisp
 \dglslink 145, 454
 see also \dglstdisp
 \dGlspl 69, 454
 see also \glxtraddlabelprefix
 & \glxtrprependlabelprefix
 \dglspl 69, 454
 see also \glxtraddlabelprefix
 & \glxtrprependlabelprefix
 \DH 144, 454
 \dh 144, 454
 digraph 31
 \displaystyle 310, 454
 \DJ 144, 454

E

\edef 399, 455
 \eglsupdatewidest 455
 see also \glissetwidest
 & \glsupdatewidest
 \em 362, 455
 \emph 29, 30, 455, 472
 empty group (unknown commands) 31, 253
 encap (encapsulating command) 152, 153,
 156, 175
 encoding 37, 85
 \endfoot 359, 455
 \endhead 359, 455
 \ensuremath 144, 314, 317, 455
 entry types
 @abbreviation 53, 54, 126, 150, 191, 192,
 231, 284, 326, 328, 448
 @acronym 54, 126, 150, 191, 192, 232,
 271, 448
 @bibtexentry 23, 42, 54, 55, 78, 79, 191,
 192, 238, 295, 304, 379, 380, 448, 464
 @contributor 42, 54, 55, 79, 191, 238,
 379, 448
 @dualabbreviation 40, 72, 76, 223, 224,
 226, 237, 448
 @dualabbreviationentry 53, 56, 57, 59,
 62, 69, 70, 224, 226, 227, 235, 448
 @dualacronym 76, 237, 448
 @dualentry 37, 62, 69, 70, 72, 124, 217,
 218, 222–227, 232, 424, 448
 @dualentryabbreviation 69, 70, 227,
 235, 236, 448, 449

Index

- `@dualindexabbreviation` 56, 57, 59, 65, 77, 225, 227, 234, 407, 449
- `@dualindexentry` . . . 9, 56, 63, 65, 66, 224, 227, 232, 449
- `@dualindexnumber` 69, 225, 227, 233, 449
- `@dualindexsymbol` . . . 56, 66, 68, 69, 225, 227, 233, 449
- `@dualnumber` 71, 236, 449
- `@dualsymbol` 55, 70, 71, 224, 226, 236, 357, 449
- `@entry` . . . 17, 49–51, 62, 63, 124, 191, 229, 281, 289, 326, 333, 335, 337, 344, 352, 367, 424, 449
- `@index` . . . 9, 51, 52, 54, 56, 63, 79, 102, 106, 124, 147, 150, 191, 231, 290, 328, 337, 339, 367, 407, 408, 424, 449
- `@indexplural` 52, 53, 231
- `@number` 50, 51, 192, 230, 340, 449
- `@preamble` 6, 8, 15–18, 44–46, 83–86, 105, 136, 143, 178, 199, 260, 276, 278, 304, 306, 326, 328, 394
- `@string` 6, 44, 326, 328
- `@symbol` . . . 17, 50, 51, 55, 192, 230, 281, 286, 305, 310, 317, 323, 344, 352, 424, 449
- `@tertiaryindexabbreviation-entry` 62, 77, 225, 227, 237, 238, 449, 450
- equation counter 169, 172
- F**
- fields
 - `access` 41
 - `alias` . . . 8, 14, 39, 40, 56, 112, 118, 129, 166, 222–224, 239, 240, 266, 290, 337, 425, 446
 - `category` . . . 7, 14, 40, 63, 64, 66, 68, 69, 71, 72, 77, 78, 95, 106, 107, 112, 123–125, 131, 152, 177, 191, 198, 211, 217, 218, 228, 230–232, 234, 237, 341, 348, 362, 367, 375, 379, 383, 384, 389, 391, 396, 408, 419, 422, 423, 425, 457, 460, 470, 476
 - `description` 7, 8, 34, 35, 40, 41, 43, 49, 50, 53, 54, 62, 69, 74, 77, 118, 119, 130, 131, 141, 147, 150, 178, 225, 226, 231, 235, 286, 290, 295, 299, 311, 319, 323, 341, 344, 348, 349, 364, 369, 380, 383, 389, 391, 394, 401, 408, 410, 422, 424, 442, 457, 458, 470, 473, 477
 - `descriptionaccess` 41
 - `descriptionplural` . . . 40, 41, 43, 62, 223
 - `descriptionpluralaccess` 41
 - `duallong` 40, 72, 74, 76, 150, 218, 224, 237
 - `duallongplural` 40, 72
 - `dualshort` 40, 72, 150, 218, 224, 237
 - `dualshortplural` 40, 72, 152
 - `first` . . . 28, 40, 41, 127, 128, 132, 151, 290, 367, 375, 418, 425, 456, 458
 - `firstaccess` 41
 - `firstplural` 28, 40, 41, 43, 128, 150, 151, 458
 - `firstpluralaccess` 41
 - `long` . . . 28, 40, 41, 53, 54, 65, 69, 70, 72, 77, 150, 151, 224, 237, 284, 326, 349, 392, 396, 407, 458
 - `longaccess` 41
 - `longplural` 28, 40, 41, 43, 69, 72, 150, 151, 458
 - `longpluralaccess` 41
 - `name` . . . 6, 7, 14, 15, 17, 28, 34, 35, 40, 41, 45, 49–54, 59, 62, 63, 65, 66, 69–71, 79, 80, 86, 87, 102, 104–107, 113, 126–128, 132, 138, 141, 142, 147, 148, 150, 151, 171, 178, 190–192, 210, 224, 226, 231, 234, 238, 258–262, 270, 272, 275, 281, 286, 289, 290, 305, 306, 310, 311, 314, 317, 323, 340, 341, 344, 348, 349, 352, 357, 367, 370, 375, 379, 383, 389, 392, 394, 396, 401, 406–408, 418, 421–425, 443, 456, 458, 469
 - `parent` . . . 7, 14, 40, 49–51, 92, 98, 102, 106, 107, 110, 112, 118, 126, 131, 191, 373, 375
 - `plural` . . . 28, 40, 41, 52, 62, 66, 69, 71, 128, 150, 151, 223, 458
 - `pluralaccess` 41
 - `prefix` 41
 - `prefixfirst` 41

Index

- prefixfirstplural 41
- prefixplural 41
- see . 8, 14, 39, 40, 92, 93, 99, 105, 110, 112, 118, 120, 121, 129, 135, 152, 156, 165, 166, 178, 223, 239, 266, 267, 450, 472
- seealso 8, 14, 39, 40, 92, 99, 105, 110, 112, 118, 121, 135, 153, 156, 166, 178, 239, 240, 266, 267, 450, 472
- short . 28, 40, 41, 53, 54, 59, 65, 66, 69, 70, 72, 77, 126, 147–151, 192, 224, 237, 284, 349, 396, 398, 407, 411, 458, 462, 471, 473
- shortaccess 41
- shortplural 28, 40, 41, 43, 69, 72, 150–152, 458, 459
- shortpluralaccess 41
- symbol . 28, 34, 35, 40, 41, 66, 70, 71, 224, 281, 286, 352, 357, 407, 408, 410, 411, 423, 459, 463, 474
- symbolaccess 41
- symbolplural 40, 41, 66, 71, 459
- symbolpluralaccess 41
- text . 28, 40, 41, 52, 69, 102, 105, 127, 128, 132, 142, 147, 150, 151, 290, 314, 317, 367, 375, 456, 459, 463
- textaccess 41
- user1 . 40, 43, 46, 51, 71, 74, 114, 121, 127, 136, 208, 340, 341, 362, 367, 368, 386, 407, 459
- user2 . 40, 43, 127, 341, 363, 364, 367, 459
- user3 40, 43, 127, 342, 367, 368, 459
- user4 40, 43, 459
- user5 40, 43, 459
- user6 40, 43, 460
- fields, internal
 - bib2gls@sort 39, 43
 - bib2gls@sortfallback 43
 - bibtexcontributor 42
 - bibtexentry 42, 55, 79, 380
 - bibtexentry@*<entry-type>* 42, 55, 79
 - bibtex-type 42, 78
 - childcount 42, 97, 468
 - childlist 42, 97
 - counter 7, 42
 - currcount 43
 - currcount@*<value>* 43
 - desc 43
 - descplural 43
 - dual 42, 219, 226, 465
 - <field>*endpunc 42, 131, 132, 375, 398
 - firstpl 43
 - flag 43
 - group 6, 14, 30, 33, 42, 77, 90, 91, 102, 106, 112, 123, 129, 209, 211, 248–250, 257, 352, 379, 383, 384, 389, 423
 - index 43
 - indexcounter 42, 170–172, 468
 - level 43
 - location 42, 152, 155–157, 159, 166, 383, 461, 465, 469
 - loclist 42, 152, 153, 155–157
 - longpl 43
 - nonnumberlist 43
 - prevcount 43
 - prevcount@*<value>* 43
 - prevunitmax 43
 - prevunittotal 43
 - primarylocations 42, 156–158, 161, 244, 450
 - recordcount 35, 36, 42
 - recordcount.*<counter>* 35, 42
 - recordcount.*<counter>*.*<location>* 36, 42
 - secondarygroup 42, 129, 211
 - secondarysort 42, 210
 - shortpl 43
 - sort . 10, 17–19, 37, 38, 42, 43, 45, 50–53, 65, 69, 70, 72, 78, 82, 183, 189–192, 197–199, 205, 210, 229, 230, 248, 251, 266, 281, 286, 305, 344, 349, 357, 408, 443
 - sortvalue 43
 - type . 5, 7, 14, 32, 33, 42, 63, 77, 78, 87, 90, 95, 106, 112, 123, 125, 131, 167, 217, 218, 228, 231, 232, 237, 248, 257, 261, 267, 379, 422
 - unitlist 43
 - useri 43, 342, 399, 400
 - userii 43, 342

Index

- `useriii` 43
 - `useriv` 43
 - `userv` 43
 - `uservi` 43
 - file formats
 - `.aux` ... 1, 11, 14, 22, 29, 32, 34, 36, 82, 92, 110, 152, 155, 156, 170, 176, 182, 193
 - `.bat` 12
 - `.bib` 1, 6, 11, 14, 22, 34, 37, 84, 85, 91, 110, 118, 219, 266
 - `.glg` 18, 22, 23
 - `.gls` 248
 - `.glstex` 5, 7, 11, 23, 32, 34, 35, 38, 42, 45, 57, 72, 77, 82, 85, 86, 89, 91, 92, 110, 111, 178, 218, 220, 229, 248, 304
 - `.jar` 13
 - `.log` 26, 27, 258
 - `.out`
 - `.sh` 12
 - `.tex` 1, 266
 - `films.bib` 276, 298, 361, 362, 418
 - `\forall` 317, 455
 - `\forall` 398, 400, 455
 - `\forall` 400, 455
 - `\forall` 154, 455
 - full stop (.) 114, 130, 132, 135, 168, 243, 299, 341, 369, 377, 394, 396, 398, 400, 442
- G**
- `\glolinkprefix` 370, 456
 - glossary styles
 - `altlist` 340, 377, 406
 - `altlistgroup` 369
 - `almtree` 86, 323, 341, 383, 391, 462, 464, 471
 - `almtreegroup` 344, 389
 - `bookindex` 157, 348, 349, 369, 371, 401, 410, 465, 470
 - `index` 31, 348
 - `indexgroup` 3, 30, 33, 377
 - `indexhypergroup` 32, 247, 258
 - `list` 341, 357
 - `long3col-booktabs` 357, 359
 - `mcolalmtree` 383
 - `mcolalmtreegroup` 346, 384, 408
 - `mcolindexgroup` 352
 - `tree` 159
 - `glossaryentry counter` 441, 443, 458
 - `\glossaryheader` 359, 456
 - `\glossarypreamble` 203, 456
 - see also* `\apptoglossarypreamble`
 - `glossarysubentry counter` 443
 - `\glossentry` 155, 359, 456
 - `\glossentrydesc` 141, 456
 - `\glossentryname` 141, 349, 456
 - `\glossentrynameother` 349, 410, 411, 456
 - `\glossentrysymbol` 408, 410, 411, 456
 - `\GLS` 145, 456
 - `\Gls` 27, 145, 456, 469
 - `\gls` 29, 36, 39, 56, 68, 93, 105, 110, 116, 117, 145, 150, 153, 165, 168, 170, 216, 241, 266, 367, 398, 456, 469
 - `counter` 129, 168, 172, 441
 - `format` 36, 152–155, 160, 162, 170–172, 241
 - `hyper` 68
 - `noindex` 203, 471
 - `\glsabbrvfont` 392, 456
 - `\glsabbrvonlyfont` 348, 456
 - `\glsadd` . 1, 67, 153, 154, 159–161, 173, 174, 241, 456
 - `counter` 160
 - `format` 154, 160, 174, 241, 457, 471
 - `theHvalue` 174
 - `thevalue` 173, 174
 - `\glsaddall` 1, 92, 456
 - `\glsaddallunused` 154, 457
 - `\glsaddkey` 38, 95, 127, 457
 - `\glsaddstoragekey` ... 38, 79, 95, 396, 457
 - `\glsbackslash` 15, 193, 457
 - `\glsapturedgroup` 114, 457
 - `\glscategory` 78, 457
 - `\glscurrententrylabel` 367, 457
 - `\glscurrentfieldvalue` 97, 457
 - `\glsdefaulttype` 267, 457
 - `\glsdefpostdesc` 51, 342, 457
 - `\glsdefpostlink` 457

Index

<p><code>\glsdefpostname</code> 363, 457</p> <p><code>\glsdesc</code> 426, 457</p> <p><code>\glsdescwidth</code> 357, 457</p> <p><code>\glsdisp</code> 145, 457 <i>see also</i> <code>\glslink</code></p> <p><code>\Glsentrydesc</code> 141, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentryfirst</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentryfirst</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentryfirstplural</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentryfirstplural</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentryitem</code> 359, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentrylong</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentrylong</code> 15, 349, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentrylongpl</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentrylongpl</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentryname</code> 15, 141, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentryname</code> 10, 15, 81, 122, 135, 137, 226, 380, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentryplural</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentryplural</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentryshort</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentryshort</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\Glsentryshorttpl</code> 15, 458</p> <p><code>\glsentryshorttpl</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentrysymbol</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentrysymbol</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentrysymbolplural</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentrysymbolplural</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentrytext</code> 15, 145, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentrytext</code> 15, 72, 145, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentrytitlecase</code> 15, 144, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentryuseri</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentryuseri</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentryuserii</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentryuserii</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentryuseriii</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentryuseriii</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentryuseriv</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentryuseriv</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentryuserv</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\glsentryuserv</code> 15, 459</p> <p><code>\Glsentryuservi</code> 15, 460</p> <p><code>\glsentryuservi</code> 15, 460</p> <p><code>\glsexpandfields</code> 267, 268</p>	<p><code>\glsextrapostnamehook</code> 159, 161, 411, 426, 460</p> <p><code>\glsfieldfetch</code> 153, 460</p> <p><code>\glsFindWidestLevelTwo</code> 261, 460 <i>see also</i> <code>\glsfindwidesttoplevelname</code></p> <p><code>\glsFindWidestTopLevelName</code> 86, 262, 460 <i>see also</i> <code>\glsfindwidesttoplevelname</code></p> <p><code>\glsfindwidesttoplevelname</code> 460</p> <p><code>\glsgroupheading</code> 247, 248</p> <p><code>\glshex</code> 115, 193, 194, 460</p> <p><code>\glshyperlink</code> 15, 145, 226, 260, 460</p> <p><code>\glshypernumber</code> 170, 175, 460</p> <p><code>\glsifcategory</code> 349, 460</p> <p><code>\glsignore</code> ... 23, 30, 154, 155, 203, 394, 460</p> <p><code>\glslabel</code> 367, 460</p> <p><code>\glslink</code> 46, 47, 145, 460 <i>see also</i> <code>\glsdisp</code></p> <p><code>\glslongextraSetWidest</code> 86, 460 <i>see also</i> <code>\glslongextraUpdateWidest</code></p> <p><code>\glslongextraUpdateWidest</code> 461</p> <p><code>\glslongfont</code> 392, 461</p> <p><code>\glslongonlyfont</code> 348, 461</p> <p><code>\glslongtok</code> 392, 461</p> <p><code>\glslonguserfont</code> 227, 461</p> <p><code>\glsnamefont</code> 171, 349, 461</p> <p><code>\glsnavhypertarget</code> 33, 461</p> <p><code>\glsnoexpandfields</code> 34, 35, 268</p> <p><code>\glsnoidxdisplayloc</code> 153</p> <p><code>\glsnoidxloclist</code> 155, 461</p> <p><code>\glsnoidxloclisthandler</code> 155, 461</p> <p><code>\glsnumberformat</code> ... 30, 117, 154–156, 163, 164, 170, 176, 461</p> <p><code>\glsnumbersgroupname</code> 254, 461</p> <p><code>\Glspl</code> 461, 469</p> <p><code>\glspl</code> 150, 461, 469</p> <p><code>\glspluralsuffix</code> 150, 151, 461</p> <p><code>\glspostdescription</code> 359, 462</p> <p><code>\glsps</code> 27, 462</p> <p><code>\glsrefentry</code> 462 <i>see also</i> <code>\ref</code></p> <p><code>\glsrenewcommand</code> 229, 462</p> <p><code>\glssee</code> 39, 182, 462</p> <p><code>\glsseeformat</code> 152, 240, 462 <i>see also</i> <code>\glsseeitem</code>,</p>
--	---

Index

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>\glsseeitemformat</code>, <code>\glsseesep</code> & <code>\glsseelastsep</code> <code>\glsseeitem</code> 462 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsseeformat</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glsseeitemformat</code> <code>\glsseeitemformat</code> 136, 462 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsseeformat</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glsseeitem</code> <code>\glsseelastsep</code> 462 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsseeformat</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glsseesep</code> <code>\glsseesep</code> 462 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsseeformat</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glsseelastsep</code> <code>\glssetcategoryattribute</code> ... 9, 108, 462 <code>\glssetexpandfield</code> 35, 268 <code>\glssetnoexpandfield</code> 267, 268 <code>\glssetwidest</code> 86, 261, 462 <code>\glsshorttok</code> 392, 463 <code>\glsymbol</code> 426, 463 <code>\glsymbolsgroupname</code> .. 247, 253, 423, 463 <code>\glstarget</code> 359, 463 <code>\Glstext</code> 395, 463 <code>\glstext</code> 117, 395, 463 <code>\glstextformat</code> 400, 463 <code>\glstildechar</code> 15, 193, 463 <code>\glstreedefaultnamefmt</code> 463 <code>\glstreegroupheaderfmt</code> 346, 463 <code>\glstreenamefmt</code> 344, 463 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glstreegroupheaderfmt</code>, <li style="padding-left: 40px;"><code>\glstreenavigationfmt</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glstreedefaultnamefmt</code> <code>\glstreenavigationfmt</code> 463 <code>\glstriggerrecordformat</code> 36, 125, 155, 463 <code>\glsupdatewidest</code> 86, 261, 463 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glssetwidest</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\eglsupdatewidest</code> <code>\glsuseabbrvfont</code> 234, 463 <code>\glsuselongfont</code> 238, 464 <code>\glsuserdescription</code> 227, 464 <code>\glsxtr@record</code> 155 <code>\glsxtr@record@nameref</code> 24 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <code>\glsxtr@resource</code> 11 <code>\glsxtr@wrglossarylocation</code> ... 170, 171 <code>\glsxtrabbrvpluralsuffix</code> 151, 464 <code>\glsxtrabbrvtype</code> 231, 464 <code>\glsxtraddlabelprefix</code> 65, 69, 464 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\dgl</code>, <li style="padding-left: 40px;"><code>\glsxtrprependlabelprefix</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glsxtrclearlabelprefixes</code> <code>\glsxtrAltTreePar</code> 408, 464 <code>\glsxtralttreeSymbolDescLocation</code> 408, 421, 464 <code>\GlsXtrAutoAddOnFormat</code> ... 160, 161, 464 <code>\glsxtrautoindexassignsort</code> ... 10, 464 <code>\glsxtrautoindexentry</code> 10, 464 <code>\GlsXtrBibTeXEntryAliases</code> ... 55, 78, 80, 304, 379, 464 <code>\glsxtrbookindexname</code> .. 349, 410, 425, 465 <code>\glsxtrbookindexprelocation</code> .. 157, 465 <code>\glsxtrclearlabelprefixes</code> 465 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsxtraddlabelprefix</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glsxtrprependlabelprefix</code> <code>\glsxtrcombiningsupdiacritic-</code> <li style="padding-left: 20px;">rules 194, 465 <code>\glsxtrcontrolrules</code> 194, 465 <code>\glsxtrcopytoglossary</code> 89, 90 <code>\glsxtrdigitrules</code> 194, 465 <code>\glsxtrdisplaylocnameref</code> 24 <code>\glsxtrdisplaysuploc</code> 175 <code>\GlsXtrDualBackLink</code> 226 <code>\GlsXtrDualField</code> 218, 226 <code>\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging</code> ... 15, 326, 394, 465 <code>\glsxtrenablerecordcount</code> 36, 465 <code>\glsxtrendfor</code> 399, 400, 465 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsxtrforcsvfield</code> <code>\glsxtrentryfmt</code> 46, 399, 400 <code>\glsxtrfielddolistloop</code> ... 79, 153, 466 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsxtrfieldforlistloop</code>, <li style="padding-left: 40px;"><code>\glsxtrfieldifinlist</code> <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <code>\glsxtrfieldlistadd</code> <code>\glsxtrfieldforlistloop</code> 79, 81, 97, 153, 466 <li style="padding-left: 20px;"><i>see also</i> <code>\glsxtrfielddolistloop</code>, <li style="padding-left: 40px;"><code>\glsxtrfieldifinlist</code>
--	--

Index

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> & \glxtrfieldlistadd \glxtrfielddifylist 466 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrfieldxifylist, <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrfieldlistadd, <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrfieldforlistloop <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrfieldddolistloop \glxtrfieldlistadd 229 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrfielddifylist, <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrfieldforlistloop <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrfieldddolistloop \glxtrfieldxifylist 466 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrfielddifylist \glxtrfmt 46, 47, 318 \glxtrfmt* 46 \GlsXtrFmtDefaultOptions .. 47, 386, 466 \GlsXtrFmtField 46, 386, 466 \glxtrforcsvfield 399, 466 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrendfor \glxtrfractionrules 194, 466 \glxtrGeneralLatinIIrules 466 \glxtrGeneralLatinIrules 466 \glxtrGeneralLatinIrules ... 195, 466 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrGeneralLatinIrules, <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrGeneralLatinIIrules, <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrGeneralLatinIVrules, <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrGeneralLatinVrules, <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrGeneralLatinVIrules <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& <li style="padding-left: 40px;">\glxtrGeneralLatinVIIrules \glxtrGeneralLatinIVrules ... 194, 467 \glxtrGeneralLatinVIIrules 467 \glxtrGeneralLatinVIrules 467 \glxtrGeneralLatinVrules 467 \glxtrgeneralpuncrules 194, 467 \glxtrgroupfield... 81, 91, 129, 211, 370, 379, 467 \GLSXRhiername 15, 467 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrhiername <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrhiernamesep \GLSxtrhiername 15, 467 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrhiername <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrhiernamesep 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> \GlsXtrhiername 15, 467 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrhiername <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrhiernamesep \Glsxtrhiername 15, 467 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrhiername <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrhiernamesep \glxtrhiername 15, 135, 136, 467 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrhiernamesep \glxtrhiernamesep 15, 135, 468 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrhiername \glxtrhyphenrules 194, 468 \glxtrifcustomdiscardperiod 132 \GlsXtrIfFieldEqNum 98, 468 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \GlsXtrIfFieldNonZero \GlsXtrIfFieldNonZero 98, 468 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \GlsXtrIfFieldEqNum \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef 132, 468 \glxtrifhasfield . 98, 132, 342, 380, 399, 411, 468 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef \glxtrifhasfield* 132, 468 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef \GlsXtrIfHasNonZeroChildCount 97 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \GlsXtrIfFieldNonZero \glxtrifwasfirstuse 367, 468 \GlsXtrIndexCounterLink 171 \glxtrindexseealso 39, 468 \glxtrLatinAA 194, 468 \glxtrLatinOslash 194, 469 \GlsXtrLoadResources .. 3, 4, 6, 10, 37, 38, 82, 83, 91, 92, 95, 110, 111, 114, 123, 147, 210, 251, 260, 326, 394, 407 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also resource options <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrresourcefile \GlsXtrLocationField 157, 161, 469 \glxtrlocationhyperlink 469 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \glxtrsupphypernumber <li style="padding-left: 40px;">& \glxtrsupplocationurl \glxtrlongshortdescname . 392, 423, 469 \glxtrMathItalicGreekIrules . 194, 469 \glxtrmultisupplocation 175 \glxtrnewgls 68, 298 <li style="padding-left: 20px;">see also \gls \glxtrnewglslike 68, 160
---	---

Index

- see also* `\glxtrnewgls`
- `\glxtrnewnumber` 272, 442
 - `\glxtrnewsymbol` 271, 272, 443
 - `\glxtrnonprintablerules` 194, 469
 - `\glxtrnopostpunc` 130, 299, 364, 469
 - `\glxtronlyname` 424, 469
 - `\glxtrp` 39, 469
 - `\glxtrpageref` 469
see also `\pageref`
 - `\glxtrparen` 392, 470
 - `\glxtrpostdescabbreviation` 72, 470
 - `\glxtrpostdesc<category>` 341, 363, 470
 - `\glxtrpostdescgeneral` 68, 470
 - `\glxtrpostdescsymbol` 68, 470
 - `\glxtrpostlinkAddDescOnFirst-
Use` 426, 470
 - `\glxtrpostlink<category>` 367, 470
 - `\glxtrpostname<category>` 367, 470
 - `\glxtrprelocation` 157, 158, 470
 - `\glxtrprependlabelprefix` 69, 470
see also `\dgl`,
`\glxtraddlabelprefix`
& `\glxtrclearlabelprefixes`
 - `\GlsXtrProvideBibTeXFields` 79, 470
 - `\glxtrprovidecommand` 15, 44, 195, 470
 - `\glxtrprovidestoragekey` 72, 218, 470
 - `\glxtrresourcefile` 4, 6, 10, 11, 82–84,
91, 111
see also resource options
& `\GlsXtrLoadResources`
 - `\glxtrresourceinit` 194, 471
 - `\glxtrrestorepostpunc` 299, 364, 471
 - `\glxtrscsuffix` 151, 471
 - `\glxtrseelist` 137, 471
 - `\glxtrsetaliasnoindex` 166, 471
 - `\GlsXtrSetDefaultGlsOpts` 203, 394, 471
 - `\GlsXtrSetDefaultNumberFormat` 153,
154, 203, 394, 471
 - `\GlsXtrSetField` 97, 120, 171, 229, 471
 - `\glxtrsetgrouptitle` 31, 123, 247,
248, 250
 - `\GlsXtrSetRecordCountAttribute` 35
 - `\glxtrSetWidest` 86, 260, 261, 471
see also `\glsetwidest`
& `\glslongextraSetWidest`
 - `\glxtrSetWidestFallback` 261, 262, 471
see also `\glFindWidestTopLevelName`
& `\glFindWidestLevelTwo`
 - `\glxtrshort` 394, 471
 - `\glxtrspacerules` 194, 471
 - `\glxtrsupphypernumber` 174, 175, 472
see also `\glxtrlocationhyperlink`
& `\glxtrsupplocationurl`
 - `\glxtrsupplocationurl` 175, 472
see also `\glshypernumber`,
`\glxtrsupphypernumber`,
`\glxtrmultisupplocation`
& `\glxtrlocationhyperlink`
 - `\glxtrtagfont` 394, 472
see also
`\GlsXtrEnableInitialTagging`
 - `\GLSxtrusefield` 15, 144, 472
 - `\Glsxtrusefield` 15, 145, 472
 - `\glxtrusefield` 15, 72, 144, 472
 - `\glxtruserfield` 74, 400, 472
 - `\glxtruserparen` 400, 472
 - `\glxtrusesee` 165, 239, 472
 - `\glxtruseseealso` 240, 472
 - `\glxtruseseealsoformat` 39, 152, 472
- ## H
- `\hyperbf` 29, 30, 67, 153, 155, 159, 160, 241,
411, 427, 472
 - `\hyperemph` 159, 161, 472
 - `\hyperit` 30, 472
 - `\hyperlink` 170, 473
 - `\hyperref` 473
`{<URL>}{<category>}{<name>}{<text>}` 473
`[<label>]{<text>}` 171, 473
 - `\hyperm` 160–162, 473
 - `\hypersf` 29, 30, 473
- ## I
- IETF (Internet Engineering Task Force) 10,
22, 182, 398
 - `\ifcase` 167, 473
 - `\ifcsdef` 245, 473

Index

- \ifdef 262, 473
 - \IfFileExists 399, 473
 - \ifglshentryexists 90, 259, 473
 - \ifglshasdesc 401, 473
 - see also \ifglshassymbol
 - & \ifglshassuppressedesc
 - \ifglshasfield 98, 132, 341, 473
 - see also \glxtrifhasfield
 - & \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef
 - \ifglshasshort 398, 473
 - \ifglshassuppressedesc 473
 - see also \ifglshasdesc
 - \ifglshassymbol 474
 - see also \ifglshasdesc,
 - \glxtrifhasfield
 - & \GlsXtrIfFieldUndef
 - \ifnum 245, 474
 - \ifstrempty 139, 474
 - ignored glossary 4, 5
 - ignored record .. 23, 36, 39, 79, 125, 152, 154,
155, 203, 460, 463
 - \immediate 1, 474
 - \index 9, 474
 - \input 1, 39, 474
 - interpret-preamble.bib .. 275, 276, 289,
295, 298, 319, 361, 365, 384, 418
 - interpret-preamble2.bib .. 275, 276, 295,
373, 375, 418
 - \invfmt 318
- J**
- \jobname 82, 91, 92, 111, 474
 - JRE (Java Runtime Environment) ... 20, 182,
189, 289, 290, 369
 - JVM (Java Virtual Machine) 22, 34, 183,
189, 266
- L**
- \L 144, 474
 - \l 144, 474
 - \label 170, 474
 - see also \ref
 - & \pageref
 - label prefixes
 - dual 37, 63, 115, 117, 118, 214, 410
 - ext<n> 37, 115, 117, 118, 120, 298
 - tertiary 77, 115, 117, 227
 - language resource file (.xml)
 - grouptitle.case.<lc> 32, 248
 - sentence.terminators 131, 132
 - tag.page 167, 243
 - tag.pages 167, 243
 - \let 370, 474
 - letter group 3, 31, 32, 249, 250
 - link text 463
 - \listxadd 399, 474
 - \loadglsentries 1, 39, 267, 474
 - locale provider 20, 182, 189, 289, 369
 - location list ... 24, 93, 94, 105, 152, 156, 157
 - \longnewglossaryentry 70, 223, 269
 - \longnewglossaryentry* 230, 475
 - \longprovideglossaryentry 269
 - longtable environment 357, 359
 - lower case ... 19, 142, 143, 183, 184, 196, 205,
208, 209, 218, 257, 265, 448
- M**
- \mainmatter 154, 475
 - \makefirstuc 7, 27, 144, 145, 226, 265, 395,
453, 475
 - \makeglossaries 4, 200, 418, 475
 - \MakeLowercase 209, 475
 - \makenoidxglossaries 4, 475
 - \MakeTextLowercase 265, 475
 - \MakeTextUppercase 265, 394, 475
 - \MakeUppercase 14, 267, 475
 - markuplanguages.bib 326, 392, 404
 - \mathcal 16, 475
 - mathgreek.bib 305, 310, 383
 - \mathord 317, 475
 - mathsubjects.bib 318, 384
 - mathsrelations.bib 314, 316, 383
 - \MFUnocap 143, 475
 - \midrule 359, 475
 - minerals.bib 335, 404
 - miscsymbols.bib 322, 389, 422, 423
 - \mtxfmt 318

- N**
- `\nary` 311
 - `\newabbreviation` 40, 58, 70, 84, 231, 232, 237, 271
 - `\newacronym` 84, 232, 237, 271
 - `\newcommand` 68, 229, 272, 273, 476
 - `\newdualentry` 69, 272, 273
 - `\newentry` 268, 476
 - `\newglossary` 5, 476
 - `\newglossary*` 4, 354, 476
 - `\newglossaryentry` 34, 38, 82, 198, 266, 268
 - `\newglossarystyle` 359, 476
 - `\newignoredglossary` 4, 476
 - `\newignoredglossary*` 4, 5, 476
 - `\newnum` 272, 476
 - `\newrobustcmd` 251, 476
 - `\newsym` 272, 476
 - `\newterm` 269, 441
 - `\NG` 144, 477
 - `\ng` 144, 477
 - `no-interpret-preamble.bib` 139, 178, 275, 278, 289, 295, 298, 319, 361, 365, 373, 384, 418
 - `\NoCaseChange` 143, 144, 148, 149, 394, 477
 - `non-ASCII` 17, 37, 176, 204, 328, 396, 398
 - `non-letter group` 31, 32, 252, 253, 423
 - `\nopostdesc` 130, 230, 231, 269, 299, 477
 - `\number` 209, 477
 - `number group` 31, 253, 254
 - `\numspacefmt` 318
- O**
- `\O` 113, 144, 477
 - `\o` 144, 477
 - `\OE` 144, 148, 477
 - `\oe` 144, 148, 477
 - `\omicron` 305, 306, 477
 - `openin_any` 10, 266
 - `openout_any` 10, 266
- P**
- package options
 - `abbreviations` 58, 70
 - `accsupp` 41
 - `automake` 1
 - `counter` 170
 - `entrycounter` 443, 462, 469
 - `index` 269, 369, 405, 477
 - `indexcounter` 24, 170
 - `nogroupskip` 3, 31, 383
 - `nomain` 125, 354, 377, 405
 - `nonumberlist` 156, 344
 - `nopostdot` 130, 269, 442, 462
 - `nostyles` 341, 344, 348, 352, 357, 377, 405
 - `numberedsection` 442
 - `numbers` 272, 469
 - `postdot` 130, 299, 341, 369, 377, 442
 - `postpunc` 442, 462
 - `record` 4, 5, 11, 24, 25, 30, 82, 89, 92, 152, 161, 172, 173, 182, 194, 229, 341, 369, 443, 464
 - `section` 354, 405, 442
 - `shortcuts` 29, 442, 443, 445, 476
 - `sort` 82
 - `style` 341, 357
 - `stylemods` 341, 344, 348, 352, 357, 369, 377, 383, 405, 442
 - `subentrycounter` 259, 462, 469
 - `symbols` 68, 125, 271, 469
 - `undefaction` 89, 92
 - `xindy` 200
 - `\PackageError` 27, 477
 - packages
 - `amsmath` 26
 - `amssymb` 26
 - `babel`
 - `booktabs` 26
 - `bpchem` 26
 - `CJKutf8` 251
 - `color` 26
 - `datatool` 26
 - `datatool-base` 26
 - `datetime2` 290
 - `etoolbox` 26, 152
 - `fontenc` 26
 - `fontspec` 26, 34
 - `fourier` 26

Index

- glossaries 1, 33, 82, 247
 - glossaries-accsupp 41
 - glossaries-extra 1, 26, 82, 151, 170, 172
 - glossaries-extra-bib2gls 78, 82, 172, 174, 193, 194, 305
 - glossaries-extra-stylemods
 - glossaries-prefix 41, 122
 - glossary-bookindex
 - glossary-hypernav 33
 - glossary-list
 - glossary-long
 - glossary-longbooktabs
 - glossary-longextra 86
 - glossary-mcols
 - glossary-tree
 - graphics 26
 - graphicx 26
 - hyperref 24, 26, 33, 47, 108, 176, 258
 - ifsym 322, 389
 - ifthen 26
 - inputenc 34, 37, 247
 - jmlrutils 26
 - lipsum 26
 - longtable
 - marvosym 322, 389
 - mfistuc 27, 28, 143
 - mfistuc-english 26, 143
 - mhchem 26
 - MnSymbol 26
 - natbib 26
 - pifont 26
 - polyglossia
 - probsoln 26
 - shortvrb 26
 - siunitx 15, 26, 286, 357
 - stix 26, 310, 383
 - textcase 26, 143
 - textcomp 26
 - tipa 26
 - tracklang 182, 183
 - upgreek 26, 278
 - wasysym 26
 - xspace 26
 - page counter 161, 169
 - \pagelistname 167, 477
 - \pageref 144, 170, 474, 477
 - \par 380, 477
 - \parenskip 84, 85
 - people.bib 289, 365, 368, 373, 375, 418
 - period *see full stop (.)*
 - \pi 51, 66, 478
 - post-description hook 72, 76, 130, 231, 299, 341, 363, 368, 369, 380, 394
 - post-link hook 132, 367, 375, 426
 - post-name hook 349, 362, 367, 369, 401, 426
 - primary 55
 - \printglossaries 4, 200, 478
 - \printglossary 4, 478
 - \printnoidxglossary 478
 - \printunsrtglossaries 4, 478
 - \printunsrtglossary 4, 30, 56, 84, 90, 156, 211, 212, 248, 478
 - nogroupskip 65
 - nonumberlist 370
 - style 371
 - target 90, 212, 370
 - title 212, 370
 - type 370, 371
 - \printunsrtglossary* 91, 129, 159, 161, 370, 478
 - \ProcessOptions 27, 478
 - \protect 193, 478
 - \providecommand 15, 44, 195, 229, 273, 478
 - \provideglossaryentry 269
 - \provideignoredglossary 478
 - \provideignoredglossary* 5, 110, 126, 211, 478
 - \ProvidesPackage 27, 478
- R**
- \ref 144, 474, 478
 - see also* \label
 - \refstepcounter 25, 170, 479
 - \renewcommand 15, 44, 229, 272, 479
 - \RequirePackage 27, 479
 - resource options
 - abbreviation-name-fallback 53, 65, 66, 126, 192, 234, 409

Index

- abbreviation-sort-fallback.. 53, 65,
69, 72, 76, 191, 192, 349, 392, 407, 409
- action..... 89, 90, 110, 129, 210, 369, 406
- alias 166
- alias-loc 6, 166
- bibtex-contributor-fields ... 7, 138,
140, 262, 263, 276, 290, 295
- bibtexentry-sort-fallback 78,
191, 192
- break-at 133, 135, 138, 182, 183, 196, 197,
213, 221
- break-marker 196, 197, 213, 221
- category ... 7, 38, 51, 64, 78, 90, 110, 111,
123–125, 177, 217, 218, 228, 230, 231,
362, 367, 379, 419
- charset 34, 38, 85
- check-end-punctuation..... 7, 42, 131,
132, 375
- combine-dual-locations 7, 65, 77,
215, 216
- contributor-order..... 138, 139, 263
- copy-action-group-field 90, 91,
129, 369
- copy-alias-to-see 129
- counter 7, 42, 129, 218
- cs-label-prefix 117, 118, 410
- date-field-format 140, 141, 219
- date-field-locale 140, 141, 219
- date-fields 7, 140, 141
- date-sort-format ... 140, 141, 189, 190,
207, 214, 222, 290
- date-sort-locale ... 141, 189, 190, 207,
214, 222
- date-time-field-format..... 140, 219
- date-time-field-locale. 140, 141, 219
- date-time-field-locale. 140, 141, 220
- date-time-fields 7, 140, 141
- decomposition 204, 214, 222
- dependency-fields 7, 8, 39, 92, 120
- description-case-change..... 54, 150
- dual-abbrev-backlink 72, 226, 227
- dual-abbrev-map 74, 223
- dual-abbreventry-backlink... 226, 227
- dual-abbreventry-map..... 224
- dual-backlink..... 227
- dual-break-at 133, 196, 221, 409
- dual-break-marker 197, 221
- dual-category 7, 63, 124, 217, 228
- dual-counter 7, 218
- dual-date-field-format. 140, 141, 219
- dual-date-field-locale. 140, 141, 219
- dual-date-sort-format 222
- dual-date-sort-locale 207, 222
- dual-date-time-field
-format..... 140, 219
- dual-date-time-field-locale... 140,
141, 219
- dual-decomposition..... 204, 222
- dual-entry-backlink 225–227
- dual-entry-map 222–226
- dual-entryabbrev-backlink 227
- dual-field ... 42, 218, 219, 226, 411, 465
- dual-group-formation... 210, 222, 257
- dual-identical-sort-action 198, 221
- dual-indexabbrev-backlink 227
- dual-indexabbrev-map 225
- dual-indexentry-backlink... 63, 227
- dual-indexentry-map 224
- dual-indexsymbol-backlink..... 227
- dual-indexsymbol-map 225, 408
- dual-letter-number-punc
-rule 205, 222
- dual-letter-number-rule... 204, 222
- dual-long-case-change 150, 218
- dual-missing-sort-fallback 192, 220
- dual-numeric-locale..... 207, 222
- dual-numeric-sort-pattern . 207, 222
- dual-prefix... 37, 56, 63, 115, 117, 118,
214, 263, 410
- dual-short-case-change 150, 218
- dual-short-plural-suffix 152
- dual-sort 56, 78, 96, 133, 207, 215,
220, 221
- dual-sort-field 56, 191, 220
- dual-sort-number-pad ... 197, 221, 409
- dual-sort-pad-minus 197, 221
- dual-sort-pad-plus 197, 221
- dual-sort-replace 193, 221

Index

- dual-sort-rule 220, 221
- dual-sort-suffix 198, 221
- dual-sort-suffix-marker 203, 221
- dual-strength 203, 221
- dual-symbol-backlink 226, 227
- dual-symbol-map 224
- dual-time-field-format . 140, 141, 219
- dual-trim-sort 192, 221
- dual-type ... 7, 32, 63, 68, 70, 87, 90, 125, 126, 217, 218, 228, 242, 243, 408
- duplicate-label-suffix . 116, 117, 422
- entry-type-aliases .. 6, 87, 88, 95, 124, 125, 217, 218, 281, 286, 406
- ext-prefixes 37, 115, 117, 118, 264
- field-aliases 6, 80, 126, 284, 286, 288–290, 295, 298, 367, 375, 383, 384
- flatten 90, 98, 99, 101, 106, 126, 182, 190
- flatten-lonely 98–101, 103, 105, 258–260
- flatten-lonely-rule 99, 102, 105
- group 6, 31, 42, 90, 123, 209, 352
- group-formation 123, 209, 214, 222, 248, 256, 257
- identical-sort-action . 198, 200, 202, 213, 221, 341, 361, 391
- ignore-fields 6, 53, 98, 106, 126–128, 290
- interpret-label-fields 7, 14, 86, 112, 375
- interpret-preamble 8, 17–19, 45, 83, 85, 86, 201, 209, 275
- label-prefix 7, 37, 74, 110, 111, 115–118, 120, 210, 263, 298, 362, 410
- labelify .. 7, 14, 26, 79, 86, 106, 112–114
- labelify-list 7, 14, 26, 86, 112–114, 120
- labelify-replace 79, 112–114, 193
- letter-number-punc-rule ... 186, 205, 214, 222
- letter-number-rule . 186, 187, 204, 206, 214, 222
- limit 7, 96
- loc-counters 168, 169, 244, 245
- loc-prefix ... 11, 157, 166–168, 242, 243
- loc-suffix 168, 243, 394
- long-case-change 150, 218
- master 5, 7, 90, 110
- master-resources 111
- match 7, 94–96, 367
- match-action 96
- match-op 95
- max-loc-diff 164, 165, 240
- min-loc-range 153, 162
- missing-parent-category 106, 107
- missing-parents 106, 107
- missing-sort-fallback 191, 192, 212, 220
- name-case-change .. 7, 90, 142, 147, 148, 150, 394
- not-match 96
- numeric-locale 188, 207, 214, 222
- numeric-sort-pattern 188, 207, 214, 222
- post-description-dot 130
- primary-dual-dependency 215
- primary-location-formats 156, 157, 159
- record-label-prefix 117, 415
- replicate-fields .. 6, 54, 113, 127–129, 290, 349, 367, 375, 384, 407
- replicate-override 127–129, 290
- save-child-count 97, 468
- save-index-counter 24, 170–172
- save-locations 4, 90, 152, 156, 169, 364, 386, 442
- save-loclist 156, 157, 229
- save-original-id 120
- save-primary-locations 156, 157, 159, 244
- secondary . 5, 42, 49, 55, 89–91, 126, 129, 192, 207, 210, 368, 406
- secondary-break-at 196, 213
- secondary-break-marker 197, 213
- secondary-date-sort-format 214
- secondary-date-sort-locale 207, 214
- secondary-decomposition 204, 214
- secondary-group-formation 210, 214, 257

Index

- secondary-identical-sort
 - action..... 198, 213
- secondary-letter-number-punc
 - rule..... 205, 214
- secondary-letter-number
 - rule..... 204, 214
- secondary-missing-sort
 - fallback..... 192, 212
- secondary-numeric-locale.. 207, 214
- secondary-numeric-sort
 - pattern..... 207, 214
- secondary-sort-number-pad . 197, 213
- secondary-sort-pad-minus... 197, 213
- secondary-sort-pad-plus... 197, 213
- secondary-sort-replace..... 193, 213
- secondary-sort-rule..... 210, 213
- secondary-sort-suffix..... 198, 213
- secondary-sort-suffix
 - marker..... 203, 213
- secondary-strength..... 203, 214
- secondary-trim-sort..... 192, 213
- see..... 165, 166, 239
- seealso..... 39, 166
- selection1, 7, 8, 23, 39, 56, 79, 92–94, 98, 126, 154, 210, 352, 364, 365, 370, 386, 394, 423
- set-widest 14, 86, 87, 116, 260–262, 311, 323, 340, 344, 383, 422
- short-case-change..... 6, 54, 110, 147–150, 218
- short-plural-suffix..... 6, 152
- shuffle..... 96, 182, 190
- sort 4, 14, 16, 17, 19, 20, 22, 30, 32, 57, 82, 90, 96, 133, 136, 179, 182–185, 189, 190, 193, 196, 197, 201, 207, 208, 210, 215, 220, 251, 252, 289, 290, 311, 368, 379, 443
- sort-field . 17, 19, 50, 53, 126, 190–192, 210, 211, 220, 305, 340, 357
- sort-label-list..... 132, 137, 178
- sort-number-pad 185, 193, 197, 213, 221
- sort-pad-minus..... 197, 213, 221
- sort-pad-plus..... 197, 213, 221
- sort-replace.... 114, 193, 196, 213, 221
- sort-rule . 14, 16, 180, 182, 193, 213, 221
- sort-suffix . 198, 199, 213, 221, 362, 391
- sort-suffix-marker . 200, 203, 213, 221
- src..... 8, 11, 83, 91–93, 119, 173, 177
- strength..... 203, 204, 214, 221
- strip-missing-parents..... 106
- strip-trailing-nopost.... 7, 130, 299
- suffixF..... 165
- suffixFF..... 165
- supplemental-category..... 175–177
- supplemental-locations..... 174, 245
- supplemental-selection..... 176
- symbol-sort-fallback.... 50, 191, 192, 281, 340, 357, 409
- tertiary-category..... 77, 228
- tertiary-prefix..... 77, 117, 227, 264
- tertiary-type..... 77, 90, 126, 228
- time-field-format..... 140, 141, 219
- time-field-locale..... 140, 141, 220
- time-fields..... 7, 140, 141
- trigger-type..... 5, 36, 125, 126
- trim-sort..... 192, 213, 221
- type . 7, 32, 33, 38, 42, 70, 78, 87, 90, 110, 123, 125, 126, 129, 167, 217, 228, 231, 242, 243, 248, 261, 267, 352
- word-boundaries..... 143, 149
- write-preamble.... 16, 86, 179, 276, 375
- resource set . . 6, 8, 15, 22, 79, 82, 83, 85, 106, 116, 133, 136, 138, 152, 179, 183, 229, 249, 257, 263, 264, 278, 352, 354, 379, 419, 422–424
- \rgls..... 35, 36, 125, 155
- \rglsformat..... 36

S

- sample-authors.tex..... 107, 373
- sample-bacteria.tex..... 348, 362, 406
- sample-chemical.tex..... 344, 409
- sample-citations.tex..... 377
- sample-constants.tex..... 340
- sample-dual.tex..... 272
- sample-markuplanguages.tex... 392, 406
- sample-maths.tex..... 319, 384

Index

<p>sample-media.tex 275, 299, 361, 375, 421</p> <p>sample-msymbols.tex 383, 384, 386</p> <p>sample-multi1.tex 9, 404, 415, 420, 425, 426</p> <p>sample-multi2.tex 9, 415</p> <p>sample-people.tex 365, 375, 418, 419, 425</p> <p>sample-textsymbols.tex 322, 389</p> <p>sample-units1.tex 352, 354</p> <p>sample-units2.tex 354</p> <p>sample-units3.tex 357, 409</p> <p>sample-usergroups.tex 396</p> <p>secondary 55</p> <p style="padding-left: 2em;"><i>see also</i> dual</p> <p>section counter 174</p> <p>\section 25, 479</p> <p>\section* 354, 405, 479</p> <p>\seealsoname 39, 267, 479</p> <p>\selectlanguage 137, 479</p> <p>sentence case 143</p> <p>\setabbreviationstyle 53, 84, 479</p> <p>\setcardfmt 318</p> <p>\setcontentsfmt 318</p> <p>\setentrycounter 176, 479</p> <p>\setfmt 318</p> <p>\setglossarystyle 359, 479</p> <p>\setmainlanguage 398, 479</p> <p>\setmembershipfmt 318</p> <p>\setmembershiponeargfmt 318</p> <p>\setotherlanguage 400, 480</p> <p>\si 15, 144, 286, 357, 480</p> <p>SI unit 286, 357, 421</p> <p>\sortart 275, 276</p> <p>\sortmediacreator 276, 375</p> <p>\sortname 275, 276, 368, 425</p> <p>\sortop 178, 179, 275</p> <p>\sortvonname 275, 276, 290, 368, 425</p> <p>\space 149, 480</p> <p>\SS 144, 480</p> <p>\ss 144, 480</p> <p>\string 114, 193, 194, 203, 207, 208, 480</p> <p>\strong 84, 85</p> <p>\subglossentry 155, 359, 480</p> <p>\surd 277, 480</p> <p>symbol group <i>see</i> non-letter group</p>	<h3 style="text-align: center;">T</h3> <p>\tabularnewline 359, 480</p> <p>terms.bib 339, 423–425</p> <p>tertiary 76</p> <p>texparserlib.jar 12, 14, 16, 17, 26</p> <p>\textbf 153, 154, 164, 380, 480</p> <p>\textcolor 149, 481</p> <p>\text<language> 400, 481</p> <p>\textsc 65, 147, 481</p> <p>\textsf 362, 481</p> <p>\textstyle 310, 481</p> <p>\textsubscript 25, 206, 481</p> <p>\textsuperscript 25, 206, 481</p> <p>\texttt 199, 481</p> <p>\textweathersymbol 323, 481</p> <p>\TH 144, 481</p> <p>\th 144, 481</p> <p>\the 392, 481</p> <p>\theHentrycounter 24, 481</p> <p>time group 31, 256</p> <p>title case 142, 143, 265, 452</p> <p>\toprule 359, 481</p> <p>\TrackedLanguageFromDialect 399, 481</p> <p>\TrackLangLastTrackedDialect 399, 481</p> <p>\TrackLocale 399, 481</p> <p>\transposefmt 318</p> <p>trigraph 31</p> <p>TUG (T_EX Users Group) 328</p> <h3 style="text-align: center;">U</h3> <p>\u 193, 194, 203, 207, 208, 482</p> <p>unaryoperators.bib 317, 383</p> <p>\undef 389, 482</p> <p>\underline 394, 482</p> <p>\unexpanded 250, 251, 482</p> <p>Unicode categories</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Letter, Lowercase 186 Letter, Modifier 186 Letter, Other 186 Letter, Titlecase 186 Letter, Uppercase 186 Number, Decimal Digit 162, 184, 206 Punctuation, Close 130, 131
--	---

Index

Punctuation, Dash	149	vegetables.bib	337, 404
Punctuation, Final quote	130, 131		
Punctuation, Other	130, 131	W	
Separator, Space	186	wrglossary counter	24, 42, 170, 171, 441, 464, 468
upper case	17, 19, 28, 31, 32, 53, 142–144, 148, 183, 184, 196, 205, 265, 394, 395, 447, 452, 453, 458–460, 463, 467, 472	\write18	1, 482
\usepackage	41, 267, 442, 482	X	
usergroups.bib	328, 396	xampl.bib	80
V		\xGlsXtrSetField	399, 482
\vec	18, 482	\xifinlist	399, 482
\vecfmt	318	\xmakefirstuc	122, 482